



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

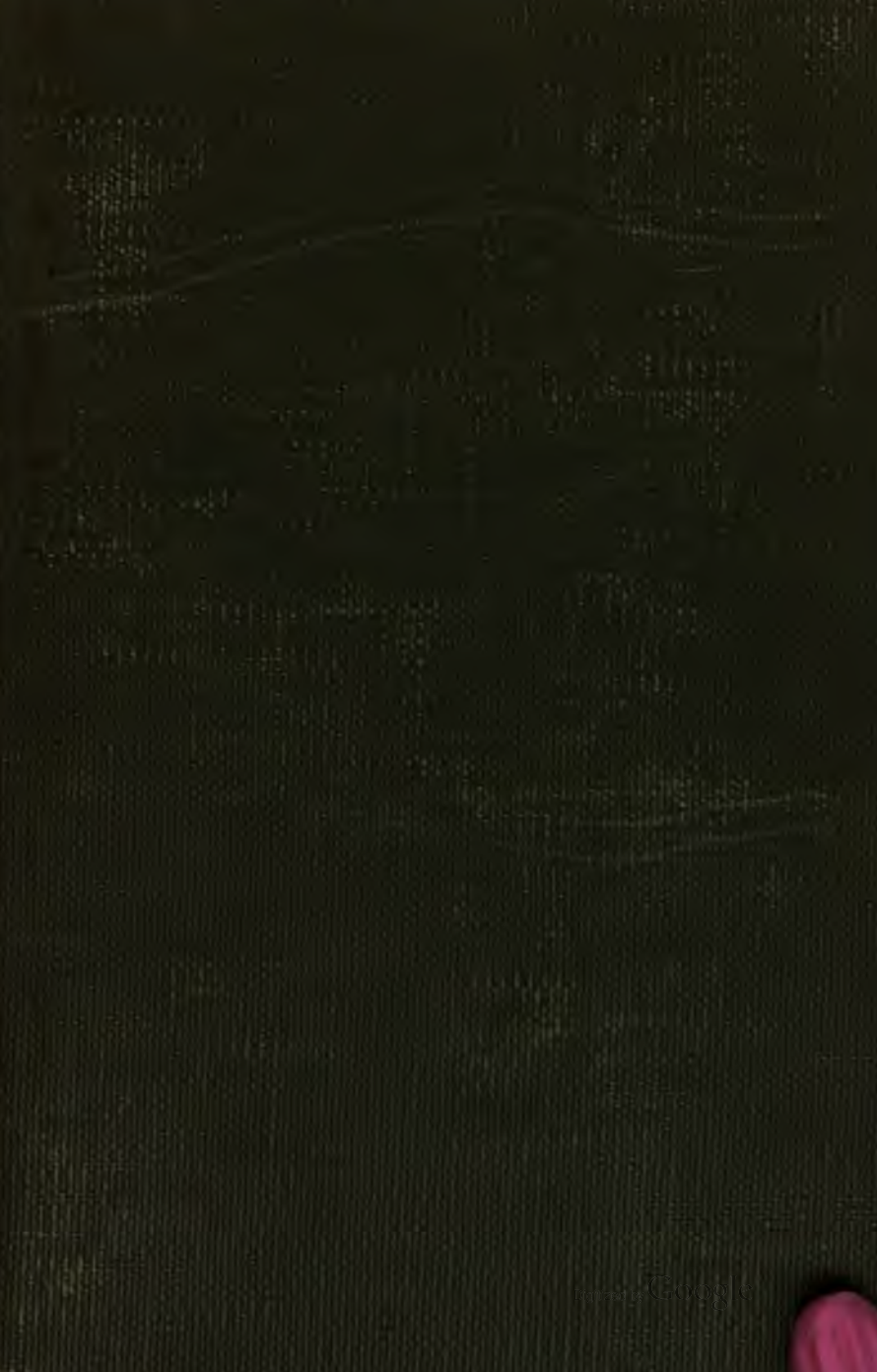
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

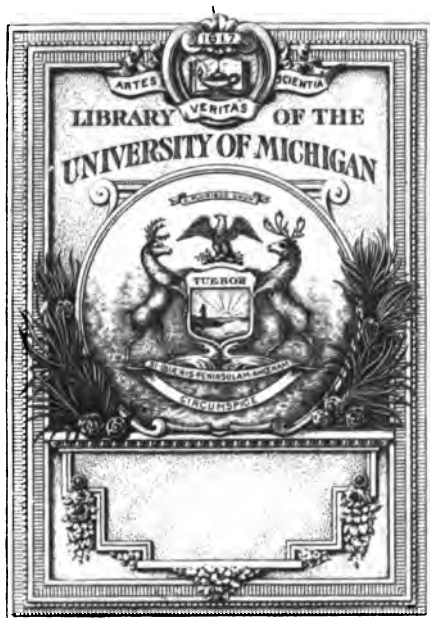
We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





870.5

G47







3  
1  
LAT

B. L. C

REVISED LATIN GRAMMAR.

---

A

34

# LATIN GRAMMAR.

BY

B. L. GILDERSLEEVE, Ph.D. (Göttingen), LL.D.,

PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN THE UNIVERSITY OF VIRGINIA.



UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY,  
NEW YORK AND BALTIMORE.

1872.

870.5  
G47  
1872

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1872, by the  
UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY,  
In the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

In th  
tial chan  
self-restr  
who hav  
tive Gran  
here and  
main I  
PRICE, C  
testimon  
valued  
To  
and lan  
specia  
he ge  
parall  
this I  
T  
not  
I  
HE  
sul

# PREFACE

## TO THE REVISED EDITION.

---

IN this new edition of my Latin Grammar, I have not made any essential change in the Inflections, as I am thoroughly in accord with the wise self-restraint of the German authors, Professors LATTMANN and MÜLLER, who have presented simply the results and not the processes of Comparative Grammar. A few sections and a few notes have been added, and here and there I have allowed myself to vary from the original, but in the main I have kept to the translation, as made by Professor THOMAS R. PRICE, of Randolph Macon College, a scholar whose attainments need no testimonial from me, a man whose friendship I count among my most valued possessions.

To the revision of the Syntax, which was originally based on KRITZ, and largely indebted for its practical features to LATTMANN and MÜLLER, especial attention has been given; and, whilst I have not deviated from the general arrangement, which was dictated by the design of writing a parallel Greek Grammar, the variations in detail are so numerous that this part of the book may be considered a new work.

The orthography has been brought nearer to recent results, but I have not aimed at a painful consistency.

In the treatment of the metres I have had regard to the system of HEINRICH SCHMIDT.

It would be pedantry to enumerate all the grammars that I have consulted, worse than pedantry to acknowledge my obligations to the great

masters of the department, without whose aid no tolerable Latin grammar can be written, and unworthy of the aims of my life to advertise my own efforts or to call attention to the supposed excellences of my own methods.

To all who have encouraged me by their sympathy, or aided me by corrections and suggestions, I am truly grateful. To none do I owe more, both for encouragement and for aid, than to my tried friend and esteemed colleague, Professor PETERS, whose acute criticism and practical experience have been of great service to me in the prosecution of my Latin studies.

B. L. GILDERSLEEVE.

SEPTEMBER, 1872.

# CONTENTS.

The references are to the paragraphs.

<b>INFLECTIONS</b> .....	1—191	<b>Stems in a P-mute</b> .....	157
Alphabet .....	1	<b>Stems in a K-mute</b> .....	159
Vowels .....	2	<b>Aspirate Stems in H and V</b> ...	163
Consonants .....	6	<b>Stems in a T-mute</b> .....	164
Syllables.....	8	<b>Liquid Stems</b> .....	169
Quantity.....	10	<b>Stems in S</b> .....	173
Accentuation.....	14	<b>Stems in U</b> .....	173
Parts of Speech.....	15	<b>Deponents</b> .....	175
Inflection.....	16	<b>Change of Conjugation</b> .....	176
Substantive.....	17	<b>Inchoative Verbs</b> .....	181
Gender.....	18	<b>Irregular Verbs</b> .....	183
Cases.....	21	<b>Obsolete forms of the Verb</b> ..	191
Declensions.....	25	<b>SYNTAX</b> .....	192—697
First.....	27	<i>Syntax of Simple Sentence</i> ....	193
Second.....	29	<b>Nominative and Vocative</b> ....	193
Third.....	36	<b>Concord</b> .....	201
Fourth.....	67	<b>Voices</b> .....	203
Fifth.....	69	<b>Tenses</b> .....	213
Greek Nouns.....	71	<b>Present Tense</b> .....	218
Irregular Nouns.....	74	<b>Imperfect</b> .....	223
Adjectives.....	81	<b>Perfect</b> .....	226
Comparison.....	86	<b>Pluperfect</b> .....	233
Adverbs.....	90	<b>Future</b> .....	234
Numerals.....	92	<b>Future Perfect</b> .....	236
Pronouns.....	97	<b>Periphrastic Tenses</b> .....	238
<b>Verb</b> .....	109	<b>Tenses in Letters</b> .....	244
<b>Conjugation of Sum</b> .....	112	<b>Moods</b> .....	245
<b>Systems of Conjugation</b> .....	116	<b>Indicative</b> .....	246
<b>First Conjugation</b> .....	119	<b>Subjunctive</b> .....	247
<b>Second Conjugation</b> .....	123	<b>Imperative</b> .....	259
<b>Third Conjugation</b> .....	131	<b>Tenses of Moods and Verbal</b>	
<b>Fourth Conjugation</b> .....	135	<b>Nouns</b> .....	270
<b>Appendix to Third Conj.</b> ....	139	<i>Simple Sentence Expanded</i> ....	280
<b>Deponents of First Conj.</b> ....	141	<b>Multiplication of Subject</b> ....	281
<b>Deponents of Second Conj.</b> ...	143	<b>Qualification of Subject</b> ....	284
<b>Deponents of Third Conj.</b> ....	145	<b>Attribute</b> .....	285
<b>Deponents of Fourth Conj.</b> ...	147	<b>Demonstrative Pronouns</b> ....	290
<b>Periphrastic Conjugation</b> ....	149	<b>Determinative and Reflexive</b>	
<b>Abbreviations</b> .....	151	<b>Pronouns</b> .....	293
<b>Present Stem</b> .....	152	<b>Possessive Pronouns</b> .....	299
<b>Perfect</b> .....	153	<b>Indefinite Pronouns</b> .....	300
<b>Supine</b> .....	154	<b>Numerals</b> .....	307
<b>Euphonic Laws</b> .....	155	<b>Comparatives and Superla-</b>	
<b>Change of Conjugation</b> .....	156	<b>tives</b> .....	311



Apposition.....	318	Object Sentences with Participle.....	536
Predicative Attribution, and Apposition.....	324	Causal Sentences.....	538
Multiplication of Predicate....	325	Sentences of Design and Tendency .....	543
Qualification of Predicate.....	326	Final Sentences .....	544
Accusative.....	327	Consecutive Sentences.....	553
Dative.....	343	Temporal Sentences.....	561
Genitive.....	357	Antecedent Action .....	563
Ablative.....	383	Contemporaneous Action.....	570
Names of Towns and Islands..	410	Prior Action.....	576
Prepositions .....	414	Cum (Quum).....	580
With Accusative .....	417	Conditional Sentences .....	590
With Ablative .....	418	Logical.....	597
With Acc. and Abl. ....	419	Ideal .....	598
Infinitive as a Substantive ....	420	Unreal .....	599
Gerund and Gerundive .....	426	Incomplete .....	600
Supine .....	435	Of Comparison .....	604
Adverb .....	440	Concessive Sentences.....	605
Negatives.....	442	Relative Sentences .....	612
<i>Incomplete Sentence</i> .....	451	Comparative Sentences.....	641
Interrogative Sentences.....	452	Correlative .....	645
<i>Syntax of Compound Sentence</i> ..	474	With atque.....	646
Coördination.....	475	With quam .....	647
Copulative Sentences .....	476	<i>Abridged Sentence</i> .....	648
Adversative Sentences.....	485	Infinitive .....	649
Disjunctive Sentences .....	494	Oratio Obliqua .....	651
Causal and Illative Sentences.	500	Participle.....	669
Subordination.....	505	<i>Arrangement of Words</i> .....	671
Sequence of Tenses.....	510	<i>Arrangement of Clauses</i> .....	682
Reflexive .....	520	<i>Figures of Syntax</i> .....	685
Object Sentences .....	523	PROSODY .....	698
With Quod .....	524	Versification.....	723
With Acc. and Inf. ....	526		

# INFLECTIONS OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE,

ON THE BASIS OF LATTMANN AND MÜLLER.

## ALPHABET.

1. THE Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no W.

REMARK.—K is used chiefly in abbreviations—*K.* (*Caeso*), *Kal.* (*Calendae*). Y and Z occur in Greek words only. Originally, there was no difference in character between I and J, between V and U. In the olden time U did not come after V: *servos* (*servus*) *equos* or *ecus* (*equus*), *quom* (*cum*).

## VOWELS.

2. The vowels are a, e, i, o, u; and are divided:

1. According to their *quality*, into

*open*, a, e, o.  
*close*, i, u.

2. According to their *quantity*, into

*long*, . . . . . —  
*short*, . . . . . )  
*common*, i. e., sometimes *short*, and sometimes *long*, )

The following distinction is made:

common: by preference *short*, )  
common: by preference *long*, )

☞ In this grammar, every long vowel sound is marked. But see 700 R. 2.

## 3.

## SOUNDS OF THE VOWELS.

ā = a in father.

ō = o in bone.

ē = e in prey.

ū = oo in moon.

ī = i in caprice.

ÿ = u in sûr (French).

REMARK.—The short sounds are only less prolonged in pronunciation than the long sounds, and have no exact English equivalents.

## DIPHTHONGS.

4. There are but few *diphthongs* or *double sounds* in Latin. The theory of the diphthong requires that both elements be heard in a slur. The tendency in Latin was to reduce diphthongs to simple sounds; hence frequent variations in spelling: so *glæba* and *glēba*, *sod*; *oboedire* and *obēdire*, *obey*; *faenum* (*foenum*) and *fēnum*, *hay*.

ae and oe = ae in Graeme.

au = ou in our.

ei = ei in feint (drawled).

eu = eu in Spanish *deuda*.ui = oui in French *oui*.

## DIAERESIS.

5. The sign · (*Diaëresis*—Greek = *separation*) over the second vowel shows that each sound is to be pronounced separately: *äër*, *air*; *Oeno-mäus*, *aloë*.

## CONSONANTS.

## 6. Consonants are divided:

1. According to the principal *organs* by which they are pronounced, into

*Labials* (lip-sounds): b, p, (ph), f, v, m.

*Dentals* (tooth-sounds): d, t, (th), l, n, r, s.

*Gutturals* (throat-sounds): g, c, k, qu, (ch), h.

2. According to their *prolongation*, into

A. *Semi-vowels*: of which

l, m, n, r, are *liquids*, (m and n being *nasus*).

h, j, and v, are *breathings*, and

s is a *sibilant*.

B. *Mutes*: to which belong

P-mutes, p, b, (ph), f, *labials*.

T-mutes, t, d, (th), *dentals*.

K-mutes, k, c, qu, g, (ch), *gutturals*.

Those on the same line are said to be of the *same organ*.

*Mutes* are further divided into

<b>Tenuēs</b>	(thin):	<b>p, t, k, c, qu.</b>	<i>hard</i> (surd).
<b>Mediae</b>	(middle):	<b>b, d, g,</b>	<i>soft</i> (sonant).
<b>[Aspirātae</b>	(aspirate):	<b>ph, th, ch,]</b>	<i>aspirate</i> .

The aspirates occur chiefly in Greek words.

Those on the same line are said to be of *the same order*.

3. *Double consonants* are: **z = dz** in *adze*; **x = ks** (**ks**); **j** between two vowels is a double sound, half vowel, half consonant, and always lengthens the preceding vowel; *jājūnus*, *hungry*.

### SOUNDS OF THE CONSONANTS.

7. The consonants are sounded as in English, with the following exceptions:

**C** is hard throughout = **k** (commonly assibilated before **e** (**ae, oe**) and **i**).

**Ch** is not a genuine Latin sound. In Latin words it is a **k**; in Greek words a **kh**; commonly pronounced as **ch** in German.

**G** is hard throughout, as in *get, give*.

**J** has the sound of a broad **y**; much fuller than **y** in *your*.

**N** has a guttural nasal sound before **c, g, q**, as in *anchor, anguish*.

**Qu** = **kw** (nearly); before **u**, **qu** = **c**; **quum** = **cum**; **equus** = **ecus**.

**Quum** is a late spelling, retained for convenience' sake.

**R** must be trilled.

**S** and **X** are always hard, as in *hiss, axe*.

**T** is hard throughout.

**V** was nearer our **w** than our **v**; still nearer the French *ou* in *oul*.

### SYLLABLES.

8. The syllable is the unit of pronunciation, and consists of a vowel, or a vowel and one or more consonants.

A consonant, between two vowels, belongs to the second: **a-mo**, *I love*.

Two or more consonants belong to the following vowel: **a-sper**, *rough*; **fau-stus**, *lucky*; **li-bri**, *books*.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Liquids, **l, m, n, r**, join the preceding vowel: **al-mus**, *fostering*; **am-bo**, *both*; **an-guis**, *snake*; **ar-bor**, *tree*; **mn** follows the general rule: **a-mnis**, *river*.

2. When the consonant is doubled, the first belongs to the first, the

1\*

second to the second syllable: *cas-sis, helmet*; *al-lium, garlic*; *map-pa napkin*; *an-nus, year*; *mit-to, I send*.

3. Compounds are treated as if their parts were separate words: *ab-igo, I drive off*; *rēs-pública, commonwealth*.

9. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the next to the last, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

10. QUANTITY.—A syllable is said to be long *by nature*, when it contains a long vowel or diphthong; *by position*, when a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, or a double consonant: *ars, art*; *collum, neck*; *abrumbo, I break off*; *per mare, through the sea*; *nex, murder*.

REMARK.—Nf, ns, and j make a preceding vowel sound long, not merely the syllable.

EXCEPTION.—J in the compounds of *jugum, yoke*; *bi-jugus, two-horse*.

11. A syllable ending in a short vowel, followed by a mute with l or r, is *common (anceps)*: *tenēbrae, darkness*.

12. Every diphthong, and every vowel derived from a diphthong, or contracted from other vowels, is long: *saevus, cruel*; *conclūdo, I shut up* (from *clando, I shut*); *cōgo* (from *co-igo*), *I drive together*.

13. One simple vowel before another vowel-sound makes a short syllable: *deus, God*; *puer, boy*.

REMARKS.—1. h does not count: *nihil, nothing*.

2. Exceptions will be noted as they occur.

3. On the quantity of final syllables see Prosody.

14. ACCENTUATION.—1. Dissyllabic words have the accent or stress on the penult: *ēquus, horse*.

2. Polysyllabic words have the accent on the penult, when the penult is long; on the antepenult, when the penult is short or common: *mandāre, to commit*; *māndere, to chew*; *intēgrum, entire*.

REMARKS.—1. The little appendages (*enclitics*), *que, ve, ne*, add an accent to the ultimate of words accented on the antepenult: *lūmināque, and lights*; *flūmināve, or rivers*; *vōmerēne, from a ploughshare*?

2. Other exceptions will be noted as they occur.

## PARTS OF SPEECH.

15. The parts of speech are:

I. The *Noun*, embracing:

1. The *Substantive*, which gives a name: *vir, a man*; *Cocles*, *Cocles*; *dōnum, a gift*.

2. The *Adjective*, which adds a quality to the substantive.

II. The *Pronoun*, which points out.

III. The *Verb*, which says.

IV. The *Particles*, which are mainly mutilated forms of the noun, and embrace:

1. The *Adverb*, which shows *circumstances*.

2. The *Preposition*, which shows *local relation*.

3. The *Conjunction*, which shows *connection*.

REMARKS.—1. Pronoun and noun have essentially the same inflection; but they are commonly separated, partly on account of the difference in signification, partly on account of the greater antiquity of the pronominal forms. The pronominal element is the formative element of language.

2. The Interjection is either a mere cry of feeling: *āh! ah!* and does not belong to language, or falls under one of the above-mentioned classes.

## INFLECTION.

16. *Inflection* is that *bending* or *change*, chiefly in the end of a word, which shows a change in the relations of that word. The noun, pronoun, and verb are inflected; the particles are not capable of further inflection.

The inflection of nouns and pronouns is called *declension*, and nouns and pronouns are said to be *declined*.

The inflection of verbs is called *conjugation*, and verbs are said to be *conjugated*.

## SUBSTANTIVE.

17. The substantive gives the name of a person or thing (concrete), or of a quality (abstract).

Concrete substantives are either *proper* or *common*.

The *proper* noun is *proper*, or *peculiar*, to certain persons or things: **Horātius**, *Horace*; **Neāpolis**, *Naples*; **Padus**, *Po*.

*Common* nouns are *common* to a whole class: **dominus**, *a lord*; **urbs**, *a city*; **amnis**, *a river*.

## GENDER.

18. For the names of animate beings, the gender is determined by the signification; for things and qualities, by the termination.

Males are masculine; Females, feminine. Masculine: **Rōmulus**; **Jūpiter**; **vir**, *man*; **equus**, *horse*. Feminine: **Cornēlia**; **Jūno**; **fēmina**, *woman*; **equa**, *mare*.

19. Some classes of words, without natural gender, have their gender determined by the signification:

I. Names of *months* (**mensēs**, *masc.*), *winds* (**venti**, *masc.*), *rivers* (**fluvii**, *masc.*), and *mountains* (**montēs**, *masc.*), are *masculine*: **Aprilis**, *the opening month, April*; **Aquilo**, *the north wind*; **Albis**, *the River Elbe*; **Athōs**, *Mount Athos*.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Feminine are the rivers **Allia**; **Albula**; **Matrōna**, *the Marne*; **Styx**; **Lēthē**.

2. Of the mountains, the Alps, **Alpēs**, are *feminine*, and sundry (Greek) names in a (Gen. *ae*), ē (Gen. *ēs*): **Aetna**, **Cyllēnē**; **Sōracte**, and **Pēlion** are *neuter*, and so are names of mountains in a (Gen. *ōrum*): **Maenala**, **Maenalōrum**.

II. Names of *countries* (**terrae**, *fem.*), *islands* (**insulae**, *fem.*), *cities* (**urbēs**, *fem.*), *plants* (**plantae**, *fem.*), and *trees* (**arborēs**, *fem.*), are *feminine*: **Aegyptus**, *Egypt*; **Rhodus**, *Rhodes*; **pirus**, *a pear-tree*; **abiēs**, *a fir-tree*.

EXCEPTIONS.—The exceptions, which are numerous, are chiefly Greek, and follow the termination, instead of the signification.

III. All indeclinable nouns, and all words and phrases treated as indeclinable nouns, are *neuter*: **fās**, *right*; **ā longum**, *a long*; **scire tuum**, *thy knowing*; **triste vale**, *a sad "farewell."*

20. 1. Nouns which have but one form for masculine and feminine are said to be of *common* gender: **civis**, *citizen* (male or female); **comes**, *companion*; **jūdex**, *judge*.

2. **Substantiva mobilia** are words of the same origin, whose different terminations designate difference of gender: **magister**, *master, teacher*; **magistra**, *mistress*; **servus**, **serva**, *slave* (m. and f.); **victor**, **victrix**, *conqueror* (m. and f.)

3. If the male and female of animals have but one designation, **mās**, *male*, and **fēmina**, *female*, are added, when it is necessary to be exact: **pāvo mās** (*masculus*), *peacock*, **pāvo fēmina**, *peahen*. These nouns are called *epicene*.

## CASES.

21. The Latin noun has six cases :

1. Nominative (Case of the Subject).

Answers: *who? what?*

2. Genitive (Case of the Complement).

Answers: *whose? whereof?*

3. Dative (Case of Indirect Object or Personal Interest).

Answers: *For or To whom?*

4. Accusative (Case of Direct Object).

Answers: *whom? what?*

5. Vocative (Case of Direct Address).

6. Ablative (Case of Adverbial Relation).

Answers: *where? whence? wherewith?*

22. According to their *syntactical use*, the cases are divided into **Cāsūs Rectī**, or Independent Cases, and **Cāsūs Obliqui**, or Dependent Cases. Nominative and Vocative are **Cāsūs Rectī**, the rest **Cāsūs Obliqui**.

23. According to their *form*, the cases are divided into *strong* and *weak*: The strong cases are Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative. The weak cases are Genitive, Dative, and Ablative.

REMARKS.—These six cases are the remains of a larger number. The Locative, which is akin to the Dative, and coincident with it in the 1st and 3d Declensions, is lost in the Genitive of the 2d Declension, and often blended with the Ablative in form, regularly in *syntax*. The Instrumental, which is found in other members of the family, is likewise merged in the Ablative.

24. The case-forms arise from the combination of the ending with the stem.

The stem is that which is common to a class of formations.



**REMARKS.**—1. The stem is often so much altered by contact with the ending, the ending so much altered by the wearing away of vowels and consonants, that they can be determined only by scientific analysis. So in the paradigm *mensa*, the stem is not *mens*, but *mensa*, the final *a* having been absorbed by the ending in the Dative and Ablative Plural *mensis*. So *-d*, the characteristic of the Ablative Singular, has disappeared, and the locative ending has undergone many changes (*ē*, *ei*, *i*, *ō*). The "crude form" it is often impossible to ascertain.

2. The root is an ultimate stem, and the determination of the root belongs to comparative etymology. The stem may be of any length, the root must be a monosyllable. In *penna* the stem is *penna-*; in *pennula*, *pennula-*; in *pennātulus*, *pennātulo-*; the root is *PET* (*petna*, *pesna*, *penna*), and is found in *pet-ere*, *to fall upon*, *to fly at*; Greek, *πέτ-ομαι*, *πτερόν*; English, *feather*.

## DECLENSIONS.

25. There are five declensions in Latin, which are characterized by the final sound of their respective stems:

	Stem characteristic.
The stems of the First Declension end in . . .	<i>ā</i>
The stems of the Second Declension end in . . .	<i>ō</i>
The stems of the Third Declension end in . . .	a consonant,
or the close vowels . . .	<i>i</i> and <i>u</i>
The stems of the Fourth Declension end in . . .	<i>ū</i>
The stems of the Fifth Declension end in . . .	<i>e</i>

26. 1. The First, Second, and Fifth Declensions are called Vowel Declensions; the Third and Fourth, which really form but one, the Consonant Declension, *i* and *u* being semi-consonants.

## 2. General Rules of Declension.

## I. For the strong cases:

Neuter nouns have Nominative and Vocative like the Accusative; in the Plural the strong cases always end in *ā*.

In the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions the strong cases are alike in the Plural.

The Vocative is like the Nominative, except in the Second Declension, when the Nom. ends in *-us*.

## II. For the weak cases:

Dative and Ablative Plural have a common form.

**REMARKS.**—In declining neuter nouns, follow the order of strong cases and weak cases. It saves time, and shows connection.

## FIRST DECLENSION.

27. The stem ends in *ā*, which disappears in the ending *-is* of the Dative and Ablative plural.

## FEMININE.

SING.—N.	<i>mensa,</i>	<i>the, or a, table.</i>
G.	<i>mensae,</i>	<i>of the, or a, table.</i>
D.	<i>mensae,</i>	<i>to, for the, or a, table.</i>
Ac.	<i>mensa-m,</i>	<i>the, or a, table.</i>
V.	<i>mensa,</i>	<i>O table! or table!</i>
Abl.	<i>mensā,</i>	<i>from, with, by, the, or a, table.</i>
PLUR.—N.	<i>mensae,</i>	<i>the tables, or tables.</i>
G.	<i>mensārum,</i>	<i>of the tables, or tables.</i>
D.	<i>mensis,</i>	<i>to, for the tables, or tables.</i>
Ac.	<i>mensās,</i>	<i>the tables, or tables.</i>
V.	<i>mensae,</i>	<i>O tables!</i>
Abl.	<i>mensis,</i>	<i>from, with, by, the tables, or tables.</i>

REMARKS.—1. The Gen. -āi is found in poetry.. The Gen. in -ās occurs in the word *familia*, *family*, when combined with *pater*, *father*, *māter*, *mother*, *filius*, *son*, *filia*, *daughter*, viz. : *paterfamiliās*, *māterfamiliās*, *filiusfamiliās*, *filiafamiliās*.

The Gen. Pl. sometimes takes the form -um instead of -ārum, chiefly in the Greek words *amphora* (*amphora*, *measure of tonnage*), and *drachma*, *franc*—(*Greek coin*). The poets make frequent use of this form in patronymics and compounds of -cola (*from colo*, *I inhabit*) and -gena (*from gen*, *beget*).

2. The Locative Dative case singular is like the Genitive *Rōmae*, *at Rome*.

3. *Dea*, *goddess*, *filia*, *daughter*, *ambae*, *both*, and *duae*, *two*, have the form -ābus in the Dative and Ablative Plural, viz. : *deābus*, *filīabus*, *ambābus*, *duābus*.

28. *Rule of Gender*.—The gender is feminine, except when males are meant.

*Hadria*, the *Adriatic*, is masculine.

## SECOND DECLENSION.

29. The stem ends in -ō, which appears in the older forms of the Nom. and Acc. singular, *servo-s*, *servo-m*. In the ordinary forms it is changed into ū, ē, lengthened into ō, or disappears wholly.

## MASCULINE.

SING.—N.	<i>hortus,</i>	<i>garden.</i>	PLUR.—	<i>horti,</i>	<i>gardens.</i>
G.	<i>horti,</i>			<i>hortōrum.</i>	
D.	<i>hortō,</i>			<i>hortis.</i>	
Ac.	<i>hortum,</i>			<i>hortōs.</i>	
V.	<i>horte,</i>			<i>horti.</i>	
Abl.	<i>hortō,</i>			<i>hortis.</i>	

## NEUTER.

SING.—N. Ac. V.	<b>bellum</b> , <i>war</i> ,	PLUR.— <b>bella</b> , <i>wars</i> .
G.	<b>belli</b> ,	<b>bellorum</b> .
D. Abl. <b>bellō</b> ,		<b>bellis</b> .

REMARKS.—1. In the Genitive Singular, **ii** is often contracted into **i**, the accent remaining unchanged : **ingenii**, of *genius*, into **ingéni**.

2. In the Vocative Singular, **ie** (**je**) is commonly contracted into **i** in proper names in **-ius**, **-ēius** (**ējus**), **-āius** (**ājus**), the accent remaining unchanged ; as, **Antōni**, **Tulli**, **Gāi**, **Vergīl**. **Filius**, *son*, **genius**, *genius*, and **meus**, *my*, form their Vocatives in like manner : **filī**, **genī**, **mī**.

3. In the Genitive Plural, **-um** for **-ōrum** is found in words denoting coins and measures ; as, **nummum** (*of moneys*) = **sōstertium**, of *sesterces* ; **modium**, of *measures*. **Faber**, *workman*, has both **fabrum** and **fabrōrum** ; **liberī**, *children*, both **liberum** and **liberōrum** ; and **vir**, *man*, in compounds has **triumvirum**, of *the triumvirs*, and the like.

4. The Locative Singular, which has a restricted use, ends in **i** (Apparent Genitive), as **Rhodī**, at *Rhodes*, **Tarentī**, at *Tarentum*.

5. **Deus**, *God*, is irregular. Singular Vocative, **deus**. Plural Nominative (**dei**), **diī**, **dī** ; Genitive, **deōrum**, **deum** ; Accusative, **deōs** ; Dative and Ablative (**deis**), **diis**, **dis**.

30. *Rule of Gender*.—Nouns in **-us** are masculine ; in **-um**, neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.—Feminine are : 1st. Cities and islands, as, **Corinthus**, **Samus**. 2d. Most trees, as, **fāgus**, *beech* ; **pirus**, *pear-tree*. 3d. Many Greek nouns, as, **atomus**, *atom* ; **paragraphus**, *paragraph* ; **methodus**, *method* ; **periodus**, *period* ; **dialectus**, *dialect*. 4th. **Alvus**, *belly* ; **colus**, *distaff* ; **humus**, *ground* ; **vannus**, *wheat-fan*.

Neuters are : **vīrus**, *venom* ; **pelagus**, *sea* ; **vulgus**, *the rabble* (sometimes masculine).

31. Most masculines in **r** drop **-us** in the Nominative and **e** in the Vocative Singular :

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.	<b>puer</b> , <i>boy</i> .	<b>puerī</b> .	<b>ager</b> , <i>field</i> .	<b>agrī</b> .
G.	<b>puerī</b> ,	<b>puerōrum</b> .	<b>agrī</b> ,	<b>agrōrum</b> .
D.	<b>puerō</b> ,	<b>puerīs</b> .	<b>agrō</b> ,	<b>agrīs</b> .
Ac.	<b>puerum</b> ,	<b>puerōs</b> .	<b>agrum</b> ,	<b>agrōs</b> .
V.	<b>puer</b> ,	<b>puerī</b> .	<b>ager</b> ,	<b>agrī</b> .
Abl.	<b>puerō</b> ,	<b>puerīs</b> .	<b>agrō</b> ,	<b>agrīs</b> .

32. The *e* belongs to the stem, and is retained through all the cases in *adulter*, *adulterer*; *alter*, *the other*; *asper*, *rough*; *dexter*, *on the right* (which has either *dextrī* or *dexterī*); *exter*, *outside*; *gener*, *son-in-law*; *gibber*, *hump-backed*; *lacer*, *torn*; *liber*, *free*; *Liber*, *god of wine*; *miser*, *wretched*; *prosper*, *lucky*; *puer*, *boy*; *socer*, *father-in-law*; *tener*, *soft*; *vesper*, *evening*; and in words ending in *-fer* and *-ger*, from *fero*, *I bear*, and *gero*, *I carry*, as, *signifer*, *standard-bearer*, *armiger*, *armor-bearer*.

*Ibēr* and *Celtibēr* (names of nations) have in the Plural *Ibērī* and *Celtibērī*.

In other words, the *e* is inserted only in the Nominative and Vocative Singular.

### 33. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES IN *-us*, *-a*, *-um*.

*Bonus*, *bona*, *bonum*, *good*.

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
SING.—N.	<i>bonus</i> ,	<i>bona</i> ,	<i>bonum</i> .	PLUR.—	<i>bonī</i> ,	<i>bonae</i> ,	<i>bona</i> .
G.	<i>bonī</i> ,	<i>bonae</i> ,	<i>bonī</i> .		<i>bonōrum</i> ,	<i>bonārum</i> ,	<i>bonōrum</i> .
D.	<i>bonō</i> ,	<i>bonae</i> ,	<i>bonō</i> .		<i>bonis</i> ,	<i>bonis</i> ,	<i>bonis</i> .
Ac.	<i>bonum</i> ,	<i>bonam</i> ,	<i>bonum</i> .		<i>bonōs</i> ,	<i>bonās</i> ,	<i>bona</i> .
V.	<i>bone</i> ,	<i>bona</i> ,	<i>bonum</i> .		<i>bonī</i> ,	<i>bonae</i> ,	<i>bona</i> .
Abl.	<i>bonō</i> ,	<i>bonā</i> ,	<i>bonō</i> .		<i>bonis</i> ,	<i>bonis</i> ,	<i>bonis</i> .

### 34. *Miser*, *miserā*, *miserum*, *wretched*.

	SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
N.	<i>miser</i> ,	<i>miserā</i> ,	<i>miserum</i> .		<i>miserī</i> ,	<i>miserāe</i> ,	<i>miserā</i> .
G.	<i>miserī</i> ,	<i>miserāe</i> ,	<i>miserī</i> .		<i>miserōrum</i> ,	<i>miserārum</i> ,	<i>miserōrum</i> .
D.	<i>miserō</i> ,	<i>miserāe</i> ,	<i>miserō</i> .		<i>miseris</i> ,	<i>miseris</i> ,	<i>miseris</i> .
Ac.	<i>miserum</i> ,	<i>miseram</i> ,	<i>miserum</i> .		<i>miserōs</i> ,	<i>miserās</i> ,	<i>miserā</i> .
V.	<i>miser</i> ,	<i>miserā</i> ,	<i>miserum</i> .		<i>miserī</i> ,	<i>miserāe</i> ,	<i>miserā</i> .
Abl.	<i>miserō</i> ,	<i>miserā</i> ,	<i>miserō</i> .		<i>miseris</i> ,	<i>miseris</i> ,	<i>miseris</i> .

*Piger*, *pigra*, *pigrum*, *slow*.

SING.—N.	<i>piger</i> ,	<i>pigra</i> ,	<i>pigrum</i> .	PLUR.—	<i>pigrī</i> ,	<i>pigrae</i> ,	<i>pigra</i> .
G.	<i>pigrī</i> ,	<i>pigrae</i> ,	<i>pigrī</i> .		<i>pigrōrum</i> ,	<i>pigrārum</i> ,	<i>pigrōrum</i> .
D.	<i>pigrō</i> ,	<i>pigrae</i> ,	<i>pigrō</i> .		<i>pigris</i> ,	<i>pigris</i> ,	<i>pigris</i> .
Ac.	<i>pigrum</i> ,	<i>pigram</i> ,	<i>pigrum</i> .		<i>pigrōs</i> ,	<i>pigrās</i> ,	<i>pigra</i> .
V.	<i>piger</i> ,	<i>pigra</i> ,	<i>pigrum</i> .		<i>pigrī</i> ,	<i>pigrae</i> ,	<i>pigra</i> .
Abl.	<i>pigrō</i> ,	<i>pigrā</i> ,	<i>pigrō</i> .		<i>pigris</i> ,	<i>pigris</i> ,	<i>pigris</i> .

35. The following have Genitive Singular in *-ius*, and Dative Singular in *i*:

<i>ūnus</i> ,	<i>ullus</i> ,	<i>nullus</i> ,	<i>one</i> ,	<i>any</i> ,	<i>none</i> .
<i>sōlus</i> ,	<i>tōtus</i> ,	<i>alius</i> ,	<i>sole</i> ,	<i>whole</i> ,	<i>other</i> .
<i>uter</i> ,	<i>alter</i> ,	<i>neuter</i> ,	<i>which of the two</i> ,	<i>one of the two</i> ,	<i>neither</i> .

REMARK.—In poetry, the *i* of the Genitive ending *-ius* is often shortened, except in *alius* (rare), *sōlius*, *utrius*, *neutrius*.

SING.—N.	nullus, nulla, nullum, none.	alius, alia, aliud, other.
G.	nullus, nullus, nullus.	alius, alius, alius.
D.	nulli, nulli, nulli.	alii, alii, alii.
Ac.	nullum, nullam, nullum.	alium, aliam, aliud.
Abl.	nullō, nullā, nullō.	aliō, aliā, aliō.

The Plural is regular.

### THIRD DECLENSION.

36. The stem ends in a consonant, or the close vowels *i* and *u*.

37. The stems are divided according to their last letter, called the stem-characteristic, following the subdivisions of the letters of the alphabet:

#### I.—Consonant Stems.

A. Liquid stems, ending in *l, m, n, r*.

B. Sibillant stems, ending in *s*.

C. Mute stems, { 1. Ending in a P-mute, *b, p*. (Compare the Fourth  
2. Ending in a K-mute, *c, g*. Declension.)  
3. Ending in a T-mute, *d, t*.

#### II.—Vowel Stems.

1. Ending in *i*.

2. Ending in *u*.

38. The sign of the Nominative Singular, masculine and feminine, is *s*, which, however, is dropped after *l, n, r, s*.

The Nominative Singular undergoes various changes.

The Vocative is like the Nominative. In the other cases, the endings are added to the unchanged stem.

39. Neuters always form

{ the Nominative without the case-ending *s*.  
the Accusative and Vocative case in both numbers like the Nominative.  
the Nominative Plural in *ā*.

REMARK.—Originally coincident with the Dative, the Locative of the Third Declension was finally blended with Ablative, both in form and in syntax. In the names of nouns the old form is frequently retained: *Karthāgini*, at Carthage, *Sulmōni*, at Sulmo. According to some, *rūri*, in the country, is an Ablative.

#### I.—CONSONANT STEMS.

##### A.—LIQUID STEMS.

1. *Liquid stems in l*.

40. Nominative without *s*, as, *consul*, the *consul*.

SING.—N.	consul, <i>consul.</i>	PLUR.—N.	consul-ēs, <i>the consuls.</i>
G.	consul-is,	G.	consul-um.
D.	consul-i,	D.	consul-ibus.
Ac.	consul-em,	Ac.	consul-ēs.
V.	consul,	V.	consul-ēs.
Abl.	consul-e,	Abl.	consul-ibus.

*Rule of Gender.*—Stems in *l* are masculine: *sōl, the sun, sōlis; sāl, salt, sālīs.*

*EXCEPTIONS.*—Neuters are: *mel, honey, mellīs; fel, gall, fellīs.*

### 2. Liquid stems in *m*.

41. Nominative with *s*. One example only: *hiem(p)s, winter; Genitive, hiem-is (fem.).*

### 3. Liquid stems in *n*.

42. The Nominative Singular of masculine and feminine stems is formed without *s*, drops the *n* of the stem, and ends in *ŏ*.

The Genitive Singular has, in some nouns, *-ōnis*; in others, *-inis*.

The Nominative Singular of the neuter stems retains the *n*, and terminates in *-ēn*.

The Genitive Singular of neuters ends in *-inis*.

43.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
SING.—N.	leō, <i>lion.</i>	imāgō, <i>likeness.</i>	nōmen, <i>name.</i>
G.	leōn-is,	imāgin-is,	nōmin-is,
D.	leōn-i,	imāgin-i,	nōmin-i,
Ac.	leōn-em,	imāgin-em,	nōmen,
V.	leō,	imāgō,	nōmen,
Abl.	leōn-e,	imāgin-e,	nōmin-e,
PLUR.—N.	leōn-ēs,	imāgin-ēs,	nōmin-a,
G.	leōn-um,	imāgin-um,	nōmin-um,
D.	leōn-ibus,	imāgin-ibus,	nōmin-ibus,
Ac.	leōn-ēs,	imāgin-ēs,	nōmin-a,
V.	leōn-ēs,	imāgin-ēs,	nōmin-a,
Abl.	leōn-ibus.	imāgin-ibus.	nōmin-ibus.

*REMARKS.*—1. Nouns in *-do* and *-go* have in the Genitive *-inis*, whilst the rest in *-o* have *-ōnis*; as, *grando, hail, grandinis; virgo, maid, virginis.*

*EXCEPTIONS.*—*Fraedo, robber; harpago, grappling-hook; ligo, mattock,* have *ōnis* *homo, man; turbo, whirlwind,* have *inis*.

2. To the stems in **n** belong *sanguis, blood, sanguin-is*; *pollis, flour, pollin-is* (both masc.). In these, **n** of the stem is dropped before **s** of the Nom.

3. Masculines in **-en**, Genitive *inīs*, are: *pecten, comb*, and the personal designations: *tibicen, fluter*; *tubicen, trumpeter*; *cornicen, horn-blower*; and *flāmen, priest*.

Masculines in **-ēn, -ēnis**, are only: *splēn* and *liēn, spleen*, and the Plural *rēnēs, kidneys*.

44. *Rules of Gender*.—1. Masculine are nouns in **-o**, save those in **-do, -go**, and **-io**, with *caro, flesh*: but *ordo, cardo*, are masculine, with *ligo, margo*; add *harpago*; and in **-io**, all concrete nouns like *pugio*.

*ordo, rank*; *cardo, hinge*; *ligo, mattock*; *margo, border*; *harpago, grappling-hook*; *pugio, dagger*; *vespertilio, bat*; *titio, firebrand*.

2. Nouns in **-en (men)** are neuter. See exceptions 43, 3.

#### 4. *Liquid stems in r.*

#### 45. Nominative without **s**.

REMARK.—In several words in **-ōr** and **-ūr**, the **r** has arisen from **s**. Hence, *labōs*, as well as *labōr, toil*; *rōbus* and *rōbūr, oak*; *vōmis* and *vōmer, ploughshare*.

MASCULINE.		NEUTER.	
e. passer,	sparrow.	pater,	father.
passer-is.		patr-is.	
o. labor,	toil.	rōbur,	oak.
labōr-is.		rōbor-is.	
u. fūr,	thief.	fulgur,	lightning.
fūr-is.		fulgur-is.	

46. Words in **-ter**, syncopate, *i. e.*, leave out the **e**, except *later, brick*, *later-is*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. labor,	toil.	labōr-ēs.	
G. labōr-is,		labōr-um.	
D. labōr-i,		labōr-ibus.	
Ac. labōr-em,		labōr-ēs.	
V. labor,		labōr-ēs.	
Abl. labōr-e,		labōr-ibus.	
		pater,	father.
		patr-is,	
		patr-i,	
		patr-em,	
		pater,	
		patr-e,	

47. *Rules of Gender*.—Words in **-er** and **-or** are masculine those in **-ur**, neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.—The only feminine is *arbor*.

Neuters are : *fār, nectar, marmor,*

*Aequor, iter, acer, piper,*

*Verber, ūber, vēr, cadāver,*

*Ador, tūber, and papāver.*

*acer, maple ; ador, spell ; aequor, sea ; arbor, tree ; cadāver, dead body ; fār, spell ; marmor, marble ; nectar, nectar ; piper, pepper ; papāver, poppy ; tūber, tumor ; ūber, teat ; vēr, spring.*

*Furfur, bran,* is masculine.

### B.—SIBILANT STEMS.

48. The Nominative has no additional *s*.

In the other cases, the *s* of the stem passes over, between two vowels, into *r*.

Instead of the final stem-vowel *e*, the Nominative of Masculines has *i*.

Instead of the final stem-vowels *e* and *o*, the Nominative of neuters has *u*.

REMARK.—*S* is retained throughout in the neuter : *vās, dish, vāsīs. SS* occurs in *ās, a copper, genitive assis* (masc.), and *os, bone, ossis* (neut.).

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
49. N.	<i>genus, kind.</i>	<i>gener-a.</i>	<i>corpus, body.</i>	<i>corpor-a.</i>
G.	<i>gener-is,</i>	<i>gener-um.</i>	<i>corpor-is,</i>	<i>corpor-um.</i>
D.	<i>gener-I,</i>	<i>gener-ibus.</i>	<i>corpor-I,</i>	<i>corpor-ibus.</i>
Ac.	<i>genus,</i>	<i>gener-a.</i>	<i>corpus,</i>	<i>corpor-a.</i>
V.	<i>genus,</i>	<i>gener-a.</i>	<i>corpus,</i>	<i>corpor-a.</i>
Abl.	<i>gener-e,</i>	<i>gener-ibus.</i>	<i>corpor-e,</i>	<i>corpor-ibus.</i>

50. *Rule of Gender.*—Masculine are nouns in *-is* (*-eris*), and *-ōs, -ōris* : except *ōs, mouth* ; genitive *ōris*, neuter.

Neuter are nouns in *-us*, genitive *-eris, -oris*, and in *-ūs, -ūris* ; except *tellūs, earth, tellūris*, which is feminine ; and the masculines, *lepus, hare, leporis* ; *mūs, mouse, mūris*.

### C.—MUTE STEMS.

51. All masculines and feminines of mute stems have *s* in the Nominative.

Most polysyllabic mute stems change their final vowel *i* into *e* in the Nominative.



A **K**-mute, combining with **s**, becomes **x**, as, **pāo-s** = **pāx**, *peace* ; **rēg-s** = **rēx**, *king*.

A **T**-mute before **s** is dropped, as, **actāt-s** = **actās**, *age* ; **ped-s** = **pēs**, *foot*.

## 52.

*Stems in a P-mute.*

▲	■	×	○	∇
<b>trab-s</b> , <i>beam</i> .	<b>plēb-s</b> , <i>commons</i> .	<b>stip-s</b> , <i>dole</i> .	<b>princep-s</b> , <i>chief</i> .	<b>(op-s)</b> , <i>power</i> .
<b>trab-is</b> (fem.)	<b>plēb-is</b> (fem.)	<b>stip-is</b> (fem.)	<b>princip-is</b> .	<b>op-is</b> (fem.)

With consonant preceding the stem-characteristic :

**Urb-s**, *city*, **urb-is** (fem.) ; **stirp-s**, *stock*, **stirp-is** (fem.).

## 53.

*Stems in a K-mute.*

<b>pāx</b> , <i>peace</i> .	<b>rēx</b> , <i>king</i> .	<b>rādix</b> , <i>root</i> .	<b>vōx</b> , <i>voice</i> .	<b>lūx</b> , <i>light</i> .
<b>pāo-is</b> (fem.)	<b>rēg-is</b> (mas.)	<b>rādic-is</b> (fem.)	<b>vōo-is</b> (fem.)	<b>lūc-is</b> (fem.)
<b>fax</b> , <i>torch</i> .	<b>grex</b> , <i>herd</i> .	<b>salix</b> , <i>willow</i> .	<b>jūdex</b> , <i>judge</i> .	<b>dux</b> , <i>leader</i> .
<b>fao-is</b> (fem.)	<b>grēg-is</b> (mas.)	<b>salic-is</b> (fem.)	<b>jūdic-is</b> .	<b>duc-is</b> .

54. With consonant preceding the stem-characteristic :

**Arx**, *citadel*, **arx-is** (fem.) ; **falx**, *sickle*, **falo-is** (fem.).

SING.—N.	<b>princep-s</b> , <i>chief</i> .	PLUR.—	<b>princip-ēs</b> ,
G.	<b>princip-is</b> ,		<b>princip-um</b> ,
D.	<b>princip-I</b> ,		<b>princip-ibus</b> ,
Ac.	<b>princip-em</b> ,		<b>princip-ēs</b> ,
V.	<b>princep-s</b> ,		<b>princip-ēs</b> ,
Abl.	<b>princip-e</b> ,		<b>princip-ibus</b> .
SING.—N.	<b>rēx</b> , <i>king</i> .	PLUR.—	<b>rēg-ēs</b> ,
G.	<b>rēg-is</b> ,		<b>rēg-um</b> ,
D.	<b>rēg-I</b> ,		<b>rēg-ibus</b> ,
Ac.	<b>rēg-em</b> ,		<b>rēg-ēs</b> ,
V.	<b>rēx</b> ,		<b>rēg-ēs</b> ,
Abl.	<b>rēg-e</b> ,		<b>rēg-ibus</b> .

REMARK.—All monosyllabic mute stems, with the characteristic preceded by a consonant, have the Genitive Plural in **-ium**, as, **urbium**, *of cities* ; **arcium**, *of citadels* ; **montium**, *of mountains* ; **partium**, *of parts* ; **noctium**, *of the nights*. The polysyllabic stems also in **-nt** and **-rt** have more frequently **-ium**, as, **clientium**, *of clients* ; **cohortium**, *of companies*. Stems in **-āt** have sometimes both **-um** and **-ium**, as, **civitātum** and **civitātium**. See 59, R. 3.

*Stems in a T-mute.*

## 55. A. Characteristic preceded by a vowel.

	T.			D.	
a. aetās,	age.	anas,	duck.	vas,	ball.
aetāt-is,	(fem.)	anāt-is,	(fem.)	vādis,	(masc.)
c. quās,	rest.	parīs,	wall.	hērēs,	hair.
quāt-is,	(fem.)	pariēt-is,	(masc.)	hārēd-is,	(masc.)
i. līs,	suit.			pēs,	foot.
līt-is,	(fem.)	G. P. ium.		pēd-is,	(masc.)
		miles,	soldier.	lapis,	stone.
		milk-is.		lapīd-is,	(masc.)
o. sacerdēs,	priest.			custōs,	keeper.
sacerdēt-is.				custōd-is.	
u. virtūs,	manliness.			palūs,	dog.
virtūt-is,	(fem.)			palūd-is,	(fem.)
				laudis,	(fem.)
				pēcus,	sheep.
				pectūd-is,	(fem.)

## 56. B. Characteristic preceded by a consonant.

nt. frons,	brow.			nd. frons,	leafy branch.
front-is,	(fem.)			frond-is,	(fem.)
rt. pars,	part.	ll. puls,	porridge.	rd. cor,	heart.
part-is,	(fem.)	pult-is,	(fem.)	cord-is,	(neut.)
ct. nox,	night.				
noct-is,	(fem.)	lac,	milk.		
		lact-is,	(neut.)		

SING.—N.	aetās, age.	PLUR.—aetāt-ēs,	SING.—pēs, foot.	PLUR.—ped-ēs,
G.	aetāt-is,	aetāt-um,	ped-is,	ped-um,
D.	aetāt-i,	aetāt-ibus,	ped-i,	ped-ibus.
Ac.	aetāt-em,	aetāt-ēs,	ped-em,	ped-ēs.
V.	aetās,	aetāt-ēs,	pēs,	ped-ēs.
Abl.	aetāt-e,	aetāt-ibus.	ped-e,	ped-ibus.

57. *Rule of Gender.*—All mute stems, with Nominative in *a*, are feminine.

*Exceptions in a K-mute.*

Masculines are **-unx** and **-ex**,  
Saving **forfex**, **forpex**, **nox**,  
**Lēx**, **vībēx**, **faex**, and forms of **prex**.

faex,	drege.	lēx,	law.
forfex,	shears.	nox,	slaughter.
forpex,	longs.	prece,	with prayer.
deunx,	†† as.	vībēx,	weal (better vībīx.)

**Calix**, *cup*, and **fornix**, *arch*, are masculine. **Calx**, *heel*, and **calx**, *chalk*, vary.

*Exceptions in a T-mute.*—Nouns in *-ēs, -ītis*, are masculine, as, *cēspes*, *turf*, *cēspitis*; as are also *pēs*, *foot*, and its compounds; *pariēs*, *wall*; and, of the nouns in *-is*, *lapis*, *stone*. *Merges, -itis*, *sheaf*, is feminine.

Masculines in *-ns* are: *mons*, *mountain*; *pons*, *bridge*; *fons*, *spring*, *dens*, *tooth*; *torrens*, *torrent*; *rudens*, *rope*.

Neuters are only: *cor*, *heart*, and *lac*, *milk*, which drop the characteristic; and *caput*, *head*, *capitis*.

## II.—VOWEL STEMS.

### 1.—VOWEL STEMS IN I.

58. Masculines and feminines form their Nominative in *s*.

Some feminines change, in the Nominative, the stem-vowel *i* into *e*.

Neuters change, in the Nominative, the stem-vowel *i* into *e*. This *e* is generally dropped by polysyllabic neuters after *l* and *r*.

All stems in *i* have Genitive Plural in *-ium*.

All neuter stems in *i* have the Ablative Singular in *i*, and Nominative Plural in *-ia*.

REMARKS.—The stems of Nominatives in *-is* and *-es* are easily distinguished.

Consonant stems in *-is* and *-es* increase in the Genitive; but vowel stems in *i* do not increase in the Genitive, as:

Consonant: *lapis*, *stone*; Genitive, *lapid-is*.    *miles*, *soldier*; Genitive, *milit-is*.  
Vowel: *civis*, *citizen*.                                  *civis*.            *nūbēs*, *cloud*.                                  *nūbis*.

### 59.

	M.	F.	F.	N.	
SING.—N.	<i>collis</i> , <i>hill</i> .	<i>turris</i> , <i>tower</i> .	<i>vulpēs</i> , <i>fox</i> .	<i>mare</i> , <i>sea</i> .	<i>animal</i> , <i>living being</i> .
G.	<i>collis</i> ,	<i>turris</i> ,	<i>vulpis</i> ,	<i>maris</i> ,	<i>animālis</i> .
D.	<i>collī</i> ,	<i>turri</i> ,	<i>vulpi</i> ,	<i>marī</i> ,	<i>animālī</i> ,
Ac.	<i>collem</i> ,	<i>turrem</i> ( <i>turri-m</i> ),	<i>vulpem</i> ,	<i>mare</i> ,	<i>animal</i> ,
V.	<i>collis</i> ,	<i>turris</i> ,	<i>vulpēs</i> ,	<i>mare</i> ,	<i>animal</i> ,
Abl.	<i>colle</i> ,	<i>turre</i> ( <i>turri</i> ),	<i>vulpe</i> ,	<i>marī</i> ,	<i>animālī</i> ,
PLUR.—N.	<i>collēs</i> ,	<i>turrēs</i> ,	<i>vulpēs</i> ,	<i>marī-a</i> ,	<i>animālī-a</i> ,
G.	<i>collī-um</i> ,	<i>turri-um</i> ,	<i>vulpi-um</i> ,	<i>marī-um</i> ,	<i>animālī-um</i> ,
D.	<i>collī-bus</i> ,	<i>turri-bus</i> ,	<i>vulpi-bus</i> ,	<i>marī-bus</i> ,	<i>animālī-bus</i> ,
Ac.	<i>collēs</i> ,	<i>turrēs</i> ,	<i>vulpēs</i> ,	<i>marī-a</i> ,	<i>animālī-a</i> ,
V.	<i>collēs</i> ,	<i>turrēs</i> ,	<i>vulpēs</i> ,	<i>marī-a</i> ,	<i>animālī-a</i> ,
Abl.	<i>collī-bus</i> ,	<i>turri-bus</i> ,	<i>vulpi-bus</i> ,	<i>marī-bus</i> ,	<i>animālī-bus</i> ,

REMARKS.—1. In Genitive Plural, *-um* instead of *-ium*.

Always in: *juvenis*, *young*; *senex*, *old*; *canis*, *dog*; *vātēs*, *bard*; *struēs*, *heap*; *pānis*, *bread*.

Usually in: *apis*, *bee*; *sēdēs*, *seat*; *volucris*, *bird*.

2. The Genitive Plural in **-ium** occurs in the apparently consonant stems : **imber**, *rain-storm* ; **ūter**, *bottle* ; **venter**, *belly* ; **linter**, *skiff* ; which form the Nominative without **s**, dropping the **i**, and inserting **e**. Genitive, **imbris**, **ūtris**, **ventris**, **lintris**. All are masculine, except **linter**, which is feminine.

3. Under the vowel stems in **-i** are sometimes classed those mute stems which take **-ium** in the Gen. Plural ; **urbi-um**, **monti-um**. See 54, R.

60. OBSERVATIONS.—Several stems in **i**, with Nominative in **-is**, have Accusative and Ablative Singular and Accusative Plural in **-im**, **i**, **is**, respectively :

1. The Accusative Plural in **-is** occurs, side by side with **-es** : In all vowel stems in **i**, which have Nominative Singular in **-is** ; In mute stems, which have Genitive Plural in **-ium**.
2. The Accusative Singular in **-im** is used :

*a. Always* in names of towns and rivers in **is**, as, **Neāpolis**, Accusative, **Neāpolim** ; **Tiberis**, Accusative, **Tiberim** ; and in **vis**, *force* ; **sitis**, *thirst* ; **tussis**, *cough*.

*b. Usually* in **secūris**, *axe* ; **febris**, *fever* ; **puppis**, *poop* ; **turris**, *tower*.

3. The Ablative Singular in **i** is used :

*a. In all nouns* which have Accusative Singular invariably in **-im**, and in **ignis**, *fire*, in the phrases, **ferrō ignique**, **aquā et igni interdīcere**. Nouns which have Accusative in **-im** or **-em** have Ablative in **i** or **ē**.

*b. In the neuter vowel stems*, which have Nominative in **ēs**, **āl**, **ār**. Names of cities in **-ēs** have Ablative also in **-e**, as, **Praeneste**, Genitive, **Praenestis**.

*c. In the adjective vowel stems* of the Third Declension, as, **facilis**, *easy* ; Ablative, **facili** ; **ācer**, *sharp* ; Ablative, **acri**.

REMARK.—So also the adjectives of this class, when used as substantives by ellipsis : **annālis** (sc. **liber**, *book*), *chronicle* ; **nātālis** (sc. **diēs**, *day*), *birthday* ; **Aprilis** (sc. **mensis**, *month*), and all the other months of the Third Declension : Ablative, **annālī**, **nātālī**, **Aprīlī**, **Septembri**, etc.

EXCEPTIONS.—**Juvenis**, *young man* ; and **aedilis**, *aedile* ; Ablative, **juvene**, **aedile**. Adjectives used as proper nouns have generally Ablative in **-e**, as, **Juvenālis** ; Ablative, **Juvenāle**.

61. *Rule of Gender*.—1. Of stems in **i**, Nominative in **-is**, some are masculine, some feminine.

*Masculine* are :

**Amnis**, *axis*, **callis**, *crinis*,  
**Cassis**, *caulis*, **fascis**, *finis*,  
**Fūis**, *fustis*, **ignis**, *ensis*,  
**Orbis**, *pānis*, **piscis**, *mensis*,

**Postis**, *scrobis*, **būris**, *collis*,  
**Sentis**, *torquis*, **atque follis**,  
**Torris**, *unguis* et **annālis**,  
**Vectis**, *vermis* et **canālis**.

<b>amnis,</b> <i>river.</i>	<b>collis,</b> <i>hill.</i>	<b>fustis,</b> <i>cudgel.</i>	<b>sentis,</b> <i>bramble.</i>
<b>axis,</b> <i>axle.</i>	<b>crinis,</b> <i>hair.</i>	<b>ignis,</b> <i>fire.</i>	<b>scrobis,</b> <i>ditch.</i>
<b>bŭris,</b> <i>plough-tail.</i>	<b>ensis,</b> <i>glaiue.</i>	<b>mensis,</b> <i>month.</i>	<b>torquis,</b> <i>necklace.</i>
<b>callis,</b> <i>footpath.</i>	<b>fascis,</b> <i>fagot.</i>	<b>orbis,</b> <i>circle.</i>	<b>torris,</b> <i>fire-brand.</i>
<b>canālis,</b> <i>canal.</i>	<b>finis,</b> <i>end.</i>	<b>pānis,</b> <i>bread.</i>	<b>unguis,</b> <i>nail.</i>
<b>cassēs,</b> <i>(pl.) toils.</i>	<b>follis,</b> <i>bellows.</i>	<b>piscis,</b> <i>fish.</i>	<b>vectis,</b> <i>lever.</i>
<b>caulis,</b> <i>stalk.</i>	<b>fūnis,</b> <i>rope.</i>	<b>postis,</b> <i>door-post.</i>	<b>vermis,</b> <i>worm.</i>

**Callis, finis, scrobis, torquis,** are used also as feminines.

Other nouns in **-is**, and all in **-ēs**, are feminine. **Veprēs**, *bramble*, is usually masculine.

## 2. Vowel stems, with Nominative in **-e**, **-al**, **-ar**, are neuter.

REMARK.—Of the names of animals in **-is**, some are masculine; **tigris**, *tiger*; **canis**, *dog*; **piscis**, *fish*; others feminine: **apis**, *bee*; **avis**, *bird*; **ovis**, *sheep*; **fēlis**, *cat* (usually *fēlēs*).

## 2. VOWEL STEMS IN **U**.

62. Of stems in **u**, only the *monosyllabic* belong to the Third Declension.

**grūs**, *crane* (fem.).

SING.—N.	grūs	PLUR.—gru-ēs
G.	gruis	gru-um
D.	grui	gru-ibus
Ac.	gru-em	gru-ēs
V.	grūs	gru-ēs
Abl.	gru-e	gru-ibus.

**Sūs**, *swine*, commonly fem., usually *subus*, in D. and Abl. Plural.

TABLE OF NOMINATIVE AND GENITIVE ENDINGS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

A \* before the ending denotes that it occurs only in the one word cited.

## 63. A. NOMINATIVES ENDING WITH A LIQUID.

NOM.	GEN.		NOM.	GEN.	
-al	-ālis	<b>animal</b> , <i>animal.</i>	-ār	*-arris	<b>fār</b> , <i>spell.</i>
	-ālis	<b>Hannibal</b> , <i>proper name.</i>	-ēr	-eris	<b>anser</b> , <i>goose.</i>
-āl	*-ālis	<b>sāl</b> , <i>salt.</i>		-ris	<b>pater</b> , <i>father.</i>
-el	-ellis	<b>mel</b> , <i>honey.</i>		*-ineris	<b>iter</b> , <i>journey.</i>
-il	-ilis	<b>pugil</b> , <i>boxer.</i>	-ēr	*-ēris	<b>vēr</b> , <i>spring.</i>
	-ilis	<b>Tanaquil</b> , <i>proper name.</i>	-ōr	-ōris	<b>color</b> , <i>color.</i>
-ōl	*-ōlis	<b>sōl</b> , <i>the sun.</i>		-oris	<b>aequor</b> , <i>expanses.</i>
-ul	-ulis	<b>consul</b> , <i>consul.</i>		*-ordis	<b>cor</b> , <i>heart.</i>
-ēn	-ēnis	<b>rēn</b> , <i>kidney.</i>	-ūr	-uris	<b>fulgur</b> , <i>lightning.</i>
-ēn	-inis	<b>nōmen</b> , <i>name.</i>		-oris	<b>rōbur</b> , <i>oak.</i>
-ar	-āris	<b>calcar</b> , <i>spur.</i>	-ūr	-ūris	<b>fūr</b> , <i>thief.</i>
	-aris	<b>nectar</b> , <i>nectar.</i>			

64. B. NOMINATIVES ENDING WITH S, OR A COM-  
POUND OF S (GS, OS), X :

NOM.	GEN.		NOM.	GEN.	
-s	-ātis	aetās, age.	-aus	-audis	fraus, cheatery. Gen.
	*-āsīs	vās, dish.			Pl. fraudium.
-ās	*-aris	mās, male.	-ls	*-ltis	puls, porridge.
	*-assis	ās, a copper.	-m(p)s	*-mis	hiems, winter.
	*-adis	vas, surety.	-ns	-ndis	frons, leafy branch.
	*-atis	anas, duck.		-ntis	frons, forehead.
aes	*-aedis	praes, surety.	-rs	-rdis	concor, concordant.
	*-aeris	aes, brass.		-rtis	pars, part.
-ēs	-is	nūbēs, cloud.	-bs	-bis	urbs, city.
	*-eris	Cerēs, Ceres.	-ps	-pis	stirps, stalk.
	-edis	pēs, foot.		-ipis	princeps, chief.
	-etis	abiēs, fir.		*-upis	auceps, Fowler.
	-ētis	quiēs, rest.	-āx	-ācis	pāx, peace.
-ēs	-etis	seges, crop.	-ax	*-acis	fax, torch.
	-idis	obses, hostage.	-ex	-icis	jūdex, judge.
	-itis	miles, soldier.		-ecis	nox, death.
-is	-is	amnis, river.		-egis	grex, flock.
	-idis	lapis, stone.		*-igis	rēmex, rower.
	-eris	cinis, ashes.	-ēx	*-ēcis	ālēx, pickle.
	-inis	sanguis, blood.		*-icis	vībēx(īx), w-al (fem.)
-is	*-itis	lis, suit at law. Gen.		-ēgis	rēx, king.
		Pl. litium.	-ix	-icis	cervix, neck.
	*-iris	glis, dormouse. Gen.	-ix	-icis	calix, cup.
		Pl. glirium.		*-igis	strix, screech-owl.
-ēs	*-ōdis	custōs, keeper.		*-ivis	nix, snow. Gen.
	-ōtis	cōs, whelstone.			Pl. nivium.
	-ōris	flos, flower.	-ōx	-ōcis	vōx, voice.
	*-ovis	bōs, ox.	-ox	*-ocis	praeox, early-ripe.
-ēs	-otis	compos, possessed of.		*-ogis	Allobrox.
	*-ossis	os, bone.		*-oetis	nox, night.
-ūs	*-udis	pecus, cattle, sheep.	-ux	-ucis	crux, cross.
	*-utis	interous, under the skin.		-ugis	conjux, spouse.
	*-uris	Ligus, a Ligurian.	-ūx	-ūcis	lūx, light.
	-oris	corpus, body.		-ūgis	(frūx.) fruit.
	-eris	scelus, crime.	-aex	-aecis	faex, dregs.
-ūs	-uis	sūs, swine.	-aux	-aucis	faux, throat. Gen.
					Pl. faucium.
	-ūris	jūs, right.	-lx	-lcis	falx, sickle.
	-ūdis	incūs, anvil.	-nx	-ncis	lanx, dish.
	-ūtis	salūs, weal.	-rx	-rcis	arx, citadel.

## 65. C. NOMINATIVES ENDING WITH A MUTE.

-ao	*-actis	lac, milk.
-ēo	*-ēcis	ālēc, pickle.
-ut	*-itis	caput, head.

## 66. D. NOMINATIVES ENDING WITH A VOWEL.

-e	-is	mare, sea.
-o	-ōnis	pāvo, peacock.
	-enis	Saxo, Saxon.
	-inis	homo, man.
	*-nis	caro, flesh.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

67. The Fourth Declension embraces only dissyllabic and polysyllabic stems in *u*.

The endings are those of the Third Declension.

In the Genitive and Ablative Singular, and the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural (sometimes, too, in the Dative Singular), the *u* of the stem absorbs the vowel of the ending, and becomes long, as *fructu-is* becomes *fructūs*, *of fruit*; *fructu-e* becomes *fructū*, *from fruit*; *fructu-es* becomes *fructūs*, *fruits*. This *u*, on the contrary, is lost before the ending *-ibus* in the Dative and Ablative Plural.

The Accusative Singular, as always in vowel stems, has the ending *m*, without a connecting vowel (compare the Accusative in *-im* of the stems in *i*), hence *u-m*.

MASCULINE.		NEUTER.	
SING.—N.	fructu-s, <i>fruit</i> .	PL. fructūs,	cornū, <i>horn</i> .
G.	fructūs,	fractu-um,	cornūs,
D.	fractu-I (fractū),	fructibus,	cornū,
Ac.	fractu-m,	fructūs,	cornū,
V.	fructus,	fructūs,	cornū,
Abl.	fractū,	fructibus,	cornū,
			cornu-a,
			cornu-um,
			cornibus,
			cornu-a,
			cornu-a,
			cornibus.

REMARKS.—1. Dative and Ablative Plurals in *-ubus* occur in nouns in *-cus*, and in *tribus*, *tribe*; *artus*, *joint*; *partus*, *childbirth*; *portus*, *harbor*; *vinus*, *fold*.

2. *Domus*, *house*, Ablative Singular, *domō*; Genitive Plural, *domuum* and *domōrum*; Accusative Plural, *domūs* and *domōs*. *Domī* (a locative form) means, *at home*.

68. *Rule of Gender*.—Nouns in *-us* are masculine; those in *-ū* are neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.—Feminines are *idūs*, pl., *the 15th day of the month*, *tribus*, *tribe*, *porticus*, *piazza*, *aous*, *needle*, *manus*, *hand*, *domus*, *house*.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

69. The stem ends in *e*. Nominative in *s*.

MASCULINE.		FEMININE.	
SING.—N.	diē-s, <i>day</i> . PL. diē-s,	SING. rē-s, <i>thing</i> . PL. rē-s.	
G.	diē-i, diē-rum,	re-i, rē-rum,	
D.	diē-i, diē-bus,	re-i, rē-bus,	
Ac.	diē-m, diē-s,	re-m, rē-s,	
V.	diē-s, diē-s,	rē-s, rē-s,	
Abl.	diē, diē-bus.	rē, rē-bus.	

REMARKS.—1. The Plural is used throughout in three words only: *rēs*, *thing*; *diēs*, *day*; and in later Latin, *speciēs*, *appearance*. In some words, only Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural occur; others have no Plural at all.

2. The stem-characteristic *e*, in the Genitive and Dative Singular, is *long* after a vowel and *short* after a consonant, as *speciēs*, Genitive *speciēi*; *rēs*, *thing*, Genitive *rei*; *fidēs*, *faith*, Genitive *fidei*.

3. Some nouns of the Fifth Declension have a secondary form, which follows the First Declension, as *mollitiēs*, *softness*, and *mollitia*. Where the double form exists, only Nominative, Accusative, and Ablative Singular commonly follow the Fifth Declension.

70. *Rule of Gender*.—Nouns of the Fifth Declension are feminine, except *diēs* (which in the Singular is of the common gender, and in the Plural masculine), and the masculine *meridiēs*, *mid-day*.

## DECLENSION OF GREEK NOUNS.

71. Greek substantives, especially proper names, are commonly Latinized, and declined regularly according to their stem-characteristic. Many nouns, however, either retain their Greek form exclusively, or have the Greek and Latin forms side by side.

## 72. SINGULAR FORMS OF GREEK NOUNS.

I.		II.		
N. Pēnelopē,	Leōnidās,	Anchisēs,	Dēlos (us),	Īlion (um).
G. Pēnelopēs,	Leōnidāe,	Anchisae,	Dēli,	Īlii.
D. Pēnelopae,	Leōnidāe,	Anchisae,	Dēli,	Īliō.
Ac. Pēnelopēn,	Leōnidam (ān),	Anchisēn (am),	Dēlon (um).	Īlion (um).
V. Pēnelopē,	Leōnidā,	Anchisē, ā, ā,	Dēle,	Īlion (um).
Abl. Pēnelopā.	Leōnidā.	Anchisā.	Dēliō.	Īliō.



II.			II. III.	III.
N. <b>Panthūs</b> ,	<b>Androgeūs</b> (us), <b>Athūs</b> ,		<b>Orphēūs</b> ,	<b>Solōn</b> , <b>Solō</b> ,
G. <b>Panthī</b> ,	<b>Androgeī</b> ,	<b>Athō</b> , <b>ōnis</b> ,	<b>Orpheī</b> (ēi),	<b>Solōnis</b> .
D. <b>Panthō</b> ,	<b>Androgeō</b> ,	<b>Athō</b> ,	<b>Orpheō</b> ,	<b>Solōnī</b> .
Ac. <b>Panthūn</b> ,	<b>Androgeōn</b> ,	<b>Athō</b> , <b>ōn</b> , <b>ōnem</b> ,	<b>Orpheum</b> (ea),	<b>Solōna</b> (em),
	<b>ō</b> , <b>ōna</b> ,			
V. <b>Panthū</b> ,	<b>Androgeōs</b> ,	<b>Athōs</b> ,	<b>Orphēū</b> ,	<b>Solōn</b> .
Abl. <b>Panthō</b> .	<b>Androgeō</b> .	<b>Athōne</b> .	<b>Orpheō</b> .	<b>Solōne</b> .
N. <b>Āēr</b> , <i>air</i> .	<b>Xenophōn</b> ,	<b>Atlās</b> ,	<b>Thalēs</b> ,	<b>Parīs</b> .
G. <b>Āerīs</b> ,	<b>Xenophōntīs</b> ,	<b>Atlantis</b> ,	<b>Thalēis</b> , <i>is</i> ,	<b>Paridis</b> , <i>os</i> .
D. <b>Āerī</b> ,	<b>Xenophōntī</b> ,	<b>Atlantī</b> ,	<b>Thalēā</b> , <i>I</i> ,	<b>Paridī</b> , <i>I</i> .
Ac. <b>Āera</b> (em),	<b>Xenophōnta</b> (em),	<b>Atlanta</b> ,	<b>Thalēa</b> , <i>ēn</i> , <i>em</i> ,	<b>Parida</b> , <i>im</i> , <i>in</i>
V. <b>Āēr</b> ,	<b>Xenophōn</b> ,	<b>Atlā</b> ,	<b>Thalē</b> ,	<b>Pari</b> , <b>Parīs</b> .
Abl. <b>Āere</b> .	<b>Xenophōnte</b> .	<b>Atlante</b> .	<b>Thalē</b> .	<b>Paride</b> .
N. <b>Oedipūs</b> ,	<b>Achillēs</b> , <i>eus</i> ,	<b>Sōcratēs</b> ,	<b>Didō</b> ,	<b>hērōs</b> .
G. <b>Oedipodis</b> , <i>I</i> ,	<b>Achillis</b> , <i>eī</i> , <i>I</i> ,	<b>Sōcratis</b> , <i>I</i> ,	<b>Didūs</b> , <i>ōnis</i> ,	<b>hērōis</b> .
	<b>eōs</b> ,			
D. <b>Oedipodī</b> ,	<b>Achillī</b> ,	<b>Sōcratī</b> ,	<b>Didō</b> , <i>ōnī</i> ,	<b>hērōī</b> .
Ac. <b>Oedipum</b> (oda),	<b>Achille</b> m, <i>ea</i> ,	<b>Sōcratē</b> n, <i>em</i> ,	<b>Didō</b> , <i>ōnem</i> ,	<b>hērōa</b> , <i>em</i> .
	<b>ēn</b> ,			
V. <b>Oedipe</b> ,	<b>Achillēs</b> , <i>ē</i> , <i>eū</i> ,	<b>Sōcratēs</b> (es),	<b>Didō</b> ,	<b>hērōs</b> .
Abl. <b>Oedipode</b> . <i>ō</i> .	<b>Achille</b> .	<b>Sōcrate</b> .	<b>Didō</b> , <i>ōne</i> .	<b>hērōe</b> .

REMARKS.—1. Many other forms are found, for which the dictionaries must be consulted. So *poësis*, G. *poësis*, *eōs*, D. *poësi*, Acc. *poësin*, *poësy*. Many of them are transliterations of Greek words, quoted as Greek.

2. In transferring Greek nouns into Latin, the Accusative Singular was sometimes taken as the stem.

So *κρατήρ*, Acc. *κρατήρα*, (*punch*) *bowl*.

*crātēr*, *crātēris* (masc.), and *crātēra* (*crēterra*) *crātērae* (fem.)

*Σαλαμίς*, Acc. *Σαλαμῖνα*, *Salamis*.

*Salamis*, *Salaminis*, and *Salamina*, *ae*.

## 73. PLURAL FORMS OF GREEK NOUNS.

N. PL. -*oe* : *canēphoroe*, *basket-bearers*.

-*ē* : *epē*, *epic poetry*.

-*ēs* : *Arcadēs*, *Arcadians*. How often in prose we cannot tell.

G. PL. -*ōn* : *Geōrgicōn*, *of the Georgics*.

-*eōn* : *Metamorphōseōn*, *of the Metamorphoses*.

D. PL. -*ai* : *Lēmniai* (rare), *to the Lemnian women*.

Acc. PL. -*ās* : *Macedonas*. Common even in words that are not Greek : *Allobrogas*.

## IRREGULAR NOUNS.

74.

## I. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

## ABUNDANTIA.

## A. Different genders in the same declension :

<b>baculus, baculum,</b>	<i>staff.</i>
<b>balteus, balteum,</b>	<i>sword-belt.</i>
<b>clipeus, clipeum,</b>	<i>shield.</i>
<b>calamister, calamistrum,</b>	<i>curling-iron.</i>

## B. Change of declension :

1. 1st and 2d.	<b>essedā, æ,</b>	<b>essedum, i,</b>	<i>war-chariot, gig.</i>
	<b>vespera, æ,</b>	<b>vesper, i,</b>	<i>evening.</i>
2. 1st and 5th.	<b>dūritia, æ,</b>	<b>dūritiēs,</b>	<i>hardness.</i>
	<b>māteria, æ,</b>	<b>māteriēs,</b>	<i>stuff.</i>
3. 2d and 5th.	<b>diluvium, i,</b>	<b>diluviēs,</b>	<i>flood.</i>
4. 2d and 4th.	<b>eventus, i,</b>	<b>eventus, ūs,</b>	<i>issue.</i>
5. 3d and 4th.	<b>plēbs, is,</b>	<b>plēbēs, ei,</b>	<i>commons.</i>
	<b>tribūnus plēbi,</b>	<i>tribune of the people.</i>	
6. 3d and 2d.	<b>imbēcillia,</b>	<b>imbēcillus,</b>	<i>weak.</i>
	And a few others (adjectives).		

75.

## II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

## 1. NOUNS DEFECTIVE IN NUMBER.

A. Nouns used in Singular only : **Singulāria tantum.**

Most abstract nouns, and names of materials :

<b>jūstitia,</b>	<i>justice,</i>	<b>aurum,</b>	<i>gold.</i>
------------------	-----------------	---------------	--------------

B. Nouns used in Plural only : **Plūrālia tantum.**

<b>angustiae,</b>	<i>straits</i>	<b>liberi,</b>	<i>children.</i>
<b>arma, ōrum,</b>	<i>arms,</i>	<b>mānēs,</b>	<i>shades of the dead.</i>
<b>bigae, quadrigae,</b>	<i>two-horse, four-horse chariot,</i>	<b>minae,</b>	<i>threats.</i>
<b>cassēs, ium,</b>	<i>toils (snare),</i>	<b>moenia, ium, N.</b>	<i>town-wall.</i>
<b>cervicēs, um,</b>	<i>neck (preferred to cervix),</i>	<b>nuptiae,</b>	<i>wedding.</i>
<b>divitiae,</b>	<i>riches,</i>	<b>scālae,</b>	<i>stairway.</i>
<b>epulae (epulum),</b>	<i>banquet,</i>	<b>tenebrae,</b>	<i>darkness.</i>
<b>forēs, um, f.</b>	<i>door,</i>	<b>valvae,</b>	<i>folding-doors.</i>
<b>habēnae,</b>	<i>reins,</i>	<b>viscera,</b>	<i>entrails.</i>
<b>indūtiae,</b>	<i>truce.</i>		
<b>Kalendae, Nōnae, Idūs,</b>	<i>Calends, Nones, Ides.</i>		
<b>ambāgēs, -um,</b>	<i>round about,</i>	<b>fauces -ium, f.,</b>	<i>gullet.</i>
<b>compedēs, -ium,</b>	<i>fetters,</i>	<b>precēs -um, f.,</b>	<i>prayer.</i>

These four have the Ablative Singular in -e: **ambāge, compede, fauce, prece.**Akin to **Plūrālia tantum** are :C. Nouns used in Plural with a special sense : **Heterologa.**

<b>aedēs, is,</b>	<i>temple,</i>	<b>aedēs, ium,</b>	<i>house, palace.</i>
<b>auxilium,</b>	<i>help,</i>	<b>auxilia,</b>	<i>auxiliaries, reinforcements.</i>
<b>castrum,</b>	<i>fort,</i>	<b>castra,</b>	<i>camp.</i>

<b>oōpia,</b>	<i>abundance,</i>	<b>oōpiae,</b>	<i>forces, troops.</i>
<b>finis,</b>	<i>end, limit,</i>	<b>finēs,</b>	<i>territory, borders.</i>
<b>litera,</b>	<i>letter (of the alphabet).</i>	<b>literae,</b>	<i>epistle, literature.</i>
<b>opora,</b>	<i>work,</i>	<b>operae,</b>	<i>workmen.</i>

## 76. 2. NOUNS DEFECTIVE IN CASE.

A. Used only in Nominative and Accusative Singular : **fās**, *right*, **nefās**, *wrong*, and Greek Neuters in **-os**.

B. In Ablative Singular : **sponte**, *of free will*, and many verbals in **ū** : **promptū**, *in readiness* ; **jussū**, *by order* ; **monitū**, *by advice*.

C. In the oblique cases the forms from :

( <b>daps</b> ), <i>f., feast</i> , S. and Pl.	( <b>ops</b> ), <i>f., help</i> (No Dat.), S. and Pl.
( <b>dicio</b> ), <i>f., sway</i> , S.	( <b>vix</b> ), <i>f., change</i> (No Dat.), S. and Pl.
( <b>frūx</b> ), <i>f., fruit</i> , S. and Pl.	

D. The Genitive Plural of many monosyllabic words does not occur :

<b>oōs</b> , <i>whetstone</i> ,	<b>lūx</b> , <i>light</i> ,	<b>ōs</b> , <i>mouth</i> .
---------------------------------	-----------------------------	----------------------------

**vis**, *force* : G. and D. are wanting ; Ac. **vīm** ; Abl. **vi**. Pl. **vīrēs**, **vīrium**, **vīribus**.

**nēmo**, *nobody* : G. **nullius hominis** ; D. **nēmini** ; Ac. **nēminem** ; Abl. **nullō homine**.

## 77.

### III. VARIABLE NOUNS.

A. **HETEROCLITES** : Different stems with the same Nominative.

**domus** (**domu-** and **domo-**) ; Abl. **domō** ; Pl. G. **domuum**, **domōrum** ; Acc. **domūs** and **domōs**.

**pecus** (**pecud-** and **pecor-**), **pecudis**, *sheep* ; **pecoris**, *cattle*.

**ficus**, *fig-tree* ; **laurus**, *bay-tree* ; **pīnus**, *pine-tree* ; are declined regularly according to the Second Declension, but have secondary forms in use from the Fourth Declension in the Ablative Singular, and in the Nominative and Accusative Plural.

**senātus**, *senate* ; G. **senātūs** or **senātī** (rare).

**requiēs**, **-ētis**, *f.* : Ac. **requiētem** and **requiem**, *rest*.

**famēs**, **-is** ; Abl. **famē** and **famē**, *hunger*.

**satrapēs**, G. **satrapae** and **satrapis** ; D. **satrapae**, &c., *Persian governor*.

78. B. **HETEROGENEOUS NOUNS** have the same stem with different gender in Singular and Plural :

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<b>frēnum</b> , <i>bridle</i> .	<b>frēnī</b> , and <b>frēna</b> .
<b>jocus</b> , <i>jest</i> .	<b>joci</b> , and <b>joca</b> .
<b>locus</b> , <i>place</i> .	<b>loca</b> , <i>localities</i> .
	<b>loci</b> , <i>passages in books, topics</i> .
<b>rāstrum</b> , <i>mattock</i> .	<b>rāstrī</b> , and <b>rāstra</b> .

79. C. METAPLASTS are nouns which have isolated cases from another than the Nominative stem :

**vās, vāsīs, n., vessel.** Pl. **vāsa, vāsōrum, vāsīs** (as if from **vāso**).  
**poēma, poēmatis, n., poem.** Pl. **poēmata, poēmatum, ībus.**  
 G. **poēmatōrum, D. poēmatīs** (as if from **poēmato**).  
 So all Greek nouns in -a, -atis.  
**Bacchānālīa, -ium (-iōrum), -ibus, feast of Bacchus.**  
 So several other names of feasts in -ia.

## 80.

## IV. PECULIARITIES.

**Anīa, G. Anīēnis, the (river) Anio.**  
**ās, assis, m., a copper.**  
**anceps, aucupis, fowler.**  
**bōs (bovs), bovis, c., ox, cow.**  
 G. Pl. **bovm.**  
 D. Abl. **būbus, bōbus.**  
**caput, capitis, n., head.**  
 So **anceps, ancipitis, two-headed.**  
**praeceps, -cipitis, headlong.**  
**caro, carnis (for carinis), f., flesh.**  
 G. Pl. **carnium.**  
**Cerēs, Cereris, Ceres.**  
**fār, farria, n., spell.**  
**fel, fellis, n., gall.**  
**femur, femoris, n., thigh.**  
**feminis.**  
**iter, itineris, n., way, route.**  
**jecur, jecoris, n., liver.**  
**jecinoris.**  
**Jūpiter (for Jov(i)piter), Jovis.**  
**mel, mellis, n., honey.**  
**nix = (s)nig(v)s, nivis, f., snow.**  
**os, ossis, n., bone.**  
**ōs, ōris, n., mouth.**  
**pollis, pollinis, m., flour.**  
**sanguis, sanguinis, m., blood.**  
**senex, senis, old man.**  
**supellex, supellectilis, f., furniture.**  
**Venus, Veneris, Venus.**

## ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

81. The declension of the adjectives of the Third Declension follows the rules given for the substantives.

Most of the adjectives of the Third Declension are vowel stems in **i**. They form the masculine and feminine alike, with Nominative in **s**; but the neuter Nominative weakens the characteristic **i** into **e**. (Compare **mare, sea**.)

## ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS.

82. Several stems in **i**, preceded by **r** (**cr, tr, br**), form the Nominative masculine, not by affixing **s**, but by dropping the **i** and inserting **e** short before the **r**, as, stem **acri, sharp, Nom. Masc. ācer, Nom. Fem. ācris**. (Compare 60, 3 c.)

The **e** belongs to the stem only in **celer, celeris, celere, swift**,

	MASC. and FEM.	NEUTER.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
SING.—N.	<i>facili-s, easy.</i>	<i>facile,</i>	<i>acer,</i>	<i>ācri-s,</i>	<i>ācre.</i>
G.	<i>facilis,</i>		<i>ācris,</i>		
D.	<i>facili,</i>		<i>ācri,</i>		
Ac.	<i>facilem,</i>	<i>facile,</i>	<i>ācrem,</i>		<i>ācre.</i>
V.	<i>facilis,</i>	<i>facile,</i>	<i>acer,</i>	<i>ācris,</i>	<i>ācre.</i>
Abl.	<i>facili.</i>		<i>ācri.</i>		
PLUR.—N.	<i>facilēs,</i>	<i>facili-a,</i>	<i>acrēs,</i>		<i>ācri-a.</i>
G.	<i>facili-um,</i>		<i>ācri-um,</i>		
D.	<i>facili-bus,</i>		<i>ācri-bus,</i>		
Ac.	<i>facilēs,</i>	<i>facili-a,</i>	<i>acrēs,</i>		<i>ācri-a.</i>
V.	<i>facilēs,</i>	<i>facili-a,</i>	<i>acrēs,</i>		<i>ācri-a.</i>
Abl.	<i>facili-bus.</i>		<i>ācri-bus.</i>		

83. The consonant stems have the same forms in all the genders, except that in the Accusative Singular, and in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural, the neuter is distinguished from the masculine and feminine.

	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
SING.—N.	<i>fēlix, lucky,</i>	<i>fēlix,</i>	<i>prūdēns, wise,</i>	<i>prūdēns,</i>	<i>vetus, old,</i>	<i>vetus.</i>
G.	<i>fēlic-is,</i>		<i>prūdēt-is,</i>		<i>veter-is,</i>	
D.	<i>fēlic-i,</i>		<i>prūdēt-i,</i>		<i>veter-i,</i>	
Ac.	<i>fēlic-em,</i>	<i>fēlix,</i>	<i>prūdēt-em,</i>	<i>prūdēns,</i>	<i>veter-em,</i>	<i>vetus.</i>
V.	<i>fēlix,</i>		<i>prūdēns.</i>		<i>vetus.</i>	
Abl.	<i>fēlici (and -e),</i>		<i>prūdēt-i (and e),</i>		<i>veter-e (or i).</i>	
PLUR.—N.	<i>fēlic-ēs,</i>	<i>fēlicia,</i>	<i>prūdēt-ēs,</i>	<i>prūdēntia,</i>	<i>veter-ēs.</i>	<i>veter-a.</i>
G.	<i>fēlic-ium,</i>		<i>prūdēt-ium,</i>		<i>veter-um,</i>	
D.	<i>fēlic-ibus,</i>		<i>prūdēt-ibus,</i>		<i>veter-ibus,</i>	
Ac.	<i>fēlic-ēs,</i>	<i>fēlicia,</i>	<i>prūdēt-ēs,</i>	<i>prūdēntia,</i>	<i>veter-ēs,</i>	<i>veter-a.</i>
V.	<i>fēlic-ēs,</i>	<i>fēlicia,</i>	<i>prūdēt-ēs,</i>	<i>prūdēntia,</i>	<i>veter-ēs,</i>	<i>veter-a.</i>
Abl.	<i>fēlic-ibus,</i>		<i>prūdēt-ibus,</i>		<i>veter-ibus.</i>	

## ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING.

84. Adjective stems of one ending close with l, r, s, or a p, k, or t mute.

<i>vigil, alert,</i>	<i>memor, mindful,</i>	<i>pauper, poor,</i>	<i>cicur, tame,</i>	<i>pūbēs, adult,</i>	<i>vetus, old.</i>
<i>vigil-is,</i>	<i>memor-is,</i>	<i>pauper-is,</i>	<i>cicur-is,</i>	<i>pūber-is.</i>	<i>veter-is.</i>
	Abl. i (e).	Abl. e.	Abl. e.	Abl. e.	
<i>particeps, sharing,</i>		<i>caeleb-s, unmarried,</i>		<i>inop-s, poor.</i>	
<i>particip-is,</i>	Abl. e.	<i>caelib-is,</i>	Abl. e.	<i>inop-is,</i>	Abl. i (e).
<i>audāx, bold,</i>	<i>fēlix, lucky,</i>	<i>duplex, double,</i>	<i>fērōx, fierce,</i>	<i>trux, savage.</i>	
<i>audāc-is.</i>	<i>fēlic-is.</i>	<i>duplic-is.</i>	<i>fērōc-is.</i>	<i>truc-is.</i>	

<i>dives, rich,</i>	<i>dēses, slothful,</i>	<i>compos, possessed of,</i>	<i>prūdens, wise,</i>	<i>concors, harmonious.</i>
<i>divit-is.</i>	<i>dēsid-is.</i>	<i>compot-is.</i>	<i>prudent-is.</i>	<i>concord-is.</i>
Abl. e.	Abl. e.	Abl. e.		Abl. e.

85. OBSERVATIONS.—The adjectives of one ending, including the present participle, follow in part the declension of vowel stems :

1. In the neuter Plural they have *-ia*; only *vetus, old*, has *vetera*. Many have no neuter.

2. In the Ablative Singular they have *ī* and *e*—when used as adjectives commonly *ī*; when used as substantives commonly *e*.

The participles, as such, have *e*; but used as nouns or adjectives, either *e* or *ī*, with tendency to *ī*.

3. In the Genitive Plural the consonant-stems have: *-ium*, when the characteristic is preceded by a long vowel or a consonant; *-um*, when the characteristic is preceded by a short vowel, as :

<i>audāx, bold,</i>	<i>prūdens, wise.</i>	<i>Samnitēs, Samnites.</i>
<i>audācium,</i>	<i>prudentium,</i>	<i>Samnitium.</i>
<i>supplex, suppliant,</i>	<i>dives, rich.</i>	
<i>supplicum,</i>	<i>divitum or ditum.</i>	
<i>caelebs, unmarried,</i>	<i>compos, possessed of,</i>	<i>memor, mindful.</i>
<i>caelibum,</i>	<i>compotum,</i>	<i>memorum.</i>

Exceptions occur, as :

*multiplex, manifold, multiplicium. Phoenicēs, Phoenicians, Phoenicum.*

The participles have *-ium*; as, *amans, loving, amantium*.

Used as nouns, they have sometimes *-um*, as :

*sapiens, a sage, sapientum. parens, a parent, parentum.*

4. Compound adjectives follow the declension of the word from which they are formed, as :

<i>concors, harmonious,</i>	<i>anceps, double,</i>	<i>quadrupēs, four-footed,</i>
<i>concordum,</i>	<i>ancipitum,</i>	<i>quadrupedum.</i>

Even these, however, have the neuter plural commonly in *-ia*, as, *ancipitia, quadrupedia*.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

86. The Degrees of comparison are : Positive, Comparative, and Superlative.

The Comparative is formed by adding to the consonant stems the endings **-ior** for the masculine and feminine, and **-ius** for the neuter.

The Superlative is formed by adding to the consonant stems the endings **-issimus**, **-a**, **-um**.

Vowel stems, before forming the Comparative and Superlative, drop their characteristic vowel.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.		SUPERLATIVE.
	M. and F.	N.	
<b>altus</b> , -a, -um, <i>high</i> ,	<b>alt-ior</b> , <i>higher</i> ,	<b>alt-ius</b> ,	<b>alt-issimus</b> , a, um, <i>highest</i> .
<b>fortis</b> , -e, <i>brave</i> .	<b>fort-ior</b> ,	<b>fort-ius</b> ,	<b>fort-issimus</b> .
<b>ūtilis</b> , -e, <i>useful</i> .	<b>ūtil-ior</b> .	<b>ūtil-ius</b> ,	<b>ūtil-issimus</b> .
<b>audāx</b> , <i>bold</i> ,	<b>audāc-ior</b> ,	<b>audāc-ius</b> ,	<b>audāc-issimus</b> .
<b>prūdēns</b> , <i>wise</i> ,	<b>prūdēt-ior</b> ,	<b>prūdēt-ius</b> ,	<b>prūdēt-issimus</b> .

87.	M. and F.		N.
	SING.—N.	<b>altior</b> ,	<b>altius</b> .
	G.	<b>altiōris</b> ,	<b>altiōris</b> .
	D.	<b>altiōri</b> ,	<b>altiōri</b> .
	Ac.	<b>altiōrem</b> ,	<b>altius</b> .
	V.	<b>altior</b> ,	<b>altius</b> .
	Abl.	<b>altiōre</b> and <b>-l</b>	<b>altiōre</b> and <b>-l</b>
	PLUR.—N.	<b>altiōrēs</b> ,	<b>altiōra</b> .
	G.	<b>altiōrum</b> ,	<b>altiōrum</b> .
	D.	<b>altiōribus</b> ,	<b>altiōribus</b> .
	Ac.	<b>altiōrēs</b> ,	<b>altiōra</b> .
	V.	<b>altiōrēs</b> ,	<b>altiōra</b> .
	Abl.	<b>altiōribus</b> ,	<b>altiōribus</b> .

#### PECULIARITIES.

88. 1. Adjectives in **-er** add the Superlative ending **-rimus** directly to the Nominative Masculine (**-rimus** for **-simus** by assimilation).

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<b>miser</b> , -a, -um, <i>wretched</i> ,	<b>miser-ior</b> , <b>miser-ius</b> ,	<b>miser-rimus</b> .
<b>celer</b> , -is, -e, <i>swift</i> ,	<b>celer-ior</b> , <b>celer-ius</b> .	<b>celer-rimus</b> .
<b>ācer</b> , <b>ācris</b> , <b>ācre</b> , <i>sharp</i> ,	<b>ācer-ior</b> , <b>ācer-ius</b> ,	<b>ācer-rimus</b> .
<b>vetus</b> , <i>old</i> ,	<b>veterior</b> , <b>vetustior</b> ,	<b>vet̄er-rimus</b> .
	<b>mātūrus</b> , <i>ripe</i> , sometimes <b>māturrimus</b> .	

2. Six adjectives in **-ilis** add **-limus** to the stem, after dropping **-i**, to form the Superlative: perhaps by assimilation.

**facilis**, *easy*; **difficilis**, *hard*; **similis**, *like*; **dissimilis**, *unlike*; **gracilis**, *slender*; and **humilis**, *low*.

<b>facilis</b> ,	Comp. <b>facil-ior</b> ,	Sup. <b>facil-limus</b> (for <b>facil-simū</b> ),
------------------	--------------------------	---

3. The adjectives in **dicus, ficus, volus**, borrow the Comparative and Superlative from the participial forms in **-dicens, -ficens, and -volens**.

<b>benevolus, benevolent,</b>	Comp. <b>benevolentior,</b>	Sup. <b>benevolentissimus.</b>
<b>maledicus, scurrilous.</b>	<b>maledicentior,</b>	<b>maledicentissimus.</b>

In like manner:

<b>egēnus, needy,</b>	<b>egentior,</b>	<b>egentissimus.</b>
<b>prōvidus, far-sighted,</b>	<b>prōvidentior,</b>	<b>prōvidentissimus.</b>

4. Adjectives in **-us**, preceded by a vowel, form the Comparative and Superlative by means of **magis** and **maximē**, *more* and *most* :

<b>idōneus, fit,</b>	Comp. <b>magis idōneus,</b>	Sup. <b>maximē idōneus.</b>
----------------------	-----------------------------	-----------------------------

REMARK.—Adjectives in **-quus** are not included under this last rule.

<b>antiquus, old,</b>	Comp. <b>antiquior,</b>	Sup. <b>antiquissimus.</b>
-----------------------	-------------------------	----------------------------

## 89.

## IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

<b>bonus, good,</b>	<b>melior,</b>	<b>melius,</b>	<b>optimus.</b>
<b>malus, bad,</b>	<b>pējor,</b>	<b>pējus,</b>	<b>pessimus.</b>
<b>magnus, great,</b>	<b>mājor,</b>	<b>mājus,</b>	<b>maximus.</b>
<b>parvus, small,</b>	<b>minor,</b>	<b>minus,</b>	<b>minimus.</b>
<b>multus, much,</b>	S. —	<b>plūs (no Dat. nor Abl.),</b>	<b>plūrimus.</b>
	Pl. <b>plūrēs,</b>	<b>plūra, G. Pl. plūrium.</b>	
	<b>complūrēs,</b>	<b>complūra and -ia.</b>	
<b>nēquam, worthless,</b>	<b>nēquior,</b>	<b>nēquius,</b>	<b>nēquissimus.</b>
<b>frūgi (indecl.) frugal,</b>	<b>frūgālior,</b>		<b>frūgālissimus.</b>

REMARKS.—1. Some Comparatives and Superlatives are in use, whilst the corresponding Positive is either lacking or rare.

**dēterior, worse, dēterrīmus.**

**ŏcior, swifter, ŏciissimus.**

**potior, better, potiissimus.**

**exterior, outer, extrēmus, extimus,** from **exterus, on the outside,** and prep. **extrā, without.**

**superior, upper, suprēmus, or summus,** from **superus, on the top,** and prep. **suprā, above.**

**inferior, lower, infimus,** from **inferus, below,** prep. **infrā, below.**

**posterior, hinder, later, postrēmus and postumus,** from **posterus, coming after,** and prep. **post, after.**

2. The Positive stem of existing Comparatives is met with only in a preposition or an adverb : **as, ante, before ; anterior, that is before ; prope, near ; propior, proximū ; citerior, on this side ; citimus, from citrā ; ulterior, further ; ultimus, from ultrā, beyond ; interior, inner ; intimus, from intus, within ; prior, former ; primus, first, from prae, before.**

3. Many adjectives lack one or both of the degrees of comparison.

**Diversus, different, novus, new, falsus, untrue, meritus, deserved,** have no Comparative.

**Longinquus, afar, propinquus, near, salūtāris, healthful, juvenis, young** (Comparative **jūnior**), and **senex, old** (Comparative **senior**), have no superlative.

"*Youngest*" and "*oldest*" are expressed by **minimus, maximus (nātūl).**



## ADVERBS.

90. Adverbs are either oblique cases or mutilated forms of oblique cases of the adjectives.

1. Adjectives in **-us** and **-er** form the adverb in **ē** (mutilated Ablative).

**altus**, *loftly*, **altē**. **pulcher**, *beautiful*, **pulchrē**. **miser**, *wretched*, **miserē**.

2. The adjectives of the Third Declension form their adverbs by adding **-ter** to the stem; stems in **-nt** dropping the **t**, and stems in a **K**-mute inserting the connecting vowel **i** before the ending.

**fortis**, *brave*, **fortiter**. **ferōx**, *wild*, **ferōciter**. **prūdēns**, *foreseeing*, **prūdentē**.

Exceptions:

**audāx**, *bold*, **audāciter** (seldom **audāciter**). **difficilis**, *hard to do*, **difficulter** and **difficiliter**.

But instead of these, generally, **nōn facile**, **vix**, **aegrē**.

3. The Ablative of some adjectives serves as an adverb:

**tūtus**, *safe*, **tūtō**; **falsus**, *falsely*; **perpetuus**, *ceaselessly*; **continuus**, *forthwith*; **imprōvisus**, *unexpectedly*; **primus**, *at first*.

**consultus** and **consultō**, *purposely*; **certus**, *at least*, and **certō**, *certainly*.

**rārē**, *thinly*, and **rārō**, *seldom*; **vērē**, *in truth*, and **vērō**, *true but*.

**rectus**, *correctly*, and **rectā**, *straightway*; **dexterā** or **dextrā**, *to the right*, and **dexterē**, *skillfully*.

**sinistrā** and **laevā**, *to the left hand*.

4. The Accusative neuter of many adjectives is used as an adverb. *This is true of all Comparatives.*

**Multum**, *much*; **paulum**, *a little*; **nimum**, *too much*; **cōterum**, *for the rest*; **primum**, *first*; **postrēmum**, *finally*; **potissimum**, *chiefly*; **facile**, *easily*; **dulce**, *sweetly*; **triste**, *sadly*; **impūne**, *scot-free*.

## 91.

## Comparison of Adverbs.

POSITIVE.		COMPARATIVE.		SUPERLATIVE.	
<b>altus</b> ,	<i>loftly</i> ,	<b>altius</b> ,		<b>altissimē</b> .	
<b>pulcher</b> ,	<i>beautifully</i> ,	<b>pulchrius</b> ,		<b>pulcherrimē</b> .	
<b>miser</b> ,	<i>poorly</i> ,	<b>miserius</b> ,		<b>miserrimē</b> .	
<b>fortiter</b> ,	<i>bravely</i> ,	<b>fortius</b> ,		<b>fortissimē</b> .	
<b>audācter</b> ,	<i>boldly</i> ,	<b>audācius</b> ,		<b>audācissimē</b> .	
<b>tūtus</b> ,	<i>safely</i> ,	<b>tūtius</b> ,		<b>tūtissimē</b> .	
<b>facile</b> ,	<i>easily</i> ,	<b>facilius</b> ,		<b>facillimē</b> .	
<b>bene</b> ,	<i>well</i> ,	<b>melius</b> ,		<b>optimē</b> .	
<b>male</b> ,	<i>ill</i> ,	<b>pējus</b> ,		<b>pessimē</b> .	
[ <b>parvus</b> ],	<i>small</i> ,	<b>minus</b> ,	<i>less</i> ,	<b>minimē</b> ,	<i>least</i> .
[ <b>magnus</b> ],	<i>great</i> ,	<b>magis</b> ,	<i>more</i> ,	<b>maximē</b> ,	<i>most</i> .
<b>multum</b> ,	<i>much</i> ,	<b>plūs</b> ,	<i>more</i> ,	<b>plūrium</b> .	
<b>cito</b> ,	<i>quickly</i> ,	<b>citiūs</b> ,		<b>citissimē</b> .	
<b>diū</b> ,	<i>long</i> ,	<b>diūtius</b> .		<b>diūtissimē</b> .	
<b>saepe</b> ,	<i>often</i> ,	<b>saepius</b> ,		<b>saepissimē</b> .	
<b>nūper</b> ,	<i>recently</i> ,	—,		<b>nūperrimē</b> .	
<b>satis</b> ,	<i>enough</i> ,	<b>satiūs</b> ,	<i>better</i> .		

## NUMERALS.

## NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

92. The Cardinal numerals are indeclinable, except: *ūnus*, *one*, *duo*, *two*, *trēs*, *three*, the hundreds beginning with *ducenti*, *two hundred*, and the plural *mlia*, *thousands*, which forms *mlium* and *mlibus*.

N.	duo, <i>two</i> ,	duae,	duo,	trēs,	tria.
G.	duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum,	trium.	
D.	duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,	tribus.	
A.	duōs, duo,	duās,	duo,	trēs,	tria.
Ab.	duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,	tribus.	

Like *duo* is declined *ambo*, *-ae*, *-o*, *both*.

## 93.

## 1. CARDINAL NUMBERS.

1	I	ūnus, ūna, ūnum
2	II	duo, duae, duo
3	III	trēs, tria
4	IV	quattuor
5	V	quinque
6	VI	sex
7	VII	septem
8	VIII	octo
9	IX	novem
10	X	decem
11	XI	undecim
12	XII	duodecim
13	XIII	tredecim
14	XIV	quattuordecim
15	XV	quindecim
16	XVI	sēdecim
17	XVII	septendecim
18	XVIII	duodēviginti
19	XIX	undēviginti
20	XX	viginti
21	XXI	viginti ūnus
22	XXII	viginti duo
23	XXIII	viginti trēs
24	XXIV	viginti quattuor
25	XXV	viginti quinque
26	XXVI	viginti sex

## 2. ORDINAL NUMBERS.

primus, -a, -um (prior).
secundus (alter).
tertius
quartus
quintus
sextus
septimus
octāvus
nōnus
decimus
undecimus
duodecimimus
tertius decimus
quartus decimus
quintus decimus
sextus decimus
septimus decimus
duodēvicēsimus
undēvicēsimus
vicēsimus
vicēsimus primus
vicēsimus secundus
vicēsimus tertius
vicēsimus quartus
vicēsimus quintus
vicēsimus sextus

## 1. CARDINAL NUMERALS.

27	XXVII	vīginti septem
28	XXVIII	duodētrīgintā
29	XXIX	undētrīgintā
30	XXX	trīgintā
40	XL	quadrāgintā
50	L	quīnquāgintā
60	LX	sexāgintā
70	LXX	septuāgintā
80	LXXX	octōgintā
90	XC	nōnāgintā
100	C	centum
101	CI	centum et ūnus
115	CXV	centum et quindecim
120	CXX	centum et vīginti
131	CXXI	centum et vīginti ūnus
200	CC	ducenti, -ae, -a
300	CCC	trecenti
400	CCCC	quadringenti
500	D (I <sub>0</sub> )	quingenti
600	DC	sexcenti
700	DCC	septingenti
800	DCCC	octingenti
900	DCCCC	nongenti
1000	M (CI <sub>0</sub> )	mille
1001	MI	mille et ūnus
1101	MCI	mille centum ūnus
1120	MCXX	mille centum vīginti [ūnus
1121	MCXXI	mille centum vīginti [ūnus
1200	MCC	mille ducenti
2000	MM	duo mīlia (millia) bīna mīlia
2222		duo mīlia ducenti vī- ginti duo
5000	I <sub>00</sub>	quīque mīlia quīna mīlia
10,000	CCI <sub>00</sub>	decem mīlia dēna mīlia
21,000		ūnum et vīginti mīlia
100,000		centum mīlia centēna mīlia
1,000,000		decīēs centēna mīlia

## 2. ORDINAL NUMERALS.

vīcēsīmus septīmus
duodētricēsīmus
undētricēsīmus
tricēsīmus
quadrāgēsīmus
quīnquāgēsīmus
sexāgēsīmus
septuāgēsīmus
octōgēsīmus
nōnāgēsīmus
centēsīmus
centēsīmus primus [mus
centēsīmus et quintus deci-
centēsīmus vīcēsīmus [mus
centēsīmus vīcēsīmus pri-
ducentēsīmus
trecentēsīmus
quadringentēsīmus
quingentēsīmus
sexcentēsīmus
septingentēsīmus
octingentēsīmus
nongentēsīmus
millēsīmus
millēsīmus primus
millēsīmus centēsīmus pri-
mus
millēsīmus centēsīmus vī-
cēsīmus [cēsīmus primus
millēsīmus centēsīmus vī-
millēsīmus ducentēsīmus
bis millēsīmus
bis millēsīmus ducentēsi-
mus vīcēsīmus secundus
quīnquīēs millēsīmus
decīēs millēsīmus
semel et vīcīēs mīllēsīmus
centīēs millēsīmus
decīēs centīēs millēsīmus

REMARK.—D is short for I<sub>0</sub>, M for CI<sub>0</sub>. Adding 0 on the right of I multiplies by 10 : I<sub>0</sub>0 = 5000 ; I<sub>0</sub>00 = 50,000. Putting C before as often as 0 stands after multiplies by 2 : CI<sub>0</sub> = 1000 ; CCI<sub>0</sub>0 = 10,000 ; CCCI<sub>0</sub>00 = 100,000.

## 94.

## COMPOUND NUMERALS.

1. From 10 to 20, as in the tables, or separately: *decem et trēs*.
2. The numbers 18, 19, 28, 29, &c., are commonly expressed by subtraction ; occasionally, as in English.
3. From 20 to 100, the compound numerals stand in the same order as the English : *twenty-one*, *viginti ūnus* ; or *one and twenty*, *ūnus et viginti*.  
As *21 years old* : *annōs ūnum et viginti (viginti ūnum), ūnum et viginti annos nātus*.
4. From 100 on, *et* is inserted after the first numeral, or omitted altogether : *mille et centum ūnus*, or *mille centum ūnus* = 1101.

## CARDINALS.

21-27	<i>viginti ūnus</i>	or	<i>ūnus et viginti</i>
101	<i>centum et ūnus</i>		<i>centum ūnus</i>
120	<i>centum et viginti</i>		<i>centum viginti</i>
121	<i>centum et viginti ūnus</i>		<i>centum viginti ūnus</i>
1001	<i>mille et ūnus</i>		<i>mille ūnus</i>
1101	<i>mille et centum ūnus</i>		<i>mille centum ūnus</i>
1125	<i>mille et centum viginti quinque</i>		<i>mille centum viginti quinque</i>
2223	<i>duo milia et ducenti viginti duo</i>		<i>duo milia ducenti viginti duo</i>

## ORDINALS.

13-17	<i>tertius decimus</i>	or	<i>decimus et tertius</i>
18	<i>duodēvicēsimus</i>		<i>octāvus decimus</i>
19	<i>undēvicēsimus</i>		<i>nōnus decimus</i>
21	<i>vicēsimus primus</i>		<i>ūnus et vicēsimus</i>
22	<i>vicēsimus secundus</i>		<i>alter et vicēsimus</i>
23	<i>vicēsimus tertius</i>		<i>tertius et vicēsimus</i>

## 95.

## 3. DISTRIBUTIVE NUMERALS.

1	<i>singuli, -ae, -a, one each.</i>	14	<i>quaterni dēni</i>
2	<i>bini, -ae, -a, two each.</i>	15	<i>quini dēni</i>
3	<i>terni</i>	16	<i>seni dēni</i>
4	<i>quaterni</i>	17	<i>septēni dēni</i>
5	<i>quini</i>	18	<i>octōni dēni, duodēvicēni</i>
6	<i>seni</i>	19	<i>novēni dēni, undēvicēni</i>
7	<i>septēni</i>	20	<i>vicēni</i>
8	<i>octōni</i>	21	<i>vicēni singuli</i>
9	<i>novēni</i>	22	<i>vicēni bini, bini et vicēni</i>
10	<i>dēni</i>	23	<i>duodētricēni</i>
11	<i>undēni</i>	29	<i>undētricēni</i>
12	<i>duodēni</i>	30	<i>tricēni</i>
13	<i>terni dēni</i>	40	<i>quadrāgēni</i>

50	quīnquāgēni	600	sexcēni
60	sexāgēni	700	septingēni
70	septuāgēni	800	octingēni
80	octōgēni	900	nongēni
90	nōnāgēni	1000	singula milia
100	cētēni	2000	bīna milia
200	ducēni	3000	trīna milia
300	trecēni	10,000	dēna milia
400	quadrīngēni	100,000	centēna milia
500	quīngēni		

REMARKS.—1. The distributives are used with an exactness, which is foreign to our idiom, whenever repetition is involved, as in the multiplication table. But when *singuli* is expressed, the cardinal may be used.

2. The distributives are used with *Plūrālia tantum*: *bīnae literae*. *two epistles*. But with these *ūni* is used for *one*, *trīni* for *three*: *ūnae literae*, *trīnae literae*.

3. The poets occasionally use the distributives for cardinals.

#### 4. MULTIPLICATIVE NUMERALS.

1	simplex,	<i>single,</i>	5	quīncuplex.
2	duplex,	<i>double,</i>	7	septēplex.
3	triplex,	<i>triple,</i>	10	decēplex.
4	quadruplex,		100	centuplex.

These answer the question, *how many fold?*

#### 5. PROPORTIONAL NUMERALS.

1	simplus, -a, -um,	<i>single,</i>	4	quadruplus.
2	duplus,	<i>double,</i>	7	septuplus.
3	triplus,		8	octuplus.

These answer the question, *how many times as great?*

REMARK.—Only a few forms can be proved.

## 96.

## NUMERAL ADVERBS.

1	semel, <i>once,</i>	12	duodeciēs
2	bis, <i>twice,</i>	13	ter deciēs, tredecīēs
3	ter	14	quater deciēs, quattuordecīēs
4	quater	15	quīnquīēs deciēs, quīndeciēs
5	quīnquīēs, quīnquīens	16	sexīēs deciēs, sēdecīēs
6	sexīēs	17	septīēs deciēs
7	septīēs	18	duodēviciēs, octīēs deciēs
8	octīēs	19	undēviciēs, novīēs deciēs
9	novīēs	20	viciēs
10	deciēs	21	semel et viciēs, viciēs et
11	undeciēs		semel, viciēs semel,*

\* Not *semel viciēs*, *bis viciēs*, etc., because that would be, once twenty times = 20 times; twice twenty times = 40 times.

22	his et viciēs, viciēs et his, viciēs his *	400	quadringentiēs
30	triciēs	500	quingentiēs
40	quadrāgiēs	600	sexcentiēs
50	quinqūāgiēs	700	septingentiēs
60	sexāgiēs	800	octingentiēs
70	septuāgiēs	900	nongentiēs
80	octōgiēs	1,000	milliēs
90	nōnāgiēs	2,000	his milliēs
100	centiēs	100,000	centiēs milliēs
200	ducentiēs	1,000,000	milliēs milliēs, deciēs cen- tiēs milliēs.
300	trecentiēs		

## PRONOUNS.

## 97. Pronouns designate without describing.

REMARK.—The pronoun is not a word used instead of a noun. The noun says too much, for all nouns (proper as well as common) are originally descriptive; the pronoun simply points out. The noun says too little, because it cannot express person, as *ego, I, tū, thou*; it cannot express local appurtenance, as *hic, this (here), ille, that (there)*.

## 98. A. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

## I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS OF THE FIRST PERSON.

## SUBSTANTIVE.

## POSSESSIVE.

SING.—N.	ego,	I,	
G.	meī,	of me,	meus, -a, -um, mine or my.
D.	mihi,	to, for me,	Voc. (masc.), mi.
Ac.	mē,	me,	
Abl.	mē,	from, with, by me.	

PLUR.—N.	nōs,	we,	
G.	nōstri,	of us,	
	nōstrum,		nōster, nōstra, nōstrum, our or ours.
D.	nōbis,	to, for us,	
Ac.	nōs,	us,	
Abl.	nōbis,	from, with, by us.	

## 99. II. PERSONAL PRONOUNS OF THE SECOND PERSON.

## SUBSTANTIVE.

## POSSESSIVE.

SING.—N.	tū,	thou,	
G.	tui.	of thee,	
D.	tibi,	to, for thee,	tuus, a, um, thy or thine.
Ac.	tē,	thee,	
Abl.	tē,	from, with, by thee.	

\* Not *semel viciēs*, *his viciēs*, etc., because that would be, once twenty times = 20 times; twice twenty times = 40 times.

	SUBSTANTIVE.	POSSESSIVE.
PLUR.—N.	vōs, <i>ye or you,</i>	
G.	vestrī, <i>of you,</i> vestrum,	vester, vestra, vestrum, <i>your or yours.</i>
D.	vōbīs, <i>to, for you,</i>	
Ac.	vōs, <i>you,</i>	
Abl.	vōbīs, <i>from, with, by you.</i>	

REMARKS.—1. The forms of the Genitive Plural, *nōstrum* and *vestrum*, are used as partitive genitives in reference to number.

2. From *nōster* and *vester* and also from *cūjus*, *whose?* (104) are formed the Gentile adjectives of one ending: *nōstrās*, of *our country*; *vestrās*, of *your country*; *cūjās*, of *whose country?* Gen. *nōstrātis*, *vestrātis*, *cūjātis*.

### III. PERSONAL PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON.

100. The personal pronoun of the third person is represented by the determinative in the oblique cases, with special forms for the reflexive.

#### DETERMINATIVE.

	SUBSTANTIVE.	POSSESSIVE.
SING.—N.	[is, ea, id], <i>he, she, it,</i>	(supplied by the genitive.)
G.	ejus, <i>of him, etc.,</i>	ejus, <i>his, hers, its.</i>
D.	ei, <i>to, for him,</i>	
Ac.	eum, eam, id, <i>him, her, it,</i>	
Abl.	eō, eā, eō, <i>from, with, by him, etc.</i>	
PLUR.—N.	[ei, or ii, eae, ea], <i>they,</i>	
G.	eōrum, eārum, eōrum, <i>of them,</i>	eōrum, eārum, eōrum, <i>their,</i>
D.	eis, or iis, <i>to, for them,</i>	or <i>theirs.</i>
Ac.	eōs, eās, ea, <i>them,</i>	
Abl.	eis, or iis, <i>from, with, by them.</i>	

#### REFLEXIVE.

	SUBSTANTIVE.	POSSESSIVE.
SING.—N.	—	
G.	sui, <i>of him, her, it(self),</i>	suius, -a, -um, <i>his, her(s), its</i>
D.	sibi, <i>to, for, him(self), her(self),</i>	( <i>own</i> ).
Ac.	sē (sēsē), <i>him(self), her(self),</i>	
Abl.	sē (sēsē), <i>from, with, by him(self).</i>	
PLUR.—N.	—	
G.	sui, <i>of them(selves),</i>	suius, -a, -um, <i>their (own),</i>
D.	sibi, <i>to, for them(selves),</i>	<i>theirs.</i>
Ac.	sē (sēsē), <i>them(selves),</i>	
Abl.	sē (sēsē) <i>from, with, by them(selves).</i>	

REMARKS.—1. The enclitic *-met* may be added to all the forms of *ego* (except *nōstrum*), to all the forms of *tū* (except *tū* and *vestrum*), to *sibi*, *sē*, and the forms of *suius*; *egomet*, *I myself*.

2. The enclitic *-pte* is joined to the Ablative Singular of the Possessives; it is especially common with *sui*; *suipte ingoniō*, *by his own genius*.

3. From *tū* are formed *tūte* and *tūtemet*.

## 101. B. DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. *is, he, that, etc.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	<i>is,</i>	<i>ea,</i>	<i>id,</i>	<i>eī, or iī,</i>	<i>eae,</i>	<i>ea,</i>
G.	<i>ējus,</i>			<i>eōrum,</i>	<i>eārum,</i>	<i>eōrum,</i>
D.	<i>eī,</i>			<i>eīs, or iīs,</i>		
Ac.	<i>eum,</i>	<i>eam,</i>	<i>id,</i>	<i>eōs,</i>	<i>eās,</i>	<i>ea,</i>
Abl.	<i>eō,</i>	<i>eā,</i>	<i>eō.</i>	<i>eīs, or iīs.</i>		

2. *Idem, the same.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	<i>Idem,</i>	<i>eadem,</i>	<i>idem,</i>	<i>eīdem, or īdem,</i>	<i>eaedem,</i>	<i>eadem,</i>
G.	<i>ējusdem,</i>			<i>eōrundem,</i>	<i>eārundem,</i>	<i>eōrundem,</i>
D.	<i>eīdem,</i>			<i>eīsdem, or iīsdem,</i>		
Ac.	<i>eundem,</i>	<i>eandem,</i>	<i>idem,</i>	<i>eōsdem,</i>	<i>eāsdem,</i>	<i>eadem,</i>
Abl.	<i>eōdem,</i>	<i>eādem,</i>	<i>eōdem.</i>	<i>eīsdem, or iīsdem.</i>		

3. *ipse, he, self.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	<i>ipse,</i>	<i>ipsa,</i>	<i>ipsum,</i>	<i>ipsī,</i>	<i>ipsae,</i>	<i>ipsa,</i>
G.	<i>ipsius,</i>			<i>ipsōrum,</i>	<i>ipsārum,</i>	<i>ipsōrum,</i>
D.	<i>ipsī,</i>			<i>ipsīs,</i>		
Ac.	<i>ipsum,</i>	<i>ipsam,</i>	<i>ipsum,</i>	<i>ipsōs,</i>	<i>ipsās,</i>	<i>ipsa,</i>
Abl.	<i>ipsō,</i>	<i>ipsā,</i>	<i>ipsō.</i>	<i>ipsīs.</i>		

## 102. C. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

## I. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN FOR THE FIRST PERSON.

*hic, this.*

SING. N.	<i>hic,</i>	<i>haec,</i>	<i>hōc,</i>	PL. N.	<i>hī,</i>	<i>hae,</i>	<i>naec, these,</i>
G.	<i>hūjus,</i>				<i>hōrum,</i>	<i>hārum,</i>	<i>hōrum,</i>
D.	<i>huīc,</i>				<i>hīs,</i>		
Ac.	<i>hunc,</i>	<i>hanc,</i>	<i>hōc,</i>		<i>hōs,</i>	<i>hās,</i>	<i>haec,</i>
Abl.	<i>hōc,</i>	<i>hāc,</i>	<i>hōc.</i>		<i>hīs.</i>		

## II. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN FOR THE SECOND PERSON.

*iste, that.*

SING. N.	<i>iste,</i>	<i>ista,</i>	<i>istud,</i>	PL. N.	<i>istī,</i>	<i>istae,</i>	<i>ista,</i>
G.	<i>istius,</i>				<i>istōrum,</i>	<i>istārum,</i>	<i>istōrum,</i>
D.	<i>istī,</i>				<i>istīs,</i>		
Ac.	<i>istum,</i>	<i>istam,</i>	<i>istud,</i>		<i>istōs,</i>	<i>istās,</i>	<i>ista,</i>
Abl.	<i>istō,</i>	<i>istā,</i>	<i>istō.</i>		<i>istīs.</i>		



## III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN FOR THE THIRD PERSON.

SING. N.	ille,	illa,	illud,	PL. N.	illi,	illae,	illa,
G.	illius,				illorum,	illarum,	illorum,
D.	illi,				illis,		
Ac.	illum,	illam,	illud,		illos,	illas,	illa,
Abl.	illo,	illa,	illo.		illis.		

REMARKS.—1. *Hic*: the forms in *-c* arise from the enclitic *-ce*. So *hice*, *hunce*, are found in older Latin; and *-ci* in the interrogative form with *nē*, *hicine*? This *-ce* is sometimes appended to the other forms: *hūjusce*, *hōsce*.

2. *Iste* and *Ille* have, like *hic*, forms in *-o*, but only in Nom. Acc. Abl.

istic,	istaeo,	istōe	or istūc,
istunc,	istanc,	istōc	or istūc.
istōc,	istāc,	istōc,	So <i>illīc</i> , <i>illōc</i> , etc.

## 103.

## D. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

*qui*, *who*.

SING. N.	qui,	quae,	quod,	PL. N.	qui,	quae,	quae,
G.	cūjus,				quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum,
D.	cui,				quibus,		
Ac.	quem,	quam,	quod,		quōs,	quās,	quae,
Abl.	quō,	quā,	quō.		quibus.		

REMARKS.—*Quis*, *quī*, is also found as a Plural Dat. Abl. The form *qui* is used as the Abl. Sing. *quō*, *quā*, *quō*, chiefly with *-cum*; *quicum* for *quōcum*, *with whom*. *Qui*, interrogative, means *how*?

General Relatives are :

Substantive.	quisquis, <i>whoever</i> ,	quidquid, <i>whatever</i> .
Adjective.	quiqui, quaequae, quodquod, <i>whosoever</i> .	quicunque, quaecunque, quodcunque, <i>whichever</i> .

## 104.

## E. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

Substantive.	quis?	who?	quid?	what?
Adjective.	qui?	quae?	quod?	which?
Subst. and Adj.	uter?	utra?	utrum?	who, which of two?
SING. N.	quis?	quid?	who? what?	POSSESSIVE.
G.	cūjus?	—	whose?	cūjus, cūja, cūjum, <i>whose?</i>
D.	cui?	—	to, for whom?	(rare).
Ac.	quem?	—	whom? what?	
Abl.	quō?		from, with, by whom or what?	

REMARK.—The plural of the substantive interrogative pronoun and both numbers of the adjective interrogative pronoun coincide with the forms of the relative *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, *who*, *which*.

## STRENGTHENED INTERROGATIVES.

<i>Substantive.</i>	<b>quisnam?</b>	<i>who pray?</i>	<b>quidnam?</b>	<i>what pray?</i>	
<i>Adjective.</i>	<b>quīnam?</b>		<b>quaenam?</b>	<b>quodnam?</b>	<i>which pray?</i>

## 105.

## F. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

1. *Substantive.* aliquis, aliqua, aliquid, } somebody, some one or  
quis, qua, quid, } other.  
*Adjective.* aliqui, aliquae (or aliqua\*), aliquod, } some, any.  
qui, quae (or qua\*), quod, }
2. quidam, quaedam, quiddam (and quoddam), a certain, certain one.
3. quispiam, quaequam, quidpiam (and quodpiam), some one, some.
4. quisquam, ———, quidquam, any one (at all). No plural.
5. quivis, quaevis, quidvis (and quodvis), } any one you please,  
quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet (and quodlibet), } you like.
6. quisque, quaeque, quidque and quodque, each one.  
ünusquisque, ünauaqueque, ünusquidque and ünusquodque, each one severally.

The distinction between the substantive and adjective form is observed rigorously only in the neuter.

REMARK.—*Quisquam* is used only as a substantive, except with designations of persons; *scriptor quisquam*, any writer (at all), *Gallus quisquam*, any Gaul (at all). The corresponding adjective is *ullus*.

*ullus*, -a, -um, any; *nullus*, -a, -um, no one, not one. The corresponding substantives are *nemo* (76), and *nihil*, which forms *nihili* and *nihilis* (Abl.) only in certain combinations.

*nonnullus*, -a, -um, some, many a.

*alius*, -a, -ud, another; *alter*, -era, -erum, the other, one (of two); *neuter*, *neutra*, *neutrum*, neither of two.

*alteruter*, *alterutra*, *alterutrum*, the one or the other of the two. Gen. *alterutrius*.

(or *alter uter*, *altera utra*, *alterum utrum*. Gen. *alterius utrius*.)

*uterque*, *utraqe*, *utrumque*, each of two, either. *ambo*, -ae, -o, both.

*utervis*, *utravis*, *utrumvis*, }  
*uterlibet*, *utralibet*, *utrumlibet*, } whichever you please of the two.

## CORRELATIVES.

## 106. I. CORRELATIVE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

INTERROGATIVES.	DEMONSTRATIVES.		RELATIVES.
<i>quis?</i> who?	<i>is</i> ,	<i>that</i> ,	<i>qui</i> , who.
<i>quālis?</i> of what kind?	<i>tālis</i> ,	<i>such</i> (of that kind),	<i>quālis</i> , as (of which kind).
<i>quantus?</i> how much?	<i>tantus</i> ,	<i>so much</i> ,	<i>quantus</i> , as much,
<i>quot?</i> how many?	<i>tot</i> ,	<i>so many</i> .	<i>quot</i> , as many.

\* In neuter plural, *aliquae* or *aliqua*, *quae* or *qua*.

## 107. II. CORRELATIVE PRONOMINAL ADVERBS.

1. Pronominal adverbs of *place*.

<b>ubī?</b> <i>where?</i>	<b>ibī,</b> <i>there,</i>	<b>ubī,</b> <i>where.</i>
<b>quā?</b> <i>where? which way?</i>	<b>hīc, hāc,</b> <i>here, this way,</i>	<b>quā,</b> <i>where, which way.</i>
	<b>istīc, istāc,</b> <i>there, that way,</i>	
	<b>illīc, illāc,</b> <i>there, yonder way.</i>	
<b>unde?</b> <i>whence?</i>	<b>inde,</b> <i>thence,</i>	<b>unde,</b> <i>whence.</i>
	<b>hinc,</b> <i>hence.</i>	
	<b>istinc,</b> <i>thence.</i>	
	<b>illinc,</b> <i>thence, from yonder.</i>	
<b>quō?</b> <i>whither?</i>	<b>eō,</b> <i>thither.</i>	<b>quō,</b> <i>whither.</i>
	<b>hūc,</b> <i>hither.</i>	
	<b>istūc,</b> <i>thither.</i>	
	<b>illūc,</b> <i>thither, yonder.</i>	

2. Pronominal adverbs of *time*.

<b>quandō?</b> <i>when?</i>	<b>tum,</b> <i>then,</i>	<b>quandō,</b>
	<b>tunc,</b> <i>at that time,</i>	<b>quum.</b>
	<b>nunc,</b> <i>now.</i>	
<b>quotiēs?</b> <i>how often?</i>	<b>totiēs,</b> <i>so often.</i>	<b>quotiēs,</b> <i>as often as.</i>

3. Pronominal adverbs of *manner*.

<b>quōmodo?</b> <i>quī?</i> <i>how?</i> <b>ita, sic,</b> <i>so, thus,</i>	<b>ut, utī,</b> <i>as.</i>
<b>quam?</b> <i>how much?</i> <b>tam,</b> <i>so much,</i>	<b>quam,</b> <i>as.</i>

## 108. III. COMPOUNDS OF THE RELATIVE FORMS.

1. The relative pronouns become *indefinite* by prefixing **ali-**:

**aliquantus,** *somewhat great*; **aliquot,** *several, some*; **alicubi,** *somewhere*;  
**alicunde,** *from somewhere*; **aliquandō,** *at some time.*

2. The simple relatives become *universal* by doubling themselves, or by suffixing **-cunque** (*cumque*):

**quantuscunque,** *however great*; **quālicunque,** *of whatever kind*; **quot-**  
**quot,** *however many*; **ubicunque,** *wheresoever*; **quandōcunque,** *whenever*;  
**quotiēscunque,** *however often*; **utut,** *in whatever way*; **utcunque,** *howso-*  
*ever*; **quamquam,** *however, although.*

3. Many of the relatives are further compounded with **-vis** or **-libet**:

**quantuslibet,** *quantusvis,* *as great as you please*; **ubivis,** *where you will*;  
**quamvis,** *as you please, though.*

## THE VERB.

109. The Inflection given to the verbal stem is called Conjugation, and expresses:

1. Person and Number;
2. Voice—Active or Passive;
3. Tense—Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect;
4. Mood—Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative.

110. These forms belong to the Finite Verb. Outside of the Finite Verb, and akin to the noun, are the verbal forms called

Infinitive, Supine, Participle, Gerund.

111. The Inflection of the Verb is effected by means of—

1. Personal endings,
2. Connecting vowels,
3. Tense-signs.

1. The personal endings are pronominal forms, which serve to indicate not only person, but also number and voice.

2. The connecting vowels are either euphonic or symbolic.

3. The tense-signs occur only in the compound tenses (weak tenses).

The compound or weak tenses are:

The Imperfect, Active and Passive. The Perfect in **vi** (**ui**) and **si**.

The Pluperfect Active.

The Futures in **-bo**, **-bor**.

The Future Perfect.

The Perf. and Pluperf. Subj.

So in **amā-ba-m**, *I loved*, **b** is the tense-sign, **a** the connecting vowel, **m** the personal ending (comp. **mē**), 1st P. Singular Active.

REMARKS.—1. The tense-signs are themselves auxiliary verbs, as: **-r(am)** for **-s(am)**, from **(e)s-(se)**; **v(i)**, **u(i)** from **fu(i)**; **si** from **(e)s (se)**; **-b(am)** **-b(o)** from **fu-(am)**, **fu(o)**.

2. No adequate uniform translation can be given to all the moods and tenses. Especially is this true of the subjunctive. See Syntax.

Several parts of the verb are formed with the verb **sum**, *I am*.

112. THE VERB sum, *I am* (stem es-).

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

SING.—1. <i>sum,</i>	<i>I am,</i>	<i>sim,</i>	<i>I be,</i>
2. <i>es,</i>	<i>thou art,</i>	<i>sis,</i>	<i>thou be,</i>
3. <i>est,</i>	<i>he, she, it is,</i>	<i>sit,</i>	<i>he, she, it be.</i>
PLUR.—1. <i>sumus,</i>	<i>we are,</i>	<i>simus,</i>	<i>we be,</i>
2. <i>estis,</i>	<i>you are,</i>	<i>sitis,</i>	<i>you be,</i>
3. <i>sunt,</i>	<i>they are,</i>	<i>sint,</i>	<i>they be.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

SING.—1. <i>eram,</i>	<i>I was,</i>	<i>essem,</i>	<i>I were (forem),</i>
2. <i>erās,</i>	<i>thou wast,</i>	<i>essēs,</i>	<i>thou wert (forēs),</i>
3. <i>erat,</i>	<i>he was,</i>	<i>esset,</i>	<i>he were (foret).</i>
PLUR.—1. <i>erāmus,</i>	<i>we were,</i>	<i>essēmus,</i>	<i>we were,</i>
2. <i>erātis,</i>	<i>you were,</i>	<i>essētis,</i>	<i>you were,</i>
3. <i>erant,</i>	<i>they were,</i>	<i>essent,</i>	<i>they were (forent).</i>

## FUTURE.

SING.—1. <i>erō,</i>	<i>I shall be,</i>
2. <i>eris,</i>	<i>thou wilt be,</i>
3. <i>erit,</i>	<i>he will be.</i>
PLUR.—1. <i>erimus,</i>	<i>we shall be,</i>
2. <i>eritis,</i>	<i>you will be,</i>
3. <i>erunt,</i>	<i>they will be.</i>

## PERFECT.

SING.—1. <i>ful,</i>	<i>I have been, I was; fuerim,</i>	<i>I have, may have, been,</i>
2. <i>fuisti,</i>	<i>thou hast been, thou fueris,</i>	<i>thou have, mayest have,</i>
	<i>wast,</i>	<i>been,</i>
3. <i>uit,</i>	<i>he has been, he was, fuerit,</i>	<i>he have, may have, been.</i>
PLUR.—1. <i>fuimus,</i>	<i>we have been, we fuerimus,</i>	<i>we have, may have, been,</i>
	<i>were,</i>	
2. <i>fuistis,</i>	<i>you have been, you fueritis,</i>	<i>you have, may have, been,</i>
	<i>were,</i>	
3. <i>fuērunt,</i>	<i>they have been, they fuerint,</i>	<i>they have, may have, been.</i>
	<i>were,</i>	

## PLUPERFECT.

SING.—1. <i>fueram,</i>	<i>I had been,</i>	<i>fuissē,</i>	<i>I had, might have, been,</i>
2. <i>fuerās,</i>	<i>thou hadst been,</i>	<i>fuissēs,</i>	<i>thou hadst, mightst have,</i>
			<i>been,</i>
3. <i>fuerat,</i>	<i>he had been,</i>	<i>fuisset,</i>	<i>he had, might have, been.</i>
PLUR.—1. <i>fuerāmus,</i>	<i>we had been,</i>	<i>fuissēmus,</i>	<i>we had, might have, been,</i>
2. <i>fuerātis,</i>	<i>you had been,</i>	<i>fuissētis,</i>	<i>you had, might have, been,</i>
3. <i>fuerant,</i>	<i>they had been,</i>	<i>fuissent,</i>	<i>they had, might have, been.</i>

## INDICATIVE.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

SING.—1.	fuerō,	<i>I shall have been,</i>
2.	fueris,	<i>thou wilt have been,</i>
3.	fuerit,	<i>he shall have been,</i>

PLUR.—1.	fuerimus,	<i>we shall have been,</i>
2.	fueritis,	<i>you will have been,</i>
3.	fuerint,	<i>they will have been.</i>

## IMPERATIVE.

## INFINITIVE.

## SING.

1.	—,	
2.	es, be thou,	estō, thou shalt be,
3.		estō, he shall be.

PRES. esse, to be,

PERF. fuisse, to have been,

FUT. futurum (-am, -um), esse  
(fore), to be about to be.

## PLUR.

1.	—,	
2.	este, be ye,	estōte, you shall be,
3.		suntō, they shall be.

## PARTICIPLE.

FUT. futurus, -a, -um, about to be.

## 113.

COMPOUNDS OF sum, *I am.*

ab-sum,	<i>I am away, absent.</i>	Perf.
abfui, āfui.		
ad-sum,	<i>I am present.</i>	Perf. affui.
dē-sum,	<i>I am wanting.</i>	
in-sum,	<i>I am in.</i>	
inter-sum,	<i>I am between.</i>	

ob-sum,	<i>I am against, I hurt.</i>
	Perf. obfui or offui.
prae-sum,	<i>I am over, I superintend.</i>
prō-sum,	<i>I am for, I profit.</i>
sub-sum,	<i>I am under.</i>
super-sum,	<i>I am, or remain, over.</i>

REMARK.—Only absum and praesum form present participles: absens, absent, and praesens, present.

Prōsum, *I profit.*

## 114. In the forms of prōsum, prōd- is used before vowels.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT,	prō-sum, prōd-es, prōd-est,	prō-sim,
	prō-sumus, prōd-estis, prō-sunt,	
IMPERFECT,	prōd-eram,	prōd-essem,
FUTURE,	prōd-erō,	
PERFECT,	prō-fui,	prō-fuerim,
PLUPERFECT,	prō-fueram,	prō-fuissem.
FUT. PERF.,	prō-fuerō,	

INFINITIVE. PRES. prōd-esse; PERF. prō-fuisse.

**Possum, I am able, I can.**

115. Possum is compounded of pot (potis, pote) and sum; t becomes s before s.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

SING.—1. pos-sum, <i>I am able, can,</i>	pos-sim, <i>I be able.</i>
2. pot-es,	pos-sis,
3. pot-est,	pos-sit.
PLUR.—1. pos-sumus,	pos-simus,
2. pot-estis,	pos-sitis,
3. pos-sunt,	pos-sint.

## IMPERFECT.

SING.—1. pot-eram, <i>I was able,</i> <i>could,</i>	pos-sem, <i>I were, might be, able.</i>
2. pot-erās,	pos-sēs,
3. pot-erat,	pos-set.
PLUR.—1. pot-erāmus,	pos-sēmus,
2. pot-erātis,	pos-sētis,
3. pot-erant,	pos-sent.

## FUTURE.

SING.—1. pot-erō, <i>I shall be able.</i>
2. pot-eris,
3. pot-erit.
PLUR.—1. pot-erimus,
2. pot-eritis,
3. pot-erunt.

## PERFECT.

SING.—1. pot-ui, <i>I have been able,</i>	pot-uerim, <i>I have, may have, been able.</i>
2. pot-uisti,	pot-ueris,
3. pot-uit,	pot-uerit.
PLUR.—1. pot-uimus,	pot-uerimus,
2. pot-uistis,	pot-ueritis,
3. pot-uērunt,	pot-uerint.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PLUPERFECT.

SING.—1. pot-neram, <i>I had been able,</i>	pot-uissem, <i>I had, might have, been able,</i>
2. pot-nerās,	pot-uissēs,
3. pot-nerat,	pot-uisset.
PLUR.—1. pot-nerāmus,	pot-uissēmus,
2. pot-nerātis,	pot-uissētis,
3. pot-nerant,	pot-uissent.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

SING.—1. pot-uerō, <i>I shall have been able.</i>
2. pot-uerīs,
3. pot-uerit.
PLUR.—1. pot-uerimus,
2. pot-ueritis,
3. pot-uerint.

INFINITIVE. *Pres. Posse, to be able. Perf. Potuisse, to have been able.*

## SYSTEMS OF CONJUGATION.

116. There are two Systems of Conjugation, distinguished by the stem-characteristic, viz., the Vowel Conjugation and the Consonant Conjugation.

117. Vowel verbal stems end in *a, ē, i* (First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations).

Consonant verbal stems end in one of the consonants (Third Conjugation).

Stems in *u* follow the Consonant Conjugation.

118.

## THE STEM-FORMS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.	
I. am-ō,	amā-re,	amā-vī,	amā-tum,	<i>to love.</i>
II. dēle-ō,	dēlē-re,	dēlē-vī,	dēlē-tum,	<i>to blot out.</i>
mone-ō,	monē-re,	mon-uī,	mon-i-tum,	<i>to remind.</i>
III. em-ō,	em-e-re,	ēm-I,	em-tum,	<i>to buy.</i>
statu-ō,	statu-e-re,	statu-I,	statū-tum,	<i>to settle.</i>
scrib-ō,	scrib-e-re,	scrip-sī,	scrip-tum,	<i>to write.</i>
IV. audi-ō,	audi-re,	audi-vī,	audi-tum,	<i>to hear.</i>



119.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE.

## INDICATIVE:

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*Am loving, do love, love.**Be loving, may love.*

SING.—1. am-ŏ,

ame-m,

2. amā-s,

amē-s,

3. ama-t,

ame-t.

PLUR.—1. amā-mus,

amē-mus,

2. amā-tis,

amē-tis,

3. ama-nt,

ame-nt.

## IMPERFECT.

*Was loving, loved.**Were loving, might love.*

SING.—1. amā-ba-m,

amā-re-m,

2. amā-bā-s,

amā-rē-s,

3. amā-ba-t,

amā-re-t.

PLUR.—1. amā-bā-mus,

amā-rē-mus,

2. amā-bā-tis,

amā-rē-tis,

3. amā-ba-nt,

amā-re-nt.

## FUTURE.

*Shall be loving, shall love.*

SING.—1. amā-b-ŏ,

2. amā-bi-s,

3. amā-bi-t.

PLUR.—1. amā-bi-mus,

2. amā-bi-tis,

3. amā-bu-nt.

## IMPERATIVE.

SING.—1. —,

2. amā, love thou, amā-tŏ, thou shalt love.

3. amā-tŏ, he shall love.

PLUR.—1. —,

2. amā-te, love ye, amā-tŏte, ye shall love.

3. ama-ntŏ, they shall love.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT. N. ama-n-s, G. ama-nt-is, loving.

FUTURE. amā-tūr-us, -a, -um, being about to love.

120.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PERFECT.

*Have loved, did love.**Have, may have, loved.*

- SING.—1. amā-vī,  
 2. amā-vī-stī,  
 3. amā-vī-t,

- amā-ve-ri-m,  
 amā-ve-ri-s,  
 amā-ve-ri-t.

- PLUR.—1. amā-vi-mus,  
 2. amā-vi-stis,  
 3. amā-vē-runt,

- amā-ve-ri-mus,  
 amā-ve-ri-tis,  
 amā-ve-ri-nt.

## PLUPERFECT.

*Had loved.**Had, might have, loved.*

- SING.—1. amā-ve-ra-m,  
 2. amā-ve-rā-s,  
 3. amā-ve-ra-t,

- amā-vi-sse-m,  
 amā-vi-ssē-s,  
 amā-vi-sse-t.

- PLUR.—1. amā-ve-rā-mus,  
 2. amā-ve-rā-tis,  
 3. amā-ve-ra-nt,

- amā-vi-ssē-mus,  
 amā-vi-ssē-tis,  
 amā-vi-sse-nt.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*Shall have loved.*

- SING.—1. amā-ve-r-ō,  
 2. amā-ve-rī-s,  
 3. amā-ve-ri-t.

- PLUR.—1. amā-ve-rī-mus,  
 2. amā-ve-rī-tis,  
 3. amā-ve-ri-nt.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. amā-re, *to love.*PERF. amā-vi-sse, *to have loved.*FUT. amā-tūr-um, -am, -um, esse, *to be about to love.*

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

N. [amā-re], *loving.*G. ama-nd-i, *of loving.*D. ama-nd-ō, *to loving.*Ac. [amā-re], (ad) ama-nd-um, *loving, to love.* 1. amā-tum, *to love.*Abl. ama-nd-ō, *by loving.*2. amā-tū, *to love, in the loving.*

## 121.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.	PASSIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	PRESENT.	
<i>Am loved.</i>		<i>Be, may be, loved.</i>
SING.—1. amō-r,		amē-r,
2. amā-ris,		amē-ris,
3. amā-tur,		amē-tur.
PLUR.—1. amā-mur,		amē-mur,
2. amā-mini,		amē-mini,
3. amā-ntur,		amē-ntur.
	IMPERFECT.	
<i>Was loved.</i>		<i>Were, might be, loved.</i>
SING.—1. amā-ba-r,		amā-re-r,
2. amā-bā-ris,		amā-rē-ris,
3. amā-bā-tur,		amā-rē-tur.
PLUR.—1. amā-bā-mur,		amā-rē-mur,
2. amā-bā-mini,		amā-rē-mini,
3. amā-ba-ntur.		amā-re-ntur.
	FUTURE.	
<i>Shall be loved.</i>		
SING.—1. amā-bo-r,		
2. amā-be-ris,		
3. amā-bi-tur.		
PLUR.—1. amā-bi-mur,		
2. amā-bi-mini,		
3. amā-bu-ntur.		
	IMPERATIVE.	
SING.—1. —,		
2. amā-re, <i>be thou loved,</i>	amā-tor, <i>thou shalt be loved,</i>	
3.	amā-tor, <i>he shall be loved.</i>	
PLUR.—1. —,		
2. amā-mini, <i>be ye loved.</i>		
3.	ama-ntor, <i>they shall be loved.</i>	
	INFINITIVE.	
PRES. amā-rī,	<i>to be loved.</i>	
PERF. amā-t-um, -am, -um, esse, <i>to have been loved.</i>		
FUT. amā-tum irī,	<i>to be about to be loved.</i>	
F. P. amā-t-um, -am, -um, fore.		

122.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PERFECT.

*Have been loved.**Have, may have, been loved.*

SING.—1.	amā-t-us, -a, -um,	s-u-m,
2.	es,	
3.	es-t,	

amā-t-us, -a, -um,	s-i-m,
	s-i-s,
	s-i-t.

PLUR.—1.	amā-t-I, -ae, -a,	s-u-mus,	amā-t-I, -ae, -a,	s-i-mus,
2.		es-tis,		s-i-tis,
3.		s-u-nt,		s-i-nt.

## PLUPERFECT.

*Had been loved.**Had, might have, been loved.*

SING.—1.	amā-t-us, -a, -um,	er-a-m,
2.		er-ā-s,
3.		er-a-t,

amā-t-us, -a, -um,	es-se-m,
	es-sē-s,
	es-se-t.

PLUR.—1.	amā-t-I, -ae, -a,	er-ā-mus,	amā-t-I, -ae, -a,	es-sē-mus,
2.		er-ā-tis,		es-sē-tis,
3.		er-a-nt,		es-se-nt.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*Shall have been loved.*

SING.—1.	amā-t-us, -a, -um,	er-ō,
2.		er-i-s,
3.		er-i-t.

PLUR.—1.	amā-t-I, -ae, -a,	er-i-mus,
2.		er-i-tis,
3.		er-u-nt.

## PARTICIPLE.

PERFECT. amā-t-us, -a, -um, *loved.*GERUNDIVE. ama-nd-us, -a, -um, *(one) to be loved.*

## 123.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## INDICATIVE.

## ACTIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*Destroy (blot out).*

- SING.—1. dšle-š,  
 2. dšlē-s,  
 3. dšle-t,  
 PLUR.—1. dšlē-mus,  
 2. dšlē-tis,  
 3. dšle-nt,

*Be destroying, may destroy.*

- dšle-a-m,  
 dšle-ā-s,  
 dšle-a-t.  
 dšle-ā-mus,  
 dšle-ā-tis,  
 dšle-a-nt.

## IMPERFECT.

*Was destroying.*

- SING.—1. dšlē-ba-m,  
 2. dšlē-bā-s,  
 3. dšlē-ba-t,  
 PLUR.—1. dšlē-bā-mus,  
 2. dšlē-bā-tis,  
 3. dšlē-ba-nt,

*Were destroying, might destroy.*

- dšlē-re-m,  
 dšlē-rē-s,  
 dšlē-re-t.  
 dšlē-rē-mus,  
 dšlē-rē-tis,  
 dšlē-re-nt.

## FUTURE.

*Shall destroy.*

- SING.—1. dšlē-b-š,  
 2. dšlē-bi-s,  
 3. dšlē-bi-t.  
 PLUR.—1. dšlē-bi-mus,  
 2. dšlē-bi-tis,  
 3. dšlē-bu-nt.

## IMPERATIVE.

- SING.—1. —,  
 2. dšlē, *destroy thou,* dšlē-tš, *thou shalt destroy.*  
 dšlē-tš, *he shall destroy.*  
 PLUR.—1. —,  
 2. dšlē-te, *destroy ye,* dšlē-tšte, *ye shall destroy.*  
 dšle-ntš, *they shall destroy.*

## PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT. N. dšle-n-s; G. dele-nt-is, *destroying.*FUTURE. dšlē-tūr-us, -a, -um, *about to destroy.*

124

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PERFECT.

*Have destroyed, destroyed.**Have, may have, destroyed.*

- SING.—1. dēlē-vī,  
 2. dēlē-vi-stī,  
 3. dēlē-vi-t,

- dēlē-ve-ri-m,  
 dēlē-ve-ri-s,  
 dēlē-ve-ri-t.

- PLUR.—1. dēlē-vi-mus,  
 2. dēlē-vi-stis,  
 3. dēlē-vē-runt,

- dēlē-ve-rī-mus,  
 dēlē-ve-rī-tis  
 dēlē-ve-ri-nt.

## PLUPERFECT.

*Had destroyed.**Had, might have, destroyed.*

- SING.—1. dēlē-ve-ra-m,  
 2. dēlē-ve-rā-s,  
 3. dēlē-ve-ra-t,

- dēlē-vi-sse-m,  
 dēlē-vi-ssē-s,  
 dēlē-vi-sse-t.

- PLUR.—1. dēlē-ve-rā-mus,  
 2. dēlē-ve-rā-tis,  
 3. dēlē-ve-ra-nt,

- dēlē-vi-ssē-mus,  
 dēlē-vi-ssē-tis,  
 dēlē-vi-sse-nt.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*Shall have destroyed.*

- SING.—1. dēlē-ve-r-ō,  
 2. dēlē-ve-rī-s,  
 3. dēlē-ve-ri-t.

- PLUR.—1. dēlē-ve-rī-mus,  
 2. dēlē-ve-rī-tis,  
 3. dēlē-ve-ri-nt.

## INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. dēlē-re, *to destroy.*PERFECT. dēlē-vi-sse, *to have destroyed.*FUTURE. dēlē-tūr-um, -am, -um, esse, *to be about to destroy.*

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

N. [dēlē-re], *destroying, to destroy.*G. dēle-nd-i, *of destroying.*D. dēle-nd-ō, *to, for destroying.*Ac. [dēlē-re] (ad) dēle-nd-um, *destroying, to destroy,*Abl. dēle-nd-ō, *by destroying,*2. dēlē-tū, *to destroy, in the destroying.*

## 125.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## INDICATIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*Am destroyed.**Be, may be, destroyed.*

SING.—1. dēle-o-r,

dēle-a-r,

2. dēlē-ris,

dēle-ā-ris,

3. dēlē-tur,

dēle-ā-tur.

PLUR.—1. dēlē-mur,

dēle-ā-mur,

2. dēlē-mini,

dēle-ā-mini,

3. dēle-ntur,

dēle-a-ntur.

## IMPERFECT.

*Was destroyed.**Were destroyed.*

SING.—1. dēlē-ba-r,

dēlē-re-r,

2. dēlē-bā-ris,

dēlē-rē-ris,

3. dēlē-bā-tur,

dēlē-rē-tur.

PLUR.—1. dēlē-bā-mur,

dēlē-rē-mur,

2. dēlē-bā-mini,

dēlē-rē-mini,

3. dēlē-ba-ntur,

dēlē-re-ntur.

## FUTURE.

*Shall be destroyed.*

SING.—1. dēlē-bo-r,

2. dēlē-be-ris,

3. dēlē-bi-tur.

PLUR.—1. dēlē-bi-mur,

2. dēlē-bi-mini,

3. dēlē-bu-ntur.

## IMPERATIVE.

SING.—1. —,

2. dēlē-re, *be thou destroyed.*dēlē-tor, *thou shalt be destroyed.*

3.

dēlē-tor, *he shall be destroyed.*

PLUR.—1. —,

2. dēlē-mini, *be ye destroyed,*

3.

dēle-ntor, *they shall be destroyed.*

126.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PERFECT.

*Have been destroyed, was destroyed.**Have, may have, been destroyed.*SING.—1. *dēlē-t-us, -a, -um, s-u-m,**dēlē-t-us, -a, -um, s-i-m,*2. *es,**s-i-s,*3. *es-t,**s-i-t.*PLUR.—1. *dēlē-t-i, -ae, -a, s-u-mus,**dēlē-t-i, -ae, -a, s-i-mus,*2. *es-tis,**s-i-tis,*3. *s-un-t,**s-i-n-t.*

## PLUPERFECT.

*Had been destroyed.**Had, might have, been destroyed.*SING.—1. *dēlē-t-us, -a, -um, er-a-m,**dēlē-t-us, -a, -um, es-se-m,*2. *er-ā-s,**es-sē-s,*3. *er-a-t,**es-se-t.*PLUR.—1. *dēlē-t-i, -ae, -a, er-ā-mus,**dēlē-t-i, -ae, -a, es-sē-mus,*2. *er-ā-tis,**es-sē-tis,*3. *er-a-nt,**es-se-nt.*

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*Shall have been destroyed.*SING.—1. *dēlē-t-us, -a, -um, er-ō,*2. *er-i-s,*3. *er-i-t.*PLUR.—1. *dēlē-t-i, -ae, -a, er-i-mus,*2. *er-i-tis,*3. *er-u-nt.*

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. *dēlē-r-i, to be destroyed.*PERF. *dēlē-t-um, -am, -um, esse, to have been destroyed.*FUT. *dēlē-tum ir-i, to be about to be destroyed.*F. P. *dēlē-t-um, -am, -um, fore.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. *dēlē-t-us, -a, -um, destroyed.*GERUNDIVE. *dēle-nd-us, -a, -um, [one] to be destroyed.*



## 127.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

Like *delēre*, *to destroy*, are conjugated only, *nēre*, *to spin*, *flēre*, *to weep*, and the compounds of *-plēre*, *fill*, and *-olēre* (*-olēscere*), *grow*; but *aboleo*, *I abolish*, forms *abolitum*.

All other verbs of the Second Conjugation retain the characteristic *e* in the forms of the Present Stem, and drop it in the rest of the verbal forms. In the Perfect, the ending *vi* becomes *ui*. In the Supine, the connecting vowel *i* is used.

128. Five verbs of the Second Conjugation form their Supine without a connecting vowel, viz.:

cēnsēŏ,	cēnsēre,	cēnsui,	cēnsuŋ,	<i>to think.</i>
docēŏ,	docēre,	docui,	doctum,	<i>to teach.</i>
miscēŏ,	miscēre,	miscui,	mixtum (mistum),	<i>to mix.</i>
teneŏ,	tenēre,	tenui,	(tentum),	<i>to hold.</i>
torreŏ,	torrēre,	torruī.	testum,	<i>to parch.</i>

SYNOPSIS OF *mone-o*, *I remind*.

## 129.

## ACTIVE

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	mone-ŏ,	mone-a-m.
IMPF.	monē-ba-m,	monē-re-m.
FUT.	monē-b-ŏ,	
PERF.	mon-ui,	mon-ue-ri-m.
PLPF.	mon-ue-ra-m,	mon-u-is-se-m.
F. P.	mon-ue-r-ŏ.	

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE.

## IMPERATIVE.

monē,  
monē-to,

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. monē-re.  
PERF. mon-ūi-sse.  
FUT. mon-itūr-um, -am, um, esse.

PARTICIPLE. PRES. mone-n-s.

FUT. mon-itūr-us, -a, -um.

GERUND. mone-nd-i.

SUPINE. 1. mon-itum.

2. mon-itū.

130.

## PASSIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

PRES. mone-o-r,  
IMPF. monē-ba-r,  
FUT. monē-bo-r,  
PERF. mon-it-us, -a, -um, s-u-m,  
PLPF. er-a-m,  
F. PF. er-ō.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

mone-a-r.  
monē-re-r.  
mon-it-us, -a, -um, s-i-m.  
es-se-m.

## IMPERATIVE.

monē-re,  
monē-tor.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. monē-rī.  
PERF. mon-it-um, -am, -um, es-se.  
FUT. mon-it-um irī.  
F. PF. mon-it-um, -am, -um, fore.

PARTICIPLE. PERFECT. mon-it-us, -a, -um.

GERUNDIVE. mone-nd-us, -a, -um.

## 131.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.		ACTIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
		PRESENT.	
		<i>Be buying, may buy.</i>	
SING.—1.	<i>Buy.</i> em-ō,	em-a-m,	
	2. em-i-s,	em-ā-s,	
	3. em-i-t,	em-a-t.	
PLUR.—1.	em-i-mus,	em-ā-mus,	
	2. em-i-tis,	em-ā-tis,	
	3. em-u-nt,	em-a-nt.	
		IMPERFECT.	
		<i>Were buying, might buy.</i>	
SING.—1.	em-ō-ba-m,	em-e-re-m,	
	2. em-ō-bā-s,	em-e-rō-s,	
	3. em-ō-ba-t,	em-e-re-t.	
PLUR.—1.	em-ō-bā-mus,	em-e-rō-mus,	
	2. em-ō-bā-tis,	em-e-rō-tis,	
	3. em-ō-ba-nt,	em-e-re-nt.	
		FUTURE.	
		<i>Shall be buying, shall buy.</i>	
SING.—1.	em-a-m,		
	2. em-ō-s,		
	3. em-e-t.		
PLUR.—1.	em-ō-mus,		
	2. em-ō-tis,		
	3. em-e-nt.		
		IMPERATIVE.	
SING.—1.	—,		
	2. em-e, buy thou,	em-i-tō, thou shalt buy.	
	3.	em-i-tō, he shall buy.	
PLUR.—1.	—,		
	2. em-i-te, buy ye,	em-i-tōte, ye shall buy.	
	3.	em-u-ntō, they shall buy.	
		PARTICIPLE.	
		PRESENT. N. em-e-n-s; G. em-e-nt-is, buying.	
		FUTURE. em-tūr-us, -a, -um, about to buy	

## 132.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PERFECT.

*Have bought, bought.**Have, may have, bought.*SING.—1. *ēm-i,**ēm-e-ri-m,*2. *ēm-i-stī,**ēm-e-ri-s,*3. *ēm-i-t,**ēm-e-ri-t.*PLUR.—1. *ēm-i-mus,**ēm-e-ri-mus,*2. *ēm-i-stis,**ēm-e-ri-tis,*3. *ēm-ē-ru-nt,**ēm-e-ri-nt.*

## PLUSPERFECT.

*Had bought.**Had, might have, bought.*SING.—1. *ēm-e-ra-m,**ēm-i-sse-m,*2. *ēm-e-rā-s,**ēm-i-sse-s,*3. *ēm-e-ra-t,**ēm-i-sse-t.*PLUR.—1. *ēm-e-rā-mus,**ēm-i-sse-mus,*2. *ēm-e-rā-tis,**ēm-i-sse-tis,*3. *ēm-e-rant,**ēm-i-sse-nt.*

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*Shall have bought.*SING.—1. *ēm-e-r-ō,*2. *ēm-e-rī-s,*3. *ēm-e-ri-t.*PLUR.—1. *ēm-e-rī-mus,*2. *ēm-e-rī-tis,*3. *ēm-e-ri-nt.*

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. *em-e-re,**to buy.*PERF. *ēm-i-sse,**to have bought.*FUT. *em-tūr-um, -am, -um, esse, to be about to buy.*

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

N. [*em-e-re*], *to buy, buying.*G. *em-e-nd-i,* *of buying.*D. *em-e-nd-ō,* *to, for buying.*Ac. [*em-e-re*] (ad) *em-e-ndum, to buy.* 1. *em-tum, to buy.*Abl. *em-e-nd-ō,* *by buying.*2. *em-tū, to buy, in the buying.*

## 133.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*Am bought.**Be, may be, bought.*

- SING.—1. em-o-r,  
2. em-e-ria,  
3. em-i-tur,

- em-a-r,  
em-ā-ria,  
em-ā-tur.

- PLUR.—1. em-i-mur,  
2. em-i-mini,  
3. em-u-ntur,

- em-ā-mur,  
em-ā-mini,  
em-a-ntur.

## IMPERFECT.

*Was bought.**Were, might be, bought.*

- SING.—1. em-ē-ba-r,  
2. em-ē-bā-ria,  
3. em-ē-bā-tur,

- em-e-re-r,  
em-e-rē-ria,  
em-e-rē-tur.

- PLUR.—1. em-ē-bā-mur,  
2. em-ē-bā-mini,  
3. em-ē-ba-ntur,

- em-e-rē-mur,  
em-e-rē-mini,  
em-e-re-ntur.

## FUTURE.

*Shall be bought.*

- SING.—1. em-a-r,  
2. em-ē-ria,  
3. em-ē-tur.

- PLUR.—1. em-ē-mur,  
2. em-ē-mini,  
3. em-e-ntur.

## IMPERATIVE.

SING.—1.

2. em-ere, *be thou bought,* em-i-tor, *thou shalt be bought.*  
3. em-i-tor, *he shall be bought.*

PLUR.—1.

2. em-i-mini, *be ye bought.*  
3. em-u-ntor, *they shall be bought.*

134.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PERFECT.

	<i>Have been, was bought.</i>	<i>Have, may have, been bought.</i>
SING.—1.	em-t-us, -a, -um, s-u-m,	em-t-us, -a, -um, s-i-m,
2.	es,	s-i-s,
3.	es-t,	s-i-t.
PLUR.—1.	em-t-I, -ae, -a, s-u-mus,	em-t-I, -ae, -a, s-i-mus,
2.	es-tis,	s-i-tis,
3.	s-un-t,	s-i-nt.

## PLUPERFECT.

	<i>Had been bought.</i>	<i>Had, might have, been bought.</i>
SING.—1.	em-t-us, -a, -um, er-a-m,	em-t-us, -a, -um, es-se-am,
2.	er-ā-s,	es-sē-s,
3.	er-a-t,	es-se-t.
PLUR.—1.	em-t-I, -ae, -a, er-ā-mus,	em-t-I, -ae, -a, es-sē-mus,
2.	er-ā-tis,	es-sē-tis,
3.	er-a-nt,	es-se-nt.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

	<i>Shall have been bought.</i>
SING.—1.	em-t-us, -a, -um, er-ō,
2.	er-i-s,
3.	er-i-t.
PLUR.—1.	em-t-I, -ae, -a, er-i-mus,
2.	er-i-tis,
3.	er-u-nt.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	em-I,	<i>to be bought.</i>
PERF.	em-t-um, -am, -um, esse,	<i>to have been bought.</i>
FUT.	em-t-um iri,	<i>to be about to be bought.</i>
P. F.	em-t-um, -am, -um, fore.	

## PARTICIPLE.

PERFECT.	em-t-us, -a, -um,	<i>bought.</i>
GERUNDIVE.	em-e-nd-us, -a, -um,	<i>to be bought.</i>

## 135.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

The stems in *i* follow in several forms the Third Conjugation, and take the same connecting vowels.

INDICATIVE.		ACTIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	
		PRESENT.		
		<i>Hear.</i>	<i>Be hearing, may hear.</i>	
SING.—1.	audi-ō,	audi-a-m,		
	2. audi-s,	audi-ā-s,		
	3. audi-t,	audi-a-t.		
PLUR.—1.	audi-mus,	audi-ā-mus,		
	2. audi-tis,	audi-ā-tis,		
	3. audi-u-nt,	audi-a-nt.		
		IMPERFECT.		
		<i>Was hearing.</i>	<i>Were hearing, might hear.</i>	
SING.—1.	audi-ē-ba-m,	audi-rē-m,		
	2. audi-ē-bā-s,	audi-rē-s,		
	3. audi-ē-ba-t,	audi-rē-t.		
PLUR.—1.	audi-ē-bā-mus,	audi-rē-mus,		
	2. audi-ē-bā-tis,	audi-rē-tis,		
	3. audi-ē-ba-nt,	audi-rē-nt.		
		FUTURE.		
		<i>Shall hear.</i>		
SING.—1.	audi-a-m,			
	2. audi-ēs,			
	3. audi-e-t.			
PLUR.—1.	audi-ē-mus,			
	2. audi-ē-tis,			
	3. audi-e-nt.			
		IMPERATIVE.		
SING.—1.	—,			
	2. audi, hear thou,	audi-tō,	thou shalt hear.	
	3.	audi-tō,	he shall hear.	
PLUR.—1.	—,			
	2. audi-te, hear ye,	audi-tōte,	ye shall hear.	
	3.	audi-u-ntō,	they shall hear.	

## PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT. N. audi-e-n-s, G. audi-e-nt-is, *hearing.*

FUTURE. audi-tūr-us, -a, -um, *about to hear.*

136.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PERFECT.

*Have heard, heard.**Have, may have, heard.*

SING.—1. audi-vī,

audi-ve-ri-m,

2. audi-vi-stī,

audi-ve-ri-s,

3. audi-vi-t,

audi-ve-ri-t.

PLUR.—1. audi-vi-mus,

audi-ve-ri-mus,

2. audi-vi-stis,

audi-ve-ri-tis,

3. audi-vē-runt.

audi-ve-rint.

## PLUSPERFECT.

*Had heard.**Had, might have, heard.*

SING.—1. audi-ve-ra-m,

audi-vi-sse-m,

2. audi-ve-rā-s,

audi-vi-ssē-s,

3. audi-ve-ra-t,

audi-vi-sse-t,

PLUR.—1. audi-ve-rā-mus,

audi-vi-ssē-mus,

2. audi-ve-rā-tis,

audi-vi-ssē-tis,

3. audi-ve-ra-nt.

audi-vi-sse-nt.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*Shall have heard.*

SING.—1. audi-ve-r-ō,

2. audi-ve-rī-s,

3. audi-ve-ri-t,

PLUR.—1. audi-ve-rī-mus,

2. audi-ve-rī-tis,

3. audi-ve-ri-nt.

## INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. audi-re, to hear.

PERFECT. audi-vi-sse, to have heard.

FUTURE. audi-tūr-um, -am, -um, esse, to be about to hear.

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

N. [audi-re], hearing, to hear.

G. audi-e-nd-ī, of hearing.

D. audi-e-nd-ō, to, for hearing.

Ac. [audi-re] (ad) audi-e-nd-um, hear-

ing, to hear. 1. audi-tum, to hear.

Abl. audi-e-nd-ō, by hearing.

2. audi-tū, to hear, in the hearing.



## 137.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*Am heard.**Be, may be, heard.*

- SING.—1. audi-o-r,  
 2. audi-ris,  
 3. audi-tur,

- audi-a-r,  
 audi-ā-ris,  
 audi-ā-tur,

- PLUR.—1. audi-mur,  
 2. audi-mini,  
 3. audi-u-ntur.

- audi-ā-mur,  
 audi-ā-mini,  
 audi-ā-ntur.

## IMPERFECT.

*Was heard.**Were, might be, heard.*

- SING.—1. audi-ē-ba-r,  
 2. audi-ē-bā-ris,  
 3. audi-ē-bā-tur,

- audi-rē-r,  
 audi-rē-ris,  
 audi-rē-tur,

- PLUR.—1. audi-ē-bā-mur,  
 2. audi-ē-bā-mini,  
 3. audi-ē-ba-ntur.

- audi-rē-mur,  
 audi-rē-mini,  
 audi-re-ntur.

## FUTURE.

*Shall be heard.*

- SING.—1. audi-a-r,  
 2. audi-ē-ris,  
 3. audi-ē-tur,

- PLUR.—1. audi-ē-mur,  
 2. audi-ē-mini,  
 3. audi-e-ntur.

## IMPERATIVE.

- SING.—1. —,  
 2. audi-re, *be thou heard,* audi-tor, *thou shalt be heard,*  
 3. audi-tor, *he shall be heard.*

- PLUR.—1. —,  
 2. audi-mini, *be ye heard.*  
 3. audi-u-ntor, *they shall be heard.*

138.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PERFECT.

*Have been heard, was heard.**Have, may have, been heard.*

SING.—1. audi-t-us, -a, -um, s-u-m,

audi-t-us, -a, -um, s-i-m,

2. es,

s-i-s,

3. es-t,

s-i-t,

PLUR.—1. audi-t-i, -ae, -a, s-u-mus,

audi-t-i, -ae, -a, s-i-mus,

2. es-tis,

s-i-tis,

3. s-un-t.

s-i-n-t.

## PLUPERFECT.

*Had been heard.**Had, might have, been heard.*

SING.—1. audi-t-us, -a, -um, er-a-m,

audi-t-us, -a, -um, es-se-m,

2. er-ā-s,

es-sē-s,

3. er-a-t,

es-se-t,

PLUR.—1. audi-t-i, -ae, -a, er-ā-mus,

audi-t-i, -ae, -a, es-sē-mus,

2. er-ā-tis,

es-sē-tis,

3. er-a-nt.

es-se-nt.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*Shall have been heard.*

SING.—1. audi-t-us, -a, -um, er-ō,

2. er-i-s,

3. er-i-t,

PLUR.—1. audi-t-i, -ae, -a, er-i-mus,

2. er-i-tis,

3. er-u-nt.

## INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. audi-rī, to be heard.

PERFECT. audi-t-um, -am, um, esse, to have been heard.

FUTURE. audi-tum irī, to be about to be heard.

F. P. audi-t-um, -am, -um, fore.

## PARTICIPLE.

PERFECT. audi-t-us, -a, -um, heard.

GERUNDIVE. audi-e-nd-us, -a, -um, [one] to be heard.

## APPENDIX TO THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

139. Several verbs of the Third Conjugation in the Present-stem add *i* to the stem. This *i* is dropped when it would come before *ō* or *i*, except before *et*; as, *cap-it*, *cap-er-et*, but *capi-et*.

INDICATIVE.	ACTIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	PRESENT.	
<i>Take.</i>		<i>Be taking.</i>
SING.—1. <i>capi-ō</i> ,		<i>capi-a-m,</i>
2. <i>cap-i-a,</i>		<i>capi-ā-s,</i>
3. <i>cap-i-t,</i>		<i>capi-a-t,</i>
PLUR.—1. <i>capi-mus,</i>		<i>capi-ā-mus,</i>
2. <i>cap-i-tis,</i>		<i>capi-ā-tis,</i>
3. <i>cap-i-un-t.</i>		<i>capi-a-n-t.</i>
	IMPERFECT.	
<i>Was taking.</i>		<i>Were taking.</i>
SING.—1. <i>capi-ō-ba-m,</i>		<i>cap-e-re-m,</i>
2. <i>capi-ō-bā-s,</i>		<i>cap-e-rē-s,</i>
3. <i>capi-ō-ba-t,</i>		<i>cap-e-re-t,</i>
PLUR.—1. <i>capi-ō-bā-mus,</i>		<i>cap-e-rē-mus,</i>
2. <i>capi-ō-bā-tis,</i>		<i>cap-e-rē-tis,</i>
3. <i>capi-ō-ba-n-t.</i>		<i>cap-e-re-n-t.</i>
	FUTURE.	
<i>Shall take.</i>		
SING.—1. <i>capi-a-m,</i>		
2. <i>capi-ā-s,</i>		
3. <i>capi-e-t,</i>		
PLUR.—1. <i>capi-ā-mus,</i>		
2. <i>capi-ā-tis,</i>		
3. <i>capi-e-n-t.</i>		
IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.
SING.—2. <i>cap-e, take thou,</i>		PRES. <i>cap-e-re,</i>
<i>cap-i-tō,</i>		<i>to take.</i>
3. <i>cap-i-tō,</i>		
PLUR.—2. <i>cap-i-te, take ye,</i>		PARTICIPLE.
<i>cap-i-tōte,</i>		PRES. <i>capi-e-n-s,</i>
3. <i>cap-i-un-tō.</i>		<i>taking.</i>
		GERUND.
		G. <i>capi-e-n-d-i,</i>
		<i>of taking.</i>

140.

## INDICATIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*Am taken.**Be, may be, taken.*

- SING.—1. capi-o-r,  
 2. cap-e-ris,  
 3. cap-i-tur,

- capi-a-r,  
 capi-ā-ris,  
 capi-ā-tur,

- PLUR.—1. cap-i-mur,  
 2. cap-i-mini,  
 3. capi-u-ntur.

- capi-ā-mur,  
 capi-ā-mini,  
 capi-a-ntur.

## IMPERFECT.

*Was taken.**Were, might be, taken.*

- SING.—1. capi-ē-ba-r,  
 2. capi-ē-bā-ris,  
 3. capi-ē-bā-tur,

- cap-e-re-r,  
 cap-e-rē-ris,  
 cap-e-rē-tur,

- PLUR.—1. capi-ē-bā-mur,  
 2. capi-ē-bā-mini,  
 3. capi-ē-ba-ntur.

- cap-e-rē-mur,  
 cap-e-rē-mini,  
 cap-e-re-ntur.

## FUTURE.

*Shall be taken.*

- SING.—1. capi-a-r,  
 2. capi-ē-ris,  
 3. capi-ē-tur,

- PLUR.—1. capi-ē-mur,  
 2. capi-ē-mini,  
 3. capi-e-ntur.

## IMPERATIVE.

## INFINITIVE.

- SING.—2. cap-e-re,  
*be thou taken,*  
 cap-i-tor,  
*thou shalt be taken,*  
 3. cap-i-tor,  
*he shall be taken,*

- PRÆS. cap-i,  
*to be taken.*

- PLUR.—2. cap-i-mini,  
*be ye taken, ye shall be taken,*  
 3. capi-u-ntor,  
*they shall be taken.*

- GERUNDIVE.  
 capi-e-nd-us, -a, -um,  
*[one] to be taken.*

## 141. DEPONENT OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*Exhort.**Be exhorting, may exhort.*

- SING.—1. hort-o-r,  
 2. hortā-ris,  
 3. hortā-tur,  
 PLUR.—1. hortā-mur,  
 2. hortā-mini,  
 3. horta-ntur.

- hortē-r,  
 hortē-ris,  
 hortē-tur,  
 hortē-mur,  
 hortē-mini,  
 hortē-ntur.

## IMPERFECT.

*Was exhorting.**Were exhorting, might exhort.*

- SING.—1. hortā-ba-r,  
 2. hortā-bā-ris,  
 3. hortā-bā-tur,  
 PLUR.—1. hortā-bā-mur,  
 2. hortā-bā-mini,  
 3. hortā-ba-ntur.

- hortā-re-r,  
 hortā-rē-ris,  
 hortā-rē-tur,  
 hortā-rē-mur,  
 hortā-rē-mini,  
 hortā-re-ntur.

## FUTURE.

*Shall exhort.*

- SING.—1. hortā-bo-r,  
 2. hortā-be-ris,  
 3. hortā-bi-tur,  
 PLUR.—1. hortā-bi-mur,  
 2. hortā-bi-mini,  
 3. hortā-bu-ntur.

## IMPERATIVE.

## ACTIVE FORMS.

- SING.—2. hortā-re,  
*exhort thou,*  
 hortā-tor,  
*thou shalt exhort,*  
 3. hortā-tor,  
*he shall exhort,*  
 PLUR.—2. hortā-mini,  
*exhort ye, ye shall exhort,*  
 3. horta-ntor,  
*they shall exhort.*

- PART. PRES. horta-n-s,  
*exhorting,*  
 FUT. hortā-tūr-us, -a, -um,  
*about to exhort.*  
 INF. FUT. hortā-tūr-um, -am, -um, esse,  
*to be about to exhort.*

## PASSIVE IN MEANING.

- GERUNDIVE, horta-nd-us, -a, -um,  
*[one] to be exhorted.*

## 142. DEPONENT OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PERFECT.

*Have exhorted, exhorted.**Have, may have, exhorted.*

SING.—1. hortā-t-us, -a, -um, s-u-m,

hortā-t-us, -a, -um, s-i-m,

2. es,

s-i-a,

3. es-t,

s-i-t,

PLUR.—1. hortā-t-I, -ae, -a, s-u-mus,

hortā-t-I, -ae, -a, s-i-mus,

2. es-tis,

s-i-tis,

3. s-u-nt.

s-i-nt.

## PLUPERFECT.

*Had exhorted.**Had, might have, exhorted.*

SING.—1. hortā-t-us, -a, -um, er-a-m,

hortā-t-us, -a, -um, es-se-m,

2. er-ā-s,

es-sē-s,

3. er-a-t,

es-se-t,

PLUR.—1. hortā-t-I, -ae, -a, er-ā-mus,

hortā-t-I, -ae, -a, es-sē-mus,

2. er-ā-tis,

es-sē-tis,

3. er-a-nt.

es-se-nt.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*Shall have exhorted.*

SING.—1. hortā-t-us, -a, -um, er-ō,

2. er-i-s,

3. er-i-t,

PLUR.—1. hortā-t-I, -ae, -a, er-i-mus,

2. er-i-tis,

3. er-u-nt.

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. hortā-rī,

*to exhort.*

PERFECT. hortātus, -a, -um,

*having exhorted.*

PERF. hortā-t-um, -am, -um, esse,

*to have exhorted.*

F. P. hortā-t-um, -am, -um, fore.

SUPINE. 1. hortā-tum,  
*to exhort, for exhorting.*2. hortā-tū,  
*to exhort, in the exhorting*GERUND. [hortā-rī],  
*to exhort, exhorting.*G.horta-nd-I,  
*of exhorting.*

## 143. DEPONENT OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*Fear.**Be fearing, may fear.*SING.—1. *vere-o-r,**vere-a-r,*2. *verē-ri-a,**vere-ā-ri-a,*3. *verē-tur,**vere-ā-tur,*PLUR.—1. *verē-mur,**vere-ā-mur,*2. *verē-mini,**vere-ā-mini,*3. *vere-ntur.**vere-a-ntur.*

## IMPERFECT.

*Was fearing.**Were fearing, might fear.*SING.—1. *verē-ba-r,**verē-re-r,*2. *verē-bā-ri-a,**verē-rē-ri-a,*3. *verē-bā-tur,**verē-rē-tur,*PLUR.—1. *verē-bā-mur,**verē-rē-mur,*2. *verē-bā-mini,**verē-rē-mini,*3. *verē-ba-ntur.**verē-re-ntur.*

## FUTURE.

*Shall fear.*SING.—1. *verē-bo-r,*2. *verē-be-ri-a,*3. *verē-bi-tur,*PLUR.—1. *verē-bi-mur,*2. *verē-bi-mini,*3. *verē-bu-ntur.*

## IMPERATIVE.

## ACTIVE FORMS.

SING.—2. *verē-re,*PART. PRES. *vere n-a,**fear thou,**fearing,**verē-tor,*FUT. *ver-i-tūr-us, -a, -um,**thou shalt fear,**about to fear.*3. *verē-tor,*INF. FUT. *ver-i-tūr-um, -am, -um, esse,**he shall fear,**to be about to fear.*PLUR.—2. *verē-mini,**fear ye, ye shall fear,*

## PASSIVE IN MEANING.

3. *vere-ntor,*GERUNDIVE, *vere-nd-us, -a, -um,**they shall fear.**[one] to be feared.*

## 144. DEPONENT OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PERFECT.

	<i>Have feared, feared.</i>	<i>Have, may have, feared.</i>
SING.—1.	ver-it-us, -a, -um, s-u-m,	ver-it-us, -a, -um, s-i-m,
2.	es,	s-i-s,
3.	es-t,	s-i-t,
PLUR.—1.	ver-it-I, -ae, -a, s-u-mus,	ver-it-I, -ae, -a, s-i-mus,
2.	es-tis,	s-i-tis,
3.	s-un-t.	s-i-nt.

## PLUPERFECT.

	<i>Had feared.</i>	<i>Had, might have, feared.</i>
SING.—1.	ver-it-us, -a, -um, er-a-m,	ver-it-us, -a, -um, es-se-m,
2.	er-ā-s,	es-sē-s,
3.	er-a-t,	es-se-t,
PLUR.—1.	ver-it-I, -ae, -a, er-ā-mus,	ver-it-I, -ae, -a, es-sē-mus,
2.	er-ā-tis,	es-sē-tis,
3.	er-a-nt.	es-se-nt.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

	<i>Shall have feared.</i>
SING.—1.	ver-it-us, -a, -um, er-ō,
2.	er-is,
3.	er-it,
PLUR.—1.	ver-it-I, -ae, -a, er-i-mus,
2.	er-i-tis,
3.	er-un-t.

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRÆS.	verē-rī, to fear.	PERFECT.	ver-i-tus, -a, um.
PRÆP.	ver-i-tum, -am, -um, esse, to have feared.		
F. P.	ver-i-tum fore.		

SUPINE. 1.	ver-i-tum, to fear, for fearing.	2.	ver-i-tū, to fear, in fearing.
GERUND.	[verē-rī], to fear, fearing.	G.	vere-nd-I, of fearing.



## 145. DEPONENT OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*Speak.**Be speaking, may speak.*

- SING.—1. loqu-o-r,  
 2. loqu-e-ris,  
 3. loqu-i-tur,

- loqu-a-r,  
 loqu-ā-ris,  
 loqu-ā-tur.

- PLUR.—1. loqu-i-mur,  
 2. loqu-i-mini,  
 3. loqu-u-ntur,

- loqu-ā-mur,  
 loqu-ā-mini,  
 loqu-a-ntur.

## IMPERFECT.

*Was speaking.**Were speaking, might speak.*

- SING.—1. loqu-ē-ba-r,  
 2. loqu-ē-bā-ris,  
 3. loqu-ē-bā-tur,

- loqu-e-re-r,  
 loqu-e-rē-ris,  
 loqu-e-rē-tur.

- PLUR.—1. loqu-ē-bā-mur,  
 2. loqu-ē-bā-mini,  
 3. loqu-ē-ba-ntur,

- loqu-e-rē-mur,  
 loqu-e-rē-mini,  
 loqu-e-re-ntur.

## FUTURE.

*Shall speak.*

- SING.—1. loqu-a-r,  
 2. loqu-ē-ris,  
 3. loqu-ē-tur.

- PLUR.—1. loqu-ē-mur,  
 2. loqu-ē-mini,  
 3. loqu-e-ntur.

## IMPERATIVE.

## ACTIVE FORMS.

- SING.—2. loqu-e-re,  
*speak thou,*  
 loqu-i-tor,  
*thou shalt speak,*  
 3. loqu-i-tor,  
*he shall speak.*

- PART. PRES. loqu-e-n-s,  
*speaking.*  
 FUT. locū-tūr-us, -a, -um,  
*about to speak.*  
 INF. FUT. locū-tūr-um, -am, -esse,  
*to be about to speak.*

- PLUR.—2. loqu-i-mini,  
*speak ye.*  
 3. loqu-u-ntor,  
*they shall speak.*

## PASSIVE IN MEANING.

- GERUNDIVE, loqu-e-ndus, -a, -um,  
*to be spoken.*

146. DEPONENT OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERFECT.

	<i>Have spoken, spoke.</i>	<i>Have, may have, spoken.</i>
SING.—1.	locū-t-us, -a, -um,	locū-t-us, -a, -um, s-i-m,
2.	es,	s-i-s,
3.	es-t,	s-i-t.
PLUR.—1.	locū-t-i, -ae, -a,	locū-t-i, -ae, -a, s-i-mus,
2.	es-tis,	s-i-tis,
3.	s-un-t,	s-i-nt.

PLUPERFECT.

	<i>Had spoken.</i>	<i>Had, might have, spoken.</i>
SING.—1.	locū-t-us, -a, -um, er-a-m,	locū-t-us, -a, -um, es-se-m,
2.	er-ā-s,	es-sē-s,
3.	er-a-t,	es-se-t.
PLUR.—1.	locū-t-i, -ae, -a, er-ā-mus,	locū-t-i, -ae, -a, es-sē-mus,
2.	er-ā-tis,	es-sē-tis,
3.	er-a-nt.	es-se-nt.

FUTURE PERFECT.

	<i>Shall have spoken.</i>
SING.—1.	locū-t-us, -a, -um, er-ō,
2.	er-is,
3.	er-it.
PLUR.—1.	locū-t-i, -ae, -a, er-i-mus,
2.	er-i-tis,
3.	er-u-nt.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. loqu-i,  
to speak.  
PERF. locū-t-um, -am, -um, esse,  
to have spoken.

PERF. locū-t-us, -a, -um,  
having spoken.

F. PF. locū-t-um, -am, -um, fore.

SUPINE. 1. locū-tum,  
to speak, for speaking.

2. locū-tū,  
to speak, in speaking.

GERUND. [loqu-i],  
to speak, speaking.

G. loqu-e-nd-i,  
of speaking.

## 147. DEPONENT OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*Lie.**Be lying, may lie.*

- SING.—1. menti-o-r,  
2. menti-ris,  
3. menti-tur,

- menti-a-r,  
menti-ā-ris,  
menti-ā-tur.

- PLUR.—1. menti-mur,  
2. menti-mini,  
3. menti-u-ntur,

- menti-ā-mur,  
menti-ā-mini,  
menti-ā-ntur.

## IMPERFECT.

*Was lying.**Were lying, might lie.*

- SING.—1. menti-ē-ba-r,  
2. menti-ē-bā-ris,  
3. menti-ē-bā-tur.

- menti-re-r,  
menti-rē-ris,  
menti-rē-tur,

- PLUR.—1. menti-ē-bā-mur,  
2. menti-ē-bā-mini,  
3. menti-ē-ba-ntur.

- menti-rē-mur,  
menti-rē-mini,  
menti-re-ntur.

## FUTURE.

*Shall lie.*

- SING.—1. menti-a-r,  
2. menti-ā-ris,  
3. menti-ā-tur.

- PLUR.—1. menti-ā-mur,  
2. menti-ā-mini,  
3. menti-e-ntur.

## IMPERATIVE.

## ACTIVE FORMS.

- SING.—2. menti-re,  
*lie thou,*  
menti-tor,  
*thou shalt lie,*  
3. menti-tor,  
*he shall lie.*

- PART. PRES. menti-e-n-s,  
*lying.*  
PERF. menti-tūr-us, -a, -um,  
*about to lie.*  
INF. FUT. menti-tūr-um, -am, -um, esse,  
*to be about to lie.*

- PLUR.—2. menti-mini,  
*lie ye,*  
3. menti-u-ntor,  
*they shall lie.*

## PASSIVE IN MEANING.

GERUNDIVE, menti-c-nd-us, -a, -um.

## 148. DEPONENT OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PERFECT.

*Have lied, lied.*
*Have, may have, lied.*

SING.—1.	menti-t-us, -a, -um,	s-u-m,	menti-t-us, -a, -um,	s-i-m,
2.		es,		s-i-a,
3.		es-t,		s-i-t.
PLUR.—1.	menti-t-I, -ae, -a,	s-u-mus,	menti-t-I, -ae, -a,	s-i-mus,
2.		es-tis,		s-i-tis,
3.		s-u-nt,		s-i-nt.

## PLUPERFECT.

*Had lied.*
*Had, might have, lied.*

SING.—1.	menti-t-us, -a, -um,	er-a-m,	menti-t-us, -a, -um,	es-se-m,
2.		er-ā-s,		es-sē-s,
3.		er-a-t,		es-se-t.
PLUR.—1.	menti-t-I, -ae, -a,	er-ā-mus,	menti-t-I, -ae, -a,	es-sē-mus,
2.		er-ā-tis,		es-sē-tis,
3.		er-a-nt,		es-se-nt.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*Shall have lied.*

SING.—1.	menti-t-us, -a, -um,	er-ō,
2.		er-is,
3.		er-i-t.
PLUR.—1.	menti-t-I, -ae, -a,	er-i-mus,
2.		er-i-tis,
3.		er-u-nt.

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

 PRES. menti-rī,  
to lie.

 PERFECT. menti-t-us, -a, -um,  
having lied.

 PRES. P. menti-t-um, -am, -um, esse,  
to have lied.

F. P. menti-t-um, -am, -um, fore.

 SUPINE. 1. menti-tum,  
to lie, for lying,

 2. menti-tū,  
to lie, in lying.

 GERUND. [menti-rī],  
to lie, lying.

 G. menti-e-nd-I,  
of lying.

## 149. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	amātūr-us, -a, -um, sum, <i>Am about to love.</i>	amātūr-us, -a, -um, sim, <i>Be about to love.</i>
IMPERF.	amātūrus eram, <i>Was about to love.</i>	amātūrus essem, <i>Were about to love.</i>
FUT.	amātūrus erō, <i>Shall be about to love.</i>	
PERF.	amātūrus fui, <i>Have been, was, about to love.</i>	amātūrus fuerim, <i>Have, may have, been about to love.</i>
PLUPERF.	amātūrus fueram, <i>Had been about to love.</i>	amātūrus fuisset, <i>Had, might have, been about to love.</i>
FUT. PERF.	amātūrus fuerō.	
INFINITIVE. PRESENT.	amātūr-um, -am, -um, esse, <i>to be about to love.</i>	
	PERFECT. amātūr-um fuisse, <i>to have been about to love.</i>	

## 150.

## PASSIVE.

PRES.	amand-us, -a, -um, sum, <i>Have to be loved.</i>	amand-us, -a, -um, sim, <i>Have to be loved.</i>
IMPERF.	amandus eram, <i>Had to be loved.</i>	amandus essem, forem, <i>Had to be loved.</i>
FUT.	amandus erō, <i>Shall have to be loved.</i>	
PERF.	amandus fui, <i>Have had to be loved.</i>	amandus fuerim, <i>Have had to be loved.</i>
PLUPERF.	amandus fueram, <i>Had had to be loved.</i>	amandus fuisset, <i>Should have had to be loved.</i>
INFINITIVE. PRESENT.	amand-um, -am, -um, esse, <i>to have to be loved.</i>	
	PERFECT. amand-um fuisse, <i>to have had to be loved.</i>	

# 151. ABBREVIATIONS OCCURRING IN CERTAIN FORMS OF THE VERB.

1. The Perfects in *-āvi*, *-ēvi*, *-ivi*, drop the **V** before **S** or **R**, and contract the vowels throughout, except those in *-ivi*, which admit the contraction only before **S**.

		PERFECT.	
SING.—1.	—	—	—
	2. <i>amāvisti</i> , <i>amāstī</i> .	<i>dēlēvistī</i> , <i>dēlēstī</i> .	<i>audīvistī</i> , <i>audistī</i> .
	3. —	—	—
PLUR.—1.	—	—	—
	2. <i>amāvistis</i> , <i>amāstis</i> .	<i>dēlēvistis</i> , <i>dēlēstis</i> .	<i>audīvistis</i> , <i>audistis</i> .
	3. <i>amāverunt</i> , <i>amārum</i> .	<i>dēlēverunt</i> , <i>dēlērum</i> .	<i>audīverunt</i> , <i>audīrum</i> .
SUBJ.	<i>amāverim</i> , <i>amārim</i> .	<i>dēlēverim</i> , <i>dēlērim</i> .	<i>audīverim</i> , <i>audierim</i> .
		PLUPERFECT.	
IND.	<i>amāveram</i> , <i>amāram</i> .	<i>dēlēveram</i> , <i>dēlēram</i> .	<i>audīveram</i> , <i>audieram</i> .
SUBJ.	<i>amāvissem</i> , <i>amāssem</i> .	<i>dēlēvissem</i> , <i>dēlēessem</i> .	<i>audīvissem</i> , <i>audissem</i> .
		FUTURE PERFECT.	
	<i>amāvero</i> , <i>amāro</i> .	<i>dēlēvero</i> , <i>dēlēro</i> .	<i>audīvero</i> , <i>audiero</i> .
		INFINITIVE PERFECT.	
	<i>amāvisse</i> , <i>amāsse</i> .	<i>dēlēvisse</i> , <i>dēlēesse</i> .	<i>audīvisse</i> , <i>audisse</i> .

In like manner, *nōvi*, *I know*, and *mōvi*, *I have moved*, are, in their compounds especially, contracted :

SING.—2. *nōstī*. PLUR.—2. *nōstis*, 3. *nōrunt*. SUBJ. *nōrim*.  
PLUPERFECT. *nōram*. SUBJ. *nōssem*. INF. *nōsse*. But the Future is *nōvero*, uncontracted.

REMARK.—In *petere*, *to fall upon*, *dēsinere*, *to give over*, and in the compounds of *ire*, *to go*, the **V** of the Perfect is dropped in 1 and 3 Pers. Sing., and in 1 Pers. Pl., but no contraction ensues, as :

*petivī*, *petif*; *petivit*, *petiit*. So *dēsilvī*, *dēsil*; *dēsilvit*, *dēsilit*, etc.  
And *redī*, *rediit*, from *redire*, *to go back*.

2. In 3 Pl. Perf. Act. instead of the ending *-erunt*, *-ēre* is often found, but never in the contracted Perfects mentioned above : *amāvēre*, *they have loved*; *dēlēvēre*, *they have destroyed*; *emēre*, *they have bought*; *audīvēre*, *they have heard*. But *amāre*, for *amārum*, is not admissible.

3. Instead of *-ris* in 2 Sing. Pass. we find often *-re* :  
*amābāre*, *thou wast loved*; *amārēre*, *thou mightest be loved*; *amābēre*, *thou wilt be loved*. This is rare, however, in Present Indicative.

4. The Imperatives of *dīcere*, *to say*, *dūcere*, *to lead*, *facere*, *to make*, and *ferre*, *to bear*, are *dīc*, *dūc*, *fac*, *fer*. These shortened forms occur in their respective compounds, except in those compounds of *facio*, which change *a* into *i*, as : *perficere*, *achieve thou*. (188 R.)

5. The Gerund and Gerundive of the 3d and 4th Conjugations, instead of *-endī*, *-endus*, may, especially after *i*, end in *-undī* and *-undus*, as :

*faciundus*, *to be done*; *gerundus*, *to be carried*.

## 152.

## THE STEM.

## I. IN THE PRESENT.

The stem of many verbs appears in the Present, not in the pure, but in a strengthened form.

Hence verbs are classified according to the relation of the Present Stem to the Verb Stem.

I. *Stem class*: To this class belong those verbs whose present stem is the same as the verb stem.

Such are the verbs of the vowel conjugations; and in the Third Conjugation such verbs as *leg-o, I read, ed-o, I eat, em-o, I buy*.

II. *The Protracted or Intensified class*: In this class the vowel of the Verb Stem is lengthened in the Present Stem:

*duc-o, I lead, stem duc-; dic-o, I say, stem dic.*

REMARK.—This change arises from a diphthongal strengthening of the stem: *douc-o, deic-o*; but the class is treated as a stem-class in formation.

III. *The Nasal class*: In this class the stem is strengthened by *n*.

A. In vowel-stems: *si-, sino, I let; li-, lino, I besmear*.

B. After the characteristic *r* or *m*: *cer-, cerno, I sift, separate; tem-, temno, I scorn*.

C. Before the characteristic mute: *vio-, vinco, I conquer; frag-, frango, I break; fud-, fundo, I pour*.

Before a *P*-mute *N* becomes *M*: *rup-, rumpo, I rend; cub-, cumbo, I lie down*.

IV. *The T class*: *flec-, flecto, I bend*.

V. *The Inchoative class*: The stem strengthened by *sc* or *isc*: *sc* after vowel stems, *isc* after consonant stems.

1. <i>ira-, irascor,</i> <i>I am in a rage.</i>	<i>cre-, cre-sco,</i> <i>I grow.</i>	<i>dormi-, obdormi-sco,</i> <i>I fall asleep.</i>
2. <i>ap-, ap-iscor,</i> <i>I reach.</i>	<i>fac-, profic-iscor,</i> <i>I set out.</i>	<i>nac-, nanc-iscor,</i> <i>I get.</i>

VI. *Reduplicated class*: Reduplication in the Present stem:

*gen-, gi-gno, I beget, (for GI-GEN-O); sta-, si-sto, si-st-ere, to set, stand*  
Compare *stāre, to stand*.

VII. *U-class*: *U* suffixed to the stem:

*ting-, ting-u-o, I soak.*

VIII. *I-class*: I suffixed to the stem:cap-, capi-o, *I take*.IX. *Geminated class*:

The Liquids *l* and *r* may be doubled: pel-, pello, *I drive*; cur-, curro, *I run*.

So *t* is doubled in mit-, mitto, *I send*.

REMARK.—This small class is probably a subdivision of the 8th class (*I-class*); pello, for peljo, pelio; curro, for curjo, curio.

## X. Change of Conjugation:

Many consonant-stems assume in the Present the characteristic of one of the three vowel-conjugations:

vid-, vide-o, *I see*, vidē-re.ven-, veni-o, *I come*, veni-ra.

## 153.

## II. IN THE PERFECT.

The Perfect is formed from the pure stem.

EXCEPTIONS: see change of conjugation. (156, 176).

1. The vowel-stems take *-vī*: amā-vī, *I have loved*; dēlē-vī, *I have destroyed*; audi-vī, *I have heard*.

However, most verbs of the 2d Conjugation drop the vowel-characteristic, and change *-vī* into *-uī*. (See 128.)

2. Consonant-stems with *short* stem-syllable take *ī* in the Perfect, before which the stem-syllable becomes long, and *ā* is changed into *ē*.

lego, <i>I read</i> ,	vid-eo, <i>I see</i> ,	fod-io, <i>I dig</i> ,	fug-io, <i>I flee</i> ,	ag-o, <i>I do</i> ,
lēg-l	vid-l	fōd-l	fūg-l	ēg-l

3. Consonant-stems with *long* stem-syllables take *ai* in the Perfect:

rēp-o, <i>I creep</i> ,	rēp-ai	scribo, <i>I write</i> ,	scrip-ai	dīc-o, <i>I say</i> ,	dixi = dic-ai
aug-eo, <i>I increase</i> ,	auxi = aug-ai	rād-o, <i>I scrape</i> ,	rā-ai = rad-ai		

Even when the stem-syllable is *long by position* only:

carp-o, <i>I pluck</i> ,	carp-ai	ping-o, <i>I paint</i> ,	pinxi = ping-ai
--------------------------	---------	--------------------------	-----------------

EXCEPTIONS.—Exceptions are stems in *-nd*, which take *ī* in the Perfect: dēfend-o, *I strike (ward) off*, dēfend-ī; perhaps because the stems in *-nd* formed originally a *reduplicated perfect*:

mand-o, *I chew*, man(di)dī; so (fe)fendi, *I have struck*.



4. The stems in **u** have **i** in the Perfect: **acu-o**, *I sharpen*, **acu-i**.

5. Sundry verbs reduplicate in the Perfect, *i. e.*, repeat the initial consonant of the stem with the vowel following it:

**pend-o**, *I weigh*, **pe-pend-i**.    **posc-o**, *I demand*, **po-posc-i**.    **curr-o**, *I run*, **cu-curr-i**.

When a change of vowel occurs in the stem, **e** is always found in the syllable of reduplication:

**cad-o**, *I fall*, **ce-cid-i**.

**caed-o**, *I fell*, **ce-cid-i**.

**parc-o**, *I spare*, **pe-perc-i**.

**pel-lo**, *I push*, **pe-pul-i**.

These reduplicated Perfects are always formed in **-i**. They do not lengthen the stem-vowel, but change **a** into **i**, **ae** into **i**, **a** before two consonants into **e**, and **e** and **o** into **u** before **l**.

REMARK.—In compounds with monosyllabic prepositions reduplication is generally dropped except in **disco**, *I learn*, **dō**, *I give*, **posco**, *I demand*, **stō**, *I stand*. The compounds of **curro**, *I run*, sometimes retain it, **excucurri**. With dissyllabic prepositions the reduplication is commonly retained.

### III. THE SUPINE.

154. I. The Supine is formed from the *pure stem*.

1. Vowel-stems and stems in **U** take **-tum** in the Supine:

**am-o**, *I love*, **amā-tum**.

**dēle-o**, *I destroy*, **dēlē-tum**.

**audi-o**, *I hear*, **audī-tum**.

**tribu-o**, *I allot*, **tribū-tum**.

Most verbs of the Second Conjugation drop, however, their own characteristic vowel before **-tum**, and insert the connecting-vowel **i**: **mone-o**, *I remind*, **moni-tum**. Some have no connecting-vowel. (See 128.)

2. Consonant-stems in a **P**- or **K**-mute take **-tum** in the Supine:

**cap-io**, *I take*, **cap-tum**.

**rēp-o**, *I creep*, **rep-tum**.

**fac-io**, *I do*, **fac-tum**.

**dic-o**, *I say*, **dic-tum**.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Among the **P**-stems, only **lābor**, *I slip*, **lap-sus**.

2. Among the **K**-stems, the Supine in **-sum** occurs:

A. In verbs whose Present-stem is strengthened by **t**:

**flect-o**, *I bend*, **flexum**.

**plect-o**, *I plait*, **plexum**.

**pect-o**, *I comb*, **pexum**.

**nect-o**, *I knot*, **bind**, **nexum**.

B. Some, whose characteristic is preceded by a Liquid: **merg-o**, *I dip*, **mer-sum**; **terg-o**, *I wipe*, **ter-sum**; **parc-o**, *I spare*, **par-sum**; **sparg-o**, *I sow*, **scatter**, **spar-sum**; **mulce-o**, *I stroke*, **mul-sum**.

C. In some the ending **-sum** prevents confusion with other words: **figo**, *I shape*, **makes fic-tum**; but **figo**, *I fasten*, **fix-um**. So **mul-sum**, from **mulc-eo**, *I stroke*, distinguishes it from **multum**, *much*.

REMARK.—The **K**-mutes are dropped in the Perfect and Supine between **l-s**, **l-t**, **r-s**, **r-t**: **fulc**-io, *I prop*, **ful(c)**-sī, **ful(c)**-tum; **torqu**-eo, *I twist*, **tor(qu)**-sī, **tor(qu)**-tum. (See 160.)

3. Consonant-stems in a **T**-mute take **-sum** in the Supine:

**ed**-o, *I eat*, **ē**-sum (for **ed**-sum); **lūd**-o, *I play*, **lū**-sum; **dēfend**-o, *I ward off*, **dēfensum**.

4. Liquid-stems have partly **-tum**, partly **-sum**. Stems in **m** and **n** take **-tum**; stems in **l** and **r** take **-sum**:

**em**-o, *I buy*, **em**-tum; **veni**-o, *I come*, **ven**-tum; **can**-o, *I sing*, **can**-tum.  
**ver**-sum, from **ver**-ro, *I sweep*; **fal**-sum, from **fall**-o, *I cheat*; **vul**-sum, from **vell**-c, *I pluck*.

EXCEPTIONS.—A. Liquid-stems which in the Perfect pass over to the 2d Conjugation have **-tum**, with or without connecting-vowels: **al**-o, *I nourish*, **al-i**-tum or **al**-tum.

B. To be distinguished from other forms: **par**-tum, from **pari**-o, *I bring forth*; but **par**-sum, from **paro**-ere, *to spare*: **sal**-tum, from **sali**-o, *I leap*; but **sal**-sum, from **sali**-o, *I salt*.

C. **Man**-sum, from **mane**-o, *I remain*.

II. The Future Active Participle is formed regularly from the Supine; in some verbs, however, from the Present-stem.

**Juvātūrus**, *about to help*, from **juvāre**; **secātūrus**, from **secāre**, *to cut*; **sonātūrus**, from **sonāre**, *to sound*; **lavātūrus**, from **lavāre**, *to wash*; but **adjūtūrus**, from **adjuvāre**, *to help*; **moritūrus**, from **mori**or, *I die*; **oritūrus**, from **orior**, *I rise*; **paritūrus**, from **pario**, *I bring forth*; **agnōtūrus**, from **agnōsco**, *I recognize*; **nāscitūrus**, from **nāscor**, *I am born*.

In some **U**-stems it is formed by means of the connecting-vowel **I**: **arguitūrus**, from **arguo**, *I accuse*; **abnuitūrus**, from **abnuo**, *I refuse*; **luitūrus**, from **luo**, *I wash off*, **ruitūrus**, from **ruo**, *I rush*; **fruitūrus**, from **fruo**, *I enjoy*.

## 155.

## EUPHONIC LAWS

IN THE CONVERSION OF THE CONSONANT-CHARACTERISTIC.

Characteristic **b** before **s** and **t** becomes **p**:

**scrib**-o, *I write*, **scrip**-sī, **scrip**-tum.

Characteristic **g** and **qu** before **t** become **c**:

**leg**-o, *I read*, **lec**-tum; **coqu**-o, *I bake*, **coc**-tum.

Characteristic **c**, **g**, and **qu** with **s** become **x**:

**dic**-o, *I say*, **dixi** (= **dic**-sī).

**jung**-o, *I join*, **juxi** (= **jung**-sī).

**coqu-o**, *I cook*, **coxi** (= **coqu-si**).

**stingu-o**, *I poke (out)*, **stinxi**.

Characteristic **t** and **d** before **s** are dropped, or become by assimilation **ss** :

**ed-o**, *I eat*, **ē-sum** (= **ed-sum**); **cēd-o**, *I give way*, **cēs-si** (= **ced-si**).

**mitt-o**, *I send*, **mī-si** (= **mit-si**), **mis-sum** (= **mit-sum**).

## 156.

## CHANGE OF CONJUGATION.

A change of Conjugation arises when a vowel (**e**, **i**, **a**), or one of the strengthening suffixes of the Present, is added to the pure stem. The following instances occur :

1. Consonant-stems, regular in the Perfect and Supine, pass over in the Present-stem into one of the vowel-conjugations.

<b>auge-o</b> ,	<b>augē-re</b> ,	<b>aux-i</b> ,	<b>auc-tum</b> ,	<i>to increase.</i>
<b>senti-o</b> ,	<b>senti-re</b> ,	<b>sen-si</b> ,	<b>sen-sum</b> ,	<i>to feel.</i>
<b>sēpi-o</b> ,	<b>sēpi-re</b> ,	<b>sēp-si</b> ,	<b>sēp-tum</b> ,	<i>to hedge in.</i>
<b>veni-o</b> ,	<b>veni-re</b> ,	<b>vēn-i</b> ,	<b>ven-tum</b> ,	<i>to come.</i>
<b>vide-o</b> ,	<b>vidē-re</b> ,	<b>vid-i</b> ,	<b>vi-sum</b> ,	<i>to see.</i>
<b>vinci-o</b> ,	<b>vinci-re</b> ,	<b>vinx-i</b> ,	<b>vinc-tum</b> ,	<i>to bind.</i>

REMARK. —As these verbs form Perfect and Supine from the pure stem regularly, like the others of the 3d or Consonant-Conjugation, they are placed among the verbs of the 3d Conjugation in the list below.

2. Vowel-stems, in consequence of a strengthened Present, pass over into the 3d Conjugation, but form Perfect and Supine from the vowel-stem.

<b>crē-sc-o</b>	<b>crē-sc-ere</b> ,	<b>crē-vi</b> ,	<b>crē-tum</b> ,	<i>to grow.</i>
<b>li-n-c</b> ,	<b>lin-ere</b> ,	<b>li-vi</b> ( <b>lē-vi</b> ),	<b>li-tum</b> ,	<i>to besmear.</i>

3. Consonant-stems form the Present regularly according to the 3d Conjugation, but pass in the Perfect and Supine into the 2d or 4th Conjugation.

<b>frem-o</b> ,	<b>frem-ere</b> ,	<b>frem-ui</b> ,	<b>frem-i-tum</b> ,	<i>to growl.</i>
<b>pet-o</b> ,	<b>pet-ere</b> ,	<b>pet-ivi</b> ,	<b>pet-itum</b> ,	<i>to fall upon.</i>

4. Vowel-stems vary among the Vowel-Conjugations.

<b>crep-o</b> , I.	<b>crepā-re</b> , I.	<b>crep-ui</b> , II.	<b>crep-itum</b> , II.,	<i>to crackle.</i>
<b>aperi-o</b> , IV.	<b>aperi-re</b> , IV.	<b>aper-ui</b> , II.	<b>aper-tum</b> ,	<i>to uncover.</i>

5. *dare*, *to give*, and *stāre*, *to stand*, in the Perfect, in consequence of reduplication, pass over to the 3d Conjugation.

REMARK. —Verbs mentioned under 2, 3, 4, and 5 as suffering change of Conjugation, are specially marked in 176-180.

## STEMS IN A P-MUTE.

SUPINE: -tum.

## 157. PERFECT.—1. After a short stem-syllable, Perfect in -I.

cap-i-o (cap-),	cap-ere,	cōp-I,	cap-tum,	<i>to take.</i>
ac-cip-i-o,	ac-cip-ere,	ac-cōp-I,	ac-cep-tum,	<i>to receive.</i>
rump-o (rup-),	rump-ere,	rūp-I,	rup-tum,	<i>to break.</i>

## 158. 2. After a long stem-syllable, Perfect in -si.

carp-o,	carp-ere,	carp-si.	carp-tum,	<i>to pluck.</i>
dē-cerp-o,	dē-cerp-ere,	dē-cerp-si.	dē-cerp-tum,	<i>to pluck off.</i>
nūb-o,	nūb-ere,	nūp-si,	nup-tum,	<i>to put on a veil</i> <i>(as a bride).</i>
rēp-o,	rēp-ere,	rēp-si,	rep-tum,	<i>to creep.</i>
scalp-o,	scalp-ere,	scalp-si,	scalp-tum,	<i>to scrape.</i>
scrib-o,	scrib-ere,	scrip-si,	scrip-tum,	<i>to write.</i>
sculp-o,	sculp-ere,	sculp-si,	sculp-tum,	<i>to chisel.</i>
serp-o,	serp-ere,	serp-si,	serp-tum,	<i>to creep.</i>

## With change of Conjugation.

sēpi-o (saepi-o),	sēpi-re,	sēp-si,	sēp-tum,	<i>to hedge in.</i>
sorbe-o,	sorbē-re,	(sorp-si) sorbul,		<i>to sup up.</i>

## EXCEPTIONS.

clep-o.	clep-ere,	clep-si (clēp-I),	clep-tum,	<i>to fitch.</i>
lamb-o.	lamb-ere.	lamb-I,	(lamb-i-tum),	<i>to lick.</i>

## STEMS IN A K-MUTE.

SUPINE: -tum.

## 159. PERFECT.—After a short stem-syllable, Perfect in -I.

## a. Pure stem.

ag-o,	ag-ere,	ēg-I,	ac-tum,	<i>to do, drive.</i>
cō-g-o,	cō-g-ere,	co-ēg-I,	co-ac-tum,	<i>to compel.</i>
dē-g-o,	dē-g-ere,	—	—	<i>to pass (time).</i>
red-ig-o,	red-ig-ere,	red-ēg-I,	red-ac-tum,	<i>to bring back.</i>
faci-o,	fac-ere,	fēc-I,	fac-tum,	<i>to make.</i>
cale-faci-o (calf.),	cale-fac-ere	cale-fēc-I,	cale-fac-tum,	<i>to make warm.</i>
per-fici-o,	per-fic-ere,	per-fēc-I,	per-fec-tum,	<i>to achieve.</i>
fugi-o,	fug-ere,	fūg-I,	fug-i-tum,	<i>to flee.</i>
jaci-o,	jac-ere,	jēc-I,	jac-tum,	<i>to cast.</i>
con-jici-o,	con-jic-ere,	con-jēc-I,	con-jec-tum,	<i>to gather.</i>
leg-o,	leg-ere,	lēg-I,	lec-tum,	<i>to pick up, read.</i>
col-lig-o,	col-lig-ere,	col-lēg-I,	col-lec-tum,	<i>to gather.</i>

So the other compounds, except di-lig-o, intel-lig-o, neg-lig-o, see 161.

## b. Stem strengthened by N.

frang-o,	frang-ere, frēg-I,	frac-tum,	to break.
per-fring-o,	per-fring-ere, per-frēg-I,	per-frac-tum,	to shiver.
linqu-o,	linqu-ere, liqu-I,		to leave.
re-lingu-o,	re-lingu-ere, re-liqu-I,	re-lio-tum,	to leave behind.
(pang-o),	(pang-ere), (pēg-I),	(pac-tum),	comp. 2 b and 3, to drive in.
com-ping-o,	com-ping-ere, com-pēg-I,	com-pac-tum,	to drive tight.
vinc-o (vic),	vinc-ere, vic-I,	vio-tum,	to conquer.

## 160.

## 2. After long stem-syllable, Perfect in -si.

## a. Pure stem.

dic-o,	dic-ere, dixi (dic-si),	dic-tum,	to say.
dūc-o,	dūc-ere, dūxi,	duc-tum,	to lead.
fig-o,	fig-ere, fixi,	fixum,*	to fasten.
-fig-o (con-, af-, in-),	-fig-ere, -fixi,	-fic-tum,	to strike.
frig-o,	frig-ere, frixi,	fric-tum,	to parch.
sūg-o,	sūg-ere, sūxi,	suc-tum,	to suck.

## With change of Conjugation.

auge-o,	aug-ere, auxi,	auo-tum,	to cause to wax.
frige-o,	frig-ere, (frixi),	—	to be chilled.
lūce-o,	lūc-ere, lūxi,	—	to give light.
lūge-o,	lūg-ere, lūxi,	—	to be in mourning.

b. Stem strengthened by N, which is retained in Perfect and generally in Supine; the stem-syllable is therefore long by Position.

## Supine without N.

fig-o,	fig-ere, finxi,	fic-tum,	to form.
ping-o,	ping-ere, pinxi,	pic-tum,	to paint.
string-o,	string-ere, strinxi,	strie-tum,	to draw tight.

## Supine with N.

ang-o,	ang-ere, anxi,	—	to throttle, vex.
cing-o,	cing-ere, cinxi,	cinc-tum,	to gird.
ē-mung-o,	ē-mung-ere, ē-munxi,	ē-munc-tum,	to wipe the nose.
jung-o,	jung-ere, junxi,	junc-tum,	to yoke, join.
ling-o,	ling-ere, linxi,	linc-tum,	to lick.
ning-o,	ning-ere, ninxi,	—	to snow.
pang-o,	pang-ere, panxi,	panc-tum,	to drive in.
plang-o,	plang-ere, planxi,	planc-tum,	to smite.
-stingu-o (ex-, dis-, re-),	-stingu-ere, -stinxi,	-stinc-tum,	to (stick) put out.
ting-o (tingu-o),	ting(u)-ere, tinxi,	tinc-tum,	to wet, dye.
ung-o (ungu-o),	ung(u)-ere, unxi,	unc-tum,	to anoint.

## With change of Conjugation.

sanci-o,	sanci-re, sanxi,	sanc-tum and sanctum,	to hallow.
vinci-o,	vinci-re, vinxi,	vinc-tum,	to bind.

\* The exceptions mentioned, 154, are marked with \*.

## c. Stem strengthened by T, Supine in -sum.

flect-o,	flect-ere,	flexi,	flexum,*	<i>to bend.</i>
nect-o,	nect-ere,	nexi (nexui),	nexum,*	<i>to knot.</i>
pect-o,	pect-ere,	pexi,	pexum,*	<i>to comb.</i>
plect-o,	plect-ere;	(plexi),	plexum,*	<i>to plait.</i>

## d. The K-mute dropped after L or R, and before S or T.

merg-o,	merg-ere,	mer-si,	mer-sum,*	<i>to dip in.</i>
sparg-o,	sparg-ere,	spar-si,	spar-sum,*	<i>to strew.</i>
con-sperg-o,	con-sperg-ere,	con-sper-si,	con-sper-sum.	<i>to besprinkle.</i>
terg-o (e-o),	terg-ere (ē-re),	ter-si,	ter-sum,*	<i>to wipe.</i>

## With change of Conjugation.

alge-o,	algē-re,	al-si,	—	<i>to freeze.</i>
farcī-o (-ferci-o),	farcī-re,	far-si,	far-tum (-sum),	<i>to stuff.</i>
fulci-o,	fulci-re,	ful-si,	ful-tum,	<i>to prop.</i>
fulge-o,	fulgē-re,	ful-si,	—	<i>to glow.</i>
indulge-o,	indulgē-re,	indul-si,	(indul-tum),	<i>to give way.</i>
mulce-o,	mulcē-re,	mul-si,	mul-sum,*	<i>to stroke.</i>
mulge-o,	mulgē-re,	mul-si,	mul-sum (ctum),*	<i>to milk.</i>
sarci-o,	sarci-re,	sar-si,	sar-tum,	<i>to patch.</i>
torque-o,	torquē-re,	tor-si,	tor-tum,	<i>to twist.</i>
turge-o,	turgē-re,	tur-si,	—	<i>to swell.</i>
urge-o,	urgē-re,	ur-si,	—	<i>to press.</i>

## EXCEPTIONS.

## 161.

## 1. Stem-syllable short, but Perfect in -si.

coqu-o,	coqu-ere,	coxi,	coo-tum,	<i>to cook.</i>
[lig-o (leg-),	-lig-ere,	-lexi,	-leo-tum,]	
di-lig-o,	di-lig-ere,	di-lexi,	dileo-tum,	<i>to love.</i>
intelligo or intellego,	intellig-ere,	intel-lexi,	intel-leo-tum,	<i>to understand.</i>
negligo or neg-leg-o,	neg-lig-ere,	neg-lexi,	neg-leo-tum,	<i>to neglect.</i>

## (col-lig-ere, ē-lig-ere, 159)

[lici-o (lao),	lic-ere,	-lexi,	-leo-tum,]	<i>to lure.</i>
(al-, il-) pel-lici-o,	pel-lic-ere,	pel-lexi,	pel-leo-tum,	<i>to allure.</i>
ē-lici-o,	ē-lic-ere,	ē-lic-ui,	ē-lic-i-tum,	<i>to lure forth.</i>
[-spici-o (spico),	-spic-ere,	-spexi,	-spec-tum,]	<i>to peer.</i>
(ad-, con-, dē-, in-),				
per-spici-o,	per-spic-ere,	per-spexi,	per-spec-tum,	<i>to see through.</i>
reg-o,	reg-ere,	rexī,	rec-tum,	<i>to keep right.</i>
di-rig-o,	di-rig-ere,	di-rexī,	di-rec-tum,	<i>to guide.</i>
per-g-o,	per-g-ere,	per-rexī,	per-rec-tum,	<i>to go on.</i>
su-rg-o,	su-rg-ere,	sur-rexī,	sur-rec-tum,	<i>to rise up.</i>
teg-o,	teg-ere,	texī,	tec-tum,	<i>to cover.</i>

## 2. Stem-syllable long, but Perfect in -I.

io-o (defective),	io-ere,	io-I,	io-tum,	<i>to strike.</i>
Present stem rare: io-it, io-itur, io-imur.				

## 162.

## 3. With reduplicated Perfect.

diso-o,	diso-ere,	di-dio-I,	(diso-itūrus),	to learn.
Compounds retain reduplication.				
(pang-o, 159, b),	(pang-ere),	pe-pig-I,	pac-tum,	to drive a bargain.
parc-o,	parc-ere,	pe-perc-I (par-si),	(par-sūrus),	to spare.
com-parco (-perco),	com-parc-ere,	com-pars-I,	com-par-sum,	to save.
posc-o,	posc-ere,	po-posc-I,	—	to claim.
pung-o,	pung-ere,	pu-pug-I,	punc-tum,	to prick.
inter-pungo,	inter-pungere,	inter-punxi,	inter-punc-tum,	to place points between.
tang-o (TAG),	tang-ere,	te-tig-I,	tac-tum,	to touch.
at-ting-o,	at-ting-ere,	at-tig-I,	at-tac-tum,	to border upon.

## 163.

## ASPIRATE STEMS IN H AND V.

The stems in **H**, and some in **V**, follow the Conjugation of the **K**-mute stems.

REMARK.—In these stems an original **K**-mute reappears, as, **viv-o** for **vi(g)vo**, and **vixi** for **vig(v)si**. Compare **nix** for **nig(v)s**, *snow*.

## PERFECT, -si. Supine, -tum.

flu-o (flugv-),	flu-ere,	fluxi,	(flux-us),	to flow.
stru-o (strugv-),	stru-ere,	struxi,	struc-tum,	to build.
trah-o,	trah-ere,	traxi,	trac-tum,	to drag.
veh-o,	veh-ere,	vexi,	vec-tum,	to carry.
viv-o (vigv-),	viv-ere,	vixi,	vic-tum,	to live.

## With change of Conjugation.

oc̄-nive-o (nigv-),	oc̄-nivē-re,	oc̄-nixi and ivi,	—	to close the eyes.
---------------------	--------------	-------------------	---	--------------------

## 164.

## STEMS IN A T-MUTE.

## SUPINE: -sum.

PERFECT.—1. The stems in **D** with short stem-syllable and all stems in -nd, have Perfect in -i.

(Many stems in -nd, with reduplicated Perfect, see 4 below.)

ac-cend-o,	ac-cend-ere,	ac-cend-i,	ac-cen-sum,	to kindle.
dē-fend-o,	dē-fend-ere,	dē-fend-i,	dē-fen-sum,	to strike away, defend.
ed-o,	ed-ere,	ēd-i,	ē-sum (es-sum),	to eat.
com-ed-o,	com-ed-ere,	com-ēd-i,	com-ē-sum and com-es-tum,	to eat up.
fund-o (FUD),	fund-ere,	fūd-i,	fū-sum,	to pour.
mand-o,	mand-ere,	mand-i,	man-sum,	to chew.
prehend-o,	prehend-ere,	prehend-i,	prehen-sum,	to seize.
scand-o,	scand-ere,	scand-i,	scan-sum,	to climb.
a(d)-, dē-scend-o,	dē-scend-ere,	dē-scend-i,	dē-scen-sum,	to climb up, down.

## With change of Conjugation.

prande-o,	prandē-re,	prand-i,	pran-sum.	to breakfast.
vide-o,	vidē-re,	vid-i,	vi-sum,	to see.

165. 2. Stems in **D** and **T**, with long stem-syllable, have Perfect in **-si**.

claud-o, con-, ex-clūd-o,	claud-ere, ex-clūd-ere,	clau-si, ex-clū-si,	clau-sum, ex-clū-sum,	to shut. to shut up, out.
laed-o, col-lid-o,	laed-ere, col-lid-ere,	lae-si, col-li-si,	lae-sum, col-li-sum,	to harm. to strike to- gether.
lūd-o, plaud-o (ap-plaud-o), ex-plōd-o,	lūd-ere, plaud-ere, ex-plōd-ere,	lū-si, plau-si, ex-plō-si,	lū-sum, plau-sum, ex-plō-sum,	to play. to clap. to hoot off.
rād-o, rōd-o, trūd-o, vād-o (in-, ē-),	rād-ere, rōd-ere, trūd-ere, vād-ere,	rā-si, rō-si, trū-si, vā-si,	rā-sum, rō-sum, trū-sum, -vā-sum,	to scratch. to gnaw. to push. to go.

## With change of Conjugation.

arde-o, ride-o,	ardē-re, ridē-re,	ar-si, ri-si,	ar-sum, ri-sum,	to be on fire. to laugh (at).
senti-o, suāde-o,	senti-re, suāde-re,	sen-si, suā-si,	sen-sum, suā-sum,	to feel. to (make sweet) counsel.

## 166.

## 3. With assimilation.

## a. In the Supine.

fodi-o, mitt-o, pand-o,	fod-ere, mitt-ere, pand-ere,	fōd-i, mi-si, pand-i,	fos-sum, mis-sum, pas-sum (pansum),	to dig. to send. to spread out.
sede-o,	sedē-re,	sēd-i,	ses-sum,	to sit.

## b. In the Perfect and the Supine.

cēd-o, quati-o, con-cutio (per-, ex-),	cēd-ere, quat-ere, con-cut-ere,	ces-si, (quas-si), con-cus-si,	ces-sum, quas-sum, con-cus-sum,	to yield. to shake. to shatter.
--	---------------------------------------	--------------------------------------	---------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

## 167.

## EXCEPTIONS.

1. With short stem-syllable, but Perfect in **-si**.

di-vid-o, quati-o,	di-vid-ere, quat-ere,	di-vi-si, (quas-si),	di-vi-sum, quas-sum,	to part. to shake.
-----------------------	--------------------------	-------------------------	-------------------------	-----------------------

2. With long stem-syllable, but Perfect in **-i**.

cūd-o, sīd-o,	cūd-ere, sīd-ere,	cū-i, sīd-i,	cū-sum,	to hammer. to sit down.
------------------	----------------------	-----------------	---------	----------------------------

In composition -sēdi, -sessum, from sede-o.

con-sīd-o,	con sīd-ere,	con-sēd-i,	con-ses-sum,	to settle down.
stride-o (-do),	stridē-re (-ere),	strīd-i,	—	to whistle, screech.
vert-o, re-vert-or,	vert-ere, re-vert-i,	vert-i, revert-i (active),	ver-sum, re-ver-sum,	to turn. to turn back.



## 168.

## 4. With reduplicated Perfect.

The reduplication of the Perfect is dropped in compound verbs. (153 R.)

cad-o,	cad-ere,	ce-cid-I,	cā-sum,	to fall.
oc-cid-o,	oc-cid-ere,	oc-cid-I,	oc-cā-sum,	to perish.
caed-o,	caed-ere,	ce-cid-I,	cae-sum,	to fell.
oc-cid-o,	oc-cid-ere,	oc-cid-I,	oc-ci-sum,	to kill.
pend-o,	pend-ere,	pe-pond-I,	pen-sum,	to hang (transit.).
tend-o,	tend-ere,	te-tend-I,	ten-sum and -tum,	to stretch.
ex-tend-o,	ex-tend-ere,	ex-tend-I,	ex-ten-sum and -tum,	to stretch out.
os-tend-o,	os-tend-ere,	os-tend-I,	os-ten-sum (-tus),	to stretch at, show (obst.).

## With change of Conjugation.

morde-o,	mordē-re,	mo-mord-I,	mor-sum,	to bite.
pende-o,	pendē-re,	pe-pond-I,	—	to hang (intr.).
sponde-o,	spondē-re,	spo-pond-I,	spon-sum,	to pledge oneself.
tonde-o,	tondē-re,	to-tond-I,	ton-sum,	to shear.

In some verbs the strengthening **N** of the Present has been dropped. In two verbs even the reduplicated syllable has been dropped.

find-o,	find-ere,	fid-I,	fis-sum,	to cleave.
scind-o,	scind-ere,	scid-I,	scis-sum,	to split.
tund-o,	tund-ere,	tu-tud-I,	tun-sum and tū-sum,	to thump.

## 169.

## LIQUID-STEMS.

## 1. All liquid-stems have the stem-syllable short.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Contracted forms: **sū-mo** (sub-imo); **pō-no** (po-sino, or posi-n-o).

2. Original sibilant stems: **haere-o**, **haes-**.

2. Most liquid-stems, by means of the suffix **e**, pass over into the 2d Conjugation, or in the Perfect, at least, suffer change of Conjugation.

3. Those which follow the 3d Conjugation throughout take **i** in the Perfect, and in the Supine either **-sum** or **-tum**. They lengthen the stem-syllable in the Perfect, or retain the double letter (**rr**, **ll**). Some form the reduplicated Perfect.

em-o,	em-ere,	ēm-I,	em-tum,	to take, to buy.
-------	---------	-------	---------	------------------

So, too, **co-em-o**, *I buy up*. But the compounds with **ad-**, **ex-**, **inter-**, **red-**, take **-im-o**. So **dir-im-o**, *I sever*.

inter-im-o,	inter-im-ere,	inter-ēm-I,	inter-em-tum,	to make way with.
-------------	---------------	-------------	---------------	-------------------

The other compounds of **em-o** contract: **cō-mo**, **dē-mo**, **prō-mo**, **sū-mo**, and have **-si** in the Perfect, generally with a **p** between, which is generated by the coming together of a labial and sibilant or dental. Comp. **hiem(p)s**.

<b>cōm-o,</b>	<b>cōm-ere,</b>	<b>cōmp-sī,</b>	<b>cōmp-tum,</b>	<i>to adorn.</i>
<b>dēm-o,</b>	<b>dēm-ere,</b>	<b>dēmp-sī,</b>	<b>dēmp-tum,</b>	<i>to take away.</i>
<b>prōm-o,</b>	<b>prōm-ere,</b>	<b>prōmp-sī (prōm-sī),</b>	<b>prōmp-tum (prōmtum),</b>	<i>to take out.</i>
<b>sūm-o,</b>	<b>sūm-ere,</b>	<b>sūmp-sī (sūm-sī),</b>	<b>sūmp-tum (sūmtum),</b>	<i>to take.</i>

The same formation occurs in the stem *-tem-*. Present, *temn-o*, *I scorn*.  
*con-temn-o*, *-temn-ere*, *-temp-sī (msī)*, *-temp-tum (mtum)*, *to despise*.

170. 1. With the characteristic doubled.

<b>psall-o,</b>	<b>psall-ere,</b>	<b>psall-i,</b>	—	<i>to play on the cithern.</i>
<b>sall-o,</b>	<b>sall-ere,</b>	<b>sall-i,</b>	<b>sal-sum,</b>	<i>to salt.</i>
<b>vell-o,</b>	<b>vell-ere,</b>	<b>vell-i (vul-sī),</b>	<b>vul-sum,</b>	<i>to pluck.</i>
<b>verr-o,</b>	<b>verr-ere,</b>	<b>verr-i (rare),</b>	<b>ver-sum,</b>	<i>to sweep.</i>

2. With change of Conjugation in the Present.

<b>veni-o,</b>	<b>venī-re,</b>	<b>vēn-i,</b>	<b>ven-tum,</b>	<i>to come.</i>
----------------	-----------------	---------------	-----------------	-----------------

3. With reduplicated Perfect.

<b>cān-o,</b>	<b>cān-ere,</b>	<b>cē-cin-i,</b>	<b>cān-tum,</b>	<i>to sing.</i>
<b>curr-o,</b>	<b>curr-ere,</b>	<b>cū-curr-i,</b>	<b>cūr-sum,</b>	<i>to run.</i>
<b>fall-o,</b>	<b>fall-ere,</b>	<b>fē-fell-i,</b>	<b>fāl-sum,</b>	<i>to cheat.</i>
<b>pari-o,</b>	<b>par-ere,</b>	<b>pē-per-i,</b>	<b>par-tum * (paritūrus),</b>	<i>to bring forth.</i>
<b>com-peri-o,</b>	<b>com-peri-re,</b>	<b>com-per-i,</b>	<b>com-per-tum,</b>	<i>to find out.</i>
<b>re-peri-o,</b>	<b>re-peri-re,</b>	<b>rep-per-i,</b>	<b>re-per-tum,</b>	<i>to find.</i>
<b>pell-o,</b>	<b>pell-ere,</b>	<b>pē-pul-i,</b>	<b>pul-sum,</b>	<i>to push, drive back.</i>
<b>per-cell-o,</b>	<b>per-cell-ere,</b>	<b>per-cul-i,</b>	<b>per-cul-sum,</b>	<i>to smite down.</i>
<b>toll-o,</b>	<b>toll-ere,</b>	<b>sus-tul-i,</b>	<b>sub-lā-tum,</b>	<i>to lift up.</i>

171. APPARENT LIQUID-STEMS IN *r*.—In the liquid-stems in *r* with long stem-syllable, the *r* has arisen from *s*. The original *s* reappears in the Perfect and Supine: hence the endings *-sī* in the Perfect (or by assimilation *-ssī*), and *-stum* (*-sum*) in the Supine.

<b>haere-o,</b>	<b>haerē-re,</b>	<b>hae-sī,</b>	<b>haes-tum,</b>	<i>to stick (to).</i>
<b>hauri-o,</b>	<b>hauri-re,</b>	<b>hau-sī,</b>	<b>haus-tum,</b>	<i>to drain.</i>
<b>ūr-o,</b>	<b>ūr-ere,</b>	<b>ūs-sī,</b>	<b>ūs-tum,</b>	<i>to burn.</i>
<b>com-būr-o,</b>	<b>com-būr-ere,</b>	<b>com-būs-sī,</b>	<b>com-būs-tum,</b>	<i>to burn up.</i>

With short stem-syllable.

<b>ger-o,</b>	<b>ger-ere,</b>	<b>ges-sī,</b>	<b>ges-tum (see tostum, 128),</b>	<i>to carry.</i>
---------------	-----------------	----------------	-----------------------------------	------------------

STEMS IN S.

172. 1. The stems in *s* preceded by a *vowel* have in general changed it to *r*. Unchanged appears only:

<b>vis-o,</b>	<b>vis-ere,</b>	<b>vi-sī,</b>	<b>vi-sum,</b>	<i>to visit.</i>
<b>deps-o,</b>	<b>deps-ere,</b>	<b>deps-ūi,</b>	<b>deps-tum,</b>	<i>to knead.</i>
<b>pīns-o,</b>	<b>pīns-ere,</b>	<b>pīns-ūi, -i,</b>	<b>pīns-i-tum (pīs-tum, pīn-sum),</b>	<i>to pound.</i>
<b>tex-o,</b>	<b>tex-ere,</b>	<b>tex-ūi,</b>	<b>tex-tum,</b>	<i>to weave.</i>

These have undergone change of Conjugation in the Perfect. (See 176.)

## STEMS IN U.

## PERFECT IN -I. SUPINE IN -tum.

## 173. 1. With characteristic preceded by a consonant.

ab-lu-o,	ab-lu-ere,	ab-lu-I,	ab-lū-tum,	<i>to wash off.</i>
ab-nu-o,	ab-nu-ere,	ab-nu-I,	(ab-nu-itur-us),	<i>to dissent.</i>
acu-o,	acu-ere,	acu-I,	acū-tum,	<i>to sharpen.</i>
ad-nuo (an-nu-o),	ad-nu-ere,	ad-nu-I,	—	<i>to nod assent.</i>
argu-o,	argu-ere,	argu-I,	argū-tum,	<i>to accuse.</i>
con-gru-o,	con-gru-ere,	con-gru-I,	—	<i>to agree.</i>
ex-u-o,	ex-u-ere,	ex-u-I,	ex-ū-tum,	<i>to put off, defer.</i>
im-bu-o,	im-bu-ere,	im-bu-I,	im-bū-tum,	<i>to dip, dye.</i>
in-du-o,	in-du-ere,	in-du-I,	in-dū-tum,	<i>to put on, don.</i>
lu-o,	lu-ere,	lu-I,	lu-itūr-us,	<i>to alone for.</i>
metu-o,	metu-ere,	metu-I,	—	<i>to fear.</i>
minu-o,	minu-ere,	minu-I,	minū-tum,	<i>to lessen.</i>
plu-o,	plu-ere,	plu-it, plūv-it,	—	<i>to rain.</i>
ru-o,	ru-ere,	ru-I,	rū-tum (ruitūrus),	<i>to rush down.</i>
spu-o,	spu-ere,	spu-I,	spū-tum,	<i>to spew.</i>
statu-o,	statu-ere,	statu-I,	statū-tum,	<i>to settle.</i>
sternu-o,	sternu-ere,	sternu-I,	—	<i>to sneeze.</i>
su-o,	su-ere,	su-I,	sū-tum,	<i>to sew.</i>
tribu-o,	tribu-ere,	tribu-I,	tribū-tum,	<i>to allot.</i>

## 174. 2. With characteristic preceded by a vowel.

After a vowel, *u* appears as *v*, but in the Supine it suffers, as a vowel, contraction with the vowel preceding it (generally with change of conjugation).

cave-o,	cavē-re,	cāv-I,	cau-tum,	<i>to take heed.</i>
fave-o,	favē-re,	fāv-I,	faū-tum,	<i>to be well-disposed.</i>
fove-o,	fovē-re,	fōv-I,	fō-tum,	<i>to keep warm.</i>
juv-o,	juvā-re,	jūv-I,	jū-tum (juvātūrus),	<i>to help.</i>
ad-juv-o,	-juvā-re,	-jūv-I,	-jū-tum (-jū tūrus),	<i>to stand by as aid.</i>
(lav-o.)	(lav-ere.)	lāv-I,	lau-tum (lō-tum),	<i>to wash.</i>
lav-o,	lavā-re,	(lavā-v-I.)	lavā-tum,	<i>to wash.</i>
move-o,	movē-re,	mōv-I,	mō-tum,	<i>to move.</i>
pave-o,	pavē-re,	pāv-I,	—	<i>to quake (with fear).</i>
vove-o,	vovē-re,	vōv-I,	vō-tum,	<i>to vow.</i>

The same reappearance of *v* occurs in :

ferve-o (o),	fervē-re (ere),	ferv-I (ferb-ūI),	—	<i>to seethe.</i>
solv-o,	solvē-re,	solv-I,	solvū-tum,	<i>to loose, pay.</i>
volv-o,	volvē-re,	volv-I,	voldū-tum,	<i>to roll.</i>

## DEPONENTS.

175. REMARKS.—1. Deponent verbs are passive forms which have lost their passive or reflexive signification.

2. Stems strengthened by *sc* or *isc* have generally an inchoative meaning. Comp. 152, V.

## 1. STEMS IN A P-MUTE.

1. ad-ip-isc-or,	ad-ip-isc-I,	ad-ep-tus sum,	<i>to (fasten to one's self) attain.</i>
2. lāb-or,	lāb-I,	lāp-sus sum,	<i>to glide.</i>

## 2. STEMS IN A K-MUTE.

1. a. pro-fic-isc-or,	pro-fic-isc-I,	pro-fec-tus sum,	<i>to (get forward) set out.</i>
2. b. fung-or,	fung-I,	func-tus sum,	<i>to discharge.</i>
nanc-isc-or,	nanc-isc-I,	nac-tus (nanc-tus) sum,	<i>to get.</i>
c. am-plect-or,	am-plect-I,	am-plex-us sum,	<i>to twine round, embrace.</i>
d. ulc-isc-or,	ulc-isc-I,	ul-tus sum,	<i>to avenge.</i>
Ex.c. exp-erg-isc-or, (-reg-)	ex-per-g-isc-I,	ex-per-rec-tus sum,	<i>to (right one's self up) awake.</i>
4. pac-isc-or,	pac-isc-I,	pac-tus sum (pepig-I),	<i>to drive (a bargain).</i>

## 3. STEMS IN H AND V.

fru-or (frugv-),	fru-I,	fruc-tus, fru-i-tus sum,	<i>to enjoy.</i>
veh-or,	veh-I,	vec-tus sum,	<i>to (waggon) ride.</i>

## 4. STEMS IN A T-MUTE.

2. assenti-or,	assenti-ri,	assen-sus sum,	<i>to assent.</i>
3. fate-or,	fatē-ri,	fas-sus sum,	<i>to confess.</i>
con-fite-or,	con-fitē-ri,	con-fes-sus sum,	<i>to confess.</i>
3. gradi-or,	grad-I,	gres-sus sum,	<i>to step.</i>
ag-gredi-or,	ag-gred-I,	ag-gres-sus sum,	<i>to attack.</i>
2. nit-or (gnict-)	nit-I,	ni-sus (nix-us) sum,	<i>to slay one's self on.</i>
from gentī, }		ni-sūrus, }	
2. ordi-or,	ordi-ri,	or-sus sum,	<i>to begin.</i>
3. pati-or,	pat-I,	pas-sus sum,	<i>to suffer.</i>
per-peti-or,	per-pet-I,	per-pes-sus sum,	<i>to endure to the end.</i>
2. ūt-or,	ūt-I,	ū-sus sum,	<i>to use.</i>

## 5. STEMS IN A LIQUID.

com-min-isc-or,	com-min-isc-I,	com-men-tus sum,	<i>to think up, devise.</i>
ex-peri-or,	ex-peri-ri,	ex-per-tus sum,	<i>to try.</i>
misere-or,	miserē-ri,	miser-i-tus sum,	<i>to pity.</i>

## 6. STEMS IN R FOR S.

quer-or,	quer-I,	ques-tus sum,	<i>to complain.</i>
----------	---------	---------------	---------------------

## 7. STEMS IN U.

1. loqu-or,	loqu-I,	locū-tus sum,	<i>to speak.</i>
sequ-or,	sequ-I,	secū-tus sum,	<i>to follow.</i>
2. ob-liv-isc-or,	ob-liv-isc-I,	ob-li-tus sum,	<i>to forget.</i>

## CHANGE OF CONJUGATION.

(Compare 156.)

## A.

176. 1. Verbs of the 1st Conjugation which pass over into the 2d in the Perfect and the Supine.

## WITH CONNECTING-VOWEL.

crep-o,	crepā-re,	crep-ui,	crep-itur,	<i>to rattle.</i>
cub-o,	cubā-re,	cub-ui,	cub-itur,	<i>to lie.</i>
dom-o,	domā-re,	dom-ui,	dom-itur,	<i>to tame.</i>
mic-o,	micā-re,	mic-ui,	—	<i>to quiver. flash.</i>
di-mic-o,	di-micā-re,	di-micā-vi,	di-micā-tum,	<i>to fight (out).</i>
plie-o (ex-plie-o),	plieā-re,	plie-ui (plieā-vi),	plie-itur (-ā-tum),	<i>to fold.</i>
(The simple rare.)				
son-o,	sonā-re,	son-ui,	son-itur (sonā-tū-rus),	<i>to sound.</i>
ton-o,	tonā-re,	ton-ui,	—	<i>to thunder.</i>
vet-o,	vetā-re,	vet-ui,	vet-itur,	<i>to forbid.</i>

## WITHOUT CONNECTING-VOWEL.

fric-o,	fricā-re,	fric-ui,	fric-tum (-ā-tum),	<i>to rub.</i>
nec-o,	necā-re,	necā-vi,	necā-tum,	<i>to kill.</i>
ē-nec-o,	ē-necā-re,	ē-nec-ui (-ā-vi),	ē-nec-tum,	<i>to kill off.</i>
sec-o,	secā-re,	sec-ui,	sec-tum,	<i>to cut.</i>

2. Verbs of the 3d Conjugation which pass over into the 2d in the Perfect and the Supine.

## WITH CONNECTING-VOWEL.

ac-cumb-o,	ac-cumb-ere, ac-cub-ui,	ac-cub-itur,	<i>to lie down.</i>
frem-o,	frem-ere, frem-ui,	frem-itur,	<i>to roar, rage.</i>
gem-o,	gem-ere, gem-ui,	gem-itur,	<i>to groan.</i>
gi-gn-o (GEN-),	gi-gn-ere, gen-ui,	gen-itur,	<i>to beget.</i>
mol-o,	mol-ere, mol-ui,	mol-itur,	<i>to grind.</i>
strep-o,	strep-ere, strep-ui,	strep-itur,	<i>to make a din.</i>
vom-o,	vom-ere, vom-ui,	vom-itur,	<i>to vomit.</i>

## WITHOUT CONNECTING-VOWEL.

al-o,	al-ere, al-ui,	al-tum, al-itur,	<i>to nourish.</i>
col-o,	col-ere, col-ui,	cul-tum,	<i>to cultivate.</i>
consul-o,	consul-ere, consul-ui,	consul-tum,	<i>to consult.</i>
friend-o (e-o),	friend-ere, (friend-ui),	frē-sum, fres-sum,	<i>to gnash.</i>
occul-o,	occul-ere, occul-ui,	occul-tum,	<i>to conceal.</i>
rapi-o,	rap-ere, rap-ui,	rap-tum,	<i>to snatch.</i>
cor-ripi-o,	cor-rip-ere, cor-rip-ui,	cor-reptum,	<i>to seize.</i>
ser-o,	ser-ere, —	—	<i>to string (out).</i>
dē-ser-o,	dē-ser-ere, dē-ser-ui,	dē-sertum,	<i>to abandon.</i>

So, too, dep-s-o, *I knead*, tex-o, *I weave*, and pin-s-o, *I pound*. (See 172.)

## WITHOUT SUPINE.

compesc-o,	compesc-ere, compesc-ui,	<i>to curb in.</i>
con-cin-o (oc-prae),	con-cin-ere, con-cin-ui,	<i>to sing together</i>
ex-cell-o, (ante-prae),	ex-cell-ere, ex-cell-ui,	<i>to surpass.</i>
stert-o,	stert-ere, stert-ui,	<i>to snore.</i>
trem-o,	trem-ere, trem-ui,	<i>to tremble.</i>

3. Verbs of the 4th Conjugation which pass over into the 2d in the Perfect and the Supine.

amici-o,	amici-re,	amici-ŭi (amixi),	amic-tum,	to clothe.
aperi-o,	aperi-re,	aper-ŭi,	aper-tum,	to open.
operi-o,	operi-re,	oper-ŭi,	oper-tum,	to cover up.
sali-o,	sali-re,	sal-ŭi,	sal-tum,	to leap.
dē-sili-o,	dē-sili-re,	dē-sil-ŭi,	(dē-sul-tum),	to leap down.

4. Verbs of the 3d Conjugation which pass over into the 4th in the Perfect and Supine.

arcess-o,	arcess-ere,	arcess-ivi,	arcess-ŭtum,	to send for.
So, too, lacess-o, I tease, capess-o, I lay hold of.				
in-cess-o,		in-cess-ivi (cessi),		to attack.
So facess-o, I cause, make off.				
cupi-o,	cup-ere,	cup-ivi,	cup-ŭtum,	to desire.
pet-o,	pet-ere,	pet-ivi,	pet-ŭtum,	to seek (fly at).
quaer-o,	quaer-ere,	quaes-ivi,	quaes-ŭtum,	to seek.
quaeso, quaesumus, are old colloquial forms, prythee.				
con-quir-o,	con-quir-ere,	conquis-ivi,	con-quīs-ŭtum,	to hunt up.
rud-o,	rud-ere,	rud-ivi,	rud-ŭtum,	to roar.
sapi-o,	sap-ere,	sap-ivi (-ŭi),	—	to have a flavor.

5. Verbs which vary between the 2d and the 4th Conjugation.

cio-o (ci-o),	ciē-re (ci-re),	ci-vi,	ci-tum (ci-tum),	to stir up.
---------------	-----------------	--------	------------------	-------------

con-citus, per-cit-us, ex-ci-tus, or excitus, but ac-ci-tus.

6. Verbs which pass over into the 3d Conjugation in the Supine.

pōt-o,	pōtā-re,	pōtā-vi,	pō-tum (pō) or pōt-ŭtum, pō-tūrus, potā-tūrus,	to drink.
--------	----------	----------	---	-----------

## B.

177.

### CHANGE OF CONJUGATION AS RESULT OF REDUPLICATION.

dō,	da-re,	ded-i,	da-tum,	to give, put, do.
-----	--------	--------	---------	-------------------

REMARK.—Everywhere a-short, except in dās, thou givest, and dā, give thou.

1. Like dō, are conjugated the compounds with dissyllabic words, such as :

circum-dō, I surround ;	satis-dō, I give bail ;	pessum dō, I ruin ;	vēnum-dō, I sell ;	as :
circum-d-o,	circum-da-re,	circum-de-di,	circum-da-tum,	to surround.

2. The compounds of da-re with monosyllabic words pass over wholly into the 3d Conjugation.

ab-d-o,	ab-d-ere,	ab-did-i,	ab-d-ŭtum,	to put away.
ad-d-o,	ad-d-ere,	ad-did-i,	ad-d-ŭtum,	to put to.
con-d-o,	con-d-ere,	con-did-i,	con-d-ŭtum,	to put up (found).

abs-con-d-o,	abs-con-d-ere, abs-con-d-i, (didi),	abs-con-d-ŭtum,	to put far away.
--------------	--	-----------------	------------------

crē-d-o,	crē-d-ere,	crē-did-i,	crē-d-ŭtum,	to put faith.
dē-d-o,	dē-d-ere,	dē-did-i,	dē-d-ŭtum,	to give up.
ē-d-o,	ē-d-ere,	ē-did-i,	ē-d-ŭtum,	to put out.
in-d-o,	in-d-ere,	in-did-i,	in-d-ŭtum,	to put in.
per-d-o,	per-d-ere,	per-did-i,	per-d-ŭtum,	to fardo (ruin).
prō-d-o,	prō-d-ere,	prō-did-i,	prō-d-ŭtum,	to betray.
red-d-o,	red-d-ere,	red-did-i,	red-d-ŭtum,	to give back.
trā-d-o,	trā-d-ere,	trā-did-i,	trā-d-ŭtum,	to give over.
vēn-d-o,	vēn-d-ere,	vēn-did-i,	vēn-d-ŭtum,	to put up to sale.

## 178.

*sto, I stand.*

st-o,	stā-re,	stet-I,	(stā-tu-rūs),	to stand.
ad-st-o,	ad-stā-re,	ad-stit-I,	—	to stand by.
con-st-o,	con-stā-re,	con-stit-I,	—	to stand fast.
in-st-o,	in-stā-re,	in-stit-I,	—	to stand upon.
ob-st-o,	ob-stā-re,	ob-stit-I,	—	to stand out against.
per-st-o,	per-stā-re,	per-stit-I,	—	to stand firm.
prae-st-o,	prae-stā-re,	prae-stit-I,	—	to stand ahead.
re-st-o,	re-stā-re,	re-stit-I,	—	to stand over.
di-st-o,	di-stā-re,	—	—	to stand apart.
ex-st-o,	ex-stā-re,	—	—	to stand out.
circum-st-o,	circum-stā-re,	circum-stet-I,	—	to stand round.

1. Like *circum-sto*, all compounds of *stāre* with dissyllabic prepositions have *-stet-I* in the Perfect, as :

*ante-sto, I am superior ; inter-sto, I am between ; super-sto, I stand upon.*

2. In other compounds the reduplicated form *sisto* is used, which, as a simple verb, has the transitive meaning, *I (cause to) stand*, but in its compounds, the intransitive, *I stand*.

sist-o,	sist-ere,	(stit-I),	sta-tum,	to (cause to) stand.
con-sist-o,	con-sist-ere,	con-stit-I,	con-sti-tum,	to come to a stand.
dē-sist-o (ab-),	dē-sist-ere,	dē-stit-I,	dē-sti-tum,	to stand off.
ex-sist-o,	ex-sist-ere,	ex-stit-I,	ex-sti-tum,	to stand up.
ob-sist-o,	ob-sist-ere,	ob-stit-I,	ob-sti-tum,	to take a stand against.
re-sist-o,	re-sist-ere,	re-stit-I,	re-sti-tum,	to withstand.
ad-sist-o,	ad-sist-ere,	ad-stit-I,	—	to stand near.
in-sist-o,	in-sist-ere,	in-stit-I,	—	to stand upon.
circum-sist-o,	circum-sist-ere,	circum-stet-I,	—	to take a stand round.

## 179.

## C.

## CHANGE OF CONJUGATION AS RESULT OF STRENGTHENED PRESENT.

1. Present strengthened by *n*.

li-n-o,	lin-ere,	li-vī, or lēvī,	li-tum,	to besmear.
si-n-o,	sin-ere,	si-vī,	si-tum,	to let.
dē-sin-o,	dē-sin-ere,	dē-si-vī (II),	dē-si-tum,	to leave off.
pōn-o (PO-SINO),	pōn-ere,	pos-ui,	posi-tum,	to place, leave behind.

2. Present strengthened by *sc* : compare **E** (181).

crē-sc-o,	crēsc-ere,	crē-vī,	crē-tum,	to grow.
nō-sc-o,	nōsc-ere,	nō-vī,	(Adj. nōtus),	to learn to know.
co-gnōsc-o,	co-gnōsc-ere,	co-gnō-vī,	co-gn-ītum,	to recognize.

So the other compounds of *nōsco*, except *ignōsco, I pardon, take no notice of*, which has Sup. *ignōtum* (adj. *ignōtus, unknown*).

pa-sc-o,	pasc-ere,	pā-vī,	pas-tum,	to graze (trans.)
quie-sc-o,	quiesc-ere,	quī-vī,	quī-tum,	to rest.
sue-sc-o (as, con-),	suesc-ere,	suā-vī,	suā-tum,	to accustom one's self.

## D.

180. Some stems in -r (-er) undergo change of conjugation as result of Metathesis, which also is a strengthening of the Present. *Ser-o, I sow*, is a reduplicated form for *se-so*.

cer-n-o,	cern-ere,	(crē-vī),	(crē-tum),	<i>to separate.</i>
dē-cern-o,	dē-cern-ere,	dē-crē-vī,	dē-crē-tum,	<i>to decide.</i>
ser-o,	ser-ere,	sē-vī,	sa-tum,	<i>to sow.</i>
con-ser-o,	con-ser-ere,	con-sē-vī,	con-situm,	—
sper-n-o,	spern-ere,	sprē-vī,	sprē-tum,	<i>to despise.</i>
ster-n-o,	stern-ere,	strē-vī,	strē-tum,	<i>to strew.</i>
ter-o,	ter-ere,	trī-vī,	trī-tum,	<i>to rub.</i>

## E.

## INCHOATIVE VERBS.

181. 1. The inchoatives are formed { by adding to the vowel-stems -sc-.  
by adding to the consonant-stems -isc-.

Perfect and Supine are formed from the pure stem.

inveterā-sc-o,	inveterāsc-ere,	inveterā-vī,	inveterā-tum,	<i>to grow old.</i>
nā-sc-or,	nāsc-I,	nā-tus sum,		<i>to be born.</i>
ex-olē-sc-o,	ex-olēsc-ere,	ex-olē-vī,	ex-olē-tum,	<i>to get one's growth.</i>

Like *exolēsc-o*, conjugate *obsolēsc-o, I grow old*; but *abolēsc-o, I disappear*, follows *aboleo*, and *inolēsc-o* has no supine.

ad-olē-sc-o,	ad-olēsc-ere,	ad-olē-vī,	ad-ul-tum,	<i>to grow up.</i>
co-alē-sc-o,	co-alēsc-ere,	co-al-ul,	(co-al-itum),	<i>to grow together.</i>
con-valē-sc-o,	con-valēsc-ere,	con-val-ul,	con-val-i-tum,	<i>to get well.</i>
in-calē-sc-o,	in-calēsc-ere,	in-cal-ul,	—	<i>to get warm.</i>
exardē-sc-o,	ex-ardēsc-ere,	ex-ar-sī,	ex-ar-sum,	<i>to take fire.</i>
sci-sc-o,	scisc-ere,	sci-vī,	sci-tum,	<i>to decree.</i>
ad-sci-sc-o,	ad-scisc-ere,	ad-sci-vī,	ad-sci-tum,	<i>to take on.</i>
ob-dormi-sc-o,	ob-dormisc-ere,	ob-dormi-vī,	ob-dormi-tum,	<i>to fall asleep.</i>
con-cup-isc-o,	con-cupisc-ere,	con-cup-ivī,	con-cupi-tum,	<i>to long for.</i>
(cup-ere),				
in-gem-isc-o,	in-gemisc-ere,	in-gem-ul,	—	<i>to sigh.</i>
re-sip-isc-o,	re-sipisc-ere,	re-sip-ivī,	—	<i>to come to one's senses.</i>
(sap-ere),				
re-viv-isc-o,	re-vivisc-ere,	re-vi-xī,	re-vic-tum,	<i>to come to life again.</i>

2. Inchoative Verbs may be formed likewise from Nouns or Adjectives.

ē-vān-esc-o,	ē-vānesc-ere,	ē-vān-ul,	(vānus),	<i>to disappear.</i>
irā-sc-or,	irā-sci,	irā-tus sum,	(ira),	<i>to grow angry.</i>
		<i>I am angry,</i>		
nōt-esc-o,	nōtesc-ere,	nōt-ul,	(nōtus),	<i>to become known.</i>
vesper-asc-o,	vesperasc-ere,	—	(vesper),	<i>to become evening.</i>



## 182.

## CHANGE OF VOICE.

## NEUTER PASSIVE VERBS.

aude-o,	audē-re,	au-sus sum,	to dare.
fid-o,	fid-ere,	fi-sus sum,	to trust.
gaude-o,	gaudē-re,	gāv-isus sum,	to rejoice.
[re-vert-or	re-vert-I,	re-vert-I, re-versus sum],	to turn back.
sole-o,	solē-re,	sol-itus sum,	to be wont.

REMARKS.—1. Some Active Verbs have a Perfect Passive Participle with Active meaning, as: *cēnātus*, one who has dined, from *cēnāre*, to dine; *prānsus*, having breakfasted, from *prandeo*, I breakfast; *pōtus*, drunken, from *pōto*, I drink; *jūrātus*, having taken the oath, sworn, from *jūro*, I swear; *conjūrātus*, a conspirator, from *conjūro*, I conspire. Many such are used purely as Adjectives: *considerātus*, circumspect, from *considero*; *cautus*, wary, from *caveo*, I beware.

2. The Perfect Participle of many Deponent Verbs has both Active and Passive meaning: *adeptus* (*adipiscor*), having acquired, or being acquired; *comitātus* (*comitor*, I accompany); *expertus* (*experior*, I try); *exsecrātus* (*exsecror*, I curse); *imitātus* (*imitor*, I copy); *meritus* (*mereor*, I deserve); *opinātus*, *necopinātus* (*opinor*, I think); *pactus* (*paciscor*, I contract); *partītus* (*partior*, I distribute); *sortītus* (*sortior*, I cast lots); *tueor*, I protect; *tūtus*, safe; the Perf. Participle in ordinary use is *tūtātus*.

## 183.

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

## A.

## IRREGULAR IN THE FORMATION OF THE TENSE-STEMS.

Irregular in the formation of the tense-stems are:

1. Two Verbs in a **P**-mute of the 3d conjugation, viz.:

*clepo*, I flich.

*lambo*, I lick. See 158.

2. Six Verbs of the 3d conjugation in a **K**-mute, which have, in spite of the short stem-syllable, the Perfect in **-sI**, viz.:

*rego*, I keep right,  
*lego*, I pick up,

*tego*, I cover in,  
*lacio*, I lure,

*coquo*, I bake, and the compounds of  
*specio*, I spy (-*ligo*, -*licio*, -*spicio*).

From *lego*, however, only *diligō*, I love; *intellegō*, I understand; and *neglego*, I neglect; are irregular. The other compounds are regular. See 161.

3. Two Verbs of the 3d conjugation in a **T**-mute, which, in spite of the short stem-syllable, have the Perfect in **-sI**, viz.:

*divido*, I part.

*quatio*, I shake. See 167.

4. Four Verbs of the 3d conjugation in a **T**-mute, which, in spite of long stem-syllable, have the Perfect in **-I**, viz.:

*cūdo*, I hammer; *sido*, I sit; *strideo*, I whistle; *verto*, I turn. See 167.

5. Assimilation between *bs* and *ms* occurs in the Perfect and Supine of

jube-o,	jubb-re,	jus-si,	jus-sum,	to order.
prem-o (-prim-o),	prem-ere,	pres-si,	pres-sum,	to press.

6. Special irregularities occur in :

bib-o,	bib-ere,	bib-i,	(bib-itus),	to drink.
mane-o,	manē-re,	man-si,	man-sum,	to remain.
mēti-or,	mēti-rī,	men-sus sum,		to measure.
met-o,	met-ere,	mes-si,	mes-sum,	to mow.
mori-or,	mor i,	mor-tuus sum,		to die.
rauci-o,	rauci-re,	rau-si,	rau-sum,	to be hoarse.
re-or,	rē-rī,	ra-tus sum,		to think.

This verb has no present participle.

7. Formed from different tense-stems, are :

fer-o,	fer-re,	tul-i,	lā-tum,	to bear.
toll-o,	toll-ere,	sus-tul-i,	sub-lā-tum,	to lift.

See 186.

## 184.

## B.

### IRREGULAR IN THE CONJUGATION OF THE PRESENT-STEM.

Irregular in the conjugation of the Present-stem are :

1. *ori-or, ori-rī, or-tus sum, to arise.*

PRESENT: *ori-or, or-eris, or-itur, or-imur, or-imini, ori-untur.*

IMPERFECT: *ori-rer* and *or-erer*. GERUND: *ori-undus*.

The compounds follow the simple verb, except *ad-ori-rī, rise up at, attack*, which follows the Fourth Conjugation.

2. *i-re, to go.* Stem *i*, which, before *a, o, u*, becomes *e*.

## 185. INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

### PRESENT.

<i>I go.</i>	<i>I be going.</i>
SING.—1. <i>e-o,</i>	<i>e-a-m,</i>
2. <i>i-a,</i>	<i>e-ā-a,</i>
3. <i>i-t,</i>	<i>e-a-t,</i>
PLUR.—1. <i>i-mus,</i>	<i>e-ā-mus,</i>
2. <i>i-tis,</i>	<i>e-ā-tis,</i>
3. <i>e-u-nt.</i>	<i>e-a-nt.</i>

### IMPERATIVE.

SING.—2. <i>i,</i>	<i>go thou,</i>	<i>i-tō,</i>	<i>thou shalt go,</i>
3.		<i>i-tō,</i>	<i>he shall go,</i>
PLUR.—2. <i>i-te,</i>	<i>go ye,</i>	<i>i-tōte,</i>	<i>ye shall go,</i>
3.		<i>e-u-ntō,</i>	<i>they shall go.</i>

## INDICATIVE.

I-ba-m, *I went*,I-b-ō, *I shall go*.I-vī (compos. -i-ī), *I have gone*,I-vera-m (ex-i-era-m), *I had gone*,

I-ver-ō (ex-i-er-ō).

INFINITIVE : PRES. i-re. PERF. I-visse (I-sse).

PARTICIPLES : PRES. i-e-us. G. e-u-ntis. FUT. ACT. i-tūr-us.

GERUND : e-u-nd-i.

SUPINE : i-tum, *to go*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## IMPERFECT.

I-re-m, *I were going*.

## FUTURE.

## PERFECT.

I-veri-m (ex-i-eri-m).

## PLUPERFECT.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

The Passive occurs in some of the compounds : circum-i-ri.  
Compounds of eo are : vēn-eo, *I am for sale*, and per-eo, *I perish*, which serve as passives to vēn-do and per-do, whose regular passives occur only in the forms vēnd-itus, vēnd-endus, and per-ditus.

The compound ambi-o, *I solicit*, follows the Fourth Conjugation throughout.

Like i-re, *to go*, are conjugated qui-re, *to be able*, and ne-qui-re, *to be unable*, which, however, are usual only in Present Indicative and Subjunctive.

3. fer-re, *to bear*.

186. The connecting-vowel i is dropped before t and s, and ē before r.

## INDICATIVE.

I bear.

SING.—1. fer-ō,

2. fer-s,

3. fer-t,

PLUR.—1. fer-i-mus,

2. fer-tis,

3. fer-u-nt.

## ACTIVE.

## PRESENT.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

I be bearing.

fer-a-m,

fer-ā-s,

fer-a-t,

fer-ā-mus,

fer-ā-tis,

fer-a-nt.

IMPERATIVE.

SING.—2. <i>fer,</i>	<i>bear thou,</i>	<i>fer-tō,</i>	<i>thou shalt bear,</i>
3.	.	<i>fer-tō,</i>	<i>he shall bear,</i>
PLUR.—2. <i>fer-te,</i>	<i>bear ye,</i>	<i>fer-tōte,</i>	<i>ye shall bear,</i>
3.		<i>fer-u-ntō,</i>	<i>they shall bear.</i>

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERFECT.

<i>fer-ēba-m,</i>	<i>I was bearing,</i>	<i>fer-re-m,</i>	<i>I were bearing.</i>
-------------------	-----------------------	------------------	------------------------

FUTURE.

<i>fer-a-m,</i>	<i>I shall bear.</i>
-----------------	----------------------

PERFECT.

<i>tul-i,</i>	<i>I have borne,</i>	<i>tul-eri-m.</i>
INFINITIVE: PRES. <i>fer-re.</i>		PERF. <i>tul-isse.</i>
PART. <i>fer-e-us,</i>	<i>bearing.</i>	FUT. ACT. <i>lā-tūr-us.</i>
SUPINE: <i>lā-tum</i>	<i>(t(o)lā-tum).</i>	

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>I am borne.</i>	<i>I be borne.</i>
SING.—1. <i>fer-o-r,</i>	<i>fer-a-r,</i>
2. <i>fer-ri-s,</i>	<i>fer-ā-ri-s,</i>
3. <i>fer-tur,</i>	<i>fer-ā-tur,</i>
PLUR.—1. <i>fer-i-mur,</i>	<i>fer-ā-mur,</i>
2. <i>fer-i-mini,</i>	<i>fer-ā-mini,</i>
3. <i>fer-u-ntur.</i>	<i>fer-a-ntur.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

SING.—2. <i>fer-re,</i>	<i>be thou borne,</i>	<i>fer-tor,</i>	<i>thou shalt be borne.</i>
3.		<i>fer-tor,</i>	<i>he shall be borne.</i>
PLUR.—2. <i>fer-i-mini,</i>	<i>be ye borne.</i>	<i>fer-u-ntor,</i>	<i>they shall be borne.</i>
3.			

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERF.:	fer-ēba-r,	fer-re-r.
FUTURE:	fer-a-r.	
PERFECT:	lā-tus sum,	lā-tus sim.
INF.	fer-ri,    to be borne.	GER.; fer-e-nd-us.

## COMPOUNDS.

af-fer-o,	af-fer-re,	at-tul-i,	al-lā-tum,	<i>to bear to.</i>
au-fer-o,	au-fer-re,	abs-tul-i.	ab-lā-tum,	<i>to bear away.</i>
con-fer-o,	con-fer-re,	con-tul-i,	col-lā-tum,	<i>to collect.</i>
dif-fer-o,	dif-fer-re,	dis-tul-i,	dī-lā-tum,	<i>to put off.</i>
ef-fer-o,	ef-fer-re,	ex-tul-i,	ē-lā-tum,	<i>to carry out.</i>
of-fer-o,	of-fer-re,	ob-tul-i,	ob-lā-tum,	<i>to offer.</i>

REMARK.—*Suffero, I undergo*, has the Perfect **sus-tin-ui** (**sus-tul-i**, **sub-lā-tum**, being appropriated to **toll-o**). (183.)

4. **ed-ere**, *to eat*.

187. In certain forms the connecting-vowels **i** and **e** are dropped before **s**, **t**, and **r**; **d** before **s** (**r**) is dropped or assimilated (as **ss**), and before **t** becomes **s**.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

	<i>I eat.</i>	<i>I be eating.</i>
SING.—1.	<b>ed-o</b> ,	<b>ed-a-m</b> ,
2.	<b>ed-i-s</b> , <b>ēs-s</b> ,	<b>ed-ā-s</b> ,
3.	<b>ed-i-t</b> , <b>ē-st</b> ,	<b>ed-a-t</b> ,
PLUR.—1.	<b>ed-i-mus</b> ,	<b>ed-ā-mus</b> ,
2.	<b>ed-i-tis</b> , <b>ēs-tis</b> ,	<b>ed-ā-tis</b> ,
3.	<b>ed-u-nt</b> .	<b>ed-a-nt</b> .

## IMPERFECT.

<b>ed-ēba-m</b> ,	<i>I ate,</i>	<b>ed-ere-m</b> , <b>ēs-sem</b> , <i>I were eating.</i>
-------------------	---------------	---

## IMPERATIVE.

SING.—2.	<b>ed-e</b> , <b>ēs</b> ,	<i>eat thou,</i>	<b>ed-i-to</b> , <b>ēs-tō</b> ,	<i>thou shalt eat,</i>
3.			<b>ed-i-to</b> , <b>ēs-tō</b> ,	<i>he shall eat,</i>
PLUR.—2.	<b>ed-i-te</b> , <b>ēs-te</b> ,	<i>eat ye,</i>	<b>editōte</b> , <b>ēs-tōte</b> ,	<i>ye shall eat.</i>
3.			<b>ed-u-ntō</b> ,	<i>they shall eat.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

**ed-ere**, **ēs-se**, *to eat*.

5. **fi-eri**, *to become*.

188. **Fi-o** is conjugated in the Present, Imperfect, and Future, according to the 4th Conjugation, but receives a connecting-vowel in the Subjunctive Imperfect and in the Infinitive, viz., **fi-e-rem**, *I were becoming*; **fi-e-ri**, *to become*. In these forms the **i** is short, but elsewhere it is long, even before another vowel.

The Infinitive ends in *-ri*, and the whole Verb in the Present-stem is treated as the Passive to *facio*, *I make*. The rest of the Passive is formed regularly from *facio*.

## ACTIVE.

PRES. *facio, I make.*IMPERF. *faciēbam, I made.*FUTURE. *faciam, I shall make.*PERFECT. *fēcī.*PLUPERF. *fēceram.*F. PERF. *fēcero.*

## PASSIVE.

IND. *fio, I am made, I become.**fis, fit (fimus, fitis), fiunt.**fiēbam, I was made, I became.**fiam, I shall be made (become).**factus sum.**factus eram.**factus erō.*SUB. *fiam, fias, fiat, etc.**fierem, fierēs, etc.*INF. PERF. *factum esse, to have become.*FUT. *futūrum esse or fore.*F. P. *factum fore.*

REMARK.—The compounds of *facio* with Prepositions change the *a* of the stem into *i*, and form the Passive regularly from the same stem : *perficio, I achieve*, Pass. *perficior*; *interfacio*, Pass. *interficior, I am destroyed*. But when compounded with words other than prepositions, *facio* retains its *a*, and uses *fio* as its Passive :

*patefacio, I lay open*, Pass. *patefio* : *calefacio, I warm*, Pass. *calefio*.

The accent remains the same as in the simple verb : *calefācis, thou warmest*.

189. 6. *Vel-le, to be willing.*

*nōlle, to be unwilling ; mālle, to be willing rather.*

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

*volo,**vis,**vult,**volumus,**vultis,**volunt.**nōlo,**nōn vis,**nōn vult,**nōlumus,**nōn vultis,**nōlunt.**mālo,**māvīs,**māvult,**mālumus,**māvultis,**mālunt.*

## IMPERFECT.

*volēbam,**nōlēbam,**mālēbam.*

## FUTURE.

*volam,**volēs,**nōlam,**nōlēs,**mālam,**mālēs.*

## PERFECT.

*volui,**nōlui,**mālui.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

velim,	nōlim,	mālim,
velis,	nōlis,	mālis,
velit,	nōlit,	mālit,
velimus,	nōlimus,	mālimus,
velitis,	nōlitis,	mālitis,
velint.	nōlint.	mālint.

## IMPERFECT.

vellem,	nōllem,	māllem.
---------	---------	---------

IMP.: SING.—nōli, nōlitō.  
PLUR.—nōlite, nōlitōte, nōluntō.

INF. PRES. velle, nōlle, mälle.  
PRES. voluisse, nōluisse, māluisse.  
PART. volens. nōlens.

## 190.

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

1. ājo, *I say ay.*

IND. PRES. 1. ājo, 2. ais, 3. ait. PLUR.—3. ājunt.  
IMPERF. ājēbam, etc.

SUBJ. ājās, ājat, ājant.

PART. ājens (as adj.), *affirmative.*

2. inquam, *I say, quoth I.*

IND. PRES. SING.—1. inquam, 2. inquis, 3. inquit.  
PLUR.—1. inquimus, 2. inquitis, 3. inquitunt.  
IMPERF. 3. inquitēbat.  
FUT. 2. inquitēs, 3. inquitiet.  
PERF. 2. inquisti, 3. inquitit.  
PLUR.—2. inquistis.

3. fā-ri, *to speak.*

PRES. fātur. FUT. fābor, fābitur. PERF. fātus sum, etc. SUP. fātū  
IMPER. fāre. GER. fandī, fandō. PART. PRES. fantis, fantem.

## 4. avē-re, salvē-re, valē-re.

avē,	salvē,	salvēbis, <i>hail thou!</i>	valē,	<i>farewell.</i>
avēte,	salvēte,	<i>hail ye!</i>	valēte,	<i>farewell.</i>
avēre,	salvēre.		valēre.	
	age, agite,	<i>come!</i>	apage, begone!	
	cedo,	<i>give!</i>	PLUR.—cette,	

## 5.

In use only in the Perfect-stem are **coepl**, *I have begun*, to which **incipio** serves as a Present; **memini**, *I remember*; **ōdi**, *I hate*; **nōvī** (from **nōsco**, see 179), *I know, am aware*; **consuēvī** (from **consuesco**), *I am wont*.

IND. **coepl**, *I have begun*.

SUBJ. **coeperim**,

**coeperam**,

**coepissem**.

**coeperō**.

INF. **coepisse**, *to have begun*.

IND. **memini**, *I remember*,

SUBJ. **meminerim**,

**memineram**,

**meminissem**.

**meminerō**.

INF. **meminisse**, *to remember*.

IMPER. SING.—**mementō**.

PLUR.—**mementōte**.

IND. **ōdi**, *I hate*,

SUBJ. **ōderim**,

**ōderam**,

**ōdissem**,

**ōderō**.

INF. **ōdisse**, *to hate*.

**coepl** and **ōdi** have passive forms of the same meaning :

**coeptus sum**, *I have begun* (which is used with the Passive Inf.).

**ōsus sum**, *I hate*.

## 191. OBSOLETE FORMS OF THE VERB.

1. The Future of Verbs in **-lo** is sometimes formed like **ībo**, *I shall go* : **venībo**, *I shall come* ; **scībo**, *I shall know*.

2. The Pres. Inf. Pass. was originally longer by **-er** : **monstrārier**, **miscērier**, **admittier**, **experīrier**.

3. The Pres. Subj. Act. had an ending **-im** (compare **sim**, **velim**) : **edim**, **edīs**, **edit**, **edint**, *eat* ; **effodint**, *dig out* ; **coquint**, *cook*. Stem vowels were dropped : **temperint**, **carint**. **Dare** formed **duim** ; so, **perduim**, **crēduim**.

4. In older poetry **īe** of the Imperf. Ind. Act. 4th conj. is sometimes contracted into **ī** : **scībam**.

5. In the Perfect stem there was a shorter formation. So in the 2 Pers. Perf. Act. Ind. 3 conj., **dixti**, **dixtis** (only from mute stems). The terminations **-sim** and **-sem** (Perf. and Pluperf. Subj.), **-so** (Fut. Perf.), **-se** (Perf. Inf.), are added to the verb stem. After a vowel **s** becomes **ss**. So **dixim**, **faxim**, **adaxim**, **rapsim** ; **locāssim**, **negāssim** ; **faxem**, **extinxem** ; **faxo**, **capso**, **jusso**, **amāssō** ; **surrexe**, **prōtraxe**, **dixe**. The Inf. forms of the vowel conjugations coincide with **amāsse**, **fīsse**, **audisse**, as **creāsti**, **dēlēsti**, **audīsti** with **dixti**. A Future Inf. in **-sere** is also found : **impetrāsere**, **prohibēssere**. Compare, however, **facessere**, **capessere**.

The antiquated forms of **facio** are often found in old formulae.

6. Old forms of **esse**.

(1) **siem**, **siēs**, **siet**, Pr. Subj.

(2) **escit**, **escunt**, Inchoative for Fut.

(3) **fuam**, **fuās**, **fuat**, **fuant**, Pr. Subj. (stem **fu-**).

(4) **fūvī**, **fōvī**, Pf. Ind.



## INDEX OF VERBS.

THIS Index is intended to serve as a supplement also, and contains many verbs not mentioned in the text, defectives in supine or in perfect and supine, compounds, isolated forms, rare words.

## A.

- Ab-do, ere, -didī, -ditum, 177.  
 Ab-igo (AGO), ere, -ēgī, -actum, 159.  
 Ab-jicio (JACIO), ere, -jēcī, -jectum, 159.  
 Ab-luo, ere, -luī, -lūtum, 173.  
 Ab-nuo, ere, -nuī (-nuitūrus), 173.  
 Ab-oleo, ēre, ēvī, itum, 127.  
 Ab-olēsko, ere, -olēvī, 181.  
 Ab-ripio (RAPIO), ere, -ripuī, -reptum, 176. [177.  
 Abs-condo (DO), ere, -dī (-didī), ditum,  
 Ab-sisto, ere, -stitī, 178.  
 Ab-sum, -esse, ab-fuī, & fuī, 113.  
 Ac-cendo, ere, -cendī, -censum, 164.  
 Ac-cido (CADO), ere, -cidī, 168.  
 Ac-cipio (CAPIO), ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 157.  
 Ac-colo (COLO), ere, -coluī, -cultum, 176.  
 Ac-cumbo, ere, -cubuī, -cubitum, 176.  
 Ac-curro, ere, ac-curī, -cursum, 170.  
 Aceo, ēre, acuī, *to be sour*.  
 Acēsko, ere, acuī, 181, *to get sour*.  
 Ac-quo (QUAERO), ere, -quīsivī, -quīsītum, 176.  
 Acuo, ere, acuī, acūtum, 173.  
 Ad-do, ere, -didī, -ditum, 177.  
 Ad-imo (EMO), ere, -ēmi, -emtum, 131.  
 Ad-ipiscor, I, ad-eptus sum, 175, 182.  
 Ad-olēsko, ere, -olēvī, -ultum, 181.  
 Ad-orior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, 184.  
 Ad-scisco, ere, -scīvī, -scītum, 181.  
 Ad-sisto, ere, -stitī, 178.  
 Ad-spicio, ere, -spexī, -spectum, 161.  
 Ad-sto, -stāre, -stitī, 178.  
 Ad-sum, ad-esse, ad-fuī, af-fuī, 113.  
 Aegresco, ere, *to fall sick*.  
 Af-fero, -ferre, at-tulī, al-lātum, 186.  
 Age, 190.  
 Ag-gredior, -gredī, -gressus, 175.  
 Ag-nōsko, ere, a-gnōvī, a-gnītum (agnōtūrus), 179.  
 Ago, ere, ēgī, actum, 159.  
 Ājo, 190.  
 Albeo, ēre, *to be white*.  
 Algeo, ēre, alsī, 160.  
 Al-licio, ere, -lexī, -lectum, 161.  
 Al-luo, ere, -luī, lūtum, 173.  
 Alo, ere, aluī, al(i)tum, 176.  
 Amb-igo (AGO), ere, 159.  
 Amb-io (EO), Ire, Ivī (II), Itum, 185.  
 Amicio, Ire, (amicuī, amixī,) amictum, 176.  
 Amo, āre, āvī, ātum. See 119.  
 Amplector, I, amplexus, 175.  
 An-go, ere, anxī, 160.  
 An-nuo, ere, annuī (annūtum), 173.  
 Ante-cello, ere, 176.  
 Ante-sto, -stāre, -stellī, 178.  
 Apage, 190.  
 A-perio, -Ire, aperuī, apertum, 176.  
 Apiscor, I, aptus sum. See adipiscor, 175.  
 Ap-peto, ere, Ivī, Itum, 176.  
 Ap-plico (176), āre, -plicuī, -plicitum, (-plicāvī, -plicātum).  
 Ap-pōno (179), ere, -posuī, -positum.  
 Arceo, ēre, arcuī { arcus, (comp. 128) { artus (adj.)  
 Arcesso (accerso), ere, arcessivī, -itum, 176.  
 Ardeo, ēre, arsi, arsum, 165.  
 Arēsko, ere, āruī, 181, *to become dry*.  
 Arguo, ere, arguī, (argūtum,) 173.  
 (arguitūrus,) 173.  
 Ar-ripio (RAPIO), ere, uī, -reptum, 176.  
 A-scendo (SCANDO), ere, I, scensum, 164.  
 A-spicio, ere, a-spexī, a-spectum, 161.  
 As-sentior, Irī, assensus sum, 175.  
 As-sideo (SEDEO), ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, 166.  
 As-suesco, ere, -suāvī, -suētum, 179.  
 At-texo, ere, -texuī, -textum, 172.  
 At-tineo (TENEEO), ēre, uī, -tentum, 128.

At-tingo (TANGO), ere, attigī, attactum, 162.

At-tollo, ere, *to raise up*.

Audeo, ēre, ausus sum, 182.

Audio, ire, īvi, Itum. *See* 136.

Au-fero, -ferre, abstuli, ablātum, 186.

Augeo, ēre, auxi, auctum, 156.

Avē, 190.

## B.

Balbūtio, ire, *to stutter*.

Batuo, ere, ui, *to pummel, fence*.

Bibo, ere, bibi, (bibitum), 183.

## C.

Cado, ere, cecidi, cāsum, 168.

Caecūtio, ire, *to be blind*.

Caedo, ere, cecidi, caesum, 168.

Calefacio, ere, -feci, -factum, 159, 188.

Calēscō, ere, calui, *to get warm*.

Calleo, ēre, ui, *to be skilled*.

Calveo, ēre, *to be bald*.

Candeo, ēre, ui, *to shine*.

Cāneo, ēre, *to be gray*.

Cano, ere, cecini, cantum, 170.

Capesso, ere, capessiui, Itum, 176.

Capio, ere, cēpi, captum, 157. *See* 139.

Carpo, ere, carpsi, carptum, 158.

Caveo, ēre, cāvī, cautum, 174.

Cēdo, ere, cessi, cēssum, 166.

Cēnātus, 182, R. 1.

Cēnseo, ēre, ui, cēnsus, 128.

Cerno, ere, (crēvi), (crētum), 180.

Cieo, { ciēre, cīvi, cītum, 176.

Cio, { ciēre, cīvi, cītum, 176.

Cingo, ere, cinxi, cinctum, 160.

Circum-do, -dare, -dedi, -datum, 177.

Circum-sisto, ere, steti, 178.

Circum-sto, stāre, steti, 178.

Claudo, ere, clausi, clausum, 165.

Clepo, ere, clepsi, cleptum, 158, 183.

Co-alēscō, ere, -alui, (-alitur), 181.

Co-arguo, ere, ui, 178.

Co-emo, ere, -emi, -em(p)tum, 169.

Coepi, coepisse, 190.

Co-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvi, -gnitum, 156, 179.

Cō-go (AGO), ere, co-egi, co-actum, 159.

Col-ldo (LAEDO), ere, -lisi, -lissum, 165.

Col-ligo (LEGO), ere, -lēgi, -lectum, 159.

Col-luceo, ēre, -lūxi, 160.

Colo, ere, colui, cultum, 176.

Com-būro, ere, -būsi, -bustum, 171.

Com-edo, ere, -ēdi, -esum (estum), 164.

Comitatus, 182, R. 2.

Comminiscor, i, commentus sum, 175.

Com-moveo, ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, 174.

Cō-mo (EMO), ere, cōmpsi, cōmptum, 169.

Com-parco, ere, -parsi, -parsum, 162.

Com-pello, ere, com-puli, -pulsum, 168, 170.

Com-perio (PARIO), ire, com-peri, com-per-tum, 170.

Compesco, ere, ui, 176.

Com-pingo, ere, -pēgi, -pactum, 159.

Com-plector, i, com-plexus, 175.

Com-pleo, ēre, ēvi, etum, 127.

Com-primo (PREMO), ere, -pressi, -pressum, 183.

Com-pungo, ere, -punxi, -punctum, 162.

Con-cido (CADO), ere, -cidi, 168.

Con-cido (CAEDO), ere, -cidi, -cisum, 168.

Con-cino (CANO), ere, -cinui, 176.

Concitus (CIEO), 176.

Con-clūdo (CLAUDO), ere, -clūsi, -clūsum, 165.

Con-cupiscō, ere, -cupivi, cupitum, 181.

Con-cutio (QUATIO), ere, -cussi, -cussum, 167.

Con-do, ere, -didi, -ditum, 177.

Con-fercio (FARCIO), ire (fersi), fertum, 160.

Con-fero, -ferre, -tuli, collātum, 186.

Con-ficio (FACIO), ere, -feci, -fectum, 159, 188.

Con-fiteor (FATEOR), ēri, -fessus, 175.

Con-fringo (FRANGO), ere, -frēgi, -fractum, 159.

Con-gruo, ere, congrui, 173.

Con-jicio (JACIO), ere, -jeci, -jectum, 159.

Conjūrātus, 182, R. 1.

Con-niveo, ere, connixi, 163.

Con-quirō (QUAERO), ere, -quisivi, -quisitum, 176.

Con-sero, ere, -serui, -sertum, 176.  
 Con-sero, ere, -sēvi, -situm, 180.  
 Con-sideratus, 182, R. 1.  
 Con-sido, ere, consēdi, -sessum, 167.  
 Con-sisto, ere, -stiti, -stitum, 178.  
 Con-spicio, ere, -spexi, -spectum, 161.  
 Con-stituo (STATUO), ere, ui, -stitum, 173.  
 Con-sto, -stāre, -stiti, (constāturus), 178.  
 Con-suesco, ere, -suēvi, -suētum, 179, 190.  
 Consulo, ere, consului, -sultum, 176.  
 Con-temno, ere, -tem(p)si, -tem(p)-tum, 169.  
 Con-texo, ere, -texui, -textum, 173.  
 Con-tineo (TENE0, 128), ēre, ui, -tentum.  
 Con-tingo (TANGO), ere, contigi, contactum, 162.  
 Convalēscō, ere, -valui, -valitum, 181.  
 Coquo, ere, coxi, coctum, 161, 183.  
 Cor-ripio (RATIO), ere, -ripui, -reptum, 176.  
 Cor-ruo, ere, corruui, 173.  
 Crēbresco, ere, crēbrui, *to get frequent.*  
 Crē-do, ere, -didi, -ditum, 177.  
 Crepo, āre, crepui, crepitum, 176.  
 Crēscō, ere, crēvi, crētum, 179.  
 Cubo, āre, cubui, cubitum, 176.  
 Cūdo, ere cūdi, cūsum, 167.  
 Cupio, ere, cupiui, cupitum, 176.  
 Curro, ere, cucurri, cursum, 170.

## D.

Dē-cerno, ere, -crēvi, -crētum, 180.  
 Dē-cerpo (CARPO), ere, si, tum, 158.  
 Dē-do, dēdere, dēdidi, dēditum, 177.  
 Dē-fendo, ere, -fendi, -fensum, 164.  
 Dēfetiscor, I, *to be worn out.*  
 Dē-go (AGO), ere, 159.  
 Dēleo. *See Paradigm, 123-126.*  
 Dē-ligo (LEGO), ere, -legi, -lectum, 159.  
 Dē-mo (EMO), ere, dēmpsi, dēmptum, 169.  
 Dēpello (170), ere, dēpuli, dēpulsum.  
 Dē-primo (PREMO, 183), ere, -pressi, pressum.  
 Dēpso, ere, depui, depstum, 172.  
 Dē-scendo (SCANDO), ere, -scendi, -scensum, 164.  
 Dē-sero, ere, -serui, -sertum, 176.

Dē-silio (SALIO), īre, (ii), (desultum), ui, 176.  
 Dē-sino, ere, dēsivi, dēsitum, 179.  
 Dē-sipio (SAPIO), -ere, 176.  
 Dē-sisto, ere, -stiti, -stitum, 178.  
 Dē-spicio, ere, -spexi, -spectum, 161.  
 Dē-sum, -esse, -fui, 113.  
 Dē-tendo (168), ere, -tendi, -tentum.  
 Dē-tineo (TENE0, 128), ēre, -ui, -tentum.  
 Dē-vertor, -i, 182.  
 Dico, ere, dixi, dictum, 160.  
 Dif-fero, -ferre, distuli, dilatum, 186.  
 Di-gnōscō (NŌSCO, 179), ere, -gnōvi.  
 Di-ligo, ere, -lexi, -lectum, 161.  
 Di-mico, āre, āvi, atum, 176.  
 Di-rigo, ere, -rexi, -rectum, 161.  
 Dir-imo (EMO, 169), ere, -emi, -emtum.  
 Disco, ere, didici, 162.  
 Dis-crepo, āre, -crepui (āvi), 176.  
 Dis-cumbo (176), ere, -cubui, -cubitum.  
 Dis-pesco, ere, [-pescui,] -pestum, *to divide.*  
 Dis-sideo (SEDEO, 166), ēre, -sēdi.  
 Di-stinguo, ere, -stinxi, -stinctum, 160.  
 Di-sto, -stāre, 178.  
 Ditesco, ere, *to grow rich.*  
 Divido, ere, divisi, divisum, 167.  
 Do, dare, dedi, datum, 177.  
 Docēo, ēre, docui, doctum, 128.  
 Domo, āre, ui, itum, 176.  
 Dūco, ere, dūxi, dūctum, 160.  
 Dulcesco, ere, *to grow sweet.*  
 Dūresco, ere, dūrui, *to grow hard.*

## E.

Edo, ere, ēdi, ēsum, 164, 187.  
 Ē-do (DO), ēdere, ēdidi, ēditum, 177.  
 Ef-fero, -ferre, extuli, elatum, 186.  
 Egeo, āre, egui, *to want.*  
 Ē-licio, ere, -licui, -licitum, 161.  
 Ē-ligo (LEGO), ere, -legi, -lectum, 159.  
 Ē-mico (176), āre, ui (āturus).  
 Ēmineo, āre, ui, *to stand out.*  
 Emo, ere, emi, emtum, 169. *See 181.*  
 Ē-neco, āre, ānecui, ānectum, 176.  
 Eo, īre, īvi, itum, 185.  
 Ē-vādo, ere, ēvāsi, ēvāsum, 165.  
 Ē-vānesco, ere, ēvānuī, 181.  
 Ex-ardēscō, ere, exarsi, exarsum, 181.

**Ex-cello**, ere, *ui* (excelsus), 176.  
**Excitus**, 176.  
**Ex-clūdo** (CLAUDO), ere, -*si*, -sum, 165.  
**Ex-curro** (170), ere, excucurri, -cursum.  
**Ex-olēso**, ere, -olēvi, -olētum, 181.  
**Ex-pello** (170), ere, -puli, -pulsum.  
**Expergiscor**, *i*, experrectus sum, 175.  
**Ex-perior**, *iri*, -pertus sum, 175, 182, R. 2.  
**Ex-pleo**, ēre, ēvi, ētum, 127.  
**Ex-plico**, āre, *ui* (āvi), itum (ātum), 176.  
**Ex-plōdo** (PLAUDO), ere, -*si*, -sum, 165.  
**Exsecrātus**, 182, R. 2.  
**Ex-stinguo**, ere, -stinxi, -stinctum, 160.  
**Ex-sisto**, ere, -stiti, -stitum, 178.  
**Ex-sto**, āre (exstāturus), 178.  
**Ex-tendo**, ere, *di*, -sum (-tum), 168.  
**Ex-tollo**, ere.  
**Ex-uo**, ere, -*ui*, -ūtum, 173.

## F.

**Facesso** (176), ere, *ivi* (-i), itum.  
**Facio**, ere, feci, factum, 159, 188.  
**Fallo**, ere, fefelli, falsum, 170.  
**Farcio**, ere, farsī, fartum (-sum), 160.  
**Fari**, 190.  
**Fateor**, ēri, fassus sum, 175.  
**Fatisco**, ere, *to fall apart*.  
**Fatiscor**, *i* (fessus, *adj.*).  
**Faveo**, ere, fāvi, fautum, 174.  
**Ferio**, ire, *to strike*.  
**Fero**, ferre, tuli, lātum, 183, 186.  
**Ferveo**, ēre, fervi (ferui), 174.  
**Fido**, ere, fīsus sum, 182.  
**Figō**, ere, fixi, fixum, 160.  
**Findo**, ere, fidi, fīsum, 168.  
**Fingo**, ere, finxi, fictum, 160.  
**Fio**, fieri, factus sum, 188.  
**Flecto**, ere, flexi, flexum, 160.  
**Fleo**, ēre, ēvi, ētum, 127.  
**Fligo**, ere, flixi, flictum, 160.  
**Flōreo**, ēre, *ui*, *to bloom*.  
**Fluo**, ere, fluxi (fluxus, *adj.*), 163.  
**Fodio**, ere, fōdi, fossum, 166.  
**Forem**, 112.  
**Foveo**, ēre, fōvi, fōtum, 174.  
**Frango**, ere, frēgi, fractum, 159.  
**Fremo**, ere, *ui*, itum, 176.  
**Frendo** (eo), ere (*ui*), frēsūm, fresum, 176.

**Frico**, āre, *ui*, frictum (ātum), 176.  
**Frigeo**, ēre (frixī), 160.  
**Frigo**, ere, frixi, frictum (frixum), 160.  
**Frondeo**, ēre, *ui*, *to be leafy*.  
**Fruor**, *i*, fructus (fruitus) sum, 175.  
**Fugio**, ere, fugi, fugitum, 159.  
**Fulcio**, ere, fulsi, fultum, 160.  
**Fulgeo**, ēre, fulsi, 160.  
**Fundo**, ere, fudi, fūsum, 164.  
**Fungor**, *i*, functus sum, 175.  
**(Furo, def.)**, furere, *to rave*.

## G.

**Gannio**, ire, *to yelp*.  
**Gaudeo**, ēre, gāvisus sum, 182.  
**Gemo**, ere, *ui*, itum, 176.  
**Gero**, ere, gessi, gestum, 171.  
**Gigno**, ere, genui, genitum, 178.  
**Glisco**, ere, *to swell*.  
**Gradior**, *i*, gressus sum, 175.

## H.

**Haereo**, ēre, haesi, haesum, 171.  
**Haurio**, ire, hausi, haustum, 171.  
 (hausurus, hausturus),  
**Hisco**, ere, *to yawn*.  
**Horreo**, ēre, *ui*, *to stand on end*.  
**Hortor**, āri, ātus sum, 141, 142.

## I.

**Īco**, ere, icī, ictum, 161.  
**I-gnōsco**, ere, -gnōvi, -gnōtum, 179.  
**Il-licio**, ere, -lexi, -lectum, 161.  
**Il-lido** (LAEDO), ere, -lisi, -līsum, 165.  
**Imbuo**, ere, *ui*, itum, 173.  
**Imitātus**, 182, R. 2.  
**Immineo**, ēre, *to overhang*.  
**Im-pingo** (PANGO, 160), ere, -pēgi, -pactum.  
**In-calēso**, ere, -calui, 181.  
**In-cendo**, ere, -cendi, -censum, 164.  
**In-cesso**, ere, *ivi* (i), 176.  
**In-cido** (CADO, 168), ere, -cidi, -cāsum.  
**In-cido** (CAEDO, 168), ere, -cidi, -cīsum.  
**In-cipio** (CAPIO, 157), ere, -cepī, -ceptum.  
**In-crepo** (CREPO, 176), āre, *ui*, itum.  
**In-cumbo** (176), ere, -cubi, -cubitum.

In-cutio (QUATIO, 167), ere, -cussi, -cussum.

Ind-igeo (EGEO), ēre, uī, *to want*.

Ind-ipiscor, I, indeptus sum, 175.

In-do, ere, -didi, -ditum, 177.

**Indulgeo, ēre, indulsi** (indultum), 160.

In-duo, ere, -dūi, -dūtum, 173.

Ineptio, īre, *to be silly*.

Ingemisco, ere, ingemuī, 181.

Ingruo, ere, ut. *See congruo*, 173.

In-nōtesco (181), ere, nōtūī.

In-olēscō, ere, -olēvī, -olitum, 181.

Inquam, 190.

In-sideo (SEDEO, 166), ēre, -sēdī, -sesum.

In-sisto, ere, -stitī, 178.

In-spicio, ere, -spexī, -spectum, 161.

Inter-ficio, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, 159.

In-sto, āre, -stitī, (instātūrus), 178.

In-sum, -esse, -fui, 113.

Intel-ligo, ere, -lexī, lectum, 161, 183.

Inter-imo (EMO), ere, -ēmī, -emtum, 169.

Inter-pungo, ere, -punxī, -punctum, 162.

Inter-sto, āre, -stetī, 178.

Inter-um, -esse, -fui, 113.

Inveterasco, ere, -āvī, 181.

In-vādo, ere, invāsī, -vāsum, 165.

Irāscor, I, irātus sum, 181.

## J.

Jaceo, ēre, jacuī, *to lie*.

Jacio, ere, jēcī, jactum, 159.

Jubeo, ēre, jussī, jussum, 183.

Jungo, ere, junxī, junctum, 160.

Jūrātus, 182, R. 1.

Juvo, āre, jūvī, jūtum (juvātūrus), 174.

## L.

Lābor, I, lapsus sum, 175.

Lacesso, ere, lacessivī, -itum, 176.

Lacio, 161.

Laedo, ere, laesī, laesum, 165.

Lambo, ere, I, 158, 183.

Languo, ēre, I, *to be languid*.

Lateo, ēre, uī, *to lie hid*.

Lavo, āre (ere), lāvī, lautum, lōtum, lavātum, 174.

Lego, ere, legī, lectum, 159.

Libet, libere, libuit (libitum est), *it pleases*.

Licet, licere, licuit (licitum est), *it is permitted*.

Lingo, ere, linxī, ~~linctum~~, 160.

Lino, ere, livī (~~levī~~), litum, 179.

**Linquo, ere, liqui**, 159.

Liqueo, ēre, licuī, *to be clear*.

Liveo, ēre, *to be livid*.

Loquor, I, locutus sum. *Paradigm*, 145, 146.

Lūceo, ēre, lūxī, 160.

Lūdo, ere, lūsi, lūsum, 165.

Lūgeo, ēre, lūxī, 160.

Luo, ere, luī { lūtum, *to wash*, 173.  
                          { luitum, *to atone for*.

## M.

Maereo, ēre, *to grieve*.

Mālo, malle, māluī, 189.

Mando, ere, mandī, mansum, 164.

Maneo, ēre, mansī, mansum, 183.

Medeor, ēri, *to heal*.

Memini, 190.

Mentior, īri, itus. *Paradigm*, 147.

Mereor, ēri, meritus sum, 182, R. 2.

Mergo, ere, mersi, mersum, 160.

Mētior, īri, mensus sum, 183.

Meto, ere, messuī (rare), messum, 183.

Metuo, ere, uī, 173.

Mico, āre, uī, 176.

Minuo, ere, minuī, minūtum, 173.

Misceo, ēre, uī, mixtum, (mistum), 128.

Misereor, ēri miseritus, (misertus) sum, 175.

Mitto, ere, misi, missum, 166.

Molo, ere, moluī, molitum, 176.

Moneo, ēre, uī, itum, 129, 130.

Mordeo, ēre, momordi, morsum, 168.

Morior, mori, mortuus moritūrus sum, 183.

Moveo, ēre, movī, mōtum, 174.

Mulceo, ēre, mulsi, mulsum, 160.

Mulgeo, ēre, mulsi, mulsum(ctum), 160.

Mungo, ere, munxī, munctum, 160.

## N.

Nanciscor, I, nactus (nactus), 175.

Nāscor, I, nātus sum (nāscitūrus), 181.

Neco, āre, avi, ātum, 176.

Necto, ere, nexī (nexuī), nexum, 160.

Neg-ligo, ere, -lexī, -lectum, 161.

Necopinātus, 182, R. 2.

Neo, nēre, nēvī, nētum, 127.

Nequeo, ire, 188.  
 Nōtesco, ere, nōtūi, 181.  
 Ningō, ere, nīnxi, 160.  
 Niteo, ēre, uī, *to shine*.  
 Nitor, ī, nixus (nīsus) sum, 175.  
 Nōlo, nōlle, nōlūi, 189.  
 Noceo, ēre, uī (nocitūrus), *to be hurtful*.  
 Nōsco, ere, nōvī, nōtum, 179.  
 Nūbo, ere, nūpsī, nūptum, 158.

## O.

Ob-do, ere, -didī, -dītum, 177.  
 Ob-dormisco, ere, -dormīvī, -dormī-  
 tum, 181.  
 Obliviscor, ī, oblitus sum, 175.  
 Ob-sideo (SEDEO, 166), ēre, -sēdī, -ses-  
 sum.  
 Ob-sisto, ere, -stitī, -stitum, 178.  
 Obs olēsko, ere, -olēvī, -olētum, 181.  
 Ob-sto, stāre, stitī (obstātūrus), 178.  
 Obtineo (TENEEO, 128), ēre, -tinūi,  
 -tentum.  
 Oc-cido, (CADO), ere, -cidī, -cāsum,  
 168.  
 Oc-cido (CAEDO), ere, -cidī, -cīsum,  
 168.  
 Oc-cino (CANO), ere, -cinūi, 176.  
 Oc-cipio (CAPIO), (157), ere, -cēpī,  
 -ceptum.  
 Occulo, ere, occulūi, occultum, 176.  
 Odī, *def.*, 190.  
 Of-fendo (164), ere, -fendī, -fensum.  
 Of-fero, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum, 186.  
 Oleo, ēre, uī, *to smell*.  
 Olēsko. *See* 181.  
 Operio, ire, operūi, opertum, 176.  
 Opinātus, 182, R. 2.  
 Opperior, īrī, oppertus (*or* Itus).  
*Comp.* 175, 5.  
 Ordior, īrī, orsus sum, 175.  
 Orior, īrī, ortus sum (oritūrus), 184.  
 Os-tendo, ere, -tendī, -ten-sum (-ten-  
 tus), 168.

## P.

Paciscor, ī, pactus sum, 175, 182, R. 2.  
 Palleo, -ēre, -uī, *to be pale*.  
 Pando, ere, pandī, passum (pansum),  
 166.  
 Pango, ere { pepigī, 162, } pactum.  
 { panxi, 160, }  
 Parco, ere, peperci (parsī), parsūrus,  
 162.  
 Pario, ere, peperī, parlum (paritūrus),  
 170.

Partior, īrī, itus, 182, R. 2.  
 Pasco, ere, pāvī, pastum, 179.  
 Pate-facio, ere, -feci, -factum, 188.  
 Pateo, ēre, uī, *to be open*.  
 Patior, ī, passus sum, 184.  
 Paveo, ēre, pāvī, 174.  
 Pecto, ere, pexī, pexum, 160.  
 Pel-licio, -licere, (licūi), -lectum, 161.  
 Pello, ere, pepulī, pulsum, 170.  
 Pendeo, ēre, pependī, 168.  
 Pendo, ere, pependī, pensum, 168.  
 Per-cello, ere, perculī, perculsum,  
 170.  
 Percenseo (CENSEO), ēre, -cēnsūi,  
 -cēnsūm.  
 Percitus (CITEO), 176.  
 Per-do, ere, -didī, -dītum, 177.  
 Per-eo, ire, perī, itum, 185.  
 Per-ficio, ere, -feci, fectum, 188.  
 Pergo (REGO), ere, perrexī, perrec-  
 tum, 161.  
 Per-petior (PATIOR, 175), ī, perpersus  
 sum.  
 Per-spicio, ere, -spexī, -spectum, 161.  
 Per-sto, stāre, -stitī, 178.  
 Per-tineo (TENEEO, 128), ēre, uī.  
 Pessum-do, -dare, -dedī, -datum,  
 177.  
 Peto, ere, īvī (it), Itum, 156, 176.  
 Piget, pigēre, piguit, pigitum est, *it  
 irks*.  
 Pingo, ere, pinxi, pictum, 160.  
 Pinso, ere, uī (ī), pinsitum (pistum,  
 pinsum), 172.  
 Plango, ere, planxi, planctum, 160.  
 Plaudo, ere, plausī, plausum, 165.  
 Plecto, ere, plexī, plexum, 160.  
 Plector, ī, *to be punished*.  
 Pleo. *See* 127.  
 Plico, ēre, uī (āvī), itum (ātum), 176.  
 Pluo, ere, pluit,  
 plūvit, 173.  
 Polleo, ēre, *to be potent*.  
 Pōno (169), ere, posuī, positum, 179.  
 Posco, ere, poposci, 162.  
 Pos-sideo (SEDEO, 166), ere, -sēdī, ses-  
 sum.  
 Pos-sum, posse, potuī, 115.  
 Pōto, ēre, āvī, pōtum, pōtātum, 176.  
 Pōtus, 182, R. 1.  
 Prae-cello, ere, -cellūi, 176.  
 Prae-cino, ere, cinūi, 176.  
 Prae-curro, ere, -cucurī, -cursum,  
 170.  
 Prae-sideo (SEDEO, 166), ēre, sēdī.

Præ-sum, -esse, -fui, 113.  
 Præ-sto, -stāre, -stiti, (-stātūrus), 178.  
 Prandeo, ēre, prandi, pransum, 164, 182, R. 1.  
 Prehendo, ere, prehendi, prehensum, 164.  
 Premo, ere, pressi, pressum, 183.  
 Prōd-igo (AGO, 159), ere, -ēgi.  
 Prō-do, ere, -didi, -ditum, 177.  
 Pro-fiscor, I, profectus sum, 175.  
 Pro-fiteor (FATEOR, 175), ēri, -fessus sum.  
 Prōmo (EMO), ere, prōmpsi, prōmp-tum, 169.  
 Prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfui, 114.  
 Prō-tendo (TENDO, 168), ere, -tendi, -tentum, -tensum.  
 Psallo, ere, I, 170.  
 Pudet, ēre, puduit, puditum est, *it shames*.  
 Puerāscō, ere, *to become a boy*.  
 Pungo, ere, pupugi, punctum, 162.

## Q.

Quaero, } ere, quaesivi, quaesitum,  
 Quaeso, } 176.  
 Quatio, ere, (quassi), quassum, 166.  
 Queo, quire, 185.  
 Queror, queri, questus sum, 175.  
 Quiēscō, ere, quievi, quiētum, 179.

## R.

Rādo, ere, rāsi, rāsum, 165.  
 Rapio, ere, rapui, raptum, 176.  
 Raucio, ire, rausi, rausum, 188.  
 Re-cēnseo (CENSEO, 128), ēre, -cēnsui, -cēnsus (recēnsitum).  
 Recrūdēscō, ere, -crūdui, *to get raw again*.  
 Red-arguo (173), ere, -argui.  
 Red-do, ere, -didi, -ditum, 177.  
 Red-igo (AGO), ere, -ēgi, -actum, 159.  
 Re-fello (FALLO, 170), ere, refelli.  
 Re-fero (183, 186), -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.  
 Rego, ere, rexi, rectum, 161, 183.  
 Re-linguo, ere, -liqui, -lictum, 159.  
 Reminiscor, I, *to recollect*.  
 Renīdeo, ēre, *to glitter*.  
 Reor, rēri, ratus sum, 183.  
 Re-perio, ire, reperi, repertum, 170.  
 Rēpo, ere, rēpsi, reptum, 158.  
 Re-sipisco, ere, -sipivi (-sipui), 181.  
 Re-sisto, ere, -stiti, -stitum, 178.

Re-spondeo (168), ēre, -spondi, -spon-sum.  
 Re-sto, stāre, -stiti, 178.  
 Restinguo, ere, -stinxi, -stinctum, 160.  
 Re-tineo (TENEŌ, 128), ēre, ui, -tentum.  
 Re-vertor, I, reverti, reversum, 167.  
 Re-vivisco, ere, vixi, victum, 181.  
 Rideo, ēre, risi, risum, 165.  
 Rigeo, ēre, ui, *to be stiff*.  
 Rōdo, ere, rōsi, rōsum, 165.  
 Rubeo, ēre, ui, *to be red*.  
 Rudo, ere, rudivi, itum, 176.  
 Rumpo, ere, rūpi, ruptum, 157.  
 Ruō, ere, rui, rutum (ruitūrus), 173.

## S.

Salio, ire, (salii), saltum, 176.  
 Sallo, ere, salii, salsum, 170.  
 Salvē, *def.*, 190.  
 Sancio, ire, sanxi, sanctum, 160.  
 Sancio, ire, (sancitum), 160.  
 Sapio, ere (sapivi), sapui, 178.  
 Sarcio, ire, sarsi, sartum, 160.  
 Satis-do, -dare, -dedi, -datum, 177.  
 Scabo, ere, scābi, *to scratch*.  
 Scalpo, ere, scalpsi, sculptum, 158.  
 Scando, ere, scandi, scansum, 164.  
 Scateo, ēre, *to gush forth*.  
 Scindo, ere, scidi, scissum, 168.  
 Scisco, ere, scivi, scitum, 181.  
 Scribo, ere, scripsi, scriptum, 158.  
 Sculpto, ere, sculptsi, sculptum, 158.  
 Seco, ēre, secuī, secātūrus, 176.  
 Sedeo, ēre, sēdi, sessum, 166.  
 Sēligo (LEGO, 159), ere, -lēgi, -lectum.  
 Sentio, ire, sensi, sensum, 165.  
 Sepelio, ire, ivi, sepultum, 176.  
 Sēpio, ire, sēpsi, sēptum, 158.  
 Sequor, I, secūtus sum, 175.  
 Sero, ere, 176.  
 Sero, ere, sēvi, satum, 180.  
 Serpo, ere, serpsi, serptum, 158.  
 Sīdo, ere, sīdi, 167.  
 Sileo, ēre, ui, *to be silent*.  
 Sino, ere, sivi, situm, 179.  
 Sisto, ere, stiti, statum, 178.  
 Sitio, ire, ivi, *to thirst*.  
 Soleo, ēre, solitus sum, 182.  
 Solvo, ere, solvi, solūtum, 174.  
 Sono, ēre, sonui, sonitum, 176.  
 Sono, ēre, sonātūrus, 176.  
 Sorbeo, ēre (sorp-si), sorbui, 158.

Sordeo, ēre, uī, *to be dirty*.  
 Sortior, īrī, sortitus sum, 182, R. 2.  
 Spargo, ere, sparsī, sparsum, 160.  
 Sperno, ere, sprēvī, sprētum, 180.  
 -Spicio. *See* ad-spicio.  
 Splendeo, ēre, uī, *to shine*.  
 Spondeo, ēre, spopondī, sponsum, 168.  
 Spuo, ere, spuī, spūtum, 173.  
 Squāleo, ēre, *to be rough, foul*.  
 Statuo, ere, statuī, statūtum, 173.  
 Sternuo, ere, strāvī, strātum, 180.  
 Sternuo, ere, sternuī, 173.  
 Stertio, ere, stertuī, 176.  
 -Stinguo, ere, 160.  
 Stō, stāre, steti, stātum, 178.  
 Strepo, ere, strepuī, strepitum, 176.  
 Strideo, ēre (ere), stridi, 167.  
 Stringo, ere, strinxī, strictum, 160.  
 Struo, ere, struxī, structum, 163.  
 Studeo, ēre, uī, *to be zealous*.  
 Stupeo, ēre, uī, *to be astounded*.  
 Suādeo, ēre, suāsī, suāsūm, 165.  
 Sub-do, ere, -didī, -ditum, 177.  
 Sub-igo (AGO, 159), ere, -egī, -actum.  
 Suc-cēdo (CREDO, 166), ere, -cessī, -cessum.  
 Suc-cendo (*see* ac-cendo, 164), ere, -cendī, -censum.  
 Suc-cēseō (128), ēre, uī, -cēsum.  
 Suesco, ere, suēvī, suētum, 179.  
 Suf-fero, -ferre, sus-tinuī, 186, R.  
 Suf-ficio (FACIO, 159), ere, -feci, -fec-tum.  
 Suf-fodio (166), ere, -fodi, -fossum.  
 Sug-gero (*see* 171), ere, -gessi, -gestum.  
 Sūgo, ere, suxī, suctum, 160.  
 Sum, esse, fui, 112.  
 Sūmo (EMO), ēre, sumpsī, sumptum, 169.  
 Suo, ere, suī, sūtum, 173.  
 Superbio, īre, *to be haughty*.  
 Super-sto, -stāre, -steti, 178.  
 Super-sum, -esse, -fui, 113.  
 Sup-pōno (*see* 179), ere, -posuī, -positum.  
 Surgo (REGO), ere, surrexī, surrectum, 161.

T.

Taedet, pertaesum est, *it tires*.  
 Tango, ere, tetigī, tactum, 162.  
 Tego, ere, texī, tectum, 161, 183.

Temno, ere, 169.  
 Tendo, ere, tetendī, tensum (-tum), 168.  
 Teneo, ēre, tenuī, (tentum), 128.  
 Tergo (eo), ēre, tersī, tersum, 160.  
 Tero, ere, trivī, trītum, 180.  
 Texo, ere, texuī, textum, 172.  
 Timeo, ēre, uī, *to fear*.  
 Ting(u)o, ere, tinxī, tinctum, 160.  
 Tollo, ere (sustuli, sublātum), 170.  
 Tondeo, ēre, totondī, tonsum, 168.  
 Tono, ēre, uī, 176.  
 Torpeo, ēre, uī, *to be torpid*.  
 Torqueo, ēre, torsī, tortum, 160.  
 Torreo, ēre, torruī, tostum, 128.  
 Trā-do, ere, -didī, -ditum, 177.  
 Traho, ere, traxī, tractum, 163.  
 Tremo, ere, uī, 176.  
 Tribuo, ere, uī, tribūtum, 173.  
 Trūdo, ere, trāsi, trāsūm, 165.  
 Tueor, ērī (tuitus) tūtātus sum, 182, R. 2.  
 Tumeo, ēre, uī, *to swell*.  
 Tundo, ere, tutudī, tunsum, tūsum, 168.  
 Turgeo, ēre, tursī, 160.

U.

Ulciscor, ī, ultus sum, 175.  
 Ungo, ere, unxī, unctum, 160.  
 Urgeo, ēre, ursī, 160.  
 Ūro, ere, ussī, ustum, 171.  
 Ūtor, ī, ūsus sum, 175.

V.

Vādo, ere, 165.  
 Valē, 190.  
 Veho, ere, vexī, vectum, 163.  
 Vello, ere, velli (vulsī), vulsum, 170.  
 Vēn-do, ere, -didī, -ditum, 177.  
 Vēn-eo, īre, īvī (ī), 185.  
 Venio, īre, vēnī, ventum, 170.  
 Vēnum-do, -dare, dedi, -datum, 177.  
 Vereor, ērī, veritus sum. *See* 143.  
 Verro, ere, verri, versum, 170.  
 Verto, ere, vertī, versum, 167.  
 Vescor, ī, *to feed*.  
 Vesperasco, ere, 181.  
 Veto, ēre, vetuī, vetitum, 176.  
 Video, ēre, vidī, vīsum, 164.



Vieo, ere, etum, *to plait.* See 127.

Vigeo, ere, ui, *to flourish.*

Vincio, ire, vinxī, vinctum, 160.

Vinco, ere, vici, victum, 159.

Viso, ere, visi, visum, 172.

Vivo, ere, vixī, victum, 163.

Volo, velle, volui, 189.

Volvo, ere, volvi, volūtum, 174.

Vomo, ere, vomui, vomitum, 176.

Voveo, ere, vōvi, vōtum, 174.

# SYNTAX.

---

## · SYNTAX OF THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

192. SYNTAX treats of the formation and combination of sentences.

Sentences are divided into *simple* and *compound*.

A simple sentence is one in which the necessary parts occur but once.

The necessary parts of the sentence are *the subject* and *the predicate*.

The predicate is that which is said of the subject.

The subject is that of which the predicate is said.

**Lūna splendet,** *The moon shines.*

**Lūna** is the *subject*; **splendet**, the *predicate*.

193. The most simple form of the sentence is the finite verb :  
**s-u-m**, *I am*; **docē-s**, *thou teachest*; **scrib-i-t**, *he writes*.

REMARK.—Here the form contains in itself all the necessary elements (compare 111): **m** is the first person, **s** the second, **t** the third. From the expansion and modification of the finite verb arise all the complicated forms of the compound sentence.

194. The subject of the finite verb is always in the Nominative Case, or so considered.

REMARKS.—1. The subject of the Infinitive is in the Accusative.

2. The use of the Nominative in Latin is the same as in English.

3. The Vocative (the case of Direct Address) is not affected by the structure of the sentence, and does not enter as an element into Syntax, except in the matter of Concord. The form differs from the Nominative in the Second Declension only, and even there the Nominative is sometimes used instead, especially in poetry and solemn prose. (See further, 324, R. 1.)

**Almae filius Mājæ.** HOR. *Son of mild Maia!*

**Audi tū, populus Albānus.** LIV. *Hear thou, people of Alba!*

**Ō** is prefixed to give emphasis to the address :

**Ō formōse puer, nimium nē crēde colōrī.** VERE. *O shapely boy! trust not complexion all too much.*

The vocative is commonly interjected in prose, except in highly emotional passages.

**195.** The Subject may be a noun or pronoun, or some other word or phrase used as a noun :

**Deus mundum gubernat,** *God steers the universe.*

**Ego rēgēs ējēcī,** *I drove out kings.*

**Sapiens rēs adversās nōn timet,** *The sage does not fear adversity.*

**Victi in servitūtem rediguntur,** *The vanquished are reduced to slavery.*

**Contendisse decōrum est.** OV. *To have struggled is honorable.*

**Magnum est beneficium nātūrae quod necesse est mori.** SEN. *It is a great boon of nature, that we must needs die.*

**Vidēs habet duās syllabās,** (The word) "*vides*" has two syllables.

 The following remarks may be omitted by the beginner.

REMARKS.—1. Masculine and Feminine adjectives and participles are used as substantives, chiefly in the plural number : **pauperēs, the poor ; divitēs, the rich ; doctī, the learned ;** whereas, in the singular, the substantive is generally expressed : **vir bonus, a good man ; homo doctus, a learned person ; mulier peregrina, a foreign woman.** When persons are not meant, a substantive is understood : **cānī (capillī), grey hairs ; calida (aqua), warm water ; dextra (manus), right hand.**

2. Neuter adjectives and participles are freely employed as substantives in both numbers : **medium, the midst ; extrēmum, the end ; reliquum, the residue ; futurum, the future ; bonum, good ; bona, blessings, possessions ; malum, evil ; mala, misfortunes.** The plural is frequently employed when the English idiom prefers the singular : **vēra, the truth ; omnia, everything.**

3. Adjectives of the Second Declension are sometimes used as neuter substantives in the Genitive case, after words of quantity or pronouns : **aliquid bonī, something good ; nihil malī, nothing bad.** Adjectives of the Third Declension are thus employed only in combination with those of the Second. (See 371, R. 2.)

4. Instead of the neuter adjective the word **rēs, thing,** is frequently used, especially in forms which are identical for different genders ; so **bonārum rērum, of blessings,** rather than **bonōrum** (m. and n.).

5. In Latin the plural of abstract nouns occurs more frequently than in English : **adventūs imperātorum, the arrival(s) of the generals** (because there were several generals, or because they arrived at different times). Pluralizing abstract nouns makes them concrete : **fortitūdīnēs, gallant actions ; formidinēs, bugbears ; iras, quarrels.**

6. Other plural expressions to be noted are : **nivēs, snow(-flakes) ; grandinēs, hail (-stones) ; pluviae, (streams of) rain ; ligna, (logs of) wood ; carnēs, pieces of meat ; aera, articles of bronze ;** also symmetrical parts of the human body : **cervicēs, neck ; pectora, breast.**

The Plural is freely used in poetry :

**Ōtia si tollās, periēre Cupidinis arcūs.** OV. *If you do away with holidays, Cupid's bow (and arrows) are ruined.*

7. The rhetorical Roman often uses the First Person plural for the First Person singular. The usage originates in modesty, but mock modesty is the worst form of pomposity. In poetry there is often an element of shyness.

**Librum dē senectūte ad tē misimus.** CIC. *We (I) have sent you a treatise on old age.*

**Sitque memor nōstri neque, referte mihi.** OV. *Bring me back (word) whether she thinks of us (me among others) or no.*

8. The Singular, in a collective sense, is also used for the Plural, but more rarely: *fabæ*, beans; *porcus*, pig (*meat*); *gallina*, fowl (as articles of food); *vestis*, clothing; *hostis*, the enemy; *miles*, the soldiery; *pedes*, infantry; *eques*, cavalry.

196. COPULA.—When the predicate is not in the form of a verb, the so-called Copula is generally employed, in order to couple the adjective or substantive with the subject.

The chief Copula is the verb *sum*, *I am*.

*Fortūna caeca est.* CIC. *Fortune is blind.*

*Ūsus magister est optimus.* CIC. *Practice is the best teacher.*

REMARK.—Strictly speaking, the Cōpula is itself a predicate, as is shown by the translation when it stands alone or with an adverb: *est Deus*, there is a God, God exists; *rectē semper erunt res*, things will always be (go on) well; *sic vita hominum est*, such is human life; “So runs the world away.”

197. Other copulative verbs are: *vidēri*, to seem; *appārere*, to appear; *manēre*, to remain; *nāsci*, to be born; *fieri*, to become; *evādere*, to turn out; *creāri*, to be created; *deligi*, to be chosen; *putāri*, to be thought; *haberi*, to be held; *dicti*, to be said; *appelārī*, to be called; *nōminārī*, to be named. Hence the rule:

Verbs of Seeming, Remaining, Becoming, with the Passive of verbs of Making and Choosing, Showing, Thinking, and Calling, take two nominatives, one of the Subject, one of the Predicate:

*Nēmo dives nāscitur.* SEN. *No one is born rich.*

*Aristidēs jūstus appellātur*, *Aristides is called just.*

*Servius Tullius rēx est dēclārātus.* LIV. *Servius Tullius was declared king.*

*Thūcýdidēs nunquam numerātus est ōrātor.* CIC. *Thucydides has never been accounted an orator.*

REMARKS.—1. All copulative verbs retain the Nominative with the Infinitive after auxiliary verbs. (424.)

*Beātus esse sine virtūte nēmo potest.* CIC. *No one can be happy without virtue.*

2. On the Double Accusative construction after Active Verbs, see 334.

198. SUBJECT OMITTED.—The personal pronoun is not expressed, unless it is emphatic, as for example in contrasts:

*Amāmus parentēs*, *We love (our) parents.*

*Ego rēgēs ejēci, vōs tyrannōs intrōdūcitis.* CIC. *I drove out kings, ye are bringing in tyrants.*

199. Verbs that have no definite subject are called Impersonal Verbs, chiefly relating to the state of the weather:

**Tonat, it thunders ; fulgurat, fulminat, it lightens ; pluit, it rains ;  
ningit, it snows.**

REMARKS.—1. The passive of intransitive verbs (201) is often used impersonally: **vivitur, people live ; curritur, there is a running.** The subject is contained in the verb itself: **sic vivitur = sic vita vivitur, such is life.** In the same way explain **taedet, it wearies ; miseret, it moves to pity ; piget, it disgusts ; pudet, it puts to shame.**

2. All other so-called Impersonal Verbs have an Infinitive or an equivalent for a subject.

3. Other uses coincide with the English. So the Third Person Plural of verbs of Saying, Thinking, and Calling. So the Ideal Second Person Singular. (252.) To be noticed is the occasional use of **inquit, quoth he**, of an imaginary person :

**Nōn concedo, inquit, Epicūrus.** CIO. *I do not yield the point, quoth he (one), to Epicurus.*

**200. COPULA OMITTED.**—**Est** or **sunt** is often omitted in saws and proverbs, in short questions, in rapid changes, and in tenses compounded with participles :

**Summum jūsum summa injūria,** *The height of right (is) the height of wrong.*  
**Nemo malus felix.** JUV. *No bad man (is) happy.* **Quid dulcius quam habere quicum omnia audeas loqui.** CIO. *What sweeter than to have some one, with whom you can venture to talk about everything?* **Aliquamdiū certatum.** SALL. *The struggle was kept up for some time.*

So also **esse** with participles and the like.

**Caesar statuit expectandam classem.** CAES. *Caesar resolved that the fleet must be waited for.*

#### CONCORD.

**201. THE THREE CONCORDS.**—There are three great concords in Latin :

1. The agreement of the predicate with the subject.
2. The agreement of attributive or appositive with the substantive. (281, 319.)
3. The agreement of the Pronoun with the Noun (Relative with antecedent.) (616.)

REMARK.—It may be well for the beginner to study these together.

#### 202. AGREEMENT OF THE PREDICATE WITH THE SUBJECT.

The verbal predicate } agrees with its subject { in number  
and person.

The adjective predicate } agrees with its subject { in number,  
gender, and case.

The substantive predicate agrees with its subject in case.

**Substantiva mōbilia** (21) are treated as adjectives, and follow the number and gender of the subject.

**Ego rēgēs ējēcī, vōs tyrannōs intrōdūcītis** (198).

**Vērae amicitiae sempiternae sunt.** CIC. *True friendships are abiding.*

**Dōs est decem talenta.** TER. *The dowry is ten talents.*

**Ūsus magister est optimus.** CIC. *Practice is the best teacher.*

**Athēnae sunt omnium doctrinārum inventricēs.** CIC. *Athens is the inventor of all branches of learning.*

**Arx est monosyllabum.** "*Arx*" is a monosyllable.

REMARKS.—1. The violation of the rules of agreement is due chiefly to one of two causes:

I. The natural relation is preferred to the artificial (**constructio ad sensum, per synesin, according to the sense**).

II. The nearer is preferred to the more remote. Hence:

EXCEPTIONS.—1) Nouns of multitude often take the predicate in the Plural: **pars, part**; **vis, quantity**; **multitūdo, crowd**; organized bodies more rarely.

**Pars mājor recōperant sēsē.** LIV. *The greater part had retired.*

**Omnis multitūdo abeunt.** LIV. *All the crowd depart.*

2) The adjective predicate often follows the natural gender of the subject:

**Capita conjūratiōnis virgīs caesi sunt.** LIV. *The heads of the conspiracy were flogged.*

3) The copula often agrees with the number of the predicate ("the wages of sin is death"):

**Amantium irae** (195, R. 5) **amōris integratio est.** TER. *Lovers' quarrels are love's renewal.*

2. A superlative adjective defined by a partitive genitive follows the gender of the subject when it precedes:

**Hordeum omnium frūgum mollissimum est.** PLIN. *Barley is the softest of all grains.*

Otherwise it follows the genitive:

**Vēlōcissimum omnium animālium est delphīnus.** PLIN. *The dolphin is the swiftest of all animals.*

3. The Vocative is sometimes used by the poets in the predicate, either by anticipation or by assimilation. (See 324, R. 1.)

4. The neuter adjective is often used as the substantive predicate of a masculine or feminine subject:

**Triste lupus stabulis.** VERG. *The wolf is destruction to the folds.*

**Omnium rērum** (195, R. 4) **mors est extrēmum.** CIC. *Death is the end of all things.*

5. The demonstrative pronoun is commonly attracted into the gender of the predicate:

**Ea nōn media sed nulla via est.** LIV. *That is not a middle course, but no course at all.*

**Nōn ego illam mihi dūco dōtem esse, quae dōs dīcitur.** PLAUT. *That which is called a dowry I deem not my dowry, no, not I.*

When the pronoun is the predicate there is no change. So in definitions.

**Quid est Deus?** *What is God?*

## FORMS OF THE VERBAL PREDICATE.

### VOICES OF THE VERB.

203. There are two Voices in Latin—Active and Passive. The latter seems to have been Reflexive in its origin.

204. The Active Voice denotes that the *action proceeds from the subject*.

Verbs are called *Transitive* when their action goes over to an object; *Intransitive* when their action does not go beyond the subject: *occidere, to fell* = *to kill* (Transitive); *occidere, to fall* (Intransitive).

REMARK.—Transitive verbs are often used intransitively, and Intransitive verbs transitively: *suppeditāre, to supply* (Transitive), *to be on hand* (Intransitive); *queror, I complain* (Intransitive), *I complain of* (Transitive). When transitive verbs are used intransitively they serve simply to characterize the agent. When intransitive verbs are used transitively it is chiefly with an accusative of the Inner object. (331, R. 2.)

205. The Passive Voice denotes that the subject receives the action of the Verb.

The instrument is put in the Ablative.

**Virgīs caeditur,** *He is beaten with rods.*

The agent is put in the Ablative with **ab** (**ā**).

**Ā patre caeditur,** *He is beaten by (his) father.*

REMARKS.—1. Intransitive verbs of Passive signification are construed as Passives: **famē perire,** *to perish of hunger.*

**Ab reō fustibus vāpulāvit.** QUINT. *He was whacked with cudgels by the defendant.*

2. When the instrument is considered as an agent, or the agent as an instrument, the constructions are reversed:

**Vinci ā Voluptāte,** *to be overcome by Pleasure.* CIO.

**Poenō milite portās frangimus.** JUV. *We break down the gates with the Punio soldiery* (as if with a battering-ram).

Animals, as independent agents, are treated like Persons.

**Ā cane nōn magnō saepe tenetur aper.** OV. *A bear is often held fast by a little dog.*

**Animals, as instruments, are treated like Things.**

**Equō vehi, to ride a horse (to be borne by a horse); in equō, on horseback.**

**206.** The person in whose interest an action is done is put in the Dative. Hence, the frequent inference that the person interested is the agent.

With the Perfect Passive it is the *natural* inference, and common in prose.

**Rēs mihi tōta prōvisa est. CIC.** *I have had the whole thing provided for.*

**Carmina scripta mihi sunt nulla. OV.** *Poems—I have none written (I have written no poems).*

With the Gerundive it is the *necessary* inference, and the Dative is the reigning combination.

**Nihil est homini tam timendum quam invidia. CIC.** *There is nothing that one has to fear to the same extent as envy.* See 352.

**207.** The Direct Object of the Active Verb (the Accusative Case) becomes the Subject of the Passive.

**Alexander Dārium vicit, Alexander conquered Darius.**

**Dārius ab Alexandrō victus est, Darius was conquered by Alexander.**

**208.** The Indirect Object of the Active Verb (Dative Case) cannot be properly used as the Subject of the Passive. The Dative remains unchanged, and the verb becomes a Passive in the Third Person Singular (Impersonal Verb). This Passive form may have a neuter subject corresponding to the Inner object. (331, R. 2.)

**Active: Miseri invident bonis, The wretched envy the well-to-do.**

**Passive: mihi invidētur, I am envied,**

**tibi invidētur, thou art envied,**

**ei invidētur, he is envied,**

**nōbīs invidētur, we are envied,**

**vōbīs invidētur, you are envied,**

**is invidētur, they are envied,**

**ab aliquō, by some one.**

**Nihil facile persuādētur invitis. QUINT.** *People are not easily persuaded of anything against their will.*

**Animis nostris plūs quam animis crēditur. SEN.** *Our seals are more trusted than our souls.*



**REMARK.**—The same rule applies to Genitive and Ablative. The poets are more free in imitation of the Greek. *Cūr invidēor?* HOR. for *Cūr invidētur mihi?* *Why am I envied?*

**209.** Reflexive relations, when emphatic, are expressed as in English:

**Omne animal sē ipsum diligit.** CIC. *Every living creature loves itself.*

But when the reflexive relation is more general, the Passive is employed:

**Lavor, I bathe, I bathe myself.**

**Purgārī nequiverunt.** LIV. *They could not clear themselves.*

**Cūrābar propriis aeger Podalīrius herbis.** OV. *A sick Podalīrius, I was trying to cure myself by my own herbs.*

**210.** As the Active in all languages is often used to express what the subject suffers or causes to be done, so the Passive in Latin in its reflexive sense is often used to express an action which the subject suffers or causes to be done to itself: **trahor, I let myself be dragged; tondeor, I have myself shaved.**

**Ipse docet quid agam; fās est et ab hoste docērī.** OV. *He himself teaches (me) what to do; it is (but) right to let oneself be taught even by an enemy (to take a lesson from a foe).*

**211.** The Deponent is a Passive form which has lost, in most instances, its Passive (or Reflexive) signification. It is commonly translated as a Transitive or Intransitive Active: **hortor, I am exhorting** (Trans.); **morior, I am dying** (Intrans.).

**212.** Reciprocal relations ("one another") are expressed by **inter, among**, and the Personal Pronouns, **nōs, us; vōs, you; sē, themselves**: **Inter sē amant, They love one another.**

## TENSES.

**213.** The Tenses express the relations of time, embracing:

1. The stage of the action (duration in time).
2. The period of the action (position in time).

The first tells whether the action is *going on*, or *finished*. The second tells whether the action is *past*, *present*, or *future*.

Both these sets of relations are expressed by the tenses of the Indicative or Declarative mood—less clearly by the Subjunctive.

214. There are six tenses in Latin :

1. The *Present*, denoting *continuance* in the *present*.
2. The *Future*, denoting *continuance* in the *future*.
3. The *Imperfect*, denoting *continuance* in the *past*.
4. The *Perfect*, denoting *completion* in the *present*.
5. The *Future Perfect*, denoting *completion* in the *future*.
6. The *Pluperfect*, denoting *completion* in the *past*.

215. An action may further be regarded simply as *attained*, without reference to its *continuance* or *completion*. *Continuance* and *completion* require a point of reference for definition ; *attainment* does not. This gives rise to the aoristic or *indefinite* stage of the action, which has no especial tense-form. It is expressed by the Present tense for the present ; by the Future and Future Perfect tenses for the future ; and by the Perfect tense for the past.

Of especial importance is the *Indefinite* or *Historical Perfect* (Aorist), which differs materially in syntax from the *Definite* or *Pure Perfect*.

216. The Tenses are divided into *Principal* and *Historical*. The *Principal Tenses* have to do with the Present and Future. The *Historical Tenses* have to do with the Past.

The Present, Pure Perfect, Future, and Future Perfect are *Principal Tenses*.

The Imperfect, Pluperfect, and Historical Perfect are *Historical Tenses*.

REMARK.—The Historical Tenses are well embodied in the following distich :

Tālia tentābat, sic et tentāverat ante,  
Vixque dedit victās utilitāte manus. Ov.

217.

#### TABLE OF TEMPORAL RELATIONS.

##### INDICATIVE MOOD.

	ACTIVE.	
<i>Continuance.</i>	<i>Completion.</i>	<i>[Attainment.</i>
PRESENT : scribo, I am writing.	scripsi, I have written.	scribo, I write.
FUTURE : scribam, I shall be writing.	scripsero, I shall have written.	scribam (scripsero), I shall write.
PAST : scribēbam, I was writing.	scripseram, I had written.	scripsi, I wrote.]

## PASSIVE.

	<i>Continuance.</i>	<i>Completion.</i>	<i>Attainment.</i>
PRESENT:	scribitur (epistola), <i>The letter is written,</i> <i>(writing),</i>	scripta est, <i>has been written,</i> <i>is written,</i>	scribitur, <i>is written.</i>
FUTURE:	scribētur, <i>The letter will be written,</i> <i>(writing),</i>	scripta erit, <i>will have been,</i> <i>will be written,</i>	scribētur, <i>will be written.</i>
PAST:	scribēbatur, <i>The letter was written,</i> <i>(writing),</i>	scripta erat, <i>had been written,</i> <i>was written,</i>	scripta est, <i>was written.</i>

REMARK.—The English Passive is ambiguous. The same form is currently used for continuance, attainment, and completion. The context alone can decide. A convenient test is the substitution of the Active.

A letter was written: { Continuance, *Some one was writing* a letter.  
                                  { Completion, *Some one had written* a letter.  
                                  { Attainment, *Some one wrote* a letter.

☞ The detailed consideration of the Tenses may be omitted by the beginner.

## PRESENT TENSE.

218. The Present Tense is used as in English of *that which is going on now* (Specific Present), and of statements *that apply to all time* (Universal Present).

Specific Present:

**Auribus teneō lupum. TER.** *I am holding the wolf by the ears.*

Universal Present:

**Probitās laudātur et alget. JUV.** *Honesty is bepraised and freezes.*

REMARKS.—1. The Specific Present is often to be translated by the English Progressive Present. The Universal Present is Aoristic, true at any point.

2. As continuance involves the notion of incompleteness the Present is used of *attempted* and *intended* action (Present of Endeavor). But on account of the double use of the Present this signification is less prominent and less important than in the Imperfect. Do not mistake the Endeavor which lies in the Verb for the Endeavor which lies in the Tense. So in the traditional example:

**Quintus frāter Tusculānum vēnditat. CIC.** *Brother Quintus is "trying to sell" his Tusculan villa: vēnditāre itself means to offer for sale. Translate: intends to offer for sale, if the notion lies in the Tense.*

3. The ambiguity of our English Passive often suggests other translations. Use and Wont make Law; hence, the frequent inference that what is done is what ought to be done; what is not done is not to be done.

(Deus) **nec bene prōmeritis capitur, nec tangitur irā. LUCR.** *God is not to be in-regled by good service, nor touched by anger.*

219. The Present Tense is used more rarely than in English *in anticipation of the future*, chiefly in compound sentences:

**Si vincimus, omnia tūta erunt.** SALL. *If we conquer (= shall conquer), everything will be safe.*

**Antequam ad sententiam redeo dē mē pauca dicam.** CIC. *Before I return to the subject, I will say a few things of myself.*

**Expectābō dum ille venit.** TER. *I will wait all the time that he is coming, or, until he comes.*

220. The Present Tense is used far more frequently than in English, *as a lively representation of the past* (Historical Present):

**Rōmam proficiscitur.** SALL. *He sets out for Rome.*

**Mātūrat proficisci.** CAES. *He hastens to depart.*

REMARK.—**Dum**, *while*, commonly takes the Historical Present: **Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesari nūntiatum est.** CAES. *While these things were transacting in the conference, word was brought to Caesar.* **Dum**, *so long as*, follows the ordinary law. (See 566.)

221. The Present is used in Latin of actions *that are continued into the present*, especially with **jam**, *now*; **jam diū**, *now for a long time*; **jam pridem**, *now long since*. In English we often translate by a Progressive Perfect.

**Mithridātēs annum jam tertium et vicēsimum regnat.** CIC. *Mithridates has been reigning now going on twenty-three years.*

**Liberāre vōs ā Philippō jam diū magis vultis quam audētis.** LIV. *You have this long time had the wish rather than (= though not) the courage to deliver yourself from Philip.*

#### IMPERFECT TENSE.

222. The Imperfect Tense denotes *Continuance in the Past*: **pugnābam**, *I was fighting*.

The Imperfect is employed to represent *manners, customs, situations*; to describe and to particularize.

The Imperfect and the Historical Perfect serve to illustrate one another. The Imperfect dwells on the *process*; the Historical Perfect states the *result*. The Imperfect counts out the *items*; the Historical Perfect gives the *sum*.

223. The two tenses are often so combined that the general

statement is given by the Historical Perfect, the particulars of the action by the Imperfect:

**Verrēs in forum vēnit; ardēbant oculi; tōtō ex ōre crūdēlītās ēminēbat.** CIC. *Verrēs came into the forum, his eyes were blazing, cruelty was standing out from his whole countenance.*

**224.** The Imperfect is used of *attempted* and *interrupted*, *intended* and *expected* actions (Imperfect of Endeavor). It is the Tense of Disappointment and (with the negative) of Resistance to Pressure. (Mere negation is regularly Perfect.)

**Cūriam relinquēbat.** TAC. *He was for leaving the senate-house.*

**Postumius dēdēbatur.** CIC. *Postumius was to be given up.*

**Lēx abrogābātur.** LIV. *The law was to be abrogated.*

**Ōreum et Eretriam Eumeni dabant: senātus libertātem his civitātibus dedit.** LIV. *They were for giving Oreus and Eretria to Eumenes; the senate gave these cities liberty.*

**Cūrābar propriis aeger Podalirius herbis.** OV. (206.)

**Aditum nōn dabat.** NEP. *He would not grant access (dedit, did not).*

REMARKS.—1. The Imperfect as the Tense of Evolution is a Tense of Vision. But in English, Imperfect and Historical Perfect coincide; hence the various translations to put the reader in the place of the spectator.

2. The continuance is in the mind of the narrator; it has nothing to do with the absolute duration of the action. The mind may dwell on a rapid action or hurry over a slow one. With definite numbers, however large, the Historical Perfect must be used, unless there is a notion of continuance into another stage (overlapping).

**Gorgiās centum et novem annōs vixit.** QUINT. *Gorgias lived 109 years.*

3. As the Tense of Disappointment, the Imperfect of such verbs as *dēbēre*, *to owe*, *posse*, *to be able*, is sometimes used in a modal sense. (246, R. 2.)

**225.** The Imperfect is used as the English Progressive Pluperfect: especially with *jam*, *jam diū*, *jam dūdum*.

**Jam dūdum tibi adversābar.** PLAUT. *I had long been opposing you.*

REMARK.—As the Historical Present is used in lively narrative, so the Historical Infinitive is used in lively *description*, parallel with the Imperfect. (649.)

#### PERFECT TENSE.

**226.** The Perfect Tense has two distinct uses:

1. Pure Perfect.
2. Historical Perfect (Aorist).

#### 1. PURE PERFECT.

**227.** The Pure Perfect Tense expresses completion in the Present, and hence is sometimes called the Present Perfect.

The Pure Perfect looks at both ends of an action, and the time between is regarded as a Present. The Historical Present looks at but one end; or, rather, beginning and end are one.

228. The Pure Perfect is used:

1. Of an action that is over and gone.

**Filium ūnicum habeo, imō habui.** TER. *I have an only son—nay, I have had an only son.*

**Tempora quid faciunt: hanc vōlo, te volui.** OV. *What difference times make! I want her—I wanted you.*

2. Far more frequently of the present result of a more remote action: Resulting condition.

**Equum et mūlum Brundisiī tibi reliqui.** CIC. *I have left a horse and mule for you at Brundisium—(they are still there).*

**Perdidi spem quā mē oblectābam.** PLAUT. *I've lost the hope with which I entertained myself.*

**Actum est, peristi.** TER. *It is all over; you're undone.*

REMARK.—The Pure Perfect is often translated by the English Present: **nōvi**, *I have become acquainted with, I know*; **memini**, *I have recalled, I remember*; **ōdi**, *I have conceived a hatred of, I hate*; **consuevi**, *I have made it a rule, I am accustomed*. This is due to the inchoative character of the Present form.

**Ōderunt hilarem tristēs tristemque jocōsū.** HOR. *The long-faced hate the lively man, the jokers hate the long-faced man.*

229. As the Present stands for the Future, so the Perfect stands for the Future Perfect.

**Brūtus si conservātus erit, vicimus.** CIC. *Brutus!—if HE is saved, we are victorious, we (shall) have gained the victory.*

**Ōtia si tollās, periēre Cupīdinis arcūs.** OV. (195, R. 6.)

230. **Habeo** or **teneo**, *I hold, I have*, with the Accusative of the Perfect Participle Passive, is not a mere circumlocution for the Perfect, but lays peculiar stress on the *maintenance of the result*.

**Habeo statūtum**, *I have resolved, and hold to my resolution.*

**Habeo perspectum**, *I have perceived, and I have full insight.*

**Excūsātum habeās mē rogo, cōno domi.** MART. *I pray you have me excused, I dine at home.*

REMARK.—On the Iterative Perfect, see 569,

## 2. HISTORICAL PERFECT.

231. The Historical or Indefinite Perfect (Aorist) states a *past action, without reference to its duration, simply as a thing attained.*

**Vēni, vidi, vici.** SUET. *I came, saw, overcame.*

**Milo domum vēnit, calceōs et vestimenta mūtāvit, paulisper commorātus est.** CIC. *Milo came home, changed shoes and garments, tarried a little while.*

**Gorgiās centum et novem vixit annos.** QUINT. *Gorgias lived 109 years.*

232. The Historical Perfect is the great narrative tense of the Latin language, and is best studied in long connected passages, and by careful comparison with the Imperfect.

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

233. The Pluperfect denotes *Completion in the Past*, and is used of an action that was completed before another was begun. It is, so to speak, the Perfect of the Imperfect. Hence it is used:

1. Of an action that *is over and gone.*

**Putāram, I had thought** (before such and such a thing happened).

2. Of a Resulting Condition.

**Massiliensēs portās Caesari clausurant.** CAES. *The Marseillians had shut their gates against Caesar. (Their gates were shut.)*

REMARKS.—1. When the Perfect of resulting Condition is translated by an English Present (228 R.), the Pluperfect is translated by an English Imperfect: **nōveram, I had become acquainted with, I knew**; **memineram, I remembered**; **ōderam, I hated**; **consueveram, I was accustomed.**

2. The Periphrastic Pluperfect with **habeo** corresponds to the Perfect. (230.)

3. On the Iterative Pluperfect, see 569.

## FUTURE TENSE.

234. The Future Tense denotes *Continuance in the Future*. **scribam, I shall be writing.**

The Future Tense is also used to express indefinite action in the Future: **scribam, I shall write.**

REMARKS.—1. In subordinate clauses the Latin language is more exact than the English in the expression of future relations.

**Dōnec eris felix, multōs numerābis amicōs,** OV. *So long as you shall be (are) happy, you will count many friends.*

**Quidquid eris, mea semper eris.** Ov. *Whatever you shall be (are), you will always be mine own.*

2. Observe especially the verbs **volo**, *I will*, and **possum**, *I can*.

**Ōdero si poterō; si nōn, invitus amābo.** Ov. *I will hate if I shall be able (can); if not, I shall love against my will.*

**Si qua volet regnāre diū, dēlūdāt amantem.** Ov. *She who shall wish to queen it long must fool her lover.*

235. The Future is used in an imperative sense, as in English, chiefly in familiar language.

**Tū nihil dicēs.** Hor. *You shall, are to, say nothing (do you say nothing).*

**Quum volet accēdēs, quum tē vitabit abibis.** Ov. *When she wants you, approach; and when she avoids you, begone, sir.*

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

236. The Future Perfect is the Perfect, both Pure and Historical, transferred to the future, and embraces both *completion* and *attainment*: **fēcero**, *I shall have done it*, or *I shall do it* (once for all); **videro**, *I will see to it*; **prōfēcerit**, *it will prove profitable*.

REMARKS—1. Hence, when the Perfect is used as a Present, the Future Perfect is used as a Future:

**Nōvero**, *I shall know*; **consuēvero**, *I shall be accustomed*; **Ōdero, si poterō.** Ov. (234, R. 2.)

2. In subordinate sentences, the Latin language is more exact than the English in the use of the Future Perfect.

When one action precedes another in the future, the action that precedes is expressed by the Future Perfect.

**Qui prior strinxerit ferrum, ejus victōria erit.** Liv. *Who first draws the sword, his shall be the victory.*

3. The Future Perfect is frequently used in **volo**, *I will*; **nōlo**, *I will not*; **possum**, *I can*; **licet**, *it is left free*; **libet**, *it is agreeable*; **placet**, *it is the pleasure*; whereas the English idiom familiarly employs the Present.

**Si potuero, faciam vōbīs satis.** Cic. *If I can, I shall satisfy you.*

4. The Future Perfect in both clauses denotes simultaneous accomplishment or attainment; one action involves the other.

**Qui Marcum Antonium oppresserit, is bellum confēcero.** Cic. *He who shall have crushed (crushes) Mark Antony, will have finished (will finish) the war.*

**Ea vitia qui fūgerit, is omnia ferē vitia vitāverit.** Cic. *He who shall have escaped these faults, will have avoided almost all faults.*

Sometimes, however, the first seems to denote *antecedence*, the second *finality*. An Imperative is often used in the first clause.

**Immūtā verbōrum collocatiōnem, perierit tōta rēs.** Cic. *Change the arrangement of the words, the whole thing falls dead.*

237. As the Future is used as an Imperative, so the Future Perfect approaches the Imperative.

**Dē hōc tū ipse videris.** Cic. *You may see to that yourself hereafter*



## PERIPHRASTIC TENSES.

238. The Periphrastic Tenses are formed by combining the various tenses of *esse*, *to be*, with participles and verbal adjectives.

## I. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

239. The Periphrastic Tenses of the Active are chiefly combinations of *esse* and its forms with the so-called Future Participle Active. The Future Participle is a verbal adjective denoting *capability* and *tendency*. Compare *amātor* and *amātūrus*. The translation is very various:

1. *Scriptūrus sum*, *I am about to write, I am to write, I purpose to write, I am likely to write.*

2. *Scriptūrus eram*, *I was about to write, etc.*

3. *Scriptūrus fui*, *I have been or was about to write (often = I should have written).*

4. *Scriptūrus fueram*, *I had been about to write, etc.*

5. *Scriptūrus ero*, *I shall be about to write, etc.*

6. *Scriptūrus fuero*, *I shall have made up my mind to write, etc. (of course very rare).*

1. *Bellum scriptūrus sum quod populus Rōmānus cum Jugurthā gessit.* SALL. *I purpose to write the history of the war which the Roman people carried on with Jugurtha.*

2. *Rēx nōn interfutūrus nāvālī certāminī erat.* LIV. *The king did not intend to be present at the naval combat.*

3. *Cato quā nocte peritūrus fuit lēgit.* SEN. *Cato read on the night when he was about to die (kill himself).*

*Dēditōs ultimīs cruciātibus affectūri fuērunt.* LIV. *They would have put the surrendered to extreme tortures.*

4. *Māior Rōmānōrum grātia fuit quam quanta Carthāginiensium futūra fuerat.* LIV. *The Romans' credit for this was greater than the Carthaginians' would have been.*

5. *Plūs mihi detractūrus ero, quam illi collātūrus.* SEN. *I shall in all likelihood take away more from myself than I shall bestow on him.*

6. *Sapiens nōn vivet, si fuerit sine homine victūrus.* SEN. *The wise man will not continue to live, if he finds that he is to live without human society.*

REMARK.—The Subjunctives and Infinitives, *scriptūrus sim*, *essem*, *fuērim*, *scriptūrum esse*, and *scriptūrum fuisse*, are of great importance in dependent discourse.

## II. PERIPHRASTIC TENSES OF THE PASSIVE.

## A.—Of Future Relations.

240. The following periphrases are used both in Active and Passive, but more frequently in the Passive.

1. *Futūrum est, it is to be,*  
     *erat, } was to be, } ut, that, with the subjunctive.*  
     *fuit, }*

This circumlocution is used:

1. Rarely in the Indicative.
2. Often in the Infinitive, and necessarily so, when the verb forms no Supine or Future Participle:

*Futūrum esse (fore), { ut metuās, that you will fear.*  
   *{ ut metuāris, that you will be feared.*

In the Passive it is more common than the Supine with *iri*.

*Spēro fore ut contingat id nobis. CIC. I hope that we shall have that good fortune.*

*In fātis scriptum Vējentēs habēbant fore ut brevi ā Gallis Rōma caperētur. CIC. The Vientes had it written down in their prophetic books that Rome would shortly be taken by the Gauls.*

REMARKS.—1. *Fore ut* ... is used chiefly with Present and Imperfect Subjunctive; Perf. and Pluperf. are very rare. *CIC. AD ATT. xvi. 16 E. 16.*

2. The form *futūrum fuisse ut* ... is used with Passive and Supineless verbs, to express the dependent apodosis of an unreal conditional sentence.

*Nisi eō ipso tempore nūntiī dē Caesaris victoriā essent allātī, existimābant plērius futūrum fuisse ut oppidum āmitterētur. CAES. (662.)*

3. *Posse, to be able, and velle, to will, on account of their future sense, do not require a periphrasis. In the absence of periphrastic forms, the forms of posse are often used instead. (659.)*

4. The Subjunctive forms *futūrum sit, esset, fuerit, ut* ... are used in the grammars to supply the periphrastic subjunctive of Passive and Supineless verbs. (See 512, R. 2.) Warrant in real usage is scarce.

*An utique futūrum sit ut Carthāginem superent Rōmānī? QUINT. I. O. III. 8. 7. (not merely periphrastic).*

241. 2. *In eō est, it is on the point,*  
     *erat, } ut, that (of), with the*  
     *fuit, } was (Impersonal), } subjunctive.*

*In eō erat ut Pausaniās comprehenderētur. NEP. It was on the point that Pausanias should be (P. was on the point of) being arrested.*

REMARK.—This phrase occurs in *NEPOS* and *LIVY*, seldom in earlier writers.

## B.—Of Past Relations.

242. The Perfect Participle Passive is used in combination with *sum*, *I am*, and *ful*, *I have been*, *I was*, to express the Pure Perfect and Historical Perfect of the Passive Voice. *Eram*, *I was*, and *fuera*, *I had been*, stand for the Pluperfect; and *ero*, *I shall be*, and *fuero*, *I shall have been*, for the Future Perfect.

REMARK.—*Ful* is the *favorite* form when the participle is frequently used as an adjective: *convivium exornatum fuit*, *the banquet was furnished forth*; *ful* is the necessary form when the Perfect denotes that the action is over and gone: *amatus ful*, *I have been loved* (but I am loved no longer). The same principle applies to *fuera* and *fuero*, though not so regularly.

*Simulacrum ē marmore in sepulcro positum fuit*; *hoc quidam homo nobilis deportavit*. CIO. *A marble effigy was deposited in the tomb*; *a certain man of rank has carried it off*.

*Arma quae fixa in parietibus fuerant, humi inventa sunt*. CIO. *The arms which had been fastened to the walls were found on the ground*.

*Nec mater fuerō dicta nec orba diū*. OV. *I shall not have been called mother nor childless long*.

## C.—Periphrastic Conjugation—Passive Voice.

243. The combination of the Tenses of *esse*, *to be*, with the Gerundive (verbal in *-ndus*), is called the Periphrastic Conjugation of the Passive, and follows the laws of the simple conjugation. (See 150.)

REMARKS.—1. The Gerundive has the form of a Present Participle Passive, (*-ndus* for *-ntus*). Whenever a participle is used as a predicate it becomes characteristic, and good for all time. Compare 439, R.

As *amans* not only = *qui amat*, but also = *qui amet*, so *amandus* = *qui amētur*.

2. The Gerundive follows the law (205), and can be formed only from verbs that take the accusative. Otherwise the Impersonal form must be used.

*Parcendum est victis*. *The vanquished must be spared*.

## TENSES IN LETTERS.

244. The Roman letter-writer not unfrequently puts himself in the position of the receiver, more especially at the beginning and at the end of the letter, often in the phrase *Nihil erat quod scriberem*, "I have nothing to write." This permutation of tenses is never kept up long, and applies only to temporary situations, never to general statements.

## TABLE OF PERMUTATIONS.

<i>scribo</i> ,	<i>I am writing</i> ,	}	becomes	<i>scribēbam</i> ,
	<i>I write</i> ,			<i>scripsi</i> .
<i>scripsi</i> ,	<i>I have written</i> ,	}		<i>scripseram</i> ,
	<i>I wrote</i> ,			<i>scripseram</i> ,
	or remains unchanged.			
<i>scribam</i> ,	<i>I shall write</i> ,			<i>scriptūrus eram</i> .

The adverbial designations of time remain unchanged—or

<b>Heri,</b>	<i>yesterday,</i>	becomes	<b>pridī.</b>
<b>hodi,</b>	<i>to-day,</i>	"	<b>quō diē hās litterās dedī, dabam.</b>
<b>crās,</b>	<i>to-morrow,</i>	"	<b>posterō diē, postridī.</b>

**Formiās mē continuō recipere cōgitābam.** CIC. *I am thinking of retiring forthwith to Formiæ.*

**Quum mihi Caecilius dixisset puerum sē Rōmam mittere, hæc scripsi raptim.** CIC. *As Cæcilius has told me that he is sending a servant to Rome, I write in a hurry.*

**Litterās eram datūrus postridīe ei qui mihi primus obviam vēnisset.** CIC. *I will give the letter to-morrow to the first man that comes my way.*

## MOODS.

245. Mood signifies manner. The mood of a verb signifies the manner in which the predicate is said of the subject.

There are three moods in Latin :


1. The Indicative.
2. The Subjunctive.
3. The Imperative.

REMARK.—The Infinitive form of the verb is generally, but improperly, called a mood.

### THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

246. The Indicative Mood represents the predicate *as a reality*. It is sometimes called the Declarative Mood, as the mood of direct assertion.

The use of the Latin Indicative differs little from the English.

 The beginner may omit the Remarks.

REMARKS.—1. The Latin language expresses *possibility and power, obligation and necessity*, and abstract relations generally, *as facts* ; whereas, our translation often *implies the failure to realize*. Such expressions are : **dēbeo**, *I ought, it is my duty* ; **oportet**, *it behooves* ; **necesse est**, *it is absolutely necessary* ; **possum**, *I can, I have it in my power* ; **convenit**, *it is fitting* ; **pār, æquum est**, *it is fair* ; **infinitum**, *endless* ; **difficile**, *hard to do* ; **longum**, *tedious* ; and the Indicative form of the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation :

**Possum persequi multa oblectāmenta rerum rusticarum.** CIC. *I might rehearse many delights of country life.*

**Longum est utilitatē persequi asinorum.** CIC. *It would be tedious to rehearse the useful qualities of asses (I will not do it).*

**Ad mortem tē dūci oportēbat.** CIC. *It behooved you to be led to execution (you were not, you ought to have been led off).*

**Volumnia debuit in tē officiōsior esse, et id ipsum, quod fecit, potuit facere diligentius.** CIC. *It was Volumnia's duty to be (V. ought to have been) more attentive to you; and the little she did do (she had it in her power to do), she might have done more carefully*

**Quae condicio nōn accipienda fuit potius quam patria relinquenda?** CIC. *What terms ought not to have been accepted in preference to leaving thy country?*

**Nīl mihi dēbuerat cum versibus amplius esse.** OV. *Naught more should I have had (ere then) to do with verses.*

The Perfect and Pluperfect always refer to a special case.

2. The Imperfect as the Tense of Disappointment is sometimes used in these verbs to denote opposition to a present state of things: **dēbēbam**, *I ought* (but do not); **poterās**, *you could* (but do not). These may be considered as conditionals in disguise. (See R. 2.)

**Poteram morbos appellāre, sed nōn conveniret ad omnia.** CIC. *I might translate (that Greek word) "diseases," but that would not suit all the cases. (Poteram si conveniret.)*

**At poterās, inquit, melius mala ferre silendo.** OV. *"But," you say, "you could (you do not) bear your misfortunes better by keeping silent." (Poterās si silerēs.)*

3. The Indicative is sometimes used in the leading clause of conditional sentences (the Apodosis), thereby implying the certainty of the result, had it not been for the interruption.

The Indicative clause generally precedes, which is sufficient to show the rhetorical character of the construction.

With the Imperfect the action is often really begun:

**Lābēbar longius, nisi mē retinuissem.** CIC. *I was letting myself go on (should have let myself go on) too far, had I not checked myself.*

**Omninō erat supervacua doctrina, si nātūra sufficeret.** QUINT. *Training were wholly superfluous, did nature suffice.*

**Praeclārē vicerāmus, nisi Lepidus recēpisset Antōnium.** CIC. *We had (should have) gained a brilliant victory, had not Lepidus received Antony.*

In all these sentences the English idiom requires the Subjunctive, which is disguised by coinciding with the Indicative in form except in "were."

4. In general relative expressions, such as the double formations, **quisquis**, *no matter who*, **quotquot**, *no matter how many*, and all forms in **-cunque**, *-ever*, the Indicative is employed where we may use in English a Subjunctive or its equivalent: **quisquis est**, *no matter who he is, be, may be*; **quālecunque est**, *whatever sort of thing it is, be, may be*.

**Quidquid id est, timeō Danaōs et dōna ferentēs.** VIRG. *Whatever it (may) be, I fear the Danaï even when they bring presents.*

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

247. The Subjunctive Mood represents the predicate *as an idea*, as something merely conceived in the mind (abstracts from reality).

REMARK.—The Latin Subjunctive is often translated into English by the auxiliary verbs *may*, *can*, *must*, *might*, *could*, *would*, *should*. When these verbs have their full signification of *possibility* and *power*, *obligation* and *necessity*, they are represented in Latin by the corresponding verbs: *may*, *can*, *might*, *could*, by the forms of **posse**, *to be able*, **licet**, *it is left free*; *will* and *would*, by **velle**, *to will*, *to be willing*; *must*, by **dēbeo** or **oportet** (of moral obligation), by **necesse est** (of absolute obligation).

**Nōstrās injuriās nec potest nec possit alius ulcisci quam vōs.** LIV. *Our wrongs no other than you has the power or can well have the power to avenge.* Here **potest** gives the simple affirmation, **possit**, the moral conviction of the speaker.

248. The realization of the idea may be *in suspense*, or it may be *beyond control*. The first, or purely Ideal Subjunctive,

is represented by the Present and Perfect Tenses ; the second, or Unreal, is represented by the Imperfect and Pluperfect.


REMARKS.—1. The Subjunctive, as the name implies (*subjungo, I subjoin*), is largely used in dependent sentences, and will be treated at length in that connection.

2. The following modifications of the above principles must be carefully observed :

A. The Romans, in lively discourse, often represent the unreal as ideal, that which is beyond control as still in suspense. (598, R. 2.)

B. In transfers to the past, the Imperfect represents the Present, and the Pluperfect the Perfect Subjunctive. (510.)

249. The idea may be a *view*, or a *wish*. Hence the division of the Subjunctive into the Potential and the Optative. The Potential Subjunctive is nearer the Indicative, from which it differs in tone ; the Optative Subjunctive is nearer the Imperative, for which it is often used.

 The beginner may omit to 259.

### POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

250. The Potential Subjunctive represents the opinion of the speaker as an opinion. The tone varies from vague surmise to moral certainty, from “may” and “might” to “must.” The negative is the negative of the Indicative *nōn*.

The Potential of the Present or Future is the Present or Perfect Subjunctive. The verification is in suspense, and so future ; the action may be present or future : with Perfect sometimes Past.

*Velim, I should wish ; nōlim, I should be unwilling ; mālim, I should prefer ; dicās, you would say ; crēdās, you would believe, you must believe ; dicat, dixerit aliquis, some one may undertake to say, go so far as to say.*

*Caedi discipulōs minimē velim. QUINT. I should by no means like pupils to be flogged.*

*Tū Platōnem nec nimis valdē unquam nec nimis saepe laudāverīs. CIC. You can't praise Plato too much nor too often.*

251. The Mood of the Question is the Mood of the expected or anticipated answer (464). Hence the Potential Subjunctive is used in questions which serve to convey a negative opinion on the part of the speaker.

*Quis dubitet (= nēmo dubitet) quān in virtūte divitiarū sint ? CIC. Who can doubt that there is wealth in virtue ? (No one).*

*Quis tulērit Gracchōs dē seditiōne querentēs ? JUV. Who could bear the Gracchi complaining of rebellion ? (No one).*

*Apud exercitum fuerīs ? CIC. You were with the army ?*

**252.** The Potential of the Past is the Imperfect Subjunctive, chiefly in the Ideal Second Person, an imaginary "you."

Statement:

**Cröderēs victōs.** *You would, might, have thought them beaten.*

**Haud facile dē cernerēs utrum Hannibal imperātōri an exercitui cārior esset.** LIV. *Not readily could you have decided whether Hannibal was dearer to general or to army.*

**Mirārētur qui tum cerneret.** LIV. *Any one who saw it then must have been astonished.*

**Vellem, I should have wished; nōllem, I should have been unwilling; māllem, I should have preferred** (it is too late).

Question:

**Hoc tantum bellum quis unquam arbitrārētur ab finē imperātōre confici posse?** CIC. *Who would, could, should have thought that this great war could be brought to a close by one general?*

REMARKS.—1. The Potential Subjunctive is sometimes explained by the ellipsis of an Ideal or of an Unreal Conditional Protasis. But the free Potential Subjunctive differs from an elliptical conditional sentence in the absence of definite ellipsis, and hence of definite translation. Compare the first two sentences above with:

**Eum qui palam est adversarius facile cavendō (si caveās) vitare possis.** CIC. *An open adversary you can readily avoid by caution (if you are cautious).*

**Nil ego contulerim iucundō sānus (= dum sānus ero) amicō.** HOR. *There is naught I should compare to an agreeable friend, while I am in my sound senses.*

2. The Unreal of the Present and the Ideal of the Past coincide. What is unreal of a real person is simply ideal of an imaginary person. The Imperfect is used as the tense of Description.

The Aoristic Perfect Subj. is rarely used as the Ideal of the Past.

3. The Potential Subjunctive, as a modified form of the Indicative, is often found where the Indicative would be the regular construction. So after **quanquam** (603, R. 1).

## OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

**253.** The Subjunctive is used as an *Optative* or *wishing* mood.

The regular negative is **nō**. **Nōn** is used chiefly to negative a single word.

The Present and Perfect Subjunctive are used *when the decision is in suspense*, no matter how extravagant the wish; the Imperfect and Pluperfect are used *when the decision is adverse*. The Perfect is rare and old.

**Stet haec urbs.** CIC. *May this city continue to stand!*

**Di faxint = fēcerint.** *The gods grant!*

**Nē istūc Jūpiter optimus maximus sīrit (= siverit)!** LIV. *May Jupiter, supremely great and good, suffer it not!*

**254.** The Optative Subjunctive frequently takes **Utinam, utinam nē, utinam nōn**—in poetry also **Ō si, Oh if.**

**Utinam modo cōnāta efficere possim.** CIC. *May I but have it in my power to accomplish my endeavors.*

**Utinam reviviscat frāter!** GELL. *Would that my brother would come to life again!*

**Utinam inserere jocōs mōris esset.** QUINT. *Would that it were usual to introduce jokes!*

**Illud utinam nō vērē scriberem.** CIC. *Would that what I am writing were not true!*

**Utinam susceptus nōn essem.** CIC. *Would I had not been born!*  
**Ō mihi praeteritōs referat si Jūppiter annōs.** VERG. *O if Jove were to bring me back the years that are gone by!*

REMARKS.—1. **Utinam** was originally an interrogative, *How, pray?* and belongs partly to the potential. **Ō si** is an elliptical conditional sentence, which is not intended to have an Apodosis. When the Apodosis comes, it may come in a different form. So in the example. VERG. Aen. viii. 560, 568.

2. For the wish with adverse decision **vellem**, **māilem**, and **nōilem** are often used with Imperf. and Plpf. Subj.

**Vellem adesse posset Panaetius.** CIC. *Would that Panaetius could be present!*

**Nōilem dixissem.** CIC. *Would that I had not said it!*

So **velim**, **nōlim**, etc., for the simple wish (346, R. 3).

## 255. The Optative Subjunctive is used in *asseverations* :

**Ita vivam ut maximōs sumptūs facio.** CIC. *As I live, I am spending very largely (literally, so may I live as I am making very great outlay).*

## 256. The Subjunctive is used as an *Imperative*—

### 1. In the First Person, which has no Imperative form:

**Amēmus patriam.** CIC. *Let us love our country.*

**Nē difficilia optēmus.** CIC. *Let us not desire what is hard to do.*

### 2. In the Second Person—In the Present chiefly of an imaginary “you.”

**Ūtare**, *you may use it*; **nē requirās**, *you must not pine for it.*

In the Perfect negatively :

**Nē transieris Hībērum.** LIV. *Do not cross the Ebro.*

### 3. In the Third Person (regularly) :

**Amet**, *let him love*; **nē amet**, *let him not love.* (See 265.)

## 257. The Subjunctive is used as a *concessive* :

**Sit fūr.** CIC. *(Granted that) he be a thief.*

**Fēcērit, si ita vis.** CIC. *(Suppose) he have done it, if you will (have it so).*

Other examples with **ut** and **nē**, see 306.



258. The Subjunctive is used in Questions which expect an Imperative answer (*conjunctivus deliberativus*).

Genuine questions are commonly put in the First Person, or the representative of the First Person :

*Quid faciam ? roger anne rogem ? quid deinde rogābo ?* Ov. *What shall I do ? shall I ask or be asked ? what then shall I ask him ?*

*Magna fuit contentio utrum moenibus sē dēfenderent an obviam irent hostibus.* NEP. *There was a great dispute whether they should defend themselves behind the walls or go to meet the enemy. (Utrum nōs dēfendāmus an obviam eāmus ?).*

Rhetorical questions (questions which anticipate the answer), under this head, are hardly to be distinguished from Potential.

*Quō mē nunc vertam ? Undique custōdior.* CIC. *Whither shall I now turn ? Sentinels on every side.*

*Quid agerem ?* CIC. *What was I to do ?*

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

259. The Imperative is the mood of the will. It wills that the predicate be made a reality. The tone of the Imperative varies from stern command to piteous entreaty. It may appear as a demand, an order, an exhortation, a permission, a prayer.

*Abi in malam rem.* PLAUT. *Go (to the mischief), and be hanged.*

*Compesce mentem.* HOR. *Curb your temper.*

*Dā mihi hoc, mel meum !* PLAUT. *Give me this, honey dear !*

260. The Imperative has two forms, known as the First and the Second Imperative. The First Imperative has only the Second person ; the Second Imperative has both Second and Third persons. The First Person is represented by the Subjunctive.

*Amēmus patriam.* CIC. *Let us love our country.*

REMARK.—Some verbs have only the second form. This may be due to the signification : so *scitō*, *know thou* ; *mementō*, *remember thou* ; and *habētō*, in the sense of *know, remember*.

261. The First Imperative looks forward to immediate fulfilment (Absolute Imperative) :

*Special : Patent portae ; proficiscere.* CIC. *Open stand the gates ; depart.*

*General: Jūstitiam cole et pietātem. CIC. Cultivate justice and piety.*

262. The Second Imperative looks forward to contingent fulfilment (Relative Imperative), and is chiefly used in laws, legal documents, maxims, and the like:

*Rēgiō imperiō duo sunt, there shall be two (officers) with royal power.*

*Consulēs appellātor, they shall be called consuls.*

*Nēmīni pārento, they are to obey no one.*

*Illis salūs populī suprēma lex esto. CIC. To them the welfare of the people must be the paramount law.*

*Rem vōbīs prōpōnam: vōs eam penditōte. CIC. I will propound the matter to you; do you thereupon perpend it.*

*Percontātōrem fugitō, nam garrulus idem est. HOR. Avoid your questioner, for he is a tell-tale too.*

263. NEGATIVE OF THE IMPERATIVE.—The regular negative of the Imperative is *nē* (*nēve*, *neu*), which is found with the Second Imperative; with the First Imperative, in poetry only.

*Hominem mortuum in urbe nēve sepelito nēve ūrito, thou shalt not bury nor burn a dead man in the city.*

*Impius nē audēto plācāre dōnīs iram deōrum. CIC. The impious man must not dare attempt to appease by gifts the anger of the gods.*

*Tū nē cēde malīs, sed contrā audentior itō. VERG. Yield not thou to misfortunes, but go more boldly (than ever) to meet them.*

REMARK.—*Nōn* may be used to negative a single word.

*Ā lēgibus nōn recedāmus. Let us not recede from (let us stick to) the laws.*

*Opus poliat līma, nōn exerat. QUINT. Let the file rub the work up, not rub it out.*

264. PERIPHRASES.—I. *Cūrā ut*, take care that; *fac ut*, cause that; *fac*, do, with the Subjunctive, are common circumlocutions for the Positive Imperative.

*Cūrā ut quam primum (317) veniās. CIC. Manage to come as soon as possible.*

*Fao cōgitēs. CIC. Reflect!*

II. *Cavē nē*, beware lest, and *cavē*, with the subjunctive, and *nōli*, be unwilling, with the Infinitive, for the Negative Imperative (Prohibitive).

*Ca v ē festinēs. CIC. Do not be in a hurry.*

**Tantum quum fingēs nē sis manifesta cavētō.** Ov. *Only, when you pretend, beware that you be not detected.*

**Nōli vexāre, quiescit.** Juv. *Don't disturb her; she's sleeping.*

**265. REPRESENTATIVES OF THE IMPERATIVE.**—Instead of the Positive Imperative, may be employed:

1. The Second Person of the Future Indicative;
2. The Third Person of the Present Subjunctive:

**Faciēs, ut sciam, let me know; vivēs, live on.**

**Quod quis habet dominae conferat omne suae.** Ov. *Let a man give everything that he has to his lady-love.*

**Quaedam cum primā resecentur crimina barbā.** Juv. *Let certain faults be clipped off with the sprouting beard.*

**266.** Instead of the Negative Imperative (Prohibitive), may be employed:

The Second Person of the Perfect Subjunctive, with **nē**.

The Second Person of the Future, with **nōn**.

The Third Person of the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, with **nē**.

**Hoc facito, hoc nē fēceris.** Cic. *This do, that leave undone.*

**Nōn cessābis.** Cic. *You must not be idle.*

**Puer tēlum nē habeat.** Cic. *A boy is not to have a deadly weapon.*

**Nē metus quemquam cōperit.** Liv. *Let not fear seize any one.*

**Misericordiā commōtus nē sis.** Cic. *Don't let yourself be moved by pity.*

REMARKS.—1. **Nōn** is often used in poetry for **nē**, and **neque, nec** for **nēve, neu**.  
**Aut nōn tentāris aut perīce.** Ov. *Either do not try (at all), or effect (your object).*

**Nec, si quem fallēs, tū perjūrare timētō.** Ov. *Nor if you (shall try to) deceive a man, do you fear to forswear yourself.*

On the negative **nōn** with a single word, see 263 R. With the Perfect Subjunctive, **neque, nihil, nēmo, nullus** are freely used, as well as **nēve, neu, nēquis, nēquid**.

2. The Present Subjunctive is employed when stress is laid on the *continuance of the action*; the Perfect, when stress is laid on the *completion*. Hence in total prohibitions, the Perfect Subjunctive is the favorite form.

3. The Imperative of the Past is expressed by the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive (unfulfilled duties).

**Dōtem darētis; alium quaereret virum.** Ter. *You should have given her a portion; she should have sought another match.*

**Crās irēs potius, hodiē hīc cēnārēs.** Valē. Plaut. *You ought rather to have put off going till to-morrow, you ought to (have) dine(d) with us to-day. Good-bye. Anything decided is regarded as past.*

**Nē poposcissētis librōs.** Cic. *You ought not to have asked for the books.*

**267.** The Second Person Singular of the Present Subjunc-

tive is used both positively and negatively; but in prose, only of an imaginary subject ("you"):

**Corporis viribus utāre, dum adsint; cum absint nē requirās.** CIC. *Enjoy your vigor of body while you have it; when it is gone, you must not pine for it.*

268. Passionate questions are equivalent to a command:

**Nōn tacēs?** *won't you hold your tongue?* **quīn tacēs?** *why don't you hold your tongue?*

**Cūr nōn ut plēnus vitae convīva recēdis?** LUCR. *Why do you not withdraw as a guest sated with life?*

## 269. SUMMARY OF IMPERATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS.

### *Positive.*

2d P. **Audi**, *hear thou*; **auditō** (legal or contingent); **audiēs** (familiar); **audiās** (ideal 2d Person).

3d P. **Auditō** (legal), *let him hear*; **audiat**.

### *Negative.*

2d P. **Nē audi**, *hear not* (poetic); **nē auditō** (legal); **nōn audiēs** (familiar); **nē audiās** (ideal); **nē audiveris**; **nōli audire**.

3d P. **Nē auditō** (legal), *let him not hear*; **nē audiat**; **nē audiverit**.

## TENSES OF THE MOODS AND VERBAL NOUNS.

270. The Indicative alone expresses with uniform directness the period of time.

271. 1. The Present and Imperfect Subjunctive have to do with *continued* action, the Perfect and Pluperfect with *completed* action. The Perfect Subjunctive is also used to express the *attainment*.

2. In simple sentences Present and Perfect Subjunctive postpone the ascertainment of the Predicate to the Future. The action itself may be Present or Future for the Present Subjunctive; Present, Past, or Future for the Perfect Subjunctive.

**Orēdat.** *He may believe (now or hereafter).*

**Orēdiderit.** *Let him have had the belief (heretofore), he may have come to the belief (now), he may come to the belief (hereafter).*

3. In simple sentences the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunc-

tive are Past Tenses. The notion of unreality lies in the past tense, rather than in the Subjunctive Mood. Compare 243, R. 2.

4. In dependent sentences the Subjunctive is future if the leading verb has a future signification; otherwise the Subjunctive represents the Indicative. The tense is regulated by the law of sequence. (See 510.)

272. The Imperative is necessarily Future.

273. The Infinitive has two uses:

1. Its use as a Noun.
2. Its use as a representative of the Indicative.

274. 1. As a Noun, the Infinitive has two tenses, Present and Perfect.

The Present Infinitive has to do with *continued* action. It is the common form of the Infinitive, used as a noun.

The Perfect Infinitive has to do with *completed* action, and is also used to express *attainment*.

The Present Infinitive is used as a subject.

**Valēre est vīta,** *Being well is life.*

The Present Infinitive is used as the object of verbs of creation (Auxiliary Verbs, Verbs that help the Infinitive into being). (424.)

**Metui quam amāri mālō,** *I prefer being feared to being loved.*

275. The Perfect Infinitive is comparatively little used as a noun.

1. As a Subject, it is used chiefly in fixed expression or in marked opposition to the Present.

**Plūs prōderit dēmonstrāsse rectam prōtinus viam quam revocāre ab errōre jam lapsōs.** QUINT. *It will be more profitable to have pointed out the right path immediately than to recall from wandering those that have already gone astray.*

**Nōn tam turpe fuit vinci quam contendisse decōrum est.** OV. *'Twas not so much dishonor to be beaten as 'tis an honor to have struggled.*

So by a kind of attraction with **dēbuit**, *ought*, **decurt**, *became*, and the like, especially in earlier and late Latin.

**Tunc decuit flēsse.** LIV. *That was the time when it would have been becoming to weep (to have wept).*

2. As an Object, the Perfect Infinitive is seldom found in the active: so after *velle*, *to wish*.

**Nēminem notā strēnuī aut ignāvi militis notāsse volui.** LIV. *I wished to have marked (to mark finally) no soldier with the mark of bravery or of cowardice.*

Otherwise it is found only in the poets (after the fashion of the Greek Aorist Infinitive):

**Frātrēs tendentēs opācō Pēlion imposuisse Olympō.** HOR. *The brothers striving to pile Pelion on shady Olympus.*

In the Passive, the Perfect Infinitive is used after verbs of Will and Desire, to denote impatience of anything except entire fulfilment.

Here the Infinitive *esse* is seldom expressed.

**Dēmocritum nōllem (esse) vituperātum.** CIC. *I should rather not have had Democritus abused.*

276. 2. As the representative of the Indicative, the Infinitive has all its Tenses: Present, Past, Future, and Future Periphrastics.

277. The Present Infinitive represents *contemporaneous action*—hence the Present Indicative after a Principal Tense, and the Imperfect after a Historical Tense:

**Dico eum venire,** *I say that he is coming*; **dicebam eum venire,** *I said that he was coming.*

The Perfect Infinitive represents *Prior Action*—hence the Perfect and Imperfect Indicative after a Principal Tense:

**Dico eum vēnisse,** *I say that he came, has come, used to come*; and the Pluperfect, Imperfect, and Historical Perfect Indicative after a Historical Tense:

**Dixi eum vēnisse,** *I said that he had come, used to come, did come.*

REMARK.—**Memini,** *I remember*, when used of personal experience commonly takes the present.

**Tum mē rēgem appellārī ā vōbīs memini, nunc tyrannum vocārī video.** LIV. *I remember being styled by you a king then, I see that I am called a tyrant now.* So also **memoriā teneo** and **recordor**, *I remember, I recall.* When the experience is not personal, the ordinary construction is followed:

**Memineram Mariū ad infimōrum hominū misericordiā confūgissee.** CIC. *I remembered that Marius had thrown himself on the mercy of a set of low creatures.*

The peculiar construction with the Present arises from the liveliness of the recollec-

tion. When the action is to be regarded as a bygone, the Perfect may be used even of personal experience :

**Mē meminī frātrum dominae turbāsse capillōs.** Ov. *I remember in my anger having tousled my sweetheart's hair.*

278. The Present Participle Active denotes *continuance*; the Perfect Passive, *completion* or *attainment*.

REMARK.—The Perfect Participle is often used where we should employ a Present : **ratus**, *thinking*; **complexus**, *embracing*; **hortātus**, *exhorting*.

279. The Future Participle (Active) is a verbal adjective, denoting capability and tendency, chiefly employed in the older language with **sum**, *I am*, as a periphrastic tense. In later Latin it is used freely, just as the Present and Perfect Participles, to express subordinate relations.

REMARK.—The so-called Future Participle Passive is more properly called the Gerundive, and has already been discussed. (243.)

## SIMPLE SENTENCE EXPANDED.

280. The sentence may be expanded by the *multiplication* or by the *qualification*, A, of the subject, B, of the predicate.

### A.

#### 1. MULTIPLICATION OF THE SUBJECT.

##### *Concord.*

281. NUMBER: The common predicate of two or more subjects is put in the plural number :

**Jūs et injūria nātūrā dijūdicantur.** Cic. *Right and wrong are distinguished by nature.*

**Pater et avus mortui sunt.** TER. *Father and grandfather are dead.*

EXCEPTIONS.—1. The common predicate may agree with a singular subject when that subject is the nearest or the most important : (" My flesh and my heart faileth," Psa. lxxiii. 26.)

**Aetās et forma et super omnia Rōmānum nōmen tē ferōciōrem facit.** LIV. *Your youth and beauty, and, above all, the name of Roman, makes you too mettlesome.*

**Nāvēs et praesidium excessit.** LIV. *The fleet and garrison departed.*

2. Two abstracts in combination, when they are conceived as a unit, take a singular verb : (" When distress and anguish cometh upon you," Prov. i. 27.)

**Rēligio et fidēs antepōnātūr amicitiae.** CIC. *Let the religious obligation of a promise be preferred to friendship.*

So any close union : (" Your gold and silver is cankered," Jas. v. 3.)

**Senātus populusque Rōmānus intellegit.** CIC. *The senate and people of Rome perceives (= Rome perceives.)*

REMARKS.—1. **Neque—neque**, *neither—nor*, allows the Plural chiefly when the Persons are different :

**Haec neque ego neque tū fēcimus.** TER. *Neither you nor I did this.*

2. A singular subject combined with another word by **cum**, *with*, is treated sometimes as a singular, sometimes as a plural :

**Māgo cum omnibus ferē armātis refūgerat.** LIV. *Mago with almost all the armed men had retreated.*

**Taurus cum quinque vaccis unō ictū fulminis exanimāti sunt.** LIV. *A bull with five cows were killed by one stroke of lightning.*

282. GENDER: When the genders of combined subjects are different, the adjective predicate takes either the strongest gender or the nearest.

In things with life, the masculine gender is the strongest; in things without life, the neuter.

The strongest :

**Pater et mātēr mortui sunt.** TER. *Father and mother are dead.*

**Mūrus et porta dē caelō tacta.** LIV. *Wall and gate had been struck by lightning.*

The nearest :

**Convicta est Messālina et Silius.** TAC. *Messalina was convicted and (so was) Silius.*

**Hippolochus Larissaeōrumque dēditum est praesidium.** LIV. *Hippolochus and the Larissaeae garrison (were) surrendered.*

When things with life and things without life are combined, the gender varies.

Both as persons :

**Rēx rēgiaque clāssis profecti sunt.** LIV. *The king and the king's fleet set out.*

Both as things :

**Nātūrā inimica sunt libera civitās et rēx.** LIV. *A free State and a king are natural enemies.*

REMARK.—On the neuter as a predicate see 199, R. 4.

**Pāx et concordia victis ūtilia, victōribus tantum pulchra sunt.** TAC. *Peace and harmony are useful (things) to the conquered, to the conquerors alone are they ornaments.*



**283. PERSONS:** When the persons of combined subjects are different, the First Person is preferred to the Second, the Second to the Third:

**SI tū et Tullia, lūx nōstra, valētis, ego et suāvisimus Cicero valēmus.** **CIC.** *If Tullia, light of my eyes, and you are well, dearest Cicero and I are well.*

**REMARKS.**—1. The order is commonly the order of the persons, not of modern politeness: **Ego et uxor mea.** *Wife and I.*

2. **EXCEPTION.**—In contrasts, and when each person is considered separately, the predicate agrees with the person of the nearest subject:

**Ego sententiam, tū verba dēfendis.** *I am the champion of the spirit, you of the letter.*

**Et ego et Cicero meus flāgitābit.** **CIC.** *My Cicero will demand it and (so will) I.*  
So regularly with disjunctives. On **neque—neque**, see 281, R. 1.

## 2. QUALIFICATION OF THE SUBJECT.

**284.** The subject may be qualified by giving it an attribute. An attribute is that which serves to give a specific character.

The chief forms of the attribute are:

I. The adjective and its equivalents: **amicus certus, a sure friend.**

II. The substantive in apposition: **Cicero orātor, Cicero the orator.**

**REMARK.**—The equivalents of the adjective are: 1. The pronouns **hic, this, ille, that**, etc. 2. Substantives denoting rank, age, trade: **servus homo, a slave person; homo senex, an old fellow; homo gladiātor, a gladiator-fellow; mulier ancilla, a servant-wench.** 3. The genitive (357). 4. The ablative (402). 5. Preposition and case: **excessus ē vitā, departure from life.** 6. Adverbs chiefly with participial nouns: **rectē facta, good actions.** 7. Relative clauses (506).

## I. ADJECTIVE ATTRIBUTE.

### CONCORD.

**285.** The Adjective Attribute agrees with its substantive, in gender, number, and case:

#### GENDER.

**Vir sapiens, a wise man,**  
**Mulier pulchra, a beautiful woman,**  
**Rēgium dōnum, royal gift,**

#### NUMBER.

**virī sapientēs, wise men.**  
**mulierēs pulchrae, beautiful women.**  
**rēgia dōna, royal gifts.**

## CASE.

Viri sapientis, of a wise man.

Mulieri pulchrae, for a beautiful woman.

Virum sapientem, wise man.

bone fili! good son!

rēgiō dōnō, by royal gift.

mulierēs pulchrās, beautiful women.

286. The common attribute of two or more substantives agrees with the nearest:

Omnes agri et maria, }  
Agri et maria omnia, } All lands and seas.

REMARKS.—1. The Latin language repeats the common attribute more frequently than the English: *omnes agri et omnia maria*, all lands and (all) seas. Generally, the Latin language has a strong tendency to rhetorical repetition.

2. A common surname is put in the plural: *M. et Q. Cicerōnēs*, Marcus and Quintus Cicero; *G., Gn., M. Carbōnēs*, Gaius, Gnaeus (and) Marcus Carbo; otherwise, *M. Cicero et Q. Cicero*, Marcus and Quintus Cicero.

287. *Position of the Attribute.*—When the Attribute is emphatic, it is commonly put before the substantive, ordinarily after it.

1. *Fugitivus servus*, a runaway slave (one complex).

2. *Servus fugitivus*, a slave (that is) a runaway (two notions).

Many expressions, however, have become fixed formulæ, such as *civis Rōmānus*, Roman citizen; *populus Rōmānus*, people of Rome.

REMARK.—The superlatives which denote order and sequence in time and space are often used partitively, and then generally precede their substantive: *summa aqua*, the surface of the water; *summus mons*, the top of the mountain; *vēre primō*, primō vēre, in the beginning of spring; *in mediā urbe*, in the midst of the city. So also, *reliqua, cētera Graecia*, the rest of Greece.

288. When the attribute belongs to two or more words, it is placed sometimes before them all, sometimes after them all, sometimes after the first.

All lands and seas, *omnes agri et maria*; *agri et maria omnia*; *agri omnes et maria*.

☞ The beginner may omit to 318.

## PECULIAR FORMS OF THE ADJECTIVE ATTRIBUTE.

289. The following forms of the Adjective Attribute present important peculiarities.

1. Demonstrative Pronouns.

2. Determinative and Reflexive Pronouns.

3. Possessive Pronouns.
4. Indefinite Pronouns.
5. Numerals.
6. Comparatives and Superlatives.

### 1. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

290. **Hic**, *this* (the Demonstrative of the First Person), refers to *that which is nearer the speaker*, and may mean :

1. The speaker himself : **hic homo** = *ego*.
2. The judges in a suit of law : **si ego hōs nōvī**, *if I know these men* (= the jury).
3. The most important subject immediately in hand : **hic sapiens dē quō loquor**, *this (imaginary) wise man of whom I am speaking*.
4. That in which the speaker is peculiarly interested : **hoc studium**, *this pursuit of mine, of ours*.
5. That which has just been mentioned : **haec hāctenus**, *these things thus far = so much for that*.
6. Very frequently, that which is about to be mentioned : **his conditionibus**, *on the following terms*.
7. The current period of time : **hic diēs**, *to-day* ; **haec nox**, *the night just past or just coming* ; **hic mēsis**, *the current month*.

291. **Iste**, *that* (of thine, of yours), refers to *that which belongs more peculiarly to the Second Person* (Demonstrative of the Second Person) :

**Perfer istam militiam.** CIC. *Endure that military service of yours.*

**Adventū tuō ista subsellia vacuēfacta sunt.** CIC. *At your approach the benches in your neighborhood were vacated.*

REMARK.—The supposed contemptuous character of **Iste** arises from the refusal to take any direct notice of the person under discussion, "the person *at whom*."

292. **Ille**, *that* (the Demonstrative of the Third Person), denotes *that which is more remote from the speaker*, and is often used in contrast to **hic**, *this*.

**Heu quantum haec Niobē Niobā distābat ab illā.** OV. *Alas ! how far this Niobe differed from that Niobe.*

**Ille** may mean :

1. That which has been previously mentioned (often **ille quidem**) : **illud quod initio vōbis prōposui**, *that which I propounded to you at first*.
2. That which is well known, notorious (often put after the substantive) :

*testula illa, that (notorious) potsherd = institution of ostracism; illud Solōnis, that (famous saying) of Solon's.*

3. That which is to be recalled: *illud imprimis mirābile, that (which I am going to remind you of) is especially wonderful.*

4. That which is expected:

*Illā diēs veniet mea quā lūgubria pōnam. Ov. The day will come when I shall lay aside (cease) my mournful strains.*

REMARKS.—1. *Hic* and *ille* are used together in contrasts: *as, the latter—the former, the former—the latter.*

When both are matters of indifference the natural signification is observed: *hic, the latter; ille, the former.*

*Ignāvia corpus hebetat, labor firmat; illa mātūram senectūtem, hic longam adulescentiam reddit. Cels. Laziness weakens the body, toil strengthens it; the one (the former) hastens old age, the other (the latter) prolongs youth.*

When the former is the more important, *hic* is the former, *ille* the latter:

*Melior tūtiorque est certa pāx quam spērāta victōria; hæc in nōstrā, illa in deūrum manū est. Liv. Better and safer is certain peace than hoped-for victory; the former is in our hand(s), the latter in the hand(s) of the gods.*

2. *Hic et ille; ille et ille; ille aut ille, this man and (or) that man = one or two.*

*Nōn dicam hoc signum ablātum esse et illud; hoc dico, nullum tē signum reliquisse. Cic. I will not say that this statue was taken off and that; (what) I say (is) this, that you left no statue at all.*

3. The derived adverbs retain the personal relations of *hic, iste, ille*: *hic, here (where I am); hinc, hence (from where I am); hūc, hither (where I am); istic, there (where you are); illic, there (where he is), etc.*

4. The Demonstrative Pronouns *hic, iste, ille*, and the Determinative *is*, are often strengthened by *quidem, indeed*. The sentence often requires that either the demonstrative or the particle be left untranslated.

*Optāre hoc quidem est, nōn docēre. Cic. THAT is a (pious) wish, not a (logical) proof.*

*Nihil perfertur ad nōs præter rūmōrēs satis istōs quidem constantēs sed adhūc sine auctōre. Cic. Nothing is brought to us except reports, quite consistent, it is true but thus far not authoritative.*

## 2. DETERMINATIVE AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

293. *Is, that*, is the determinative pronoun, and the regular antecedent of the relative.

*Mihi obviam vēnit tuus puer; is mihi litterās abs tē reddidit. Cic. I was met by your servant; he delivered to me a letter from you.*

*Is minimō eget mortālis qui minimum cupit. SYRUS. That mortal is in want of least, who wanteth least.*

REMARKS.—1. *Is*, as the antecedent of the relative, is often omitted, chiefly in the Nominative, more rarely in an oblique case.

*Bis dat qui cito dat. PROV. He gives twice who gives in a trice.*

2. *Is*, with a copulative or adversative particle, is used as *he* or *that* in English, for the purpose of emphasis. Such expressions are: *et is, atque is, isque, and he too, and that*

*too ; neque is, et is nōn, and he not, and that not ; sed is, but he, further strengthened by quidem, indeed.*

**Exempla quaerimus et ea nōn antiqua.** CIC. *We are looking for examples, and those, too, not of ancient date.*

**Epicūrus unā in domō et eē quidem angustā quam magnōs tenuit amicōrum gregēs.** CIC. *What shoals of friends Epicurus had in one house, and that a pinched-up one !*

3. **Is** does not represent a noun before a Genitive, as in the English *that of*. In Latin the noun is omitted, or repeated, or a word of like meaning substituted.

**Nōn iudiciō discipulōrum dicere dēbet magister sed discipuli magistrī.** QUINT. *The master is not to speak according to the judgment of the pupils, but the pupils according to that of the master.*

**Nulla est celeritās quae possit cum animi celeritāte contendere.** CIC. *There is no speed that can possibly vie with that of the mind.*

**M. Coelius tribūnal suum juxtā G. Trebōni sēllam collocāvit.** CAES. *Marcus Coelius placed his chair of office next to that of Gaius Trebonius.*

Of course **Hic, Ille, and Iste** can be used with the Genitive in their proper sense.

294. REFLEXIVE: Akin to **is** is the Reflexive Pronoun **sui, sibi, sē**. Instead of the Genitives **ejus, eōrum, eārum, eorum**, the Possessive of the Reflexive, **suus, sua, suum**, is employed when reference is made to the subject of the sentence :

**Alexander moriens anulū suū dederat Perdīcae.** NER. *Alexander (when) dying had given his ring to Perdicas.*

**Quod quis habet dominae conferat omne suae.** OV. (265.)

On the other hand :

**Deum agnōscis ex operibus ejus.** *God you recognize by his works.*

The same principle applies to the other cases of **is** and of the Reflexive. Hence the general rule :

295. The forms of the Reflexive Pronoun are used when reference is made to the subject of the sentence.

**Ipse sē quisque diligit.** CIC. *Everybody loves himself.*

REMARKS.—1. **Suus**, when used in an emphatic sense (*own, peculiar, proper*), may refer to another case than that of the subject :

**Hannibalem sui civēs ē civitāte ejecērunt.** CIC. *Hannibal's own countrymen expelled him.*

**Iustitia suū cuique distribuit.** CIC. *Justice gives each man that is his own = his due.*

**Inque suōs volui cōgere verba pedēs.** OV. *And I wished to force the words into their proper feet* (places in the verse).

**Suō tempore, at the proper, fitting time.** So **suō locō :**

**Cōmoediae quem ūsum in pueris putem suō locō dicam.** QUINT. *What I consider to be the good of comedy in the case of boys I will mention in the proper place.*

2. In dependent clauses the reflexive is used with reference either to the principal or to the subordinate subject. See for fuller treatment §21.

296. *Idem*, the same, serves to unite two or more attributes or predicates on a person or thing.

*Idem* is often to be translated by *at the same time* ; *likewise*, *also* ; *yet*, *notwithstanding*.

*Cimōn incidit in e a n d e m invidiam quam pater suus.* NEP. *Cimon fell into the same odium as his father.*

*Quidquid honestum est i d e m est ūtile.* CIC. *Whatever is honorable is also (at the same time) useful.*

*Nīl prōdest quod nōn laedere possit i d e m.* OV. *Nothing helps that may not likewise hurt.*

*Epicūrus, quum optimam et praestantissimam nātūram dei dicat esse, negat i d e m esse in deō grātiam.* CIC. *Although Epicurus says that the nature of God is transcendently good and great, yet (at the same time) he says that there is no sense of favor in God.*

*Difficilis facilis, jūcundus acerbus, es i d e m.* MART. *Crabbed (and) kindly, sweet (and) sour, are you at once.*

REMARKS.—1. *The same as* is expressed by *Idem* with *qui*, with *atque* or *ac*, with *ut*, with *cum*, and poetically with the Dative :

*Servi mōribus iisdem erant quibus dominus.* CIC. *The servants had the same character as the master.*

*Est animus ergā te i d e m a c fuit.* TER. *Her feelings toward you are the same as they were.*

*Disputātiōnem expōnimus iisdem ferē verbis ut actum disputātumque est.* CIC. *We are setting forth the discussion in very much the same words in which it was actually carried on.*

*Tibi mēcum in eōdem pistrinō vivendum.* CIC. *You have to live in the same treadmill with me.*

*Invitum qui servat i d e m facit occidenti.* HOR. *He who saves a man's life against his will, does the same thing as one who kills him (as if he killed him).*

2. *Idem* cannot be used with *is*, of which it is only a stronger form (*is + dem*).

297. *Ipsē*, *self*, is the distinctive pronoun, and separates a subject or an object from all others :

*Ipse feci, I myself did it and none other, I alone did it, I did it of my own accord, I am the very man that did it.*

*Nunc ipsum, at this very instant, at this precise moment.*

*Conōn nōn quaesivit ubi ipse tutō viveret, sed unde praesidiō esse posset civibus suis.* NEP. *Conon did not seek a place to live in safely himself, but a place from which he could be of assistance to his countrymen.*

*Valvae subitō se ipsae aperuerunt.* CIC. *The folding-doors suddenly opened of their own accord.*

*Cato mortuus est annis octōgintā sex ipsis ante Cicerōnem cōn-gulem.* CIC. *Cato died just eighty-six years before Cicero's consulship.*

REMARKS.—1. Owing to this distinctive character, *ipse* is often used of *persons* in opposition to *things*; *riders* in opposition to *horses*; *inhabitants* in opposition to the *towns* which they inhabit; the *master* of the house in opposition to his *household*.

*Eo quō mē ipsa misit.* PLAUT. *I am going where mistress sent me.*

2. *Et ipse, likewise, as well,* is used when a new subject takes an old predicate:

*Virtūtēs et ipsae taedium pariunt nisi grātiā varietātis adiūtae.* QUINT. *Virtues likewise (as well as faults) produce weariness unless they are flavored with variety.*

*Camillus ex Volscis in Aequōs trānsiit et ipsos bellum mōlientēs.* LIV. *Camillus went across from the Volscians to the Aequians, who were likewise (as well as the Volscians) getting up war.*

298. *Ipse* is used to lay stress on the reflexive relation; in the Nominative when the subject is emphatic, in the Oblique Cases when the object is emphatic.

*Sē ipse laudat,* *he* (and not another) *praises himself.*

*Sē ipsum laudat,* *he praises himself* (and not another).

*Piger ipse sibi obstat.* PROV. *The lazy man stands in his own way, is his own obstacle.*

*Nōn egeo medicinā; mē ipse consōlor.* CIC. *I do not need medicine; I comfort myself* (I am my only comforter).

*Omnibus potius quam ipsis nobis consuluimus,* *we have consulted the interest of all rather than our own.*

Exceptions are common:

*Quique aliis cāvit nōn cavet ipse sibi.* OV. *And he who took precautions for others takes none for himself.*

### 3. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

299. The Possessive Pronouns are more rarely used in Latin than in English, and chiefly for the purpose of contrast or clearness.

*Manūs lavā et cēnā.* CIC. *Wash (your) hands and dine.*

*Fraedia mea tū possidēs, ego aliēnā misericordiā vivo.* CIC. *You are in possession of my estates, (while) I live on the charity of others.*

REMARK.—Observe the intense use of the Possessive in the sense of *property, peculiarity, fitness*: *suum esse*, *to belong to one's self, to be one's own man.*

*Tempore tuō pugnāsti.* LIV. *You have fought at your own time* (= when you wished).

*Ego annō meō consul factus sum.* CIC. *I was made consul in my own year* (= the first year in which I could be made consul).

*Pugna suum finem quum jacet hostis habet.* OV. *A fight has reached its end and when the foe is down,*

## 4. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

300. **Quidam** means *one, a, a certain one* (definite or indefinite to the speaker, not definitely designated to the hearer): **quidam rhētor**, *a certain rhetorician*.

In the plural, it is equivalent to *some, sundry*, without emphasis.

**Quidam** is often used with or without **quasi**, *as if*, to modify an expression:

**Est quaedam virtūtum vitiōrumque vicinia.** QUINT. *There is a certain neighborly relation between virtues and vices.*

**Nōn sunt isti audiendi qui virtutem dūram et quasi ferream quandam esse volunt.** CIC. *Those friends of yours are not to be listened to who will have it (maintain) that virtue is hard, and as it were made of iron.*

301. **Aliquis** (**aliqui**), means, *some one* (wholly indefinite), *some one or other*: **fēcit hoc aliquis tui similis**, *some one or other like you did this*; **aliqui scrūpus**, *some scruple or other*.

In the predicate it is emphatic (by Litotēs, 448, R. 2): **sum aliquis**, **aliquid**, *I am somebody = a person of importance, something = of some weight*, opposed to: **nullus sum**, **nihil sum**, *I am a nobody, nothing*.

**Est aliquid fātale malum per verba levāre.** OV. *It is something to relieve the fated misfortune by words.*

302. **Quis** (**qui**), fainter than **aliquis**, is used chiefly in relative sentences and after **quum**, *when*, **si**, *if*, **nē**, *lest*, **num**, *whether*, **quō the . . .** 400.

**Nē quid nimis!** *nothing in excess!*

**Si qua volet regnāre diū, dēlūdat amantem.** OV. (231, R. 2.)

**Quod quis habet dominae conferat omne suae.** OV. (265.)

REMARK.—**Aliquis** is used after **si**, and the rest when there is stress: **si quis**, *if any*; **si aliquis**, *if some*.

**Si aliquid dandum est voluptāti, modicis convivis senectūs dīlectārī potest.** CIC. *If something is to be given to pleasure (as something or other must), old age can take delight in mild festivities.* **Si quid**, *if anything*; **si quidquam**, *if anything at all*.

When used with negatives, the negative itself is commonly negated: **Verrēs nihil unquam fēcit sine aliquō quaestū.** CIC. (445.)

303. **Quispiam** is rarer than **aliquis**, but not to be distinguished from it, except that **quispiam** is never found in negative sentences: **dixerit quispiam**, *some one may say*.

304. **Quisquam** and **ullus** (adjective) mean *any one* (at all),



and are used chiefly in negative sentences, in sentences that imply total negation, and in sweeping conditions:

**Iūstītia nunquam nocet cuiquam.** CIC. *Justice never hurts anybody.*

**Quis unquam Graecōrum rhētorum ā Thūcōydidē quidquam dūxit?** CIC. *What Greek rhetorician ever drew anything from Thucydides?*  
[None].

**Si quisquam, ille sapiens fuit.** CIC. *If any one at all (was) wise, he was.*

**Est ulla rēs tantī, ut virī bonī et splendōrem et nōmen āmittās?** CIC. *Is anything of such importance as that you should lose (for its sake) the splendid title of a good man?*

The negative of **quisquam** is **nēmo**, *nobody*; **nihil**, *nothing* (105). **Nēmo**, however, is sometimes used as an adjective:

**Nēmo discipulus,** *no scholar.*

The negative of **ullus** is **nullus**, *no, none*, which is also used regularly as a substantive in the Genitive and Ablative instead of **nēminis** and **nēmine**.

REMARKS.—1. On **neque quisquam** and **et nēmo**, see 479.

2. **Nullus** is used in familiar language instead of **nōn** (so sometimes in English): **Philippus nullus usquam.** LIV. *No Philip anywhere.*

**305. Quisque** (from **quisquis**) means *each one*.

**Laudāti sunt omnēs dōnātique prō meritō quisque.** LIV. *All were praised and rewarded, each one according to his desert.*

**Quam quisque nōrit artem in hāc sē exerceat.** (618.)

With superlatives and ordinals **quisque** is loosely translated *every*:

**Optimum quidque rārissimum est.** CIC. *Every good thing is rare, more accurately, The better a thing, the rarer it is.* (645, R. 2.)

**Quintō quōque annō Sicilia tōta censētur.** CIC. *Every fifth year all Sicily is assessed.*

**Primō quōque tempore,** *The sooner the better, as soon as possible.*

REMARKS.—1. **Quisque** is commonly postpositive, almost invariably after the reflexive: **ipse sē quisque diligit** (295); **suum cuique** (295, R. 1), except when the reflexive is especially emphatic.

2. Nägelsbach's formulæ:

a. **Nōn omnia omnibus tribuenda sunt, sed suum cuique;**

b. **Omnēs idem faciunt, sed optimus quisque optimē;**

c. **Nōn omnibus annis hoc fit, sed tertio quōque annō;**

d. **Nōn omnēs idem faciunt, sed quod quisque vult.**

**306. Alter** and **alius** are both translated *other, another*, but **alter** refers to one of two, **alius** to diversity.

**Sōlus aut cum alterō**, *alone or with (only) one other*; **alter Nero**, *a second Nero*.

**Alter alterum quaerit**, *one (definite person) seeks the other (definite person)*; **alius alium quaerit**, *one seeks one, another another*; **alteri—alteri**, *one party—another party* (already defined); **alii—alii**, *some—others*. **Alter** often means *neighbor, brother, fellow-man*; **alius**, *third person*.

### Alter :

**Āgēsilaūs claudus fuit alterō pede**. **NEP.** *Agēsilaūs was lame of one foot*.

**Alterā manū fert lapidem, pānem ostentat alterā**. **PLAUT.** *In one hand a stone he carries, in the other holds out bread*.

**Mors nec ad vivōs pertinet nec ad mortuōs : alteri nulli** (304, R. 2) **sunt, alterōs nōn attinget**. **CIC.** *Death concerns neither the living nor the dead : the latter are not, the former it will not reach*.

### Alius :

**Fallācia alia aliam trūdit**. **TER.** *One lie treads on the heels of another* (indefinite series).

**Divitiās alii praepōnunt, alii honōrēs**. **CIC.** *Some prefer riches, others honors*.

**Aliud alii nātūra iter ostendit**. **SALL.** *Nature shows one path to one man, another path to another man*.

### Alter and alius :

**Ab aliō expectēs alteri quod fēceris**. **SYRUS.** *You may look for from another what you've done unto your brother* (from No. 3, what No. 1 has done to No. 2).

## 5. NUMERALS.

**307. Duo** means simply *two*, **ambo**, *both* (two considered together), **uterque**, *either* (two considered apart, as, "They crucified two others with him, on either side one," John xix. 18) :

**Supplicatio ambōrum nōmine et triumphus utrique dēcrētus est**. **LIV.** *A thanksgiving in the name of both and a triumph to either (each of the two) was decreed*.

**REMARK.**—**Uterque** is seldom plural, except of sets :

**Utrique [plēbis fantōrēs et senātus] victōriam crudēlīter exercēbant**. **SALL.** *Either party (democrats and senate) made a cruel use of victory*.

**Duae fuērunt Ariovisti uxōrēs : utraque in eā fugā perierunt**. **CAES.** *Ariovistus's wives were two in number ; both perished on that flight*.

On **uterque** with the Genitive, see 370 R. 2.

**308. Mille**, *a thousand*, is in the Singular an indeclinable Adjective, and is less frequently used with the Genitive : **mille militēs**, rather than **mille militum**, *a thousand soldiers* ; in the Plural it is a declinable Substantive, and must have the Genitive : **duo milia militum**, *two thousand(s) of soldiers = two regiments of soldiers*.

But if a smaller number comes between, the noun follows the smaller number :

3500 *cavalry*, { *tria milia quingenti equitēs*,  
*tria milia equitum et quingenti*, but  
*equitēs tria milia quingenti*, or  
*equitum tria milia quingenti*.

309. The ordinals are used for the cardinals with a carelessness which gives rise to ambiguity:

*Quattuor anni sunt*, { *ex quō tē nōn vidi*,  
*It is four years*, { *that I have not seen you (since I saw you)*.  
*Quartus annus est*, {  
*It is the fourth year (four years, going on four years)*.

REMARK.—To avoid this ambiguity *inceptus*, *begun*, and *exactus*, *finished*, seem to have been used. GELLIUS, N. A. iii. 16.

310. The distributives are used with an exactness which is foreign to our idiom wherever repetition is involved, as in the multiplication table.

With *singuli* either cardinal or distributive may be used.

*Antōnius [pollicitus est] dēnāriōs quingēnōs (or quingentōs) singulis militibus datūrum*. CIC. *Antonius promised to give 500 denarii to each soldier*.

*Scriptum eculeum cum quinque pedibus, pullōs gallināceōs trēs cum ternis pedibus nātōs esse*. LIV. *A letter was written to say that a colt had been foaled with five feet (and) three chickens hatched with three feet (apiece)*.

*Carmen ab ter novēnis virginibus canī jussērunt*. LIV. *They ordered a chant to be sung by thrice nine virgins*.

REMARK.—The poets often use the distributive where the cardinal would be the rule, and the cardinals are sometimes found even in prose, where we should expect the distributives. *Bini* is not unfrequently used of a pair: *Bini scyphi*, *a pair of cups*. On the distributives with *Plūralia tantum*, see 95, R. 2.

## 6. COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES.

311. *Comparative*.—The comparative degree generally takes a term of comparison either with *quam*, *than*, or in the Ablative:

*Ignōrātiō futūrōrum malōrum ūtilior est quam scientia*. CIC. *Ignorance of future evils is better than knowledge (of them)*.

*Tullus Hostilius ferōcior etiam Rōmulo fuit*. LIV. *Tullus Hostilius was even more metilesome than Romulus*.

REMARKS.—1. The Ablative is used only when the word with *quam* would stand in the Nom. or Acc.

Caesar minor est { quam Pompējus, } *Caesar is younger than Pompey.*  
Pompējō,

Caesarem magis amāmus { quam Pompējum, } *we love Caesar more than Pompey.*  
Pompējō,

But—

Caesari magis favēmus quam Pompējō, *we favor Caesar more than Pompey* (647).

2. The Ablative is very common in negative sentences, and is used exclusively in negative relative sentences.

Nōn adeō cecidi quamvis dējectus ut infā tē quoque sim, inferius quō nihil esse potest. Ov. *I have not fallen so far, however cast down, as to be lower than you, than whom nothing can be lower.*

3. Measure of difference is put in the ablative, 397.

4. Quam is often omitted after plūs, amplius, more, and minus, less, and the like, without affecting the construction.

Homini miserō plūs quingentōs colaphōs infrēgit mihi. Ter. *He has dealt me, luckless creature, more than five hundred crushing boxes on the ear.*

Spatium est nōn amplius pedum sexcentōrum. Caes. *The space is not more than (of) six hundred feet.*

More than thirty years old : 1. Nātus plūs (quam) trīgintā annōs.

2. Nātus plūs trīgintā annis (rare).

3. Māior (quam) trīgintā annōs nātus.

4. Māior trīgintā annis (nātus).

5. Māior trīgintā annōrum.

Palūs nōn lātior pedibus quinquāgintā. Caes. *A swamp not broader than fifty feet (or pedēs quinquāgintā).*

5. On the combination of the comparative with opiniōne, opinion, spēs, hope, and the like, see 399, R. 1.

6. Atque for quam is poetical.

312. *Standard of Comparison omitted.*—When the standard of comparison is omitted, it is supplied: 1. By the context; 2. By the usual or proper standard; 3. By the opposite.

1. By the context:

Solent rēgēs Persārum plūrēs uxōrēs habēre. Cic. *The kings of Persia usually have more wives [than one].*

2. By the proper standard:

Senectūs est nātūrā loquāctor. Cic. *Old age is naturally rather (or too) talkative.*

3. By the opposite:

Sed melius nōscisse fuit. Ov. *But it had been better not to have known (than to have known), ignorance had been bliss.*

313. *Disproportion.*—Disproportion is expressed by the comparative with quam prō, than for, and the Ablative, or with ut, that, or qui, who, and the subjunctive:

Minor caedēs quam prō tantā victoriā fuit. Liv. *The loss was (too) small for so great a victory.*

**Māior sum quam ut mancipium sim mei corporis.** SEN. *I am too great to be the slave of my body.*

**Māior sum quam cui possit Fortūna nocēre.** OV. *I am too great for Fortune possibly to hurt me.*

**314. Two Qualities compared.**—When two qualities of the same substantive are compared, we find either **magis** and **quam** with the positive, or a double comparative:

**Celer tuus disertus magis est quam sapiens.** CIC. *Your (friend) Celer is eloquent rather than wise—more eloquent than wise.*

**Pauli cōntio fuit vērior quam grātior populō.** LIV. *Paulus's speech was more true than agreeable to the people.*

**REMARK.**—There is no distinction to be made between the two expressions. In the latter turn, mainly post-Ciceronian, the second comparative is merely attracted into the same form as the first. The same rule applies to the adverb: **fortius quam felicis**, *with more bravery than good luck.*

**315. Restriction to the Comparative.**—When but two objects are compared, the comparative exhausts the degrees of comparison, whereas, in English, the superlative is employed, unless the idea of duality is emphatic.

**Nātū māior, the eldest** (of two), *the elder*; **nātū minor, the youngest, the younger.**

**Prior, the first**; **posterior, the last.**

**Posteriōrēs cōgitationēs, ut ajunt, sapientiōrēs solent esse.** CIC. *After-thoughts, as the saying is, are usually the wisest.*

**REMARK.**—The same rule applies to the interrogative **uter**, *which of two?* (*whether?*):

**Quaeritur: ex duobus uter dignior; ex pluribus, quis dignissimus.** QUINT. *The question is: Of two, which is the worthier; of more (than two), which is the worthiest.*

Exceptions are rare.

**316. Superlative.**—The Latin superlative is often to be rendered by the English positive, especially of persons:

**Quintus Fabius Maximus, Quintus Fabius the Great.**

**Tam felix es quam formōsissima vellem.** OV. *Would thou wert fortunate as (thou art) fair.*

**Maximō impetū, mājore fortunā.** LIV. *With great vigor, with greater luck.*

**317. Superlative strengthened.**—The superlative is strengthened by **longē**, *by far*; **multō**, *much*; **vel, even**; **ūnus, unus**

**omnium**, one above all others; **quam**, **quantus**—**potuit**, as—as possible.

**Ex Britannis omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī Cantium incolunt.** CAES. *Of all the Britons by far the most cultivated are those that inhabit Kent.*

**Prōtagorās sophistēs illis temporibus vel maximus.** CIC. *Protagoras, the very greatest sophist (= professor of wisdom) in those times.*

**Urbem ūnam mihi amicissimam dēclināvi.** CIC. *I turned aside from a city above all others friendly to me.*

**Caesar quam aequissimō locō potest castra cōmūnit.** CAES. *Caesar fortifies a camp in as favorable a position as possible.*

REMARK.—**Quam aequissimus locus = tam aequus quam aequissimus.** (For other expressions, see 645, R. 5.)

### APPOSITION.

318. By apposition one substantive is placed by the side of another, which contains it:

**Cicero orātor**, Cicero the orator.

**Rhēnus flūmen**, the river Rhine.

### CONCORD.

319. The word in apposition agrees with the principal word in number and case, and as far as it can in gender:

Nom. **Hērodotus pater historiae**, Herodotus the father of history;

Gen. **Hērodoti patris historiae**: D. **Hērodotō patri historiae**.

**Aestus exēsor mūrōrum.** LUCR. *Tide the devourer of walls.*

**Athēnae omnium doctrinārum inventricēs.** CIC. *Athens the inventor of all branches of learning.* (See 202.)

REMARKS.—1. The predicate sometimes agrees with the word in apposition, especially in names of towns: **Corioli oppidum captum est.** LIV. *Corioli-town was taken.*

Otherwise regulary:

**Pompējus, nostrī amōrēs, ipse sē afflixit.** CIC. *Pompey, our bosom friend, has floored himself.*

2. The Possessive Pronoun takes the Genitive in apposition:

**Tuum, hominis simplicis, pectus vidimus.** CIC. *We have seen your bosom bared, you open-hearted creature!*

**Urbs meā ūnus operā salva fuit.** CIC. *The city was saved by my exertions alone.*

320. *Partitive Apposition.*—Partitive Apposition is that form of Apposition in which a part is taken out of the whole:

**Cōtera multitūdo sorte decimus quisque ad supplicium lecti sunt.** LIV. (Of) *the rest of the crowd every tenth man was chosen by lot for punishment.* (Sometimes called Restrictive Apposition.)

**321. Distributive Apposition.**—Distributive Apposition is that form of Apposition in which the whole is subdivided into its parts, chiefly with **alter—alter, the one—the other; quisque, each one; alii—alii, some—others.** (Often called Partitive.)

**Duae filiae altera occisa altera capta est.** CAES. (Of) *two daughters, the one was killed, the other captured.*

REMARK.—The Partitive Genitive is more commonly employed than either of these forms of apposition.

**322. Mihi nomen est.** Instead of the apposition with **nōmen, name,** the name of the person is more frequently attracted into the Dative.

*My name is Cicero,* { 1. **Mihi Cicerōni nōmen est;** most common.  
2. **Mihi nōmen Cicerō est;** less common.  
3. **Mihi nōmen Cicerōnis est;** least common.

**Nōmen Arctūrō est mihi.** PLAUT. *My name is Arcturus.*

**Tibi nōmen insānō posuēre.** HOR. *They called you "cracked."*

**Samnitēs Maleventum, cui nunc urbi Beneventum nōmen est, perfūgērunt.** LIV. *The Samnites fled to Maleventum (Ilcome), a city which now bears the name Beneventum (Welcome).*

**Nōmen Mercurii est mihi.** PLAUT. *My name is Mercury.*

**323. Apposition to a Sentence.**—Sometimes an accusative stands in apposition to a whole preceding sentence:

**Admoneor ut aliquid etiam dē sepultūrā dicendum existimem, rē mōn difficilē m.** CIC. *I am reminded to take into consideration that something is to be said about burial also—an easy matter.*

REMARK.—This accusative may follow a Passive or Neuter verb as the object affected. Others regard such Neut. Accusatives as Nominatives.

## PREDICATIVE ATTRIBUTION AND PREDICATIVE APPPOSITION.

**324.** Any case may be followed by the same case in Predicative Attribution or Apposition, which differ from the ordinary Attribution or Apposition in translation only.

NOMINATIVE: **Filius aegrōtus rediit.**

Ordinary Attribution: *The sick son returned.*

**Predicative Attribution :** *The son returned sick = he was sick when he returned.*

**Herculēs juvenis leōnem interfecit.**

**Ordinary Apposition :** *The young man Hercules slew a lion.*

**Predicative Apposition :** *Hercules, when a young man, slew a lion = he was a young man when he slew a lion.*

**GENITIVE :** *Potestās ejus adhibendae uxōris, The permission to take her to wife.*

**DATIVE :** *Amicō vivō nōn subvēnistī, You did not help your friend (while he was) alive.*

**ACCUSATIVE :** *Herculēs cervam vivam cēpit.*

**Ordinary Attribution :** *Hercules caught a living doe.*

**Predicative Attribution :** *Hercules caught a doe alive.*

**ABLATIVE :** *Aere ūtuntur importātō, They use imported copper = the copper which they use is imported.*

**REMARKS.**—1. The vocative, not being a case proper, is not used predicatively. Exceptions are apparent or poetical.

**Quō, moritūre, ruis ?** **VERG.** “ *Whither dost thou rush to die ?* ” = *Whither dost thou rush, thou doomed to die ?*

Notice here the old phrase :

**Macte virtūte estō.** **VERG.** *Increase in virtue = Heaven speed thee in thy high career.*

**Macte** is regarded by some as an old vocative, from the same stem as **magnus** ; by others as an adverb.

2. **Victōrēs rediērunt** may mean, *the conquerors returned*, or *they returned conquerors* ; and a similar predicative use is to be noticed in **Idem**, *the same*.

**Idem abeunt qui vēnerant**, *they go away just as they had come* (literally, *the same persons as they had come*).

3. **Predicative Attribution and Apposition** are often to be turned into an abstract noun :

**Ego nōn eadem volo senex, quae puer volui**, *I do not wish the same things (as an old man) in my old age, that I wished (as a boy) in my boyhood.*

So with prepositions :

**Ante Cicerōnem cōsulem**, *before the consulship of Cicero* ; **ante urbem conditam**, *before the building of the city.*

4. Do not confound the “ **as** ” of apposition with the “ **as** ” of comparison—**ut, quasi, tanquam**. (645, R. 4).

**Cicero ea quae nunc fūsi veniunt cecinit ut vātēs.** **NEP.** *Cicero foretold all that is coming to pass now as (if he were) an inspired prophet.*

5. When especial stress is laid on the Adjective or Substantive predicate, in combination with the verbal predicate, it is well to resolve the sentence into its elements :

**Themistoclēs unus restitit**, *Themistocles alone withstood = Themistocles was the only one that withstood.*

**Argonautae primī in Pontum Euxinum intrāvērunt**, *the Argonauts first entered the Euxine (Black) Sea = were the first to enter the Black Sea.*

**Un a salūs victis nullam spērāre salūtem.** **VERG.** *The only safety which the vanquished have, is to hope for none.*

**Fragilem truci commisit pelagō ratem primus.** **HOR.** *He was the first to trust his frail bark to the wild waves.*

6. The English idiom often uses the adverb and adverbial expressions instead of the Latin adjective : so in adjectives of inclination and disinclination, knowledge and igno-



rance, of order and position, of time and season, and of temporary condition generally : libens, with pleasure ; volens, willing(ly) ; nōlens, unwilling(ly) ; invitus, against one's will ; prūdēns, aware ; imprūdēns, unawares ; sciens, knowing(ly) ; primus, prior, first ; ultimus, last ; medius, in, about the middle ; hodiernus, to-day ; mātutinus, in the morning ; frequens, frequent(ly) ; sublimis, aloft.

Ōdēro si poterō, si nōn, in vītus a mēbo. Ov. (281, R. 2.)

Plūs hodiē boni fēcī imprūdēns quam sciens ante hunc diē unquam. Ter. I have done more good to-day unawares than I have ever done knowingly before.

Adcurrit, mediā mulierem complectitur. Ter. He runs up, puts his arms about the woman's waist.

Qui prior strinxerit ferrum ejus victōria erit. Liv. Who draws the sword first, his shall be the victory.

Vespertinus pete tectum. Hor. Seek thy dwelling at eventide.

Rarus venit in cōnācula miles. Juv. The soldiery rarely comes into the garret. So also tōtus, wholly.

Philosophiāe nōs tōtōs trādimus. Cic. We give ourselves wholly to philosophy.

Sōlī hoc contingit sapienti. Cic. This good luck happens to the wise man alone = it is only the wise man who has this good luck.

7. Carefully to be distinguished are the uses of **primus**, and the adverbs **primum**, **first**, for the first time, and **primō**, at first.

**Primus**: Ego primus hanc orationem lēgi, I was the first to read this speech.

Hanc primam orationem lēgi, this was the first speech that I read.

**Primum**: Hanc orationem primum lēgi deinde transcripsi. I first read (and) then copied this speech.

Hodiē hanc orationem primum lēgi, I read this speech to-day for the first time.

**Primō**: Hanc orationem primō libenter lēgi, postea magis magisque mihi jējuna visa est, at first I read this speech with pleasure, afterward it seemed to me drier and drier.—Lattmann and Müller.

## B.

### 1. MULTIPLICATION OF THE PREDICATE.

325. The Multiplication of the Predicate requires no further rules than those that have been given in the general doctrine of Concord.

### 2. QUALIFICATION OF THE PREDICATE.

326. The Qualification of the Predicate may be regarded as an External or an Internal change:

I. External change: combination with an object.

1. Direct object, Accusative.

2. Indirect object, Dative.

II. Internal change: combination with an attribute, which may be in the form of

1. The Genitive case.

2. The Ablative.

## 3. Preposition with a case.

## 4. An Adverb.

**REMARK.**—The Infinitive forms (Infinitive, Gerund, Gerundive, and Supine) appear now as objects, now as attributes, and require a separate treatment.

## I. EXTERNAL CHANGE.

## ACCUSATIVE.

327. The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object.

The Object may be contained in the verb (Inner Object, Object Effected) :

*Deus mundum creāvit, God made a creation—the universe.*

Akin to this is the Accusative of Extent :

*Ā rectā conscientiā transversum unguem nōn oportet discōdere. CIO. One ought not to swerve a nailbreadth from a right conscience.*

*Decem annōs Trōja oppugnāta est. LIV. Ten years was Troy besieged.*

*Maximam partem lacte vivunt. CAES. For the most part they live on milk.*

From the Accusative of Extent arises the Accusative of the Outer Object (Object Affected) :

*Deus mundum gubernat, God steers the universe.*

**REMARK.**—The Accusative of the Inner Object is the characteristic use of the case; the Accusative of the Outer Object the most common use. It is sometimes impossible to determine which element preponderates; so in verbs compounded with prepositions. The so-called Terminal Accusative may be conceived as an Inner or an Outer Object. Hence the following table is only approximate :

## GENERAL VIEW OF THE ACCUSATIVE.

## 328. I. Inner Object : Object effected.

Cognate Accusative.

Accusative of Extent.

1. In Space.

2. In time.

3. Of Adverbial Relation.

Terminal Accusative

(Point Reached).

Verbs com-  
pounded with  
Prepositions.

## II. Outer Object : Object affected.

1. Whole.

2. Part (so-called Greek  
Accusative).

Verbs com-  
pounded with  
Prepositions.

III. Double Accusative: Asking and Teaching.  
Making and Taking.

IV. Accusative as the most general form of the object (object created or called up by the mind):

In Exclamations.

Accusative and Infinitive.

329. Active Transitive Verbs take the Accusative case:

**Rōmulus Urbem Rōmam condidit**, *Romulus founded the City of Rome.*  
(Object Effected.)

**Mens regit corpus**, *Mind governs body.* (Object Affected.)

REMARKS.—1. Many verbs are intransitive in English which are transitive in Latin: *dolēre*, to grieve (for); *dēspērāre*, to despair (of); *horrēre*, to shudder (at); *mirārī*, to wonder (at); *ridēre*, to laugh (at). Especially to be noted is the wide scope of the Inner Object:

**Honōrēs dēspērānt**, *Cic. They despair of honors (give them up in despair).*

**Necāta est Vītia quod filii necem flēvisset** (541). *Tac. Vitia was executed for having wept (for) her son's execution.*

**Conscia mēns recti Fāmae mendācia risit**, *Ov. Conscious of right, her soul (but) laughed (at) the falsehoods of Rumor.*

Verbs of Smell and Taste have the Inner Object:

**Piscis ipsum mare sapit**, *Sen. The fish tastes of the very sea.*

**Nōn omnēs possunt olēre unguenta exōtica**, *Plaut. It is not every one can smell of foreign ointments.*

2. The Accusative with Verbal nouns, such as *tactio*, touching, is comic.

330. Verbs compounded with the prepositions *ad*, *ante*, *circum*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *per*, *praeter*, *sub*, *subter*, *super*, and *trans*, become transitive, and take the accusative:

All with *circum*, *per*, *praeter*, *trans*, *super*, and *subter*.

Many with *ad* and *in*.

Some with *ante* and *con*.

**Pŷthagorās Persārum magōs adiit**, *Cic. Pythagoras applied to (consulted) the Persian magi.*

**Stella Veneris ante greditur sōlem**, *Cic. The star Venus goes in advance of the sun*

**Tam mē circumstant densōrum turba malōrum**, *Ov. So dense a crowd of evils encompass(es) me.*

**Eam, si opus esse vidēbitur, ipse conveniam**, *Cic. I will go to see her myself, if it shall seem expedient.*

**Consilium multae calliditātis init**, *Ov. He engages in (devises) a plan of deep cunning.*

**Tanais Eurōpam et Asiam interfluit**, *Curt. The Don flows between Europe and Asia.*

**Mortem obiit, ē mediō abiit. TER.** *She went to face Death (died), she left the world.*

**Caesar omnem agrum Picōnum percurrit. CAES.** *Caesar traversed rapidly all the Picenian district.*

**Populus solet dignōs praeterire. CIC.** *The people is wont to pass by the worthy.*

**Epaminōndās paenam subiit. NEP.** *Epaminondas submitted to the punishment.*

**Flūminaque antiquōs subterlābentia mūrōs. VERG.** *And rivers gliding under ancient walls.*

**Rōmānī ruinas mūri supervādēbant. LIV.** *The Romans marched over the ruins of the wall.*

**Crassus Euphrātem nullā belli causā transiit. CIC.** *Crassus crossed the Euphrates without any cause for war.*

REMARKS.—1. If the simple verb is a transitive, it can take two accusatives :

**Agēsilaūs Hellepōntum cōpiās trājēcit. NEP.** *Agēsilaūs threw his troops across the Hellespont*

2. With many of these verbs the preposition may be repeated :

**Cōpiās trājēcit Rhodanum, or trans Rhodanum, He threw his troops across the Rhone.**

Sometimes with difference of signification :

**Adire ad aliquem, to go to a man ; adire aliquem, to apply to (to consult) a man.**

331. Any verb can take an Accusative of the Inner Object, when that object serves to define more narrowly or to explain more fully the contents of the verb.

When the dependent word is of the same origin or of kindred meaning with the verb, it is called the Cognate Accusative.

**Faciam ut mei memineris dum vitam vivās. PLAUT.** *I'll make you think of me the longest day you live.*

**Servus est qui ut antiqui dixerunt servitūtem servit. QUINT.** *He is a slave who, as old-style people said, slaves a slavery = who is a slave that is a slave.*

REMARKS.—1. The Cognate Accusative, when a substantive proper, is commonly attended by an attribute :

**Consimilem luserat jam olim ille ludum. TER.** *He had long before played a like game.*

**Cantilēnam eandem canis. TER.** *You are singing the same song.*

**Mirum atque inscītum somniāvi somnium. PLAUT.** *A marvellous and uncanny dream I've dreamed.*

2. Much more common is the Cognate Accusative of neuter pronouns and adjectives treated as substantives :

**Xenophōn eadem ferē peccat. CIC.** *Xenophon makes very much the same mistakes.*

**Equidem posse vellem idē glōriārī quod Cŷrus. CIC.** *For my part I could wish that it were in my power to make the same boast as Cyrus.*

**Quidquid dēlirant rēgēs plēctuntur Achivi.** HOR. *Whatever mad freak the kings play, the Achivi are punished for it.*

**Quid lacrumās?** TER. *What are you crying for?*

With transitive verbs an accusative of the person can be employed beside:

**Discipulōs id ūnum moneo ut praeceptōrēs suōs nōn minus quam ipsa studia ament.** QUINT. *I give pupils this one piece of advice, that they love their teachers no less than their studies themselves.*

3. From this the accusative neuter gradually passes over into an adverb, such as **aliquantum**, *somewhat*; **nihil**, *nothing* ("nothing loath"); **summum**, *at most*. Especially to be noted are: **magnam partem**, *to a great extent*; **id temporis**, *at that time*; **id aetātis**, *of that age*; **id genus**, *of that kind*; **omne genus**, *of every kind*.

**Haec vulnera vitae nōn minimam partem mortis formidine aluntur.** LUC. *These wounds of life are for not the least part fostered by the fear of death.*

**Nōstram vicem ultus est ipse sēsē.** CIO. *He took vengeance on himself in our stead.*

4. Instead of the Cognate Accusative the Ablative is occasionally found: **lapidibus pluere**, *to rain stones*; **sanguine sudāre**, *to sweat blood*.

**Herculis simulacrum multō sudōre mānēvit.** CIO. *The statue of Hercules ran freely with sweat.*

332. A part of the object affected is sometimes put in the Accusative case after a passive or intransitive verb or an adjective:

**Tacitā cūrā animum incensus.** LIV. *His soul on fire with silent care.*

**Jam vulgātum actis quoque saucius pectus.** QUINT. *Now-a-days "breast-wounded" is actually a common newspaper phrase.*

REMARKS.—1. This is commonly called the Greek Accusative, and is found chiefly in poetry. The common prose construction is the Ablative.

**Nēscit stāre locō; micat auribus et tremit artūs.** VERG. *He cannot stand still; he twitches with his ears and quivers in his limbs.*

2. Somewhat different is the Accusative with **induo**, *I don*; **exuo**, *I doff*; **cingor**, *I gird on myself*; in which verbs the reflexive signification is retained:

**Inūtile ferrum cingitur.** VERG. *He girds on (himself) a useless blade.*

**Lōricam induit fidōque accingitur ense.** VERG. *He dons a corslet and begirds himself with his trusty glaive.*

**Arminius impetū equi pervāsīt oblitus faciem suā crudēnē nōscerētur.** TAC. *Hermann got through, thanks to his fiery charger, having smeared his face with his own gore to keep from being recognized.*

## DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE.

333. When two Accusatives depend on the same verb, one is the Inner, the other the Outer object.

Active verbs signifying to Inquire, to Require, to Teach, and **celāre**, *to conceal*, take two Accusatives, one of the Person, and the other of the Thing.

**Pūsiōnem quendam Sōcratēs interrogat quaedam geōmetrica.** CIO. *Socrates asks an urchin sundry questions in geometry.*

**Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitābat.** CAES. *Caesar kept on demanding the corn of the Aedui.*

**Quid nunc tē, asine, litterās doceam?** (258). CIC. *Why should I now give you a lesson in literature, you donkey?*

**Iter omnēs cēlat.** NEP. *He keeps all in the dark about his route, conceals his route from all.*

REMARKS.—1. The Passive form with the Nominative of the Person and the Accusative of the Thing is sparingly used. **Discere** is more common than **docēri**.

**Mōtūis docēri gaudet Iōniōis mātūra virgō.** HOR. *The rare ripe maid delights to learn Ionic dances.*

**Omnēs militiae artēs edoctus fuerat.** LIV. *He had learned (been taught) thoroughly all the arts of war.*

2. The expressions vary a good deal. Observe:

This then is not the only way,

For it is also right to say;

**Docēre** and **cēlare dē,**

**Interrogāre dē quā rē,**

**Posco**, I claim, and **flāgito**,

And always **peto**, **postulo**:

Take **aliquid ab aliquō,**

While **quaero** takes **ex**, **ab**, **dē**, **quō**.

**Adherbal Rōmam lēgātōs miserat, qui senātum docerent dē caede fratris.** SALL. *Adherbal had sent envoys to Rome to inform the senate of the murder of his brother.*

**Basus noster mē dē hōc librō cēlāvit.** CIC. *Our friend Basus has kept me in the dark about this book.* (So commonly in the Passive.)

**Aquam ā pūmice nunc postulās.** PLAUT. *You are now asking water of a pumice-stone* (blood of a turnip).

3. With **doceo** the Abl. of the Instrument is also used: **docēre fidibus, equō,** to teach the lyre, to teach riding. **Doctus** generally takes the Abl.: **Doctus Graecis litteris,** a good Grecian.

4. **Quid mē vis?** what do you want of me? what do you want me for? belongs to this general class.

5. On Double Accusative with compound verbs, see 330, R. 1; on the accus. neuter of the Inner Object, see 331, R. 2.

**334. Verbs of Naming, Making, Taking, Choosing, Showing,** may have two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing:

**Īram bene Ennius initium dixit insāniae.** CIC. *Well did Ennius call anger the beginning of madness.*

**Ancum Marcium rēgem populus creāvit.** LIV. *The people made Ancus Marcius king.*

**Cato Valerium Flaccum collēgam habuit.** NEP. *Cato had Valerius Flaccus (as) colleague.*

**Sōcratem Apollo sapientissimum iūdicāvit.** CIC. *Apollo judged Socrates (to be) the wisest.*

**Athēniēnsibus Pŷthia praecēpit ut Miltiadem sibi imperātōrem sūmerent.** NEP. *The Pythia instructed the Athenians to take Miltiades (as) their commander.*

**Praestā tē virum.** CIC. *Show yourself a man.*

**Quem intellegimus divitem?** CIC. *Whom do we understand by the rich man?*

**REMARK.**—The Double Accusative is turned into the Double Nominative with the Passive (197). *Reddo, I render*, is not used in the Passive, but, instead thereof, *fio, I become*.

*Habeo*, with two Accusatives, commonly means to *have*; in the sense of *hold, regard*, other turns are used:

*Utrum prō ancillā mē habēs an prō filiā?* PLAUT. *Do you look upon me as a maid-servant or a daughter?*

So *habēre servōrum locō, (in) numerō deōrum*, to *regard as slaves, as gods*.

## ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT IN SPACE AND TIME.

335. The Accusative of Extent in Space accompanies the verb, either with or without *per, through*.

1. With *per* to denote entire occupancy (*from one end to the other, all through*).

*Sparsi per prōvinciam militēs*, the soldiers scattered all through the province.

*Phoebidās iter per Thēbās fecit.* NĒP. *Phoebidas marched through Thebes.*

2. Without *per* to denote distance, *how far, how long*.

*Trabēs inter sē binōs pedēs distābant.* CAES. *The beams were two feet apart.*

*Campus Marathōn abest ab oppidō Athēniēnsium circiter milia passuum decem.* NĒP. *The plain (of) Marathon is about ten miles from the city of Athens.*

*Ā rectā conscientiā transversum unguem nōn oportet discōdere.* CIC. (327.)

**REMARKS.**—1. With *abesse* and *distāre*, an Ablative of measure may also be employed:

*Milibus passuum quattuor et viginti abesse.* to be twenty-four miles off.

2. When the point of reference is taken for granted, *ab* (ā) with the Ablative may be used:

*Hostēs ab milibus passuum minus duobus castra posuerunt.* CAES. *The enemy pitched their camp less than two miles off.*

336. The Accusative of Extent in Space accompanies the adjectives *longus, long*; *lātus, wide*; *altus, high* (deep).

*Fossa pedēs trecentōs longa est, sex pedēs alta*, the ditch is three hundred feet long, six feet deep.

*Militēs aggerem lātum pedēs trecentōs trigintā altum pedēs octōgintā exstruxerunt.* CAES. *The soldiers raised an embankment three hundred and thirty feet wide (and) eighty feet high.*

337. The Accusative of Extent in Time accompanies the verb, either with or without *per*, in answer to the question, *How long?*

**Gorgiās centum et novem vixit annōs.** QUINT. *Gorgias lived 109 years.*

**Tenuisti prōvinciam per decem annōs.** CIC. *You have held on to the province for 10 years (10 years long).*

**Est mēcum per tōtum diem.** PLIN. EP. *He is with me the livelong day.*

REMARK.—*Per* with the Accusative is frequently used like the Ablative of Time within which. *Per illa tempora* = *illis temporibus*, *in those times*.

So especially with the negative :

**Nulla rēs per triennium nisi ad nūtum istius iudicāta est.** CIC. *No matter was decided during (in) the three years except at his beck.*

338. The Accusative of Extent in Time accompanies the adjective *nātus*, *old* (born) :

**Puer decem annōs nātus est,** *the boy is ten years old.*

**Cyru regnāvit ānnōs trigintā; quadrāgintā ānnōs nātus regnāre coepit.** CIC. *Cyrus reigned thirty years; (he was) forty years old (when) he began to reign.*

#### ACCUSATIVE AS A GENERAL OBJECTIVE CASE.

339. The Accusative as the Objective Case generally is used as an object of Thought, Perception, Emotion; an object created by the mind, evoked or deprecated by the will. Hence the use of the Accusative:

1. In Exclamations.
2. With the Infinitive.

340. The Accusative is used in Exclamations as the general object of Thought, Perception, or Emotion:

**Mē miserum,** *poor me!*

**Mē caecum qui haec ante nōn viderim.** CIC. *Blind me! not to have seen all this before.*

So in Exclamatory Questions:

**Quō mihi fortunam, si nōn concēditur ūti?** HOR. *What (is the object of) fortune to me if I'm not allowed to enjoy it?*

Interjections are used:

**Heu mē miserum! Alas! poor me!**



**Ō miserās hominum mentēs, Ō pectora caeca.** LUCR. *Oh, the wretched minds of men, oh, the blind hearts!*

REMARKS.—1. **Ō** with the Vocative is an address; with the Nom. a characteristic; with the Accus. an object of emotion.

2. **Ēn, Lo!** and **Ecce, Lo here!** take the Nominative:

**Ēn Vārus, Lo Varus! Ecce homo!** *Behold the man!*

In the earlier language the Accusative was used:

**Ēn tibi hominem!** PLAUT. *Here's your man!*

**Ecce mē!** PLAUT. *Here am I!*

So **Eccum, ellum, eccam, eccillam**, in comic poetry.

There seems to be some confusion between the interrogative **Ēn** and **Em** (**Hem**).

**Prō** takes the Vocative: **Prō dī immortalēs!** *Ye immortal gods!* The Accusative occurs in: **Prō deum (hominum, deum atque hominum) fidem!** *For heaven's sake.*

**Hei!** and **Vae!** take the Dative.

**Hei mihi!** *Ah me!* **Vae victis!** *Woe to the conquered!*

341. The Accusative as the most general form of the substantive, and the Infinitive as the most general form of the verb, are combined so as to present the general notion of Subject and Predicate as an object of thought or perception (537).

The Accusative with the Infinitive is used

1. In Exclamations:

**Hem, mea lūx, tē nunc, mea Terentia, sio vexārī!** *Hem, light of my eyes, for you to be so harassed now, Terentia dear.* (The idea of) *you(r) being so harassed!* So in idiomatic English, *Me write!*

2. As an Object. (See 527.)

3. As a Subject. (See 535.)

REMARK.—The Infinitive was originally a Dative-Locative, but almost every syntactical trace has vanished, and practically it has become an Accusative Neuter.

## ACCUSATIVE OF THE LOCAL OBJECT.

### *Terminal Accusative.*

342. The Accusative of the Local Object, *Whither?* commonly takes a preposition, such as: **in, into; ad, to; versus, -ward:**

**In Graeciam proficiscī,** *to set out for Greece.*

REMARKS.—1. The omission of the preposition, except as below stated, is poetical: **Italiam vēnit.** VERG. *He came to Italy.*

2. Names of Towns and Smaller Islands are put in the Accusative of the place *Whither?* without a preposition. So also **rūs, into the country; domum, domōs, home.** For further explanations, see 410.

## DATIVE.

**343.** The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object, and always implies an object effected which may be contained in the verb or expressed.

**Nēmō errat ūnī sibi.** SEN. *No one errs (makes mistakes) to, for himself alone.*

**Fortūna multis dat nimis, satis nulli.** MART. *Fortune to many gives too much, enough to none.*

**REMARKS.**—1. In English the form of the Indirect Object is the same as that of the Direct: "He shewed *me* (Dat.) a pure river;" He shewed *me* (Acc.) to the priest. Originally a case of Personal Interest, it is used freely of Personified Things, sparingly of Local Relations, and this despite the fact that Locative and Dative are blended in the First and Third Declensions.

2. When parts of the body and the like are involved, the English possessive is often a convenient though not an exact translation.

**Tuō virō oculi dolent.** TER. *Your husband's eyes ache.* Nearer: *Your husband has a pain in the eyes.* **Tui viri oculi.** Your HUSBAND's eyes.

## DATIVE WITH TRANSITIVE VERBS.

**344.** The Indirect Object is put in the Dative with Transitive verbs, which already have a Direct Object in the Accusative. Translation, *to, for, from.* This Accusative becomes the Nominative of the Passive.

## Active Form:

**To:** **Facile omnēs, cum valēmus, recta consilia aegrōtis damus.** TER. *Readily all of us, when well, give good counsel to the sick.*

**For:** **Frangam tonsōrī crūra manūsque simul.** MART. *I'd break the barber's legs for him and hands at once.*

**From:** **Somnum mihi adēmit.** CIC. *It took my sleep away from me.*

## Passive Form:

**Perpetuus nulli datur ūsus.** HOR. *Perpetual enjoyment (of a thing) is given to no one.*

**Immeritis franguntur crūra caballis.** JUV. *The innocent hacks get their legs broken for them.*

**Arma adimuntur militibus.** LIV. *The soldiers have their arms taken from them.*

**Domus pulchra dominis aedificātur nōn mūrībus.** CIC. *A handsome house is built for its owners, not for the mice.*

**REMARKS.**—1. *For* is nearer the Dative than *To*; but *for* (in defence of) is **prō**: **prō patriā mori**, *to die for one's country.* *To* (with a view to) is **ad** or **in**, and when the idea of motion is involved the preposition must be used, even with **dare**, which gives its name to the Dative:

**Hostis est uxor invīta quae a d virum nuptum datur.** PLAUT. *An enemy is the wife who is given to a man in marriage against her will.*

**Litterās alicui dare,** *to give one a letter (to carry or to have).*

**Litterās ad aliquem dare,** *to indite a letter to one.*

**Rogās ut mea tibi scripta mittam.** CIC. *You ask me to send you my writings (you wish to have them).*

**Librōs jam pridem a d tē misissem si esse edendōs putāssem.** CIC. *I should have sent the books to you long since if I had thought they ought to be published.*

2. *From* is allowable, and even then merely approximate, when the relation of Personal Interest is involved, otherwise the Ablative is used. Both combined in

**Aegrōtō dominō (Dat.) dēduxit corpore (Abl.) febrēs.** HOR. *From the sick master's body drained the ague (for the sick master from his body).*

3. The poets are more free in their use of the Dative, inasmuch as their personifications are bolder :

**Karthāgini jam nōn ego nūntiōs mittam superbōs.** HOR. *Carthage no more shall I send haughty tidings.*

**Jam satis terris nivis atque dīrae grandinis misit pater.** HOR. *Full, full enough of snow and dire hail the Sire hath sent the land.*

The extreme is reached when the Dative follows *ire* and the like :

**It caelō clāmorque virum clangorque tubārum.** VERG. *Mounts to high heaven warriors' shout and trumpets' blare.*

## DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

345. The Indirect Object is put in the Dative with many Intransitive Verbs of Advantage or Disadvantage, Yielding and Resisting, Pleasure and Displeasure, Bidding and Forbidding, such as : **prōdesse**, *to do good* ; **nocēre**, *to do harm* ; **indulgēre**, *to give up* ; **cēdere**, *to yield* ; **servire**, *to be a slave* ; **pārere**, *obedire*, *to be obedient* ; **crēdere**, *to lend belief* ; **ignōscere**, *to grant forgiveness* ; **placere**, *to give pleasure* ; **imperāre**, *to give orders* ; **resistere**, *to make resistance*.

**Nec prōsunt dominō quae prōsunt omnibus artēs.** OV. *And the arts which do good to all do none to their master.*

**Verba nōbīs magis nocent, minus prōsunt nostra quam aliēna.** QUINT. *Our own words do us more harm (and) less good than the words of others.*

**Indulsit lacrimis.** OV. *She gave free course to her tears.*

**Turpe servīre puellae.** OV. *It is disgraceful to play the slave to a girl.*

**Tū nē cēde malis.** VERG. *Yield not thou to misfortunes.*

**Mundus deō pāret et huic oboediunt maria terraeque.** CIC. *The universe is obedient to God, and seas and lands hearken unto him.*

**Nimium nē crēde colorī.** VERG. *Trust not complexion all too much.*

**Ignōsce timōri.** PROP. *Grant pardon to my fear.* (Be to my fear as if you knew it not.)

**Cui placeō prōtinus ipsa placet.** OV. *The girl I please straight pleases me herself.*

**Reliquum est ut tūte tibi imperēs.** CIC. *It remains that you give orders to yourself (have absolute command over yourself).*

**Arbor resistit ventis.** OV. *The tree offers resistance to the winds.*

REMARKS.—1. Among the most notable exceptions are : **aequāre**, to be equal ; **de cēre** (to distinguish), to be becoming ; **dēficere**, to be wanting ; **juvāre**, to be a help ; **jubēre**, to order ; and **vetāre**, to forbid, which take the Accusative :

**Eam pietūram imitātī sunt multi, aequāvit nēmo.** PLIN. *That style of painting many have imitated, none equalled.*

**Forma virōs neglecta decet.** OV. *A careless beauty is becoming to men.*

**Mēdiēs dēficiat.** CIC. *The day would fail me.*

**Fortēs fortūna adjuvat.** TER. *Fortune favors the brave.*

On **jubeo** and **veto** see 424, R. 3. **Fido** and **confido** take the Ablative as well as the Dative.

2. The Dative use is often obscured by the absence of etymological translation. So **nūbere alicui**, to marry a man (to veil for him) ; **medēri alicui**, to heal (to take one's measures for) a man ; **supplicō**, I beg (I bow the knee to) ; **persuādeo**, I persuade (I make it sweet).

3. The novice is again reminded that the passives of these verbs are used impersonally : (308).

**Qui invident egent, illi quibus invidētur rem habent.** PLAUT. *Those who envy are the needy, those who are envied have the stuff.*

## DATIVE AND VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH PREPOSITIONS.

346. Many verbs compounded with the prepositions

**ad, ante, con, in, inter,**  
**ob, post, prae, sub and super,**

take the Dative, especially in moral relations.

**Transitive Verbs** have an accusative case besides.

**Pelopidās omnibus periculis adfuit.** NEP. *Pelopidas was present (to help) in all dangers.*

**Virtūs omnibus rēbus anteit.** PLAUT. *Virtue goes before all things.*

**Nōn omnis aetās, Lūde, lūdō convenit.** PLAUT. *Not every age, (good) Lydus (Playfair), sorts with play.*

**At lupus et turpēs instant morientibus ursi.** OV. *But the wolf and foul bears press the dying hard.*

**Probus invidet nēminī.** CIC. *The upright man (looks hard at) envies no one.*

**Aristidēs interfuit pugnae nāvālī apud Salaminem.** NEP. *Aristides was engaged in the naval battle off Salamis.*

**Obstā principiis.** OV. *Oppose the beginnings.*

**Hannibal Alexandrō Magnō nōn postpōnendus est.** JUST. *Hannibal is not to be put below Alexander the Great.*

**Omnibus Druidibus praeest ūnus.** CAES. *At the head of all the Druids is one man.*

**Blanda quies victis furtim subrēpsit ocellis.** OV. *Caressing sleep crept stealthily o'er her vanquished eyes.*

**Miseris succurrere discō.** VERG. *I learn to succor the wretched.*

**Anatum ōva gallinis saepe suppōnimus.** CIC. *We often put ducks' eggs under hens (for them to hatch).*

**Lucumo superfuit patrī.** LIV. *Lucumo survived his father.*

So with Transitive Verbs, compounded with **dē** and **ex**.

**Caesar Dējotarō tetrarchiam ēripuit, eidemque dētraxit Armeniam.** CIC. *Caesar wrested from Dejotarus his tetrarchy, and stripped from him Armenia.*

REMARKS.—1. When the local signification preponderates, the preposition is repeated with its proper case:

**Adhaeret nāvis ad scopulum,** *the ship sticks to the rock.*

**Ājāx incubuit in gladium,** *Ajax fell on his sword.*

**Congredi cum hoste,** *to engage the enemy.*

**Dētrahere ānulum dē digitō,** *to draw a ring from one's finger.*

The tendency in later Latin is to neglect this distinction, which even in the best period is not rigidly observed. Compounds with **cum** (con-) commonly repeat the preposition: always **communicāre aliquid cum aliquō,** *to communicate something to a man* (share it with him).

2. The analogy of this class of verbs, which imply Nearness, is followed in poetry and later prose by **haereo, misceo, jungo**, and others.

**Haeret laterī lētālis arundō.** VERG. *Sticks to the side the lethal shaft.*

**Quod haerere in equō senex posset** (542) **admirārī solēbāmus.** CIC. *We used to wonder that the old man could stick to his horse.*

**Miscē stultitiam consiliis brevem.** HOR. *Mix with sense a little nonsense (add to sense a little spice of nonsense).*

**Nōn potest amor cum timōre miscērī.** SEN. *Love cannot mingle with fear.*

**Jungitur Ursideō.** JUV. *She is yoked to Orion.*

**Junctus** is found in Cicero with the Dative.

## VERBS WITH ACCUSATIVE AND DATIVE.

347. Some verbs are construed both with the Accusative and with the Dative.

Sometimes there is hardly an appreciable difference; sometimes the Dative emphasizes the personal relation.

**Comitor aliquem,** *I accompany a man;* **comitor alicuī,** *I act as com-*

*panion to a man ; adūlor, generally Accusative, I fawn on ; aemulor, I rival, I am a rival ; praestōlor, I wait for.*

Sometimes the difference follows naturally from the difference of case :

**Cavēre alicuī,** to take precautions for  
**aliquem,** against } some one.

**Quique aliis cāvit nōn cavet ipse sibi.** OV. (298.)

**Hic niger est, hunc tū, Rōmāne, cavētō.** HOR. *He is a black fellow ; against him be thou on thy guard, oh Roman !*

**Metuere alicuī,** to fear for } some one.  
**aliquem,** to dread }

So all Verbs of Fearing.

**Consulere alicuī,** to take measures for, consult the interest of } some one.  
**aliquem,** to consult }

**Convenire alicuī,** to be suitable for } some one.  
**aliquem,** to meet }

**Moderārī** } alicuī rei, to moderate }  
**Temperāre** } to set bounds to } a matter.  
**aliquid,** to manage }

To be noticed are the constructions of **invideo, I envy.**

**Invidēre alicuī aliquid (CIC.)** } to begrudge a man a thing.  
 (in) **aliquā rē** }  
**alicujus rei** (once in Horace).

**alicujus alicuī rei,** to envy something belonging to a man.

**Nōn invidērunt laudēs suās mulieribus viri Rōmāni.** LIV. *The men of Rome did not begrudge the women the honors that were due them.*

**Invidet igne rogī miseris.** LUCAN. *Begrudges the hapless men the funeral fire.*

**Vacāre rei** } to be at leisure for  
 } to attend to } a matter.

**Vacāre rē, ā rē,** to be at leisure from }

#### DATIVE WITH VERBS OF GIVING AND PUTTING.

348. A few verbs, chiefly of Giving and Putting, take a Dative with an Accusative, or an Accusative with an Ablative, according to the conception.

**Dōne tibi librum,** I present (to) you a book.

**Dōno tē librō,** I present you with a book.

**Circumdo** { **urbī mūrum,** I put round the city a wall.  
 { **urbem mūrō,** I surround the city with a wall.

So also **aspergere,** to besprinkle and to sprinkle on ; **impertire,** to endow

and to give; *induere*, to clothe and to put on; *exuere*, to strip of and to strip off; *miscēre*, to mix and to mix in.

### DATIVE OF POSSESSOR.

349. *Esse*, to be, with the Dative, denotes an inner connection between its subject and the Dative, and is commonly translated by the verb *to have*:

*Mihi est amicus*, I have a friend.

*An nēscīs longās rēgibūs esse manūs?* OY. Or perhaps you do not know that kings have long arms?

REMARKS.—1. The predicate of *esse* with the Dative is translated in the ordinary manner:

*Caesar amicus est mihi*, Caesar is a friend to me (*amicus meus*, MY friend, friend of MINE).

2. The Dative is never simply equivalent to the Genitive. The Dative is the Person interested in the Possession, hence the Possession is emphatic; the Genitive characterizes the Possession by the Possessor, hence the Possessor is emphatic.

*Latini concēdunt Rōmam caput Latīō esse*. LIV. The Latins concede that Latium has its capital in Rome. (*Latīl*: that LATIUM's capital was Rome.)

3. On the attraction of the Dative with *nōmen esse* (322).

4. The possession of qualities is expressed by *in* and the Ablative or some other turn: *In Cicerōne magna fuit ēloquentia*, Cicero had great eloquence.

*Cimon habēbat satis ēloquentiae*. NEP. Cimon had eloquence enough.

### DATIVE OF THE OBJECT FOR WHICH.

350. Certain verbs take the Dative of the *Object for Which* (to what end), and often at the same time a Dative of the *Personal Object For Whom*, or *To Whom*, as in the legal phrase, *cul bonō?* *To whom is it (for) an advantage? = who is advantaged?\**

*Nimīa fidūcia magnae cala mitāti solet esse*. NEP. Excessive confidence is usually a great calamity.

*Virtūs sōla neque datur dōnō neque accipitur*. SALL. Virtue alone is neither given nor taken as a present.

*Paupertās pro brō habēri coepit*. SALL. Poverty began to be held (as) a disgrace.

*Pausaniās rēx Lacedaemoniōrum vēnit Atticīs auxiliō*. NEP. Pausanias, king of the Lacedaemonians, came to the help of the Attics.

*Vitīō mihi dant quod hominis necessārīi mortem graviter fero*.

\* Such verbs are: *esse*, to be; *fieri*, to become, to turn out; *dare*, to put; *mittere*, to send; *accipere*, to receive; *venire*, to come; *relinquere*, to leave; *habere*, to hold; *vertere*, to interpret; *dūcere*, to count, and the like.

**MATIUS** ap. **CIC.** *They charge it to me as a fault that I resent the murder of one so near to me.*

**Caesar receptui cani iussit. CAES.** *Caesar ordered a retreat to be sounded.*

**REMARK.**—The origin of this usage seems to be mercantile (Key). In English we treat Profit and Loss as persons.

**Quem fors dierum cumque dabit lucrū appōne. HOR.** *"Every day that Fate shall give, set down to Profit."*

On the Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive in a similar sense, see 430.

### ETHICAL DATIVE.

**351.** The Ethical Dative indicates special interest in the action. It may be called the Dative of Feeling, and its use in Latin (and Old English) is confined to the personal pronouns.

**Tū mihi Antōnii exemplō istius audāciam dēfendis? CIC.** *Do you defend me (to my face) by Antony's example that fellow's audacity?*

**Ecce tibi Sēbōsus! CIC.** *Here's your Sebōsus! "She's a civil modest wife, one (I tell you) that will not miss you morning nor evening prayer."*—SHAKESPEARE.

**Et quōscunque meō fecistī nōmine versūs, ūre mihi, laudēs dēsine habēre meās. PROP.** *And whatever verses you have made on my account, burn them me (I beg); cease to keep praises of me.*

**REMARK.**—Especially to be noted is *sibi velle*, to want, to mean: **Quid tibi vis, mulier? HOR.** *What do you want, woman?* **Quid sibi vult haec oratio? What does this speech mean?**

### DATIVE OF THE AGENT.

**352.** The Dative is used with Passive Verbs, in prose chiefly with the Perfect Passive, to show the interest which the agent takes in the result. That the person interested is the agent is only an inference. (See 206.)

**Rēs mihi tōta prōvisa est. CIC.** *I have had the whole matter provided for.*

**Carmina scripta mihi sunt nulla. OV.** *I have no poems written, (therefore) have written no poems.*

**REMARK.**—Instances of this Dative with the Tenses of continuance are poetical, or admit of a different explanation:

**Barbarus hic ego sum quia nōn intellegor ulli. OV.** *I am a barbarian here because I can't make myself understood to any one.*

Whenever an Adjective or an equivalent is used, the Dative Plural may be an Ablative:

**Sic dissimillimis bestiis commūiter cibus quaeritur. CIC.** *So, though these little creatures are so very unlike, their food is sought in common.*



**Carmina quae scribuntur aquae pōtōribus.** HOR. *Poems which are written when people are water-drinkers.*

**Cēna ministrātur pueris tribus.** HOR. *Dinner is served, (the waiters being) the waiters are (but) three.*

353. The agent of the Gerund and Gerundive is put in the Dative.

**Hoc mihi faciendum est,** *I have this to be done (this is to be done by me, I must do this).*

**Est mala sed cūctis ista terenda via.** PROP. *That is a bad road, but one all have to travel.*

**Dēspēranda tibi salvā concordia socrū.** JUV. *You must despair of harmony while Mother-in-law's alive.*

Compare the Dative with verbals in **-bilis**: **mihi amābilis**, *lovable in my eyes.*

REMARK.—When the verb itself takes the Dative, the Ablative with **ab** (ē) is employed for the sake of clearness:

**Civibus ē vōbis consulendum.** CIC. *The interest of the citizens must be consulted by you.*

Where there is no ambiguity there is no need of **ab**.

**Linguae moderandum est tibi.** PLAUT. *You must put bounds to your tongue.*

#### DATIVE OF PARTICIPLES.

354. Datives of Participles are used as predicative attributes.

**Phasēlis conspicitur prima terrarū Rhodum ā Ciliciā petentibus.** LIV. *Phaselis is the first land sighted as you make for Rhodes from Cilicia (to people as they make for Rhodes).*

**In ūniversum aestimantī (= SI aestimēs) plūs penes peditem rōboris.** TAC. *If you look at it as a whole, there is more real strength in the infantry.*

REMARK.—Notice the Greekish phrase: **mihi volentī est**, *I am willing for it to be so.*

#### DATIVE WITH DERIVATIVE SUBSTANTIVES.

355. A few derivative substantives take the Dative of their primitives:

**Jūstītia est obtemperātio lēgibus.** CIC. *Justice is obedience to the laws.*

REMARK.—Otherwise the Dative must have a verb to produce the Object Effected.

#### DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

356. Adjectives of Likeness, Fitness, Friendliness, Nearness, and the like, with their opposites, take the Dative:

**Rāra avis in terris nigrōque simillima cyncō.** JUV. *A rare bird in this world, and very like a black swan.*

**Nōn ego sum laudi nōn nātus idōneus armis.** PROP. *I am not fitted by nature for glory, not fitted for arms.*

**Ūtilis urbi.** HOR. *Useful to the city.*

**Amicalutō sūs.** HOR. *A hog, devoted to the mire.*

**Semper, tū scito, flamma fūmō est proxima.** PLAUT. *Bear thou in mind, that fire is aye next door to smoke.*

**Testis id dicit quod illi causae maximē est aliēnum.** CIC. *The witness says what is especially damaging to that case (side).*

REMARKS.—1. Many adjectives which belong to this class become substantives, and as such are construed with the Genitive: **amicus**, friend; **affinis**, connection; **aequalis**, contemporary; **aliēnus**, foreign, strange; **cognātus**, kinsman; **communis**, common; **contrārius**, opposite; **pār**, match; **proprius**, pecūliāris, own, peculiar; **similis**, like; ("we ne'er shall look upon his like again"), especially of gods and men; **sacer**, set apart, sacred; **superstes**, survivor.

**Dominī similis es.** TER. *You are like your master.*

**Virtūte sis pār dispār fortunīs patris.** ATTII. *Be thou thy father's match in valor, not in luck.*

2. The object toward which is expressed by the Accusative with **in**, **ergā**, **adversus**: **Manlius fuit severus in filiū.** CIC. *Manlius was severe toward his son.*

**Mē esse scit ergā sē benevolū.** PLAUT. *He knows that I am kindly disposed toward him.*

**Adversus deōs immortālēs impij iudicandi sunt.** CIC. *They are to be judged impious toward the immortal gods.*

3. The object for which may be expressed by the Accusative with **ad**, to:

**Homo ad nullam rem ūtilis.** CIC. *A good-for-nothing fellow.*

This is the more common construction with adjectives of fitness.

4. **Propior**, nearer, **proximus**, next, are construed also (like **prope**, near) with the Accusative and the Ablative with **ab**, off:

**Propius est fidem**, it is nearer belief, i. e., more likely.

**Qui tē proximus est**, he who is next to you.

**Proximus ā tectis ignis dēfenditur aegrō.** OV. *A fire next door is kept off with difficulty (is hard to keep off).*

5. **Aliēnus**, foreign, strange, is also construed with the Ablative, with or without **ab** (ē):

**Homō sum, hūmāni nihil ā mē aliēnum puto.** TER. *I am a man, and nothing that pertains to man do I consider foreign to me.*

6. In poetry, **idem**, the same, is often construed after the analogy of the Greek, with the Dative.

**Invitum qui servat idem facit occidenti.** HOR. (296, R. 1.)

7. Derived adverbs take the Dative.

## II. INTERNAL CHANGE.

### GENITIVE.

357. The Genitive Case is the Case of the Complement, and is akin to the Adjective with which it is often parallel. It is the substantive form of the Specific Characteristic.

The chief English representatives of the Genitive are :

The Possessive case :

**Domus régis**, *the king's palace*.

The Objective case with *of* :

**Domus régis**, *the palace of the king*.

Substantives used as adjectives or in composition :

**Arbor abietis**, *fir-tree*.

REMARKS.—1. Other prepositions than *of* are not unfrequently used, especially with the Objective Genitive. (361, R. 1.)

**Patriæ quis exsul sē quoque fugit?** HOR. *What exile from his country ever fled himself as well?*

**Boiōrum triumphī spem collēgæ reliquit.** LIV. *He left the hope of a triumph over the Boi to his colleague.*

**Via mortis.** LIV. *The death-path, the way to death.* Elsewhere : **via ad mortem**.

2. An abstract Noun with the Genitive is often to be translated as an attribute :

**Verni temporis suāvitās**, *the sweet spring-time*.

And, on the other hand, the predicative attribute is often to be translated as an abstract noun with *of* :

**Ante Rōmam conditam**, *before the founding of Rome*. (324, R. 3.)

Notice also **hic metus**, *this fear = fear of this*, and kindred expressions.

358. The Genitive is employed :

I. and II. Chiefly as the complement of Nouns Substantive and Adjective.

III. Occasionally as the complement of Verbs.

REMARK.—The Locative of the Second Declension coincides in form with the Genitive, and is generally treated under the head of the Genitive. (See 412.)

## I. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

### ADNOMINAL GENITIVE.

*Appositive Genitive, or Genitive of Specification.*

359. The Genitive is sometimes used to specify the contents of generic words instead of Apposition in the same case :

**Vitium nimiae tarditātis.** QUINT. *The fault of excessive slowness.*

**Virtūs continentiae.** CIC. *The virtue of self-control.*

So especially with **vōx**, *expression* ; **nōmen**, *name* ; **verbum**, *word, verb* : **vōx voluptātis**, *the word "pleasure"* ; **nōmen régis**, *the name or title of king*.

**Sulla nōmen Fēlicis assumpsit.** VELL. *Sulla assumed the surname (of) "the Lucky."*

REMARK.—So also occasionally other words, such as :

*Urbs Rōmae, the city of Rome.*

*Arbor abietis, fir-tree.*

*Sprētae injūria formae. VERG. The insult of despised beauty.*

## POSSESSIVE GENITIVE.

### *Genitive of Property.*

360. The Possessive Genitive is the substantive form of an adjective attribute with which it is often parallel :

*Domus rēgis = domus rēgia, the palace of the king, the king's palace = the royal palace.*

REMARKS.—1. The adjective form is often preferred. So always with the possessive pronoun : *amicus meus, a friend of mine* ; *canis aliēnus, a strange dog, another man's dog* ; *filius herilis, master's son*. So of cities : *Thalēs Milēsius, Thales of Miletus*.

2. The attention of the student is called to the variety of forms which possession may take. *Statua Myrōnis, Myron's statue*, may mean : 1. A statue which Myron owns ; 2. Which Myron has made ; 3. Which represents Myron.

3. Observe the brief expressions : *Ventum erat ad Vestae, We (they) had come to Vesta's* (i. e., temple, *aedem*) ; *Hasdrubal Gisgōnis, Gisgo's Hasdrubal, Hasdrubal Gisgo's son* (as it were, *Hasdrubal O' Gisgo*) ; *Flaccus Claudii, Claudius's Flaccus = Flaccus the slave or freedman of Claudius*.

4. The chorographic (geographic) Genitive is rare and late :

*Rēx Chalcidem Euboeae vēnit. LIV. The king came to Chalcis of (in) Euboea.*

## ACTIVE AND PASSIVE GENITIVE.

361. When the Substantive on which the Genitive depends contains the idea of an action, the possession may be *active* or *passive*. Hence the division into

1. The Active or Subjective Genitive : *amor Dei, the love of God, the love which God feels* (God loves).

2. Passive or Objective Genitive : *amor Dei, love of God, love toward God* (God is loved).

REMARKS.—1. The English form in *of* is used either *actively* or *passively* : *the love of women*. Hence, to avoid ambiguity, other prepositions than *of* are often substituted for the Passive Genitive, such as *for, toward*, and the like. So, also, sometimes in Latin :

*Voluntās prōvinciæ ergā Caesarem, the good-will of the province toward Caesar.*  
*Odium in hominum universum genus, Hate toward all mankind.*

2. Both Genitives may be connected with the same Substantive :

*Quanta sit aviditās hominum tālis victōriæ scio. CIC. How great the eagerness of men for such a victory is, I know.*

362. The Genitive of the Personal Pronouns, except *nōstrum* and *vestrum*, is used as the Passive Genitive :

**Amor mei**, *love to me.*

**Dēsiderium tui**, *longing for thee.*

**Memoria nostri**, *memory of us (our memory).*

REMARK.—**Nostrum** and **vestrum** are used as Partitive Genitives :

**Magna pars nostrum**, *a great part of us* ; **uterque vestrum**, *either (both) of you.*

**Nostri melior pars** means *the better part of our being, our better part.*

With **omnium**, the forms **nostrum** and **vestrum** must be used.

363. The Possessive Pronoun is generally used as the Active Genitive.

**Amor meus**, *my love (the love which I feel).*

**Dēsiderium tuum**, *your longing (the longing which you feel).*

Additional attributives are put in the Genitive :

**Hoc negōtium meā ipsius (sōlius, ūnius) operā perfectum est.** *This business was finished by my exertions alone.*

REMARK.—Occasionally, however, in Latin, as in English, the Possessive Pronoun is used passively: **dēsiderium tuum**, *longing for thee* ; **injūria tua**, *your wrong* ("The deep damnation of *his* taking off").

#### GENITIVE OF QUALITY.

364. The Genitive of Quality must always have an Adjective or its equivalent :

**Mitis ingenii juvenis.** LIV. *A youth of mild disposition.*

**Homo nihili (= nullius pretii).** PLAUT. *A fellow of no account.*

**Tridui via.** CAES. *A three days' journey.*

**Nōn multi cibi hospitem accipiēs, multi joci.** CIC. *You will receive a guest who is a small eater but a great joker.*

REMARK.—The Genitive of Quality is less common than the Ablative, being found chiefly of the essentials. The Genitive always of Number, Measure, Time, Space ; the Ablative always of externals, so of parts of the body. Often the use seems indifferent. (402.)

#### GENITIVE AS A PREDICATE.

365. The Genitives of Possession and Quality may be used as Predicates :

**Domus est rēgis,** *the house is the king's.*

**Vir est magni ingenii,** *the man is (one) of great genius.*

REMARKS.—1. The Possession appears in a variety of forms, and takes a variety of translations :

**Hūjus erō vivus, mortuus hūjus erō.** PROP. *Hers I shall be, living ; dead, hers I shall be.*

**Omnia quae mulieris fuerunt viri fiunt.** CIO. *All that was the wife's (property) becomes the husband's.*

**Is [Herculēs] dicēbātur esse Myrōnis.** CIO. *That (statue of Hercules) was said to be Myron's (work).*

**Nōlae senātus Rōmānorum, plēbs Hannibalis erat.** LIV. *At Nola the senate was (on the side) of the Romans, the common folk (on) Hannibal's.*

**Damnatio est iudicium, paena legis.** *Condemning is the judges' (business), punishment the law's.*

**Est animi ingenui cui multum dēbeās eidem plurimum velle dēbere.** CIO. *It shows the feeling of a gentleman to be willing to owe very much to him to whom you already owe much.*

**Pauperis est numerāre pecus.** *'Tis only the poor man that counts his flock ('Tis the mark of a poor man to count the flock).*

**Stultitiae est, it is folly ; Mōris est, it is customary.**

So also with **facere**, to make (cause to be) : **Rōmānae diciōnis facere**, to bring under the Roman sway.

2. In the Third Declension of the Adjective, the Genitive is the usual form :

**Amentis est superstitiōne praeceptōrum contrā ratiōnem causae trahi.** QUINT. *It is madness to let oneself be carried by a superstitious regard for rules counter to the requirements of the case.*

Sometimes the Nom. of the Third Declension is used in combination with the Nom. of the Second.

**Pigrum et iners videtur sudore acquirere quod possis sanguine parare.** TAC. *It is thought slow and spiritless to acquire by sweat what you can get by blood.*

3. The same methods of translation apply to the Possessive Pronoun in the Predicate ("Vengeance is mine") : **meum est, it is my property, business, way.**

**Nōn est meum mentiri.** TER. *Lying is not my way (I do not lie).*

## PARTITIVE GENITIVE.

366. The Genitive stands for the Whole to which a Part belongs :

**Magna vis militum,** a great number of soldiers.

**Centum militum,** a hundred (of the) soldiers.

**II militum,** those (of the) soldiers.

**Fortissimi militum,** the bravest (of the) soldiers.

**Satis militum,** enough (of) soldiers (soldiers enough).

367. The Partitive Genitive is used with substantives of Quantity, Number, Weight :

**Modius tritici,** a measure of wheat.

**Libra farri,** a pound of spelt.

**Ala equitum,** a squadron of cavalry.

REMARK.—This is sometimes called the Genitivus Generis. Whether the conception be partitive or not, depends on circumstances.

**Medimnus tritici,** a medimnus of wheat may be a medimnus of WHEAT (Genitivus Generis) or a MEDIMNUS of wheat (Partitive).

368. The Partitive Genitive is used with numerals, both special and general :

*Special:***Centum militum**, a hundred (of the) soldiers, a hundred (of) soldiers.

(Centum militēs, a, the hundred soldiers.)

**Quintus rēgum**, the fifth (of the) king(s).

(Quintus rēx, the fifth king.)

*General:***Multi militum**, many of the soldiers, many soldiers.

(Multi militēs, many soldiers.)

REMARKS.—1. The English language commonly omits the partition, unless it is especially emphatic:

**Quot civium adsunt?** How many CITIZENS are present? **Quot civēs adsunt?** How MANY are the citizens present?

2. When all are embraced, there is no partition:

**Nōs trecenti conjūrāvimus**, three hundred of us have bound ourselves by an oath.

**Amicōs quōs multōs habet**, friends whom he has in great number (of whom he has many).

**Qui omēs**, all of whom.

**Quot estis?** How many are (there of) you?

Here the English language familiarly employs the partition. Exceptions are very rare. On mille and millia see 308.

## 369. The Partitive Genitive is used with Pronouns:

**II militum**, those (of the) soldiers.

**II militēs**, those soldiers.

**III Graecōrum**, those (of the) Greeks.

## 370. The Partitive Genitive is used with Comparatives and Superlatives:

**Prior hōrum**. LIV. The former of these.

**Rēgum ultimus ille bonōrum**. JUV. The last of the good kings.

REMARKS.—1. When there are only two, the comparative exhausts the degrees of comparison. (315.)

2. **Uterque**, either (both), is commonly used as an adjective with substantives: **uterque consul**, either consul = both consuls; as a substantive with pronouns: **uterque hōrum**, both of these.

3. On the concord of the Superlative see 202, R. 2.

## 371. The Partitive Genitive is used with the Neuter Singular of the following and kindred words, but only in the Nominative or Accusative:

**tantum**, so much, **quantum**, as (how much), **aliquantum**, somewhat.

**multum**, much, **plūs**, more, **plūrimum**, most.

**paulum**, little, **minus**, less, **minimum**, least.

**satis**, enough, **parum**, too little, **nihil**, nothing.

**hoc**, this, **id**, illud, istud, that, **idem**, the same.

**quod** and **quid**, which and what? with their compounds.

**Carnis plūs habet Aeschinēs, minus lacertōrum.** QUINT. *Aeschines has more flesh, less muscle.*

**Cimōn habēbat satis ēloquentiāe.** NEP. (349, R. 4.)

**Surgit amārī aliquid, quod in ipsīs flōribus angat.** LUCR. *Uprises something bitter to choke us mid the very flowers.*

**Nihil reliqui facere.** 1. *To leave nothing (not a thing).* 2. (Occasionally), *to leave nothing undone.*

REMARKS.—1. The conception is often not so much partitive as characteristic. As we say : **Scelus pueri es.** PLACT. *You are a rascal of a boy*—where the boy is the rascal. so **Quodcumque hoc regnī.** VERG. *This realm, what (little) there is of it (what little realm I have).*

2. Neuter Adjectives of the Second Declension can be treated as substantives in the Genitive; not so Adjectives of the Third, except in combination with Adjectives of the Second: **aliquid bonum**, or **boni**, *something good*; **aliquid memorābile**, *something memorable*; **aliquid boni et memorābilis**, *something good and memorable.*

**Vixque tenet lacrimās quia nīl lacrimābile cernit.** OV. *And scarce restrains her tears, because she describes naught to shed tears for.*

3. The partitive construction is not admissible with a preposition: **ad tantum studium**, *to so much zeal.* (Exceptions are late: **ad multum diū.** *far into the day.*)

4. The Partitive Genitive is also used with Adverbs of Quantity, Place, Extent: **armōrum affatim**, *abundance of arms*; **ubi terrārum gentium?** *where in the world?* **hūc, eō arrogantiae prōcessit**, *he got to this, that pitch of presumption.* (Later Latin, **tum temporis**, *at that time*). Notice especially the phrase: **quoad ē jus facere possum**, *as far as I can do so.*

5. Instead of the Partitive Genitive with Numerals, Pronouns, Comparatives, and Superlatives, the Ablative may be employed with **ex**, *out of*, **dē**, *from* (especially with proper names and singulars), or the Accusative with **inter**, *among*: **Gallus prōvocat ūnum ex Rōmānīs.** *The Gaul challenges one of the Romans*; **ūnus dē multis**, *one of the many* (the masses); **Croesus inter rēgēs opulentissimus**, *Croesus, wealthiest of kings*; (but in a series: **quōrum ūnus, alter, tertius.**)

6. On the Attribute used partitively, see 287, R.

7. Qualitative Adjectives are combined with the Genitive in later Latin:

**Dēgenerēs canum caudam sub alvum flectunt.** PLIN. *Curriish dogs curl the tail up under the belly.*

In poetry and silver prose the Neuter of Qualitative Adjectives is frequently used before the Genitive:

**Ardus dum metuunt amittunt vērā viā.** (27, R. 1.) LUCR. *The while they fear the steeper road, they miss the true.*

**So amāra cūrārūm**, *bitter elements of cares, bitter cares*; **strāta viārūm**, *strātae viae*, *the paved streets.*

8. The Partitive Genitive as a Predicate is Greekish:

**Fīs nōbīlium tū quoque fontium.** HOR. *Thou too shalt count among the famous fountains.*

## GENITIVE WITH PREPOSITIONAL SUBSTANTIVES.

372. **Causā, grātiā, ergō**, and **instar**, are construed with the Genitive:

**Causā** and **grātiā**, *for the sake*, commonly follow the Genitive. So also



**ergō**, *on account* (in old formulae). **Instar** is an old Accusative, as it were, an "instead."

**Sophistae quaestūs causā philosophābantur.** CIC. *The professors of wisdom dealt in philosophy for the sake of gain.*

**Tū mē amōris magis quam honoris servāvisti grātiā.** ENN. *Thou didst save me more for love's (sake) than (thou didst) for honor's sake.*

**Virtūtis ergō**, *On account of valor.*

**Instar montis equus.** VERG. *A horse to stand in mountain's stead (a horse that stood a mountain high).*

**Plato mihi ūnus instar est omnium.** CIC. *Plato by himself is in my eyes worth them all.*

REMARK.—So **meū**, **tuū**, **suū causā**, seldom **grātiā**.

## II. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

373. Adjectives of Fulness, of Participation, and of Power, of Knowledge and Ignorance, of Desire and Disgust, take the Genitive:

**Plēnus rimārum**, *full of chinks* ("a leaky vessel").

**Particeps cōnsilii**, *a sharer in the plan.*

**Compos mentis**, *in possession of (one's) mind.*

**Peritus bellī**, *versed in war.*

**Cupidus glōriæ**, *grasping after glory.*

**Fastidiōsus Latinārum literārum**, *too dainty for Latin.*

**Omnium rerum inscius**, *a universal ignoramus.*

**Cūr nōn ut plēnus vitæ conviva recēdis?** LUCR. (268.)

**Sitque memor nōstri necne**, *referte mihi.* OV. (195, R. 7.)

**Cōscia mens recti Fāmae mendācia risit.** OV. (329, R. 1.)

**Agricolam laudat jūris lēgumque peritus.** HOR. *The husbandman's lot is praised by the counsel learned in the law.*

**Vēnātor tenerae conjugis immemor.** HOR. *The hunter of his tender spouse unmindful.*

**Vis cōnsili expers mōle ruit suā.** HOR. *Force void of counsel tumbles by its own mass.*

**Mentis inops gelidā formīdine lōra remisit.** OV. *Senseless from chill fear, he let go the reins.*

REMARKS.—1. The following adjectives—**refertus**, *stuffed*; **praeditus**, *endowed*; **contentus**, *satisfied*; **frētus**, *supported*—show their participial nature by being construed with the Ablative:

**Vita referta bonis**, *a life filled to overflowing with blessings.*

**Membris hūmānis esse praeditum**, *to be endowed with human limbs.*

**Frētus opulentiā**, *trusting in wealth.*

**Uxor contenta est quae bona est unō virō.** PLAUT. *A wife who is good is contented with one husband.*

2. **Plēnus**, *full*, sometimes takes the Ablative :

**Maxima quaeque domus servis est plēna superbis.** JUV. *Every great house is filled with overbearing slaves.*

3. **Dignus**, *worthy*, and **indignus**, *unworthy*, are construed with the Ablative :

**Digne puer meliōre flammā.** HOR. *Boy worthy of a better flame.*

**Vitā tua dignior aetās.** VERG. *Your age is worthier of life.*

The Genitive is rare.

4. **Liber**, *free*, and **vacuus**, *empty*, take the Ablative with or without **ab** (ā) (388) :

**Liberum (vacuum) esse metū** (ā metū), *to be free from (void of) fear.*

5. On **aliēnus**, *strange*, see 356, R. 5.

On **aequālis**, **communis**, **consciū**, **contrārius**, **pār**, **similis**, **superstes**, and the like, see 356, R. 1.

6. Verbs of Filling sometimes follow the analogy of **plēnus**, *full*, and take the Genitive.

On **egēre** and **indigēre** with the Gen., see 389, R. 2.

The poets carry the analogy of Plenty and Want very far.

**Ditissimus agrī.** VERG. *Rich of domain.*

**Solutus operum.** HOR. *Loosed of (released from) work.*

Thus the Genitive in poetry comes near the Ablative or Whence case :

**Dēsine mollium tandem querēlārum.** HOR. *Cease at last from womanish complaints.*

## GENITIVE WITH VERBALS.

374. Present Participles take the Genitive when they lose their verbal nature ; and so do verbals in **-āx** in poetry and later prose :

**Epaminōndās adeō vērītātis erat diligēns ut nē jocō quidem mentirētur.** NEP. *Epaminondas was so careful of the truth as not to tell lies even in jest.*

**Omnium consensū capāx imperiī nisi imperāset.** TAC. *By general consent capable of empire, had he not become emperor.*

REMARKS.—1. The participle is transient ; the adjective permanent. The simple test is the substitution of the relative and the verb : **amans** (participle), *loving (who is loving)* ; **amans** (adjective), *fond*, (substantive), *lover* ; **patiens** (part.), *bearing (who is bearing)* ; **patiens** (adjective), *enduring*, (substantive), *a sufferer*.

2. In later Latin and in the poets almost all adjectives that denote an affection of the mind take a Genitive of the Thing to which the affection refers : **aeger timōris**, *sick of fear* ; **ambiguus cōsiliī**, *doubtful of purpose* ; **vītae dubius**, *doubtful of life*.

Here model prose requires the Ablative or a Preposition.

The analogy of these adjectives is followed by others, so that the Genitive becomes a complement to the adjective just as it is to the corresponding substantive.

**Integer vītae.** HOR. *Spotless of life* ; like **Integritās vītae**. (**Fāmā et fortunā integer.** SALL. *In fame and fortunes intact*.)

3. The seat of the feeling is also put in the Genitive, chiefly with **animī** (which is suspected of being a Locative). **Aeger animī**, *sick at heart, heart-sick* ; **audāx ingenī**, *daring of disposition*.

## III.—GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

## GENITIVE WITH VERBS OF MEMORY.

375. Verbs of Reminding, Remembering, and Forgetting, take the Genitive :

**Tē veteris amicitiae commonēfacio.** [CIC.] *I remind you of our old friendship.*

**Est proprium stultitiae aliōrum vitia cernere, oblivisci suōrum.** CIC. *The fact is, it shows a fool to have keen eyes for the faults of others, to forget one's own.*

**Ipse jubet mortis tē meminisse Deus.** MART. *God himself bids you remember death.*

REMARKS.—1. Verbs of Reminding also take the Ablative with **dē** (so regularly **moneo**), and the Acc. Neut. of a Pronoun or Numeral Adjective :

**Oro ut Terentiam moneātis dē testāmētō.** CIC. *I beg you to put Terentia in mind of the will.*

**Discipulōs id ūnum moneo.** QUINT. (331, R. 2.)

2. Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting also take the Accusative, especially of things :

**Haec ōlim meminisse juvābit.** VERG. *To remember these things one day will give us pleasure.*

**Dulcēs moriens reminiscitur Argōs.** VERG. *Dying, he remembers sweet Argos.*

**Oblivisci nihil solēs nisi injuriās.** CIC. *You are wont to forget nothing except injuries.*

**Recordor** (literally = *I bring to heart, to mind*) is commonly construed with the Acc. :  
**Et vōcem Anchisae magni vultumque recordor.** VERG. *And I recall (call to mind) the voice and countenance of Anchises the Great.* With persons, **dē**.

**Memini**, *I bear in mind, I (am old enough to) remember*, takes the Accusative :

**Antipatrum tū probē meministi.** CIC. *You remember Antipater very well.*

3. **Venit mihi in mentem**, *it comes into (up to) my mind*, may be construed impersonally with the Genitive, or personally with a subject :

**Venit mihi in mentem Platōnis.** CIC. (or Plato.) *Plato rises before my mind's eye.*

**Certiōrem aliquem facere**, *to inform*, follows the analogy of Verbs of Reminding.

## GENITIVE WITH VERBS OF EMOTION.

376. **Misereor** and **miseresco**, *I pity*, take the Genitive, and **miseret**, *it moves to pity*, **paenitet**, *it repents*, **piget**, *it irks*, **pudet**, *it makes ashamed*, **taedet** and **pertaesum est**, *it tires*, take the Accusative of the Person Who Feels, and the Genitive of the Exciting Cause :

**Miserēre sorōris.** VERG. *Pity thy sister !*

**Suae quemque fortūae paenitet.** CIC. *Each man is discontented with his lot.*

**Miseret tē aliōrum, tui tē nec miseret nec pudet.** PLAUT. *You are sorry for others, for yourself you are neither sorry nor ashamed.*

**Pudet** is also used with the Genitive of the Person whose Presence excites the shame :

**Pudet deōrum hominumque.** LIV. *It is a shame in the sight of gods and men.*

REMARK.—These Impersonals can also have a subject, chiefly a Demonstrative or Relative Pronoun :

**Nōn tē haec pudent?** TER. *Do not these things put you to the blush?*

Other constructions follow from general rules :

**Nōn mē paenitet vixisse.** CIC. (540.)

**Quintum paenitet quod animum tuum offendit.** CIC. *Quintus is sorry that he has wounded your feelings.*

### GENITIVE WITH JUDICIAL VERBS.

**377.** Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, Condemning, and Acquitting take the Genitive of the Charge :

**Miltiadēs accūsātus est prōditiōnis.** NEP. *Miltiades was accused of treason.*

**Cannensem exercitum quis pavōris insimulāre potest?** LIV. *Who can charge the army of Cannae with craven fear?*

**Parce tuum vātem sceleris damnāre, Cupido.** OV. *Be slow to condemn thy bard of crime, O Cupid!*

**Absolvere improbitātis,** *to acquit of dishonesty.*

So also kindred expressions: **reum facere**, (to make a party) *to indict, to bring an action against*; **sacrilegii compertum esse**, *to be found (guilty) of sacrilege.*

REMARKS.—1. Verbs of Condemning and Acquitting take the Ablative as well as the Genitive of the Charge and the Punishment, and always the Ablative of the Fine :

**Accūsāre capitis,** or **capite**, *to bring a capital charge.*

**Damnāre capitis,** or **capite**, *to condemn to death.*

**Damnāri decem milibus,** *to be fined 10,000.*

**Multāre**, *to mulct*, is always construed with the Ablative :

**Multāre pecūniā,** *to mulct in (of) money.*

**Manlius virtutem filii morte multāvit.** QUINT. *Manlius punished the valor of his son with death.*

2. Most verbs belonging to this class take also instead of the Genitive the Ablative with **dē**: **accūsāre dē vi**, *of violence* (no Genitive); **dē venēficiō**, *of poisoning*; **dē rēbus repetundis**, *of extortion.*

3. Destination and Enforced Labor are expressed by **ad** or **in**: **damnāri ad bestiās**, *to be condemned (to be thrown) to wild beasts*; **ad (in) metalla**, *to the mines*; **ad (in) opus publicum**, *to hard labor.* **Vōti damnāri**, *to be bound to fulfil a vow.*

### GENITIVE WITH VERBS OF RATING AND BUYING.

**378.** Verbs of Rating and Buying are construed with the

Genitive of the general value or cost, and the Ablative of the particular value or cost. (404.)

Verbs of Rating are: *aestimāre*, to value; *putāre*, to reckon; *dūcere*, to take; *habēre*, to hold; *pendere*, to weigh; *facere*, to make, put; *esse*, to be (worth).

Verbs of Buying are: *emere*, to buy; *vēndere*, to sell; *vēnīre*, to be for sale; *stāre* and *constāre*, to cost, to come to; *prōstāre*, *licēre*, to be exposed, left (for sale); *condūcere*, to hire; *locāre*, to let.

### 379. Verbs of Rating take:

<b>Magnī</b> , much,	<b>plūris</b> , more,	<b>plūrimī</b> , maximī, most.
<b>Parvī</b> , little,	<b>minōris</b> , less,	<b>minimī</b> , least.
<b>Tantī</b> , so much,	<b>quantī</b> , how much,	<b>nihilī</b> , naught.

Equivalents of *nihilī*, nothing, are *floccl*, a lock of wool, *naucī*, a trifle, *assis*, a copper, and the like, and so also *hūjus*, that (a snap of the finger), with the negative, which is omitted only in the earlier times.

*Tantī* is often used in the sense of *operae pretium est* = *it is worth while*.

*Dum nē ob malefacta peream parvī* [id] *aestimo*. *PLAUT.* So long as I be not killed for my misdeeds little do I care.

*Voluptātem virtūs minimī facit.* *CIC.* Virtue makes little account of the pleasure of the senses.

*Jūdicēs rempūblicam floccī nōn faciunt.* *CIC.* The judges do not care a fig for the State.

*Nōn habeo naucī Marsum augurem.* *ENNIUS.* I do not value a Marsian augur a baabee.

*Est mihi tantī hūjus invidiae tempestātem subire.* *CIC.* It is worth while (the cost), in my eyes, to bear this storm of odium.

### 380. Verbs of Buying take *tantī*, *quantī*, *plūris*, and *minōris*. The rest are put in the Ablative:

*Vēndo meum frūmentum nōn plūris quam ceterī, fortasse etiam minōris.* *CIC.* I sell my corn not dearer than everybody else, perhaps even cheaper.

*Magis illa juvant quae plūris emuntur.* *JUV.* Things give more pleasure which are bought for more.

*Ēmit Canius hortōs tantī quantī Pŷthius voluit.* *CIC.* Canius bought the gardens at the price Pythius wanted.

*Quantī cōnās?* What do you give for your dinner?

*Quantī habitās?* What is the rent of your lodgings?

But:

*Parvō famēs cōnstat, magnō fastidium.* *SEN.* Hunger costs little, daintiness much.

REMARKS.—1. **Aestimo** is found with the Ablative as well as with the Genitive. So **aestimāre magnū** and **magnū**, *to value highly*.

2. Observe the phrases : **boni** (aequi bonique) **facio**, **boni cōsulo**, *I put up with, take in good part*.

3. **Bene emere**, *to buy cheap*; **bene vādere**, *to sell dear*; **male emere**, *to buy dear*; **male vādere**, *to sell cheap*.

## GENITIVE WITH INTEREST AND RĒFERT.

381. **Interest** and **Rĕfert** take a Genitive of the Person, seldom of the Thing, concerned.

**Clōdii interest**. CIC. *It is Clodius's interest.*

**Rĕfert compositionis quae quibus antepōnās**. QUINT. *It is of importance for the arrangement of words, which you put before which.*

Instead of the Genitive of the Possessive Pronouns the Ablative Singular Feminine of the Possessives is employed :

**Meā interest, meā rĕfert**, *I am concerned.*

REMARKS.—1. **Rĕfert** is commonly used absolutely, occasionally with **meā**, etc., seldom with the Genitive.

2. Instead of Apposition use the Relative :

**Vehementer intererat vestrā, qui patrēs-estis, liberōs vestrōs hīc potissimum discere**. PLIN. EP. *It were vastly to the interest of you parents, that your children, if possible, were taught at home.*

3. No satisfactory explanation has been given of this construction. **Meā** seems to be an adverbial form like **quā, hāc, eā**. (Madvig.)

382. 1. The Degree of Concern is expressed by an Adverb, Adverbial Accusative, or a Genitive of Value :

**Multum (nihil) interest**. *It makes much (no) difference.*

**Quid interest?** *What difference does it make?*

**Magnū interest meā unā nōs esse** CIC. *It is of great importance to me that we be together.*

2. The Object of Concern is commonly put in the Infinitive, Accusative and Infinitive, **ut** or **nō**, with the Subjunctive, or an Interrogative Sentence.

**Quid Milōnis intererat interfici Clōdium?** CIC. *What interest had Milo in Clodius' being killed.*

**Caesar dicere solēbat nōn tam suā quam reipublicae interesse ut salvus esset**. SUT. *Caesar used to say that it was not of so much importance to him(self) as to the State that his life should be spared.*

**Vestrā interest nō imperātōrem pessimī faciant**. TAC. *It is to your interest that the dregs of creation do not make the emperor.*

**Quid rēfert tālēs versūs quā vōce legantur. JUV.** *What matters it what voice such verses are recited with?*

Occasionally by the Nominative of a Neuter Pronoun :

**Quid (Acc.) tuā id (Nom.) rēfert? TER.** *What business is that of yours?*

3. The Thing Involved is put in the Acc. with **ad** :

**Magnī ad honōrem nōstrum interest quam primum nōs ad urbem venire. CIC.** *It makes a great difference touching our honor that we should come to the city as soon as possible.*

#### ABLATIVE.

383. The Ablative is the Adverbial, as the Genitive is the Adjective case. It contains three elements :

A. Where? B. Whence? C. Wherewith?

In a literal sense, the Ablative is commonly used with Prepositions; in a figurative sense, it is commonly used without Prepositions.

A. The Ablative of the Place Where appears in a figurative sense as the Ablative of the Time When.

B. The Ablative of the Place Whence appears as :

1. The Ablative of Origin.
2. The Ablative of Measure.

C. The Ablative of the Thing Wherewith appears in a figurative sense, as :

1. The Ablative of Manner.
2. The Ablative of Quality.
3. The Ablative of Means.

**REMARK.**—It is impossible to draw the line of demarcation with absolute exactness. So the Ablative of Cause may be derived from any of the three fundamental significations of the case, which is evidently a composite one.

To these we add :

D. The Ablative of Cause :

E. The Ablative Absolute.

#### I. THE LITERAL MEANINGS OF THE ABLATIVE.

##### A. ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE WHERE.

*Ablātivus locālis.*

384. The Ablative answers the question *Where?* and takes as a rule the preposition **IN** :

**In portū nāvigo. TER.** *I am sailing in harbor.*

**Pons in Hibērō prope effectus erat. CAES.** *The bridge over the Ebro was nearly finished.*

**Histrio in scēnā est. PLAUT.** *The actor is on the stage.*

**Haeret in equō senex. CIC.** *The old man sticks to his horse.*

REMARKS.—1. Verbs of Placing and kindred significations take the Ablative with **IN**, to designate the result of the motion: **pōnere**, to place; **collocāre**, to put; **statuere**, constitute, to set; **considerere**, to settle; **dēfigere**, to plant; **dēmergere**, to plunge; **imprimere**, to press upon; **inscribere**, to write upon; **incidere**, to carve upon.

**Plato ratiōnem in capite posuit, iram in pectore locāvit. CIC.** *Plato has put reason in the head, has placed anger in the breast.*

**Lūcrētia cultrum in corde dēfigit. LIV.** *Lucretia plants a knife in (thrusts a knife down into) her heart.*

**Philosophi in iis ipsis libris quōs scribunt dē contemnendā glōriā sua nōmina inscribunt. CIC.** *Philosophers write their own names on (the titles of) the very books which they write about contempt of glory.*

**Index inciditur in aeneis tabulis. SUET.** *An index is engraved on tablets of bronze.* The same observation applies to sub:

**Pōne sub currū nimium propinquū sōlis in terrā domibus negātā. HOR.** *Put (me) under the chariot of the all-too neighboring sun, in a land denied to dwellings.*

So **humī**, which is a Where-case: **humī prōsternere**, to throw flat on the ground.

2. The poets are free in omitting **in**, but regard must be had to 387.

3. On the Locative Ablative of Towns and Small Islands, see 412.

385. In citations from books and in enumerations, the Ablative of the Place Where is used without **in**:

**Librō tertiō, third book; versu decimō, tenth verse; aliō locō, elsewhere.**

REMARK.—**LOCUS**, place, used metaphorically, generally omits **in**: **hōc locō**, in this position, situation; **in hōc locō** (or **hōc locō**), in this place, part of the country. **Librō** is used when the whole book, in **librō**, when merely a passage in the book, is devoted to the subject in hand.

386. In designations of place with **tōtus**, whole, and the like, the Ablative of the Place Where is generally used without **in**:

**Menippus disertissimus tōtā Asiā fuit. Menippus was the most eloquent man in all Asia (Minor).**

**Battiadēs tōtō semper cantābitur orbe. OV.** *Battiades (Callimachus) will always be sung throughout the world.*

387. In all such Designations of Place as may be regarded in the light of Cause, Manner, or Instrument, the Ablative is used without a preposition:

**Ut terrā Thermopylārū angustiae Graeciam ita mari fretum Euripi claudit. LIV.** *As the pass of Thermopylas bars Greece by land, so the frith of Euripus by sea.*



**Nemo ire quenquam publicā prohibet viā.** PLAUT. *No man forbiddeth (any one to) travel by the public road.*

**Mātris cinerēs Tiberi subvecti sunt.** SUET. *His mother's ashes were brought up by the Tiber.*

**Imperātor militēs (in) castris tenēbat (intrā castra).** CAES. *The general kept the soldiers in camp.*

**Recipere aliquem tectō, oppidō, portū.** *To receive a man into one's house, town, harbor.*

## B. ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE WHENCE.

### *Ablātivus Separātivus.*

388. The Ablative answers the question *Whence?* with or without the prepositions **ex**, *out of*, **dē**, *from*, **ab**, *off*:

**Eum exturbāsti ex aedibus.** PLAUT. *You hustled him out of the house.*

**Arāneās dējiciam dē pariete.** PLAUT. *I will get the cobwebs down from the wall.*

**Nōn ex eō locō sed ab eō locō mē dējēcit.** CIC. *It was not OUT OF that place, but FROM that place that he dislodged me.*

The prepositions are omitted chiefly with Verbs of Abstaining, Removing, Relieving, and Excluding, but with Persons a preposition (chiefly **ab**) must be used.

**Aliēnō manūs abstinēat.** CATO. *Let him keep his hands from other people's property.* But:

**Alexander vix ā sē manūs abstinuit.** CIC. *Alexander hardly kept (could hardly keep) his hands from himself (from laying hands on himself).*

**Populus Athēniensis Phōciōnem patriā pepulit.** NEP. *The Athenian people drove Phocion from his country.* But:

**Illum aemulum ab eā pellito.** TER. *Drive that rival from her.*

**Multōs fortūna liberat paenā, metū nēminem.** SEN. *Fortune rids many of punishment, none of fear.* But:

**Tē ab eō libero.** CIC. *I rid you of him.*

**Amicitia nullō locō exclūdatur.** CIC. *Friendship is shut out from no place.* But:

**Ab illā exclūdor, hūc conclūdor.** TER. *I am shut out from her (and shut up here (to this, to live with her)).*

**Alcibiadem Athēniensēs ē civitāte expulērunt.** NEP. *The Athenians banished Alcibiades from the State.*

**Hannibal ex Italiā dēcēdere coactus est.** CIC. *Hannibal was forced to withdraw from Italy.*

**Crēde mihi, mōrēs distant ā carmine nostrō. Ov.** *Believe me, far my conduct differs from my song.*

**Cōsulsēs sē abdicant magistrātū. Cic.** *The consuls abdicate their office.*

So also kindred Adjectives :

**Animus excelsus omni est liber cūrā. Cic.** *A lofty mind is free from all care.*

**Cato, omnibus hūmānis vitīs immūnis, semper fortunam in suā potestāte habuit. VELL.** *Cato, exempt from all human failings, always had fortune in his own power.*

REMARKS.—1. Compounds with **di** (**dis**) also take the Dative (in poetry) :

**Paulum sepultae distat inertiae cēlata virtūs. HOR.** *Little doth hidden worth differ from buried sloth.*

2. The Place Whence gives the point of view from which. In English a different translation is often given, though not always necessarily : **ā tergō**, *in the rear* ; **ex parte dextrā**, *on the right side* ; **ab oriente**, *on the east* ; **ā tantō spatiō**, *at such a distance* ; **ex fugā**, *on the flight* ; **ā rē frumentāriā labōrāre**, *to be embarrassed in the matter of provisions.*

3. The poets are free in the use of the Ablative as a Whence-case without a preposition. On the difference of conception between Dative and Ablative, see 344, R. 2. On the Genitive, see 373, R. 6.

4. On the Ablative as a Whence-case in Names of Towns and Small Islands, see 411.

**389. Verbs of Depriving and Filling, of Plenty and Want, take the Ablative :**

**Dēmocritus dicitur oculis sē privāsse. Cic.** *Democritus is said to have deprived himself of his eyes.*

**Deus bonis omnibus explēvit mundum. Cic.** *God has filled the universe with all blessings.*

**Abundant dulcibus vitīs. QUINT.** *They abound in charming faults.*

**Nōn caret effectū quod voluēre duō. Ov.** *What two have resolved on never lacks execution.*

**Amor vacat metū. Ov.** *Love is void of fear.*

**Sapiens eget nullā rē. SEN.** *The sage stands in need of nothing.*

REMARKS.—1. Verbs of Filling are commonly referred to the Instrumental Ablative rather than to the Ablative of the Source, and are put here for convenience of contrast. But observe that in the classic tongues the construction of opposites is identical.

2. **Egeo** and (more frequently) **indigeo** also take the Genitive.

**Nōn tam artis indigent quam labōris. Cic.** *They are not so much in need of skill as of industry.*

3. Adjectives of Plenty and Want take the Genitive, but some of them follow the analogy of the verb (373, R. 1) :

**Asellus onustus aurō. Cic.** *A donkey laden with gold.*

**Pollicitis dives quilibet esse potest. Ov.** *Anybody can be rich in promises.*

**Amor et melle et felle est fecundissimus. PLAUT.** *Love is very fruitful both in honey and in gall (of acrimony).*

390. *Opus* and *Ūsus* take the Dative of the Person who Wants and the Ablative of the Thing Wanted; but the Thing Wanted may be the subject and *opus* the predicate:

*Opus est mihi librō, libris, I want a book, books.*

*Liber mihi opus est, a book is a want to me (is what I want).*

*Libri mihi opus sunt, books are a want to me (are what I want).*

*Quid opus est speculō tibi? PLAUT. What do you want to do with a mirror?*

*Emās nōn quod opus est sed quod necesse est; quod nōn opus est asse cārum est. CATO. Buy not what you want, but what is absolutely needful; what you do not want (have no use for) is dear at a penny.*

So with the Perfect Participle Passive:

*Quod parātō opus est parā. TER. What must be got ready, get ready.*

*Vicinō opus est conventō. PLAUT. The neighbor must be called on.*

*Ūsus est pecūniā or pecūniā. PLAUT. Money is wanted (is, would be (246, R. 1) useful).*

*Nōn factō est ūsus. PLAUT. It were better let alone.*

REMARK.—This construction belongs to the Instrumental, and is put here for convenience of reference:

*Opus est, there is work to be done with.*

*Ūsus est, there is making use of (like *titor*, 405).*

The Genitive is of rare occurrence. Other constructions are the Infinitive and *ut*. The Nenter Accusative is often adverbial (331, R. 3):

*Quid (Acc.) digitōs opus est graphiō lassāre tenendō? OV. What is the use of tiring the fingers by holding the stilus?*

*Opus est tē animō valēre ut corpore possis. CIC. You must be well in mind in order to be well in body.*

*An cuiquam est ūsus hominī sē ut cruciet? TER. Of what good is it to any man to torture himself?*

## C. ABLATIVE OF THE THING WHEREWITH.

### *Ablātivus Sociātivus.*

391. The Ablative of Attendance takes the preposition *cum*, with:

*Cum baculō pērāque senex. MART. An old man with stick and wallet.*

*Nec tēcum possum vivere nec sine tē. MART. I can't live either with you or without you.*

REMARKS.—1. In military phrases, the troops with which a march is made are put in the Ablative, with or without *cum*; generally without *cum* when an adjective is used (Ablative of Manner), with *cum* when no adjective is used (Ablative of Attendance):

*Rēx Hellēspontum cum exercitū transiit, The king crossed the Hellespont with an army.*

**Dictator** (cum) ingenti exercitū ab urbe profectus est. *The dictator set out from the city with a great army.*

2. Not to be confounded with the above is the Instrumental Ablative :

**Nāvibus proficisci**, to set out by ship.

So also with verbs which denote other military actions :

**Hostēs sagittāris et funditoribus terrēbat**, he was frightening the enemy with archers and slingers.

**Armātus ipse et armātis saeptus**. LIV. *Armed himself and hedged about with armed men.*

**Nīl actum est nisi Poenō milite portās frangimus**. JUV. *Naught is accomplished unless we break the gates with the Punic soldiery (as if with a battering-ram).*

## II.—THE FIGURATIVE MEANINGS OF THE ABLATIVE.

### A. The Place Where is transferred to the Time When.

#### *Ablative of Time.*

#### 392. Time When or Within Which is put in the Ablative.

**Quā nocte nātus est Alexander eādem Diānae Ephesiae templum dēflagrāvit**. CIC. *On the same night on which Alexander was born, the temple of Diana of Ephesus burnt to the ground.*

**Sātūrnī stella trīgintā ferō annis cursum suum conficit**. CIC. *The planet Saturn completes its period in about thirty years.*

Many adverbial forms of time are really locative ablatives :

So **hodiē**, to-day ; **heri(e)**, yesterday ; **māne**, in the morning.

REMARKS.—1. Time within which may be expressed by **per** and the accusative :

**Per eōs ipsoe diēs quibus Philippus in Achāiā fuit**, Philoclēs saltum Cithaerōnis transcendit. LIV. *During those very days, while Philip was in Achaea, Philocles crossed the range of Cithaeron.*

2. Time Within Which may embrace both extremities ; so with **tōtus**, all, whole :

**Tōtē nocte pluit**, redeunt spectacula māne. VERG. *All night (Jupiter) rains ; back come the shows in the morning.*

So with definite numbers (chiefly later) :

**Apud Pŷthagoram discipulis quinque annis erat tacendum**. SEN. *In the school of Pythagoras the disciples had to keep silence five years.*

3. When the Notion is Negative the English *Time For Which* is the Latin *Within Which* :

**Quadrienniō** (or **per quadriennium**) **nōn militāvit**. LIV. *For four years he did not serve as a soldier (during, at any time within, four years).*

4. Especially to be noted is the Ablative of Time with **hīc**, this ; **illē**, that :

**Ego ad tē his duobus mensibus nōn scripseram** (244). CIC. *I have not written to you these two months (at any time within the last two months).*

**Hanc urbem hōc bienniō svertēs**. CIC. *This city you will overturn in the next two years.*

Transferred to **Ōrātiō Obliqua**, **hīc** becomes **illē** (668, 3) :

**Diodōrus respondit illud argentum sē paucis illis diēbus misisse Lilybaeum**, *Diodorus answered that he had sent that silver plate to Lilybaeum within a few days (a few days before).*

393. The Ablative with the preposition **in** is used of points within a period of time, or of the character of the time:

**Bis in diē**, twice a day; **in pueritiā**, in boyhood; **in adolescentiā**, in youth.

**Nullō modō mihi placuit bis in diē saturum fieri.** CIC. *It did not suit me in any way to eat my fill twice a day.*

Sometimes, however, **bis diē**, as **diēs** = **ūnus diēs**.

**Fēcī ego istaec itidem in adolescentiā.** PLAUT. *I did those things too in my youth.*

**In** may be omitted, chiefly with an adjective or in phrases:

**Primā pueritiā**, in early boyhood; **illō tempore**, at that time; **in illō tempore**, in those circumstances, at that crisis; **in tempore** or **tempore** = at the right time; **bellō Persicō**, at the time of the Persian war; **in bellō**, in war times; **in pāce**, in peace times.

REMARK.—**Dē** is also used in designations of time:

**Ut jugulent hominēs surgunt dē nocte latrōnēs.** HOR. *To kill people, highway-men rise by night, i. e., while it is yet night.*

**Inter, between:** **Quot prandia inter continuum perdidī triennium.** PLAUT. *How many luncheons I have lost during three years together!*

**Intrā, within:** **Subēgit sōlus intrā viginti diēs.** PLAUT. *He quelled them all alone in less than twenty days.*

**On per, through**, see 337, R.

**Cum, with;** **cum primā lūce**, with daybreak.

394. B. The Place Whence is transferred:

1. To Origin; 2. To Measure.

#### 1. Ablative of Origin.

395. Participles which designate Birth take the Ablative of Origin, with or without the Prepositions **ex** and **dē**:

**Tanaquil summō locō nāta.** LIV. *Tanaquil born (by birth) of high degree.*

**Numae Pompiliī rēgis nepōs, filiā ortus, Ancus Marcius erat.** LIV. *King Numa Pompilius's grandson, a daughter's son, was Ancus Marcius.*

**Maecēnās atavis ēdite rēgibus.** HOR. *Maecenas, offshoot of great-grand-sire kings.*

**Dis genite et genitūre deōs.** VERG. *Begotten of gods and destined to beget gods!*

**Sate sanguine divūm!** VERG. *Seed of blood divine!*

**Ex mē atque hōc nātus es.** TER. *You are his son and mine.*

**Ōdērunt nātōs dē pellice.** JUV. *They hate the offspring of the concubine.*

**Ab** is employed of remote progenitors :

**Plērique Belgae sunt orti ab Germānis.** CAES. *Belgians are mostly of German descent.*

**396.** The Ablative of Material commonly takes **ex**: **constāre**, *to consist*, sometimes omits the preposition :

**Animō constāmus et corpore, constāmus ex animō et corpore.** CIC. *We consist of mind and body.*

**Medicina tōta constat experimentis.** QUINT. *All medicine is made up of experiments (is empirical).*

But : **Statua ex aurō, ex aere, facta,** *a statue made of gold, of bronze.* Often an adjective is used : **aureus, golden, ligneus, wooden.**

REMARKS.—1. A remnant of the old usage is found with **fio** and **facio** :

**Quid fecisti scipiōne?** *What have you done with the wand?*

**Quid mē fiet?** *What will become of me?*

**Quid mē futurum est?** *What is to become of me?*

**Quid faciēs hōc homine?** *How will you dispose of this man?*

**Hūc homini?** *What will you do to this man?* **Dē hōc homine,** *in this man's case.*

**Fies dē rhētorē consul.** JUV. *From (having been) rhetorician you will become consul.*

2. Otherwise the simple Ablative of Material is poetic or late :

**Māvors caelātus ferrō.** VERG. *Mars carven of iron.*

**Meliōre lutō finxit.** JUV. *He fashioned him of better clay.*

## 2. Ablative of Measure.

**397.** The Ablative gives the Point from which a thing is measured or treated : Ablative of Measure or Reference.

**398.** The Ablative is put in answer to the questions **From What Point of View? According to What? By What? In Respect of What?**

**Magnōs hominēs virtūte mētīmur, nōn fortunā.** NEP. *We measure great men by worth, not by fortune.*

**Sonīs hominēs dignōscimus ut aera tinnītū.** QUINT. *We distinguish men by sound as coppers by ring.*

**Dēscriptus erat populus Rōmānus censū, ordinibus, aetātibus.** CIC. *The people of Rome was drawn off according to income, rank, (and) age.*

**Ennius ingeniō maximus arte rudis.** OV. *Ennius in genius great, in art unskilled.*

**Animō prāvus, procāx ōre.** TAC. *Crooked of soul, saucy of tongue.*

**Crīne ruber,** *red-haired; captus oculis* (literally, caught in the eyes),

*blind*; *captus mente, insane*; *meā sententiā, according to my opinion*; *jūre, by right*; *lēge, by law*; and the Supines in -ū (437).

REMARKS.—1. Prepositions are also used, which serve to show the conception:

*Caesaris adventus ex colōre vestitūs cognitus est.* CAES. *The arrival of Caesar was known by the color of his clothing.*

*Dē gestū intelligo quid respondeās.* CIC. *I understand by your gesture what answer you are giving.*

*Ex lēge, according to law*; *ex pactō, according to agreement*; *ex (dē) mōre, according to custom*; *ex animi sententiā, according to (my) heart's desire*; *ex ūsū, useful.*

*Ab animō aeger fui.* PLAUT. *At heart I was sick.*

*Ōtiosum esse ab animō.* TER. *To be easy in mind.*

2. *Dignus* (*distinguished*), *worthy*, and *indignus*, *unworthy*, are most conveniently referred to this head. (Examples, see 373, R. 3.)

So also *dignor*, *I deem worthy.*

399. The Ablative of Measure is used with the Comparative instead of *quam*, *than*, with the Nominative or Accusative:

*Tunica propior palliō.* PROV. *The shirt is nearer than the cloak.*

*Phīdiae simulacrīs (= quam simulācra) cōgitāre possumus pulchriōra.* CIC. *We can imagine more beautiful things than the statues of Phidias.*

So also after adverbs, but not so freely in prose:

*Nemo est qui tibi sapientius suādēre possit tē ipsō.* CIC. *There is no one who can give you wiser advice than you yourself.*

*Pulchrum ornātum turpēs mōrēs pējus caenō collinunt.* PLAUT. *Foul behavior doth bedraggle fine apparel worse than mud.*

REMARKS.—1. The comparative is also employed with the Ablative of certain abstract substantives and adjectives used as substantives:

*Consul sērius spēs (= quam spēs fuerat) Rōmam vēnit.* LIV. *The consul came to Rome later than was hoped.*

*Amnis solitō citātior.* LIV. *The river running faster than usual.*

2. *Alius*, *other than*, with the Ablative, is poetic.

400. Measure of Difference is put in the Ablative:

*Turrēs dēnīs pedibus quam mūrus altiōrēs sunt.* CURT. *The towers are (by) ten feet higher than the wall.*

*Tantō est accūsāre quam dēfendere quantō facere quam sārare vulnera facilius.* QUINT. *It is as much easier to accuse than to defend as it is easier to inflict wounds than to cure them.*

*Perfer et obdūrā: multō graviōra tulisti.* OV. *Endure to the end and be firm: you have borne much more grievous burdens.*

*Quōque minor spēs est, hōc magis ille cupit.* OV. *And the less his hope, the greater his desire.*

REMARKS.—1. This rule applies to verbs involving difference as well as to comparatives: *Aesculāpiī templum quinque millibus passuum ab urbe Epidaurō distat.* LIV. *The temple of Aesculapius is five miles from the city of Epidaurus.*

2. The Accusative is sometimes employed. (See 335.)

3. Especially to be noted is the use of the Ablative of Measure with *ante*, *before*, and *post*, *after*:

*Paucis ante diēbus, Paucis diēbus ante, a few days before.*

*Paucis post diēbus, Paucis diēbus post, a few days after, afterward.*

*Duobus annis postquam Rōma condita est, Two years after Rome was founded.*

*Paulō post Trōjam captam, A little while after the taking of Troy.*

The Accusative can also be employed: *post paucos annos, after a few years*; *ante paucos annos, a few years before*; and the ordinal as well as the cardinal numbers: *two hundred years after(ward)* may be:

*Ducentis annis post*  
*Post ducentos annos*

or  
"

*Ducentesimo anno post,*  
*Post ducentimum annum.*

*Ante hos sex menses, six months ago* (comp. 392, R. 2), more frequently *abhinc sex menses: abhinc sex mensibus*, means *six months before* (Madvig).

With a relative sentence the Ablative may be used alone:

*Roscii mors quatuor quo die occisus est, Chrysogono nuntiatur.* CIC. *The death of Roscius was announced to Chrysogonus four days after he was killed (in the course of the four days within which he was killed).* See 392.

Hence is *ad: ad sex menses, six months hence.*

## C. ABLATIVE OF THE THING WHEREWITH.

*Ablativus sociativus. Ablative of Attendance.*

### 1. Ablative of Manner.

401. The Ablative of Manner answers the question *How?* and is used with the Preposition *cum* when it has no Adjective; with or without *cum* when it has an Adjective:

*Miltiadēs summā aequitate res constituit Chersonēsī.* NEP. *Miltiades settled the affairs of the Chersonese with the greatest fairness.*

*Nōn facile est aequā commodā mentē pati.* OV. *It is not easy to bear good fortune with an even temper.*

*Cum cūrā scribere, to write with care.*

*Magnā cūrā,*

*Cum magnā cūrā,* } *with great care.*

*Magnā cum cūrā,*

REMARK.—Several Ablatives are used adverbially without an Adjective or Preposition: *ordine, in an orderly manner*; *silentiō, silently*; *cāsū, by chance, accidentally*; *vis et ratione, methodically*; *dolō, fraude, fraudulently*. It is sometimes hard to distinguish between the Manner and the Instrument: *vi, violently and by violence*; *vi et armis, by force of arms*; *pedibus, on foot*; *nāvibus, by ship*. Notice, also, the use of *per, through*, with the Accusative: *per vim, by violence*; *per litterās, by letter*.

### 2. Ablative of Quality.

(Descriptive Ablative.)

402. The Ablative of Quality has no Preposition, and always takes an Adjective or an equivalent:



**Āgēsīlāus statūrā fuit humili.** NEP. *Agēsīlāus was (a man) of low stature.*

**Cato singulārī fuit prūdentiā et industriā.** NEP. *Cato was (a man) of unique foresight and energy.*

**Ista turpiculō puella nāsō.** CAT. *That girl of yours with the ugly nose.*

**Clāvi ferrei digiti pollicis crassitudīne.** CAES. *Iron nails of the thickness of your thumb.*

REMARKS.—1. External and transient qualities are put by preference in the Ablative; Measure, Number, Time, and Space, are put in the Genitive only; parts of the body in the Ablative only. Otherwise there is often no difference.

2. Of unnatural productions **cum** may be used: **agnus cum suillō capite.** LIV. *A lamb with a swine's head.*

### 3. Ablative of Means.

403. The Instrument is put in the Ablative without a Preposition.

The Agent or Doer is put in the Ablative with the Preposition **ab** (ā):

The Person Through Whom is put in the Accusative with **per**:

**Pyrrhus lapide interfectus est,** *Pyrrhus was killed by a stone.*

**Pyrrhus ā muliere interfectus est,** *Pyrrhus was killed by a woman.*

**Pyrrhus ā muliere lapide interfectus est,** *Pyrrhus was killed by a woman with a stone.*

<b>Xerxēs certior factus est,</b>	} 1. <b>nūntiō,</b> <i>by a message.</i> 2. <b>ā nūntiō,</b> <i>by a messenger.</i> 3. <b>per nūntium,</b> <i>by means of a messenger.</i>
<b>Xerxes was informed,</b>	

**Nec bene prōmeritis capitur neque tangitur irā.** LUCR. (218, R. 3.)

**Ipsē docet quid agam : fās est et ab hoste docērī.** OV. (210.)

**Discite sārārī per quem didicistis amāre.** OV. *Learn to be healed by means of (him by) whom you learned to love.*

REMARKS.—1. When the Instrument is personified and regarded as an Agent, or the Agent is regarded as an Instrument, the constructions are reversed; when an Adjective is used, the construction may be doubtful, 352, R.

So **jacent suis testibus.** CIC. *They are cast by their own witnesses; or, they are cast, their own men being witnesses.*

2. Especially worthy of note under this head are **assuesco** and **assuefacio**: **assuetus labōre,** *accustomed to toil, familiar with toil* (the Dative is more rare); **doctus Graecis litteris,** *learned in Greek*; and the various words for *sacrifice*:

**Quinquāgintā capris sacrificāvērunt.** LIV. *They sacrificed fifty she-goats.*

**Afficere,** *to treat,* with the Ablative, is a favorite term; see the Lexicons.

3. **Nitor,** *I stay myself,* is construed with the Ablative, with or without **in**: **Hastilī nixus,** *leaning on a spear* (stayed by a spear).

[Pompēi] in vitā nītēbātur salūs cīvītātis. CIC. *The weal of the State depended on Pompey's life.*

Notice also stāre, with the Abl. : stāre condiōnibus, *to abide by the terms.*

#### 4. Ablative of Price.

404. Definite Price is put in the Ablative :

Viginti talentis unam orationem Isocratēs vendidit. PLIN. *Isocrates sold one speech for twenty talents.*

Emit morte immortalitatem. QUINT. *He purchased deathlessness with death.*

Nimium risus pretium est si probitatis impendit constat. QUINT. *The price of a laugh is too high, if it costs the outlay of a man's uprightness.*

Argentum accipi; dote imperium vendidi. PLAUT. *The cash I took ; (and) for a dowry sold my sway.*

REMARK.—Mūtāre, *to exchange*, is sometimes Give, sometimes Get ; sometimes Sell, sometimes Buy :

Pax misera vel bello bene mutatur. TAC. *A wretched peace is well exchanged even for war.*

Durus qui potuit lucro mutare puellam. PROP. *Hard (is the soul of the) man who could sell his sweetheart for lucre.*

Cur velle permitem Sabine divitiis operosiores. HOR. *Why should I exchange my Sabine velle for riches sure to breed (me) greater trouble ?*

#### 5. Ablative with Sundry Verbs.

405. The Deponent Verbs Ūtor, Abūtor, Fruor, Fungor, Potior, and Vescor, take the Ablative :

Victoriā uti nescis. LIV. *How to make use of victory you know not.*

Quousque tandem abutere patientiā nostrā. CIC. *How long, tell me, will you abuse our patience ?*

Lux quā fruimur ā Deo nobis datur. CIC. *The light which we enjoy is given to us by God.*

Fungor vice cōtis. HOR. *I discharge the office of a whetstone.*

Tūtius esse arbitrabantur sine ullō vulnere victoriā potiri. CAES. *They thought it safer to make themselves masters of the victory without any wound.*

Numidae lacte vescēbantur. SALL. *The Numidians made their food of milk (fed on milk).*

REMARKS.—1. These Ablatives are commonly regarded as Ablatives of the Instrument ; but fruor, *I get fruit*, and vescor, *I feed myself from* (vĕ-ed-scor), and perhaps fungor seem to take the Ablative as a Whence-case. In older Latin they are sometimes combined with the Accusative. Hence they have a Gerundive :

Iustitia docet tē esse injūstum quum graviter ferās tē quod utendum accē-

**peris reddidisse.** CIC. *Justice will say that you are unjust since you resent having restored what you have received (but) to use.*

2. **Ūti** is a favorite word, and has a most varied translation :

**Ūti aliquō amicō,** to avail oneself of (to enjoy) a man's friendship (to have a friend in him).

**Ūti consiliō,** to follow advice ; **Ūti bonō patre,** to have the advantage of having a good father ; **Ūti lēgibus,** to obey the laws. See the Lexicons.

3. **Vīvo** is construed like **vescor** : **aliēnā misericordiā vivo,** I live on the charity of others.

**Potior,** I possess myself, sometimes takes the Genitive ; always **potiri rērum,** to possess the supreme power.

#### D. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.

406. The Ablative of Cause may be referred to so many classes, that it is most convenient to regard it as a class by itself.

407. The Ablative of Cause is used without a preposition, chiefly with Verbs of Emotion :

**Castor gaudet equis.** HOR. *Castor rejoices in horses.*

**Quidam vitis suis glōriantur.** SEN. *Some make a boast of their vices.*

**Pecuniā fidens nōn dubitābat.** NEP. *Trusting in his money, he had no doubts.*

**In culpā sunt qui officia dēserunt mollitiā animi.** CIC. *They are to blame who shirk their duties from effeminacy of temper.*

**Ōdērunt peccāre boni virtutis amōre.** HOR. *The good hate to sin from a love of virtue.*

So also **jussū civium,** at the bidding of the citizens ; **meō rogātū,** at my request, and other verbal Ablatives. On **causā** and **grātiā,** for the sake of see 372.

REMARKS.—1. The moving cause is often expressed by a participle with the Ablative : **adductus,** led ; **ardens,** fired ; **commōtus,** stirred up ; **incitātus,** egged on ; **incensus,** inflamed ; **impulsus,** driven on ; **irā,** by anger ; **odiō,** by hate ; **metū,** from fear ; **metū perterritus,** sore frightened ; **propter metum,** on account of, (by reason of) fear.

2. The preventing cause is expressed by **prae,** for :

**Prae gaudiō ubi sim nescio.** TER. *I know not where I am for joy.*

#### E. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

408. The so-called Ablative Absolute is an Ablative combined with a participle, and serves to modify the verbal predicate of a sentence. Instead of the participle, a predicative substantive or adjective can be employed.

REMARK.—This Ablative, which may be called the Ablative of Circumstance, springs from the Temporal Use of the Ablative—the Temporal from the Local.

409. The Ablative Absolute may be translated by the English Objective Absolute, which is a close equivalent: but for purposes of style, it is often well to analyze the thought, to change Passive into Active, to make use of an abstract noun.

**Xerxe regnante** (= **Quum Xerxēs regnāret**), *Xerxes reigning. When Xerxes was reigning. In the reign of Xerxes.*

**Xerxe victō** (= **Quum Xerxēs victus esset**), *Xerxes being, having been, defeated. When Xerxes had been defeated. After the defeat of Xerxes.*

**Xerxe rēge** (= **Quum Xerxēs rēx esset**), *Xerxes [being] king. When Xerxes was king.*

**Patre vivō**, *WHILE father is, was alive (in father's lifetime).*

**Maximās virtūtēs jacōre omnēs necesse est voluptāte dominante.** **CIC.** *All the greatest virtues must necessarily lie prostrate, IF (or WHEN) the pleasure (of the senses) is mistress.*

**Rōmāni veterēs regnārī omnēs volēbant libertātis dulcēdine nōndum expertā.** **LIV.** *The old Romans all wished to have a king over them (BECAUSE they had) not yet tried the sweetness of liberty.*

**Urbe expugnātā imperātor rediit :**

**PASSIVE FORM :** *The city [being] taken (after the city was taken), the general returned.*

**ACTIVE FORM :** *Having taken the city (after he had taken the city), the general returned.*

**ABSTRACT FORM :** *After the taking of the city. After taking the city.*

**REMARKS.**—1. As the Latin language has no Perf. Part. Active, except the Deponent, which is thus used, the Passive construction is far more common than in English :

**Tunc juvenēs veste positā corpora oleō perunxērunt.** **CIC.** *Then the youths, (having) laid aside their clothing, anointed their bodies with oil : or, laid aside their clothing, and anointed their bodies with oil.*

2. The Ablative Absolute, though often to be rendered by a co-ordinate sentence, for convenience' sake, always presents a subordinate conception :

**Lysander suadet Lacedaemoniis ut rēgiā potestāte dissolutā ex omnibus dux dēligātur ad bellum gerendum.** **NEP.** *Lysander advises the Lacedaemonians that the royal power be done away with, AND a leader be chosen from all, to conduct the war. Here the one is necessary to the other.*

3. As a rule, the Ablative Absolute can stand only when it is not identical with the subject, object, or dependent case of the verbal predicate. *Manlius slew the Gaul and stripped him of his necklace*, is to be rendered : **Manlius caesum Gallum torque spoliāvit.**

The rule is most frequently violated when the dependent case is in the Genitive :

**Jugurtha frātre meō interfectō regnum sibi sceleris sui praedam fecit.** **SALL.** *Jugurtha killed my brother, and (= after killing my brother) made his throne the booty of his crime.*

4. On the Ablative of the simple participle, see 438, R. 2.

#### NAMES OF TOWNS AND SMALL ISLANDS.

410. Names of Towns and Small Islands are put—  
In the Accusative of the Place Whither.

So also *rūs*, *into the country*, *domum*, *domōs*, *home*.

*Lēgātī Athēnās missī sunt.* LIV. *Envoys were sent to Athens.*

*Lātōna confūgit Dēlum.* CIC. *Latona took refuge in Delos.*

*Laelius et Scipio rūs ēvolābant.* CIC. *Laelius and Scipio used to hurry out into the country.*

*Innumerābilēs philosophī nunquam domum revertēre.* CIC. *Innumerable philosophers never returned home.*

So verbals : *domum reditus*, *a return home*.

REMARKS.—1. *Domum*, *house*, with a possessive pronoun, or Genitive, may or may not have *in* before it : *domum meam* or *in domum meam*, *to my house* ; *domum Pompējī* or *in domum Pompējī*, *to Pompey's house* ; also *domum ad Pompējum*. Otherwise : *in magnificam domum venire*, *to come into a grand house*.

2. When *urbem*, *city*, or *oppidum*, *town*, precedes the name of the city or town, the preposition *in* or *ad* is prefixed ; if *urbem* or *oppidum* follows, *in* or *ad* may be omitted : *in (ad) oppidum Cirtam*, *to, in (at) the town (of) Cirta*.

*Jugurtha Thalam pervēnit in oppidum magnum et opulentum.* SALL. *Jugurtha arrived at Thala, a great and wealthy town.*

3. *Ad* means *to the neighborhood of*, often *before*, of military operations. *Ad Mutinam*, *to the neighborhood (siege of) Mutina (Modena)*.

4. Observe that there must be *motion*, not merely *extent*, which requires a preposition :

*À Salōnis ad Ōricum portūs.* CAES. *The harbors from Salona to Oricus.*

5. Motion To a Place embraces all the local designations :

*Phalara in sinum Māliacum prōcesserant.* LIV. *They had advanced to Phalara on the Māliac Gulf.*

*Tarentum in Italiam inferiōrem proficisci*, *to set out for Tarentum in Lower Italy.*

#### 411. Names of Towns and Small Islands are put—

In the Ablative of the Place Whence :

*Dēmarātus fūgit Tarquiniōs Corinthō.* LIV. *Demaratus fled to Tarquinii from Corinth.*

*Dolābella Dēlō proficiscitur.* CIC. *Dolabella sets out from Delos.*

So also *domō*, *from home* ; *humō*, *from the ground* ; *rūre*, *from the country*.

REMARKS.—1. The prepositions *ab* (ā) and *ex* (ē) are sometimes used for the sake of greater exactness. So regularly *ab* with the Place from which distance is measured :

*Aesculāpiī templum quinque milibus passuum ab urbe Epidaurō distat.* LIV. (400, R. 1.)

When the common nouns *urbe*, *city*, and *oppidō*, *town*, are employed, the use of the preposition is the rule :

*Aulide, ex oppidō Boeōtiae*, *from Aulis, a town of Boeotia.*

*Ex Apollōniā Pontī urbe*, *from Apollonia, a city of Pontus.*

*Ex oppidō Gergoviā*, *from the town of Gergovia.*

2. The Place Whence embraces all the local designations :

*Agrigentō ex Aesculāpiī fānō*, whereas we should say, *from the temple of Aesculapius at Agrigentum*.

*Unde domō ?* VERU. *From what home ?*

3. Letters are dated *from* rather than *at* a place.

4. The poets are free in using the Ablative as a Whence-case.

# 412. Names of Towns and Small Islands are put In the Locative of the Place Where.

The Locative coincides in the Singular with the Genitive of the Second Declension, with the Dative of the First and Third. In the Plural, Dative, Locative, and Ablative coincide, and the Ablative is blended with the Locative in Syntax and in the Third Declension, often in form. (See 23, R. 1.)

Locative	S. 1. <b>Rōmae</b> ( <b>Rōmāi</b> )	Pl. 1. <b>Athēnis</b>
	2. <b>Corinthi</b>	2. <b>Delphis</b>
	3. <b>Sulmōni(e)</b>	3. <b>Cūribus</b> .

**Ut Rōmae consulēs sic Karthāgini** (*Carthāgine*) **quotannis bini rēgēs creābantur.** **NEP.** *As at Rome (two) consuls, so in Carthage two kings, were created yearly.*

**Artemisia nōbile fēcit Halicarnassi sepulcrum.** **CIC.** *Artemisia built a famous sepulchre at Halicarnassus.*

**Tarquinius Superbus mortuus est Cūmis.** **LIV.** *Tarquin the Overbearing died at Cumae.*

**Timotheus Lesbī vixit.** **NEP.** *Timotheus lived in Lesbos.*

**REMARKS.**—1. Other locative forms are, **domi**, *at home*, (Genitive, **domūs**) **humī**, *on the ground*, and also **belli** and **militiae**, in combination with **domi**:

**Parvi sunt foris arma nisi est consilium d o m i.** **CIC.** *Of little value are arms abroad unless there is wisdom at home.*

**Humī jacēre**, *to lie on the ground.*

**Humī prōsternere**, *to throw flat on the ground.*

**Domī militiaeque, belli domique**, *in peace and in war, in war and in peace, at home and in the field.*

**Rūri**, *in the country*, is also generally considered a locative form (but **rure meō**, *on my farm*).

On **animi**, see 374, R. 3.

2. Appositions are put in the Ablative commonly with **in**:

**Militēs Albae constitērunt in urbe opportūnā**, *the soldiers halted at Alba, a conveniently situated town.*

**Archias Antiochiaē nātus est celebri quondam urbe**, *Archias was born at Antioch, once a populous city.*

**Neāpoli in celeberrimō oppidō**, *at Naples, a very populous town—in the populous, celebrated town of Naples.*

When **urbe**, *city*, **oppidō**, *town*, or **insulā**, *island*, precedes, the preposition is always employed:

**In urbe Rōmā**, *in the city (of) Rome.*

**In oppidō Neāpoli**, *in the town of Naples.*

**In insulā Samō**, *in the island (of) Samos.*

3. **Domī** takes the Possessive Pronoun in the Genitive:

**Marcus Drusus occisus est domī suae**, *M. Drusus was killed at his own house.*

**Alco domi aliēnae**, *in a strange house.*

**Metuis ut domi meae cūrētur diligenter.** **TER.** *You fear that she will not be carefully nursed in my house; otherwise, in domō castā, in a pure house.*

**In domō Periclis**, *in the house(hold) of Pericles.*

**In domō**, *in the house (not, at home).*

## PREPOSITIONS.

413. The Prepositions are local adverbs, which serve to define more narrowly the local ideas of the cases. The only cases that convey local ideas are the Accusative and Ablative. The Accusative, as the case of the Direct Object, represents the relation *whither?* the Ablative represents the relations *whence?* and *where?*

REMARKS.—1. In Verbs of Motion, the result of the motion is often considered as Rest in a place (where):

**Pōnere in locō,** *to put in a place.*

2. In Verbs of Rest, the Rest is sometimes conceived as the Result of motion (whither):

**Habēre in potestātem,** *to have (got) in (to) one's power.*

**In carcerem asservāre,** *to keep in jail.*

3. Prepositions derive their name from the fact that they are prefixed in composition. Many of the Latin prepositions are not used in composition, and these may be called improper prepositions. The prefixes **amb-** (**am-** **an-**), **dis** (**dī**), **red-** (**re-**) **sēd-** (**sē-**) and **vē-** are sometimes called inseparable prepositions.

414. *Position of the Preposition.* The Preposition generally precedes the case.

REMARKS.—1. **Versus**, *-ward*, and **tēnus**, *as far as*, are postpositive, and so is **cum**, *with*, in combination with the Personal Pronouns and Relative:

**Mēcum,** *with me.*

**Nec tēcum possum vivere nec sine te.** MART. (391.)

**Sēcum,** *with oneself.*

**Quōcum** (also **quicūcum**), *with whom* (likewise, **cum quō**).

**Quibuscum,** *with whom, wherewith* (also, **cum quibus**).

2. Other prepositions are postponed chiefly after the relative: **quem contrā**, *against whom*; **quōs inter**, *among whom*; **quō dē**, *from whom*.

3. Poets and affected writers are very free in putting the Preposition after its case.

415. The Preposition is often put between the Attribute and the Case:

**Magnō cum metū,** *with great fear.*

Whereas the Genitive and other forms of the Attribute and connecting particles are often put between the Preposition and its case:

**Post vērō Sullae victōriam,** *but after Sulla's victory.*

REMARK.—Especially to be noted is the position of **per**, *through* (by), in adjurations: **Lydīa dīc per omnēs Tē deōs ōrō**, HOR. *Lydia, tell, by all the gods, I pray thee.*

**416. Repetition and Omission of the Preposition.**—With different words which stand in the same connection, the Preposition is repeated, when the Preposition is emphatic, or the individual words are to be distinguished; so always after *et*—*et, nec*—*nec: et ex urbe et ex agris*, both from (the) city and from (the) country. Otherwise it is omitted; so always with *que*.

*Clōdīus ā Milōne candidātō consulātus jugulātus est.* VELL. *Clodius was killed by Milo, a candidate for the consulship.*

*Cimōn in eandem invidiam incidit (in) quam pater suus.* NEP. (296).

*Discite sārārī per quem (= per eum per quem) didicistis amāre.* OV. (403).

REMARK.—Several Prepositions, such as *contrā*, on the other hand, *extrā*, outside, *infṛā*, below, *supṛā*, above, *ultrā*, beyond, are used also as adverbs without a case:

*Ilīacōs intrā mūrōs peccātur et extrā.* HOR. *Inside the walls of Ilium sin is wrought, and outside (too).*

Otherwise two Prepositions cannot be used with one case: *For and against Scipio*, *Prō Scipiōne et adversus Scipiōnem.* *Before and after the battle*, *ante pugnam et post eam.*

# I.—PREPOSITIONS CONSTRUED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

**417. Prepositions construed with the Accusative are:**

<i>ante</i> ,	<i>apud</i> ,	<i>ad</i> ,	<i>adversus</i> ,
<i>circum</i> ,	<i>circā</i> ,	<i>citrā</i> ,	<i>cis</i> ,
<i>ergā</i> ,	<i>contrā</i> ,	<i>inter</i> ,	<i>extrā</i> ,
<i>infṛā</i> ,	<i>intrā</i> ,	<i>juxtā</i> ,	<i>ob</i> ,
<i>pene</i> ,	<i>pōne</i> ,	<i>post</i> and	<i>praeter</i> ,
<i>prope</i> ,	<i>propter</i> ,	<i>per</i> ,	<i>secundum</i> ,
<i>supṛā</i> ,	<i>versus</i> ,	<i>ultrā</i> ,	<i>trans</i> .

REMARKS.—1. To these we may add *clam*, unknown to, hidden from (*ocl-o, oc-cul-o*) which is commonly used as an adverb *secretly* and according to some MSS. is construed with the Ablative as well as with the Accusative.

2. The detailed consideration of the Prepositions belongs to the Dictionary.

<i>Ad</i> , at, to (comp. <i>ad-do</i> , I put to), up to—opposed to <i>Ab</i> .	<i>Circum</i> , } <i>Circā</i> , } around, about.
<i>Adversus</i> , } [turned to], towards, <i>Adversum</i> , } over against, against.	<i>Circiter</i> , about (seldom of place, sometimes of time, chiefly with numerals).
<i>Ante</i> [over against, facing], before (most frequently of time).	<i>Cis</i> , } this side, short of, correlative <i>Citrā</i> , } of <i>ultrā</i> .
<i>Apud</i> (chiefly of persons), at, near, in the presence of (official), with (French, <i>chez</i> ), at the house of, in the view of.	<i>Contrā</i> (= <i>cum</i> + <i>tra</i> ), opposite to, over against, opposed to, against. <i>Ergā</i> , opposite, towards, seldom of



- place; generally of friendly relations.
- Extrā**, *without, outside of, beside*, (opposed to **intrā**).
- Infrā**, *beneath, lower down, later*.
- Inter**, *between* (reaching from one to the other), *among, during*.
- Intrā**, *within*.
- Juxtā** [*adjoining*], *hard by, near, next to*.
- Ob** (*over against, opposite to*), *right before, with a view to, for*.
- Penes**, *with = in the hands of*.
- Penes eum est potestās**, *The power lies with him.* [to, by.
- Per** (*along, through, by way of, owing*
- Pōne**, *behind* (rare).
- Post**, *behind, after*.
- Praeter**, *on before, past, beyond, besides, contrary to*.
- Prope**, *near*.
- Propter**, *near, on account of*.
- Secundum** [*following*], *next to, immediately behind, after, along, according to*.
- Suprā**, *above, higher up (earlier)*.
- Trans**, *on the other side, beyond, across*.
- Ultrā**, *on that side, beyond* (opp. to **citrā**).
- Versus**, *-ward* (always postponed).
- Rōmam versus**, *Romeward*.

## II.—PREPOSITIONS CONSTRUED WITH THE ABLATIVE.

418. Prepositions construed with the Ablative are:

- Ā**, **ab**, and **abs**, *off, of, from, by* (opposed to **ad**).
- Before vowels and **h**, **ab**; before consonants, **ā** or **ab**; **abs**, used chiefly before **tē**, *thee*.
- Absque** (*off*), *without* (antiquated).
- Cōram**, *face to face with, in the presence of* (accidental).
- Cum**, *with*.
- Dē**, *down from, from, of = about*.
- Ex**, **Ē**, *out of, from* (opposed to **in**).
- Before vowels and consonants, **ex** (so chiefly in the model period); before consonants, **ē**.
- Prae**, *in front of, side by side with, for* (preventive cause).
- Prō**, *before, for*.
- Sine**, *without*, opposed to **cum**.
- Tenus** (*to the extent of*), *as far as* (occasionally with the Genitive).

REMARK.—In poetry and later prose **palam**, *openly*, takes the Ablative; **procul**, *afar*, follows the analogy of **ab**; **simul**, *at the same time*, that of **cum**.

## III.—PREPOSITIONS CONSTRUED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE.

419. Prepositions construed with the Accusative and Ablative are:

	ACCUSATIVE.	ABLATIVE.
<b>In</b> , <i>in</i> ,	<i>into, for</i> (purpose),	<i>in</i> .
<b>Sub</b> , <i>under</i> ,	<i>about</i> (of time),	<i>about</i> (of time) [rarely].
<b>Super</b> , <i>over</i> ,	<i>over, above,</i>	<i>about = dē.</i>
	<i>over and above,</i>	<i>over</i> [in prose rarely].
<b>Subter</b> , <i>under</i> ,	<i>under, beneath,</i>	<i>under, beneath</i> [rarely].

## THE INFINITIVE AS A SUBSTANTIVE.

420. The Infinitive is the substantive form of the verb.

REMARK.—The Infinitive differs from a verbal substantive, in that it retains the adverbial attribute, the designations of voice and time, and the regimen of the verb :

*Amāre, to love ; valdē amāre, to love hugely ; amārī, to be loved ; amāvīsse, to have loved ; amāre aliquem, to love a man ; nocēre alicui, to hurt a man.*

But the great claim of the Infinitive to be considered a verb lies in the involution of predicate and subject. Like the finite verb, the Infinitive involves predicate and subject ; but the subject is indefinite and the predication is dependent.

421. The Infinitive, when it stands alone, involves an indefinite Accusative Subject, and the Predicate of that Subject is, of course, in the Accusative Case.

*Rēgem esse, To be king.*

*Bonum esse, To be good.*

So in the paradigm of the verb :

*Amātūrum esse, To be about to love.*

REMARK.—On the Nominative with the Infinitive by Attraction, see 528.

In consequence of this double nature, the Infinitive may be used as a substantive or as a verb.

422. The Infinitive, as a Noun, is used regularly in two cases only—Nominative and Accusative. In the other cases its place is supplied by the Gerund and the Ablative Supine.

## THE INFINITIVE AS A SUBJECT.

423. The Infinitive, as a Subject, is treated as a neuter substantive :

*Errāre hūmānum est. To err is human (that man should err is human), Incipere multō est quam impetrāre facilius. PLAUT. Beginning is much easier (work) than winning.*

*Nōn tam turpe fuit vincī quam contendisse decōrum est. Ov. (275.)*

*Esse bonam facile est quum quod vetet esse remōtum est. Ov. Be a good woman—'tis easy when what would prevent it is distant.*

## THE INFINITIVE AS AN OBJECT.

424. The Infinitive is used as the Object of Verbs of Creation, commonly known as Auxiliary Verbs.

These Verbs *help* the Infinitive into existence.

Such verbs denote Will, Power, Duty, Habit, Inclination, Resolve, Continuance, End, and the like, with their opposites :

**Ēmori cupio.** TER. *I want to die.*

**Cato esse quam vidēri bonus mālēbat.** SALL. *Cato preferred being (good) to seeming good.*

**Et precor ut possim tūtius esse miser.** OV. *And I pray that I may be more safely wretched.*

**Vincere scis, Hannibal; victōriā ūti nō scis.** LIV. *How to win victory, you know, Hannibal; how to make use of victory, you know not.*

**Qui mori didicit, servire dēdidicit.** SEN. *He who has learned to die has unlearned to be a slave.*

**Maledictis dēterrere nē scribat parat.** TER. *He is preparing (trying) to frighten (him) from writing, by abuse.*

**So parātus,** ready.

**Qui mentiri solet, pōjerare consuēvit.** CIC. *He who is wont to lie is accustomed to swear falsely.*

**Vulnera quae fēcit dēbuit ipse pati.** OV. *The wounds he gave he should himself have suffered.*

**Vereor tē laudāre praesentem.** CIC. *I feel a delicacy about praising you to your face.*

**Rēligiōnum animum nōdis exsolvere pergo.** LUCR. *I go on to loose the spirit from the bonds of superstitious creeds.*

**Atque ut vivāmus vivere dēsinimus.** MART. *And that we may live, we cease to live.*

**So habeo,** *I have* (it in my power).

**Tantum habeo pollicēri mē tibi cumulātē satisfactūrum.** CIC. *So much I can promise that I will give you abundant satisfaction.*

REMARKS.—1. Notice that *coepti*, *I have begun*, and *dēsino*, *I cease*, have Passive Perfects with Passive Infinitives :

**Athēniensēs undique premi bellō sunt coepti.** NEP. *The Athenians began to feel the pressure of war on (from) all sides.*

**Veterēs ōrātiōnēs legi sunt dēsitaē.** CIC. *The old speeches have ceased to be read*  
When the Passives are really Reflexives or Neuter, the active forms may be used.

2. Verbs of Will and Desire take *ut* as well as the Inf. So regularly *opto*, *I choose*.

3. Verbs which denote Hope and Promise take the Accusative and Future Infinitive (occasionally as in English) :

**Spēro mē hōc adeptūrum esse,** *I hope to (that I shall) obtain this.*

**Prōmittēbat sē ventūrum esse,** *he kept promising that he would come (to come).*

**Doceo, I teach, jubeo, I bid, veto, I forbid, sino, I let,** take the Infinitive as a Second Accusative :

**Dionysius nē collum tonsōri committeret tondēre filiās suās docuit.** CIC. *Dionysius, to keep from trusting his neck to a barber, taught his daughters to shave (taught them shaving).*

**Ipse jubet mortis tē meminisse** DEUS. MART. (375.)

**Vitae summa brevis spem nōs vetat incohāre longam.** HOR. *Life's brief sum forbids us open (a) long (account with) hope.*

**Nēu Mēdōs sinās equitāre inultōs.** HOR. *Nor let the Median ride and ride unpunished.*

4. **POETICAL USES OF THE INFINITIVE:** The poets use the Infinitive as an Object with great freedom:

1.) After many verbs which are not auxiliary in Prose:

**Ardet ruere.** OV. *He glows (he burns) to rush.*

**Quid sit futurum crās fuge quaerere.** HOR. *What will be to-morrow, fly the question.*

**Parce tuum vātem sceleris damnāre, Cupidō.** OV. (377.)

2.) For the Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive, see 429, R. 4.

3.) For the Accusative of the Gerundive:

**Quem virum aut hērōa lyrā vel ācri tibiā sūmēs celebrāre, Clīō?** HOR. *What man or hero will thou undertake to celebrate on harp or shrilly flute, O Clío? (sūmēs celebrandum.)*

But dare is used with the Infīn. even in prose, in familiar phrases: **dare bibere**, to give to drink.

4.) For **ut**, of purpose; **ad** with the Gerund, or Gerundive; or Supine:

**Tunc ego: nōn oculōs sed ventrem pascere vēnī.** MART. *Then I: I'm come to feed my belly, not my eyes.*

**Semper in Ōceanum mittit mē quaerere gemmās.** PROP. *She is always sending me to the ocean to look for pearls.*

5.) For the Supine in -ū, **ad** with Gerund, or the like:

**Rōma capi facilis.** LUCAN. *Rome is easy to be taken, to take (facile capitur).*

6.) In fine, the Infinitive is often used because the word or phrase is considered an equivalent to a verb of creation. In all these points the Post-republican prose follows poetry more or less closely.

## INFINITIVE AS A PREDICATE.

425. The Infinitive, as a verbal Substantive, may be used as a Predicate after the copula **esse**, *to be*, and the like:

**Doctō hominī et ērudītō vivere est cōgitāre.** CIC. *To a learned and cultivated man to live is to think.*

## GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

426. The other cases of the Infinitive are supplied by the Gerund. With Prepositions, the Gerund, and not the Infinitive, is employed.

**REMARK.**—Of course the Infinitive may be quoted as an abstract notion:

**Multum interest inter "dare" et "accipere."** SEN. *There is a vast difference between "Give" and "Receive."*

**NOM. Legere difficile est,** *reading (to read) is hard to do.*

**GEN. Ars legendī,** *the art of reading.*

**Puer studiōsus est legendī,** *the boy is zealous of reading.*

**DAT. Puer operam dat legendō,** *the boy devotes himself to reading.*

ACC. **Puer cupit legere**, *the boy is desirous to read.*

**Puer prōpensus est ad legendum**, *the boy has a bent toward reading.*

ABL. **Puer discit legendō**, *the boy learns by reading.*

**427.** As a verbal form, the Gerund, like the Infinitive, takes the same case as the verb.

**Studium obtemperandi lēgibus.** *Zeal for obedience to the laws.*

REMARKS.—1. The Gerund is the Substantive of the Gerundive. (243, R. 1.) The signification of necessity comes mainly from its use as a predicate. Verbal Nouns are Active or Passive according to the point of view. (Compare 361.) Worthy of note is the fact that the leading form of the Greek Active Infinitive is ultimately a Present Participle Passive.

2. Gerundive and Perfect Participle Passive are often translated alike; but in the one case the action is progressive or prospective, in the other it is completed.

**Caesare interficiendō Brūtus et Cassius patriae libertatēm restituere cōnātī sunt.** *By the murder of Caesar (by murdering Caesar), Brutus and Cassius endeavored to restore their country's freedom to her.*

**Caesare interfectō, Brūtus et Cassius patriae libertatē nōn restituērunt.** *By murdering Caesar, Brutus and Cassius did not restore their country's freedom to her.*

**428. Gerundive for Gerund.**—Instead of the Gerund, with an Accusative Object, the object is generally put in the case of the Gerund, with the Gerundive as an Attribute.

GEN. **Plācandi Deī**, *of appeasing God.*

DAT. **Plācandō Deō**, *for appeasing God.*

ABL. **Plācandō Deō**, *by appeasing God.*

In the model period this construction is invariably employed with Prepositions.

**Ad plācandōs Deōs**, *for appeasing the gods.*

**In plācandis Deīs**, *in appeasing the gods.*

REMARKS.—1. It is impossible to make a distinction between the Gerund and the Gerundive Form. They are often used side by side, where there can be no difference. LIV. xxi. 5; xxv. 40; xxviii. 37; xxx. 26. The preference for the Gerundive is of a piece with the use of the Perf. Pass. Participle in preference to an Abstract Noun. (357, R. 2.)

2. Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns are not attracted: **studium agendī aliquid**, *desire of doing something*; **cupiditās plūra habendī**, *greed for having more*. But when the Neuter Adjective has become a substantive (195, R. 2), the Gerundive form may be used: **modus investigandī vērī**, *the method of investigating the truth*.

3. The Gerundive can be formed only from Transitive Verbs, the Gerund from any (243, R. 2). Hence the impersonal form must be used with all verbs that do not take the Accusative.

**Valētūdini parcendum est**, *the health must be spared.*

EXCEPTIONS.—**Ūtendus**, *to be used*; **frueudus**, *to be enjoyed*; **potiendus**, *to be possessed*; **fungendus**, *to be discharged*; **vescendus**, *to be eaten* (405); which, however, are

used only \* in the oblique cases. Further, *medendus*, to be healed; *paenitendus*, to be regretted.

*Expetuntur divitiae ad perfruendās voluptatēs.* CIC. *Riches are sought for the enjoyment of pleasures.* But:

*Utendum est aetate, citō pede lābitur aetās.* OV. *Life's season is to be enjoyed, swift-footed glides that season.*

The Impersonal Nominative with the Accus. is rare and antiquated:

*Aeternās quoniam paenās in morte timendum est.* LUCR. *Since we must fear eternal punishments in death.*

## GENITIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

429. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after substantives and adjectives which require a complement:

*Sapientia ars vivendī putanda est.* CIC. *Philosophy is to be considered the art of living.*

*Et propter vitam vivendī perdere causas.* JUV. *And on account of life, to lose the reasons for living.*

*Raucaque garrulitās studiumque immāne loquendī.* OV. *And hoarse chattiness, and a monstrous love of talking.*

*Triste est ipsum nōmen carendī.* CIC. *Dismal is the mere word "carēre" (go without).*

*Nōn est plācandī spēs mihi nulla Deī.* OV. *I am not without hope of appeasing God.*

*Ignōrant cupidī maledicendī plūs invidiam quam convīcium posse.* QUINT. *Those who are eager to abuse know not that envy has more power than billingsgate.*

*Titus equitandī peritissimus fuit.* SUET. *Titus was exceedingly skillful in riding.*

*Neuter suī prōtegendī corporis memor erat.* LIV. *Neither thought of shielding his own body.*

*Qui hīc mōs obsidendī viās et virōs aliēnōs appellandī?* LIV. *What sort of way is this of blocking up the streets and calling upon other women's husbands?*

*Summa ēlūdendī occāsio est mihi nunc senēs.* TER. *I have a tip-top chance to fool the old folks now.*

REMARKS.—1. As *meī, tuī, suī, nōstri, vestri*, are, in their origin, neuter singulars, from *meum, my being*; *tuum, thy being*; *suum, one's being*, etc., the Gerundive is put in the same form: *conservandī suī, of preserving themselves*; *vestri adhortandī, of exhorting you*.

*Cōpia plācandī sit modo parva tuī.* OV. *Let (me) only have a slight chance of trying to appease you (feminine).*

Similar constructions are also found with other words: *exemplōrum ēligendī potestās, power of choosing examples.*

\* In CIC. Fin. 1, 1, 3, *fruenda* (Nom.) is used for the sake of *paranda*.

**Agitur utrum Antōniō facultās dētur agrōrum suis latrōnibus condōnandi.** CIO. *The question is whether Antony shall be empowered to give away lands to his pet highwaymen.*

2. Very common is **causā** (with the Gen. of Gerund and Gerundive), *for the sake of*, to express design: **dolōrum effugiendōrum causā**, *for the sake of escaping sufferings*; but sometimes the Genitive alone is used:

**Lepidus arma cōpit libertātis subvertendae.** SALL. *Lepidus took up arms as a matter of (for the purpose of) subverting freedom.*

More commonly **ad**, rarely **ob**. See 433.

**Esse** with this Genitive may be translated by *serve to*.

**Omnia discrimina tālia concordiae minuendae sunt.** LIV. *All such distinctions are matters of (belong to) the diminishing of concord (serve to diminish concord).*

Comp. CAES. B. G. v. 8: **Nāvēs quās sui quisque commodi fecerat.** *Ships which each one had (had) made (as a matter of) personal convenience.*

3. **Tempus est, it is (high) time**; **consilium est, it is my (your, his) plan**; and a few others, may be used with the Infinitive: **Tempus abire tibi est, It is time for you to go away.**

But when **tempus** is used in the sense of *season* ("a time to weep and a time to laugh"), the Gerund, or Gerundive, is retained:

**Lysander tempus rei gerendae nō dimisit.** XEP. *Lysander did not let the opportunity of action slip.*

4. The poets are very free in the use of the Infinitive for the Genitive of the Gerund, inasmuch as they construe the Adjective or Substantive like the Cognate Verb.

(At) **sēcūra quies et nēscia fallere (= quae nēsciat fallere) vita.** VERG. *Quiet without a care, and a life that knoweth not how to disappoint (ignorant of disappointment).*

## DATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

430. The Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after words which imply capacity and adaptation:

**Aqua nitrōsa ūtilis est bibendō.** PLIN. *Alkaline water is good for drinking (to drink).*

**Lignum āridum māteria est idōnea ēliciendis ignibus.** SEN. *Dry wood is a fit substance for striking fire (drawing out sparks).*

**Referundae ego habeo linguam nātam grātiaē.** PLAUT. *I have a tongue that's born for showing thankfulness.*

Rarer is the Dative in combination with the Accusative.

**Consul plācandis dīs dat operam.** LIV. *The consul does his endeavor to appease the gods.*

Especially to be noticed is the Dative with **esse**, and in names of Boards:

**Solvendō civitatēs nōn erant.** CIO. *The communities were not equal to (ready for) payment (were not solvent).*

**Sapiens virēs suās nōvit, scit sē esse onerī ferendō.** SEN. *The wise man is acquainted with his own strength; he knows that he is (equal) to bearing the burden.*

**Decemviri lēgibus scribundis, Decemvirs for (charged with) drawing up laws.**

**REMARK.**—Later writers treat the Dative of the Gerund or Gerundive as if equivalent to *ad*.

### ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUNDIVE.

**431.** The Gerundive is used in the Accusative of the Object to be Effected, after such Verbs as Giving and Taking, Sending and Leaving.

**Diviti homini id aurum servandum dedit. PLAUT.** *He gave that gold to a rich man to keep.*

**Conon muros reficiendos curat. NEP.** *Conon has the walls rebuilt.*

**Patriam diripiendam relinquimus. CIC.** *We leave our country to be plundered.*

**Carvilius aedem faciendam locavit. LIV.** *Carvilius let the (contract of) building the temple.*

Of course the Passive form has the Nominative :

**Filius Philippi Demetrius ad patrem reduendus legatis datus est. LIV.** *The son of Philip, Demetrius, was given to the envoys to be taken back to his father.*

### ABLATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

**432.** The Ablative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used as the Ablative of Means and Cause, seldom as the Ablative of Manner or Circumstance.

**Unus homo nobis cunctando restituit rem. ENNIUS.** *One man by lingering raised our cause again.*

**Cede repugnantī, cedendo victor abibis. OV.** *Yield to her when she resists ; you'll come off victor by yielding.*

**Quid dignos opus est graphis lassare tenendos ? OV. (390, R.)**

**Exercendo quotidie milite hostem opperisbatur. LIV.** *Drilling the soldiers daily he waited for the enemy.*

Occasionally with the Comparative.

### PREPOSITIONS WITH THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

**433.** The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive takes the prepositions *ad* and *inter*, seldom *ante*, *circā*, *in*, *ob*.

**Nulla res tantum ad dicendum proficit quantum scriptio. CIC.** *Nothing is as profitable for speaking as writing.*



**Atticus philosophorum praeceptis ad vitam agendam nōn ad ostentationem utēbatur.** NEP. *Atticus made use of the precepts of philosophers for the conduct of life, not for display.*

**Inter spoliandum corpus hostis expiravit.** LIV. *While in the act of stripping the body of the enemy he gave up the ghost.*

**434.** The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive takes the prepositions **ab, de, ex**, often **in**, seldom **cum** and **pro**, and **sine** never.

**Prohibenda maximē est ira in puniendō.** CIC. *Especially to be forbidden is anger in punishing.*

**Brūtus in liberandā patriā est interfectus.** CIC. *Brutus was slain in the effort to free his country.*

**Philosophi in iis ipsis libris quōs scribunt de contemnendā gloriā suā nōmina inscribunt.** CIC. (384, R. 1.)

**Ex discendō capimus voluptatem.** CIC. *We receive pleasure from learning.*

#### SUPINE.

**435.** The Supine is a Verbal Noun, which appears only in the Accusative and Ablative cases.

#### THE ACCUSATIVE SUPINE.

**436.** The Accusative Supine (Supine in **-um**) is used chiefly after Verbs of Motion:

**Galli gallinacei cum sōle eunt cubitum.** PLIN. *Cocks go to roost at sunset.*

**Spectātum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsae.** OV. *They come to see the show, they come to be themselves a show.*

**Stultitia est vñātum dūcere invitās canēs.** PLAUT. *'Tis foolishness to take unwilling dogs a-hunting.*

**Hostis est uxōr invitā quae ad virum nuptum datur.** PLAUT. (344, R. 1.)

REMARKS.—1. The Accusative Supine may take an object, but the construction is not very common:

**Hannibal patriam dēfensum** (more usual: **ad dēfendendam patriam**) **revocātus est.** NEP. *Hannibal was recalled to defend his country.*

2. Especially common is the use of the Supine after the verb **ire**, to go:

**Cūr tē is perditum?** TER. *Why are you going to ruin yourself?*

**Turpissimi viri bonōrum praemia streptum eunt.** SALL. *The scoundrels are going to take away by force the rewards of the better classes.*

The Future Infinitive Passive is actually made up of the Passive Infinitive of **ire**, **to go**, **iri**, and the Supine:

**Dicunt reum damnatum iri.** *They say that the defendant will be condemned, (that people are going (iri from itur, 199. R. 1.), that there is a movement, to condemn the accused).*  
 The consciousness of this is lost, as is shown by the Nominative (528).

**Reus damnatum iri vidēbatur,** QUINT. *The accused seemed to be about to be condemned.*

### THE ABLATIVE SUPINE.

437. The Ablative Supine (Supine in -ū) is used chiefly with Adjectives, as the Ablative of the Point of View From Which :

**Mirabile dictū,** *Wonderful (in the telling) to tell, visū, to behold.*

**Hoc dictū quam rē facilius est.** LIV. *This is easier in the saying than in the fact (easier said than done).*

REMARKS.—1. The use of the Ablative Supine is confined to a few verbs, chiefly : **dictū, to tell ; factū, to do ; auditū, to hear ; visū, to see ; cognitū, to know.** Authors vary much. The adjectives generally denote Ease or Difficulty, Pleasure or Displeasure, Right or Wrong.

2. **Ad,** with the Gerundive, is often used instead :

**Cibus facillimus ad concoquendum,** *food (that is) very easy to digest.*

The Infinitive, **facilis concoqui,** is poetical.

3. The local use of the Ablative Supine is very rare :

**Vilius primus cubitū surgat, postrēmus cubitum eat.** CATO. *The steward must be the first to get out of bed, the last to go to bed.*

4. The Supine in -ū never takes an object.

### PARTICIPLE.

438. The Participle may be used as a Substantive, but even then generally retains something of its predicative nature.

**Nihil est magnum somniantī.** CIC. *Nothing is great to a dreamer (to a man, when he is dreaming).*

**Rēgia, crēde mihi, rēs est succurrere lapsis.** OV. *It is a kingly thing, believe me (to run to catch those who have slipped), to succor the fallen.*

REMARKS.—1. The Attribute of the Participle, employed as a Substantive, is generally in the adverbial form : **rectē facta, right actions ; facētē dictum, a witty remark.**

2. Especially to be noted is the Ablative of the Participle without a Substantive : **auditō, it having been heard ; compertō, it having been found out.**

So also an adjective used predicatively : the Substantive is commonly supplied by a sentence. The construction is of limited use.

**Alexander auditō Dārēm mōvisse ab Ecabatis fugientem insequi pergit.** CURT. *Alexander, (it) having (been) heard that Darius had decamped from Ecabata, proceeds to follow him up on his flight.*

439. The Participle, as an Adjective, often modifies its verbal nature, so as to be characteristic :

**Epaminōndās erat temporibus sapienter ūtens,** *Epaminondas was a man who used to use opportunities wisely (= is qui ūteretur).*

**REMARK.**—Especial attention is called to the parallelism of the Participle or Adjective with the Relative and Subjunctive:

*Rēs parva dictū, sed quae studiis in magnum certāmen excesserit.* LIV. *A small thing to mention, but one which, by the excitement of the parties, terminated in a great contest.*

#### ADVERB.

440. 1. The Predicate may be qualified by an Adverb.

2. Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs, and sometimes substantives, when they express or imply verbal or adjective relations:

*Male vivit, he lives ill; bene est, it is well; ferē omnēs, almost all; nimis saepe, too often; admodum adulescens, a mere youth, quite a youth; lātē rēx (VERG.), wide-ruling; bis consul, twice consul; duo simul bella, two simultaneous wars.*

**REMARK.**—The form of the Adverb does not admit of any further inflection, and therefore the Adverb requires no rules of Syntax except as to its position.

441. *Position of the Adverb.*—Adverbs are commonly put next to their verb, and before it when it ends the sentence, and immediately before their adjective or adverb.

*Injūstē facit, he acts unwisely.*

*Admodum pulcher, handsome to a degree, very handsome.*

*Valdē diligenter, very carefully.*

Exceptions occur chiefly in rhetorical passages, in which great stress is laid on the Adverb, or in poetry:

*Ūram bene Ennius initium dixit insāniae, Well did Ennius call anger the beginning of madness.*

*Vixit dum vixit bene.* TER. *He lived while he lived (and lived) well.*

One class of Adverbs demands special notice—the Negatives.

#### NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

442. There are two original negatives in Latin, **Nē** and **Haud** (*haut, hau*). From **nē** is derived **nōn** (*nē-oinom (ūnum), no-whit, not*). **Nē** is used chiefly in compounds, or with the Imperative and Optative Subjunctive. The old use appears in **nē—quidem**. **Nōn** is used with the Indicative and Potential Subjunctive; **haud**, mainly with Adjectives and Adverbs.

## NEGATIVE OF THE INDICATIVE.

443. 1. The regular Negative of the Indicative and of the Potential Subjunctive is **nōn**, the absolute *not*.

**Quem amat, amat; quem nōn amat, nōn amat,** *Whom he likes, he likes; whom he does not like, he does not like.*

**Nōn ausim,** *I should not venture.*

REMARK.—**Nōn** as the emphatic, specific negative may negative anything. (See 263, R.)

2. **Haud** in model prose is used chiefly with Adjectives and Adverbs: **haud magnus**, *not great*; **haud male**, *not badly*.

**Haud scio** (**Hauscio**), in **haud scio an**, is the chief exception (459, R.)

In antitheses **nōn** is used, and not **haud**:

**Nōn est vivere sed valēre vita.** MARTIAL. *Not living, but being well, is life.*

REMARK.—Other negative expressions are: **haudquāquam**, **nēquāquam**, **neutiquam**, *by no means*; **nihil**, *nothing*. ("Adam, with such counsel *nothing* swayed.") On **nullus**, see 304, R. 2.

444. *Subdivision of the Negative.*—A general negative may be subdivided by **neque**—**neque**, as well as by **aut**—**aut**, or strengthened by **nē**—**quidem**, *not even*:

**Nihil unquam neque insolens neque glōriōsum ex ore Timoleontis processit.** NEP. *Nothing insolent or boastful ever came out of the mouth of Timoleon.*

**Consciōrum nēmo aut latuit aut fugit.** LIV. *Of the accomplices no one either hid or fled.*

**Nunquam Scipiōnem nē minimā quidem rē offendi.** CIC. *I never wounded Scipio's feelings, no, not even in the slightest matter.*

("I will give no thousand crowns *neither*."—SHAKES.)

REMARK.—In the same way **nego**, *I say no*, is continued by **neque**—**neque** (**nec**—**nec**):

**Negant nec virtūtēs nec vitia crēscere.** CIC. *They deny that either virtues or vices increase.*

445. *Negative Combinations.*—In English, we say either *no one ever*, or, *never any one*; *nothing ever*, or, *never anything*; in Latin, the former turn is invariably used: **nēmo unquam**, *no one ever*:

**Verrēs nihil unquam fēcit sine aliquō quaestū.** CIC. *Verres never did anything without some profit or other.*

REMARK.—*No one yet* is **nōndum quisquam**.

**446. Nego** (*I say no, I deny*) is commonly used instead of **dico nōn**, *I say—not*.

**Negant quemquam virum bonum esse nisi sapientem.** CIC. *They say that no one is a good man except the sage.*

REMARK.—The positive (**ajō**, *I say*) is sometimes to be supplied for a subsequent clause. CÆS. B. G. i. 19. The same thing happens with the other negatives.

### POSITION OF THE NEGATIVE.

**447.** The Negative naturally belongs to the Predicate, and usually stands immediately before it, but may be placed before any emphatic word or combination of words :

**Potes nōn reverti.** SEN. *Possibly you may not return.*

**Nōn potes reverti,** *You cannot possibly return.*

**Saepe viri fallunt; tenerae nōn saepe puellae.** OV. *Often do men deceive; soft-hearted maidens not often.*

**Nōn omnis aetās, Lūde, lūdō convenit.** PLAUT. (346.)

REMARKS.—1. As the Copula **esse**, *to be*, is, strictly speaking, a Predicate, the Negative generally precedes it, contrary to the English idiom, except in contrasts. The difference in position can often be brought out only by stress of voice : **fēlix nōn erat**, *he wasn't happy*; **nōn fēlix erat**, *he was NOT happy, he was FAR FROM happy*.

2. **Nē—quidem** bestrides the emphatic word or emphatic group (444).

**448.** Two negatives in the same sentence destroy one another, and make an affirmative :

**Nōn nego,** *I do not deny (I admit).*

REMARKS.—1. **Nōn possum nōn**, *I cannot but, (I must).*

**Qui mortem in malis pōnit nōn potest eam nōn timēre.** CIC. *He who classes death among misfortunes cannot but (must) fear it.*

2. The double Negative is often stronger than the opposite Positive :

**Nōn indoctus**, *a highly-educated man*; **nōn sum nēscius**, *I am well aware*.

**Nōn indecōrō pulvere sordidī.** HOR. *Swart (soiled) with (no dis)honorable dust.*

**Nōn ignāra mali miseris succurrere discō.** VERG. *Not unacquainted (= but too well acquainted) with misfortune, I learn to succor the wretched.*

This figure, which has a very wide application, is called **Litotēs** (Λιτότης), or *Understatement*.

3. It follows from R. 2. that **nec nōn** is not simply equivalent to **et**, *and*: **nec** belongs to the sentence, **nōn** to the particular word :

**Nec hōc Zēno nōn vīdit.** CIC. *Nor did Zeno fail to see this.*

4. Of especial importance is the position of the Negative in the following combinations :

#### *Indefinite Affirmative.*

<b>nōnnihil,</b>	<i>somewhat;</i>
<b>nōnnēmo,</b>	<i>some one, some;</i>
<b>nōnnullī,</b>	<i>some people;</i>
<b>nōnnunquam,</b>	<i>sometimes;</i>
<b>nōnnusquam,</b>	<i>somewhere;</i>

#### *General Affirmative.*

<b>nihil nōn,</b>	<i>every thing;</i>
<b>nēmo nōn,</b>	<i>everybody;</i>
<b>nullī nōn,</b>	<i>all;</i>
<b>nunquam nōn,</b>	<i>always;</i>
<b>nusquam nōn,</b>	<i>everywhere.</i>

**In ipsā cūriā nōnnēmo hostis est.** CIC. *In the senate-house itself there are enemies (nēmo nōn hostis est, everybody is an enemy).*

**Nōn est placandī spēs mihi nulla.** DEF. OV. *I have some hope of appeasing God (nulla spēs nōn est, I have every hope).*

**Nēmo nōn didicisse māvult quam discere.** QUINT. *Everybody prefers having learned to learning.*

## NEGATIVE OF THE IMPERATIVE.

**449. Nē** is the Negative of the Imperative and of the Optative Subjunctive:

**Nē cēde malis.** VERG. *Yield not thou to misfortunes.*

**Nē transieris Hiberum.** LIV. *Do not cross the Ebro.*

**Nē vivam,** *May I cease to live.*

REMARK.—The Negative **nōn** is sometimes used instead of **nē**, when contrast is emphasized:

**Aut nōn tentāris aut perfice.** OV. *Either attempt not, or achieve.*

**450. Nē** is continued by **nēve** or **neu**:

**Nē illam vëndās neu mē perdās hominem amantem.** PLAUT. *Don't sell her, and don't ruin me, a fellow in love.*

## INCOMPLETE SENTENCE.

## INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

**451.** An interrogative sentence is necessarily incomplete. The answer is the complement.

**452.** A question may relate:

I. To the existence or non-existence of the Predicate: Predicate Question:

**Vivitne pater?** *Is my father alive?*

II. To some undetermined integrant of the sentence, such as Subject, Object, Adjective, Adverbial modifier: Nominal Question:

**Quis est?** *Who is it?* **Quid ais?** *What do you say?* **Quī hīc mōs?** *What sort of way is this?* **Cūr nōn discēdis?** *Why do you not depart?*

For a list of Interrogative Pronouns see 104.

REMARKS.—1. The second class requires no rules except as to mood (404).

2. The form of the question is often used to imply a negative opinion on the part of the speaker.

**Quid interest inter perjūrum et mendācēem ?** CIC. *What is the difference between a perjured man and a liar ?*

All questions of this kind are called *Rhetorical*.

**453.** Interrogative sentences are divided into *simple* and *compound* (disjunctive). *Am I?* (simple); *Am I, or am I not?* (disjunctive).

**REMARK.**—Strictly speaking, only the simple interrogative sentence belongs to this section; but for the sake of completeness, the whole subject will be treated here.

**454.** Interrogative sentences are further divided into *direct* and *indirect*, or *independent* and *dependent*. *Am I?* (direct); *He asks whether I am* (indirect).

### DIRECT SIMPLE QUESTIONS.

**455.** Direct simple questions sometimes have no interrogative sign. Such questions are chiefly passionate in their character, and serve to express Astonishment, Blame, Disgust.

**Infelix est Fabricius quod rūs suum fodit ?** SEN. *Fabricius is unhappy because he digs his own field?* (Impossible !)

**Heus, inquit, linguam vīs meam praeclūdere ?** PHAEDR. *Ho! ho! quoth he, you wish to shut my mouth, you do.* (You shall not.)

**Quod dicis tē nōn fēcisse, ego fēcī ?** QUINT. *Because you say you did not do it, I did?* (Absurd !)

**REMARK.**—When several questions follow in immediate succession, only the first generally takes the Interrogative Pronoun, or *-ne*. Repeated questioning is passionate.

**456. Interrogative Particles.**—**Ne** (enclitic) is always appended to the emphatic word, and generally serves to denote a question, without indicating the expectation of the speaker :

**Omnisne pecūnia solūta est ?** CIC. *Is ALL the money paid?*

**Estne omnis pecūnia solūta ?** *Is all the money paid?*

**REMARKS.**—1. *-ne* is originally a negative. Questioning a negative leans to the affirmative; and *-ne* is not always strictly impartial.

2. *-ne* sometimes cuts off a preceding *-s*, and shortens the long vowel of the same, and often drops its own *e*. **Viden ?** *Seest ?* **Tūn ?** *You ?*

**457. Nōne** expects the answer *Yes* :

**Nōne meministi ?** CIC. *Do you not remember?*

**Nōne is generōsissimus quī optimus ?** QUINT. *Is he not the truest gentleman who is the best man?*

So the other negatives with *-ne*: *nēmōne*, *nihilne*, and the like,

458. Num expects the answer *No* :

**Num quis hic alius praeter mē atque tē ? Nēmo est.** PLAUT. *Is any body here besides you and me ? No.*

**Num tibi quum faucēs ūrit sitis, aurea quaeris pōcula ?** HOR. *When thirst burns your throat for you, do you ask for golden cups ? [No.]*

459. **An (or)** belongs to the second part of a disjunctive question.

Sometimes, however, the first part of the disjunctive question is suppressed, or rather involved. The second alternative with **an** serves to urge the acceptance of the positive or negative proposition involved in the preceding statement. This abrupt form of question (*or, then*) is of frequent use in Remonstrance, Expostulation, Surprise, and Irony.

**Nōn manum abstinēs ? An tibi jam māvīs cerebrum dispergam hīc ?** TER. *Are you not going to keep your hands off ? Or would you rather have me scatter your brains over the place now ?*

(*Vir custōdit absens.*) (*My husband keeps guard, though absent.*)

(*Is it not so ?*) **An nēscīs longās rēgibus esse manūs ?** OV. *Or perhaps you do not know (you do not know, then) that kings have long hands (arms).*

REMARK.—Especially to be noted, in connection with **an**, are the phrases, **nēscio an**, **haud scio an**, *I do not know but*; **dubito an**, *I doubt, I doubt but = I am inclined to think*; which give a modest affirmation. Negative particles, added to these expressions, give a mild negation :

**Haud scio an ita sit.** CIC. *I do not know but it is so.*

**Haud scio an nulla senectūs beātior esse possit.** CIC. *I do not know but it is impossible for any old age to be happier.*

**Dubito an Thrasybūlum primum omnium pōnam.** NEP. *I doubt but I should (=I am inclined to think I should) put Thrasybulus first of all.*

So **forsitan**, *perhaps*, regularly with the Potential Subjunctive :

**Forsitan et Priami fuerint quae fāta requirās.** VERG. *Perhaps you may ask what was the fate of Priam, too.*

In later Latin **an** is used as a simple interrogative, and **nēscio an = nēscio num**.

## DIRECT DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.

460. Direct Disjunctive Questions have the following forms :

*First Clause.*

*Second and Subsequent Clauses.*

**utrum, whether,**

**an, (anne), or**

**utrumne,**

**an,**

**-ne,**

**an,**

\_\_\_\_\_

**an (anne),**

\_\_\_\_\_

**ne** (chiefly in indirect questions).



**Utrum** nēscis quam altē ascēderis, **an** id prō nihilō habēs? CIC. *Are you not aware how high you have mounted, or do you count that as nothing?*

**Vōsne** Lūcium Domitium **an** vōs Lūcius Domitius dēseruit? CAES. *Have you deserted Lucius Domitius, or has Lucius Domitius deserted you?*

**Eloquar** **an** sileam? VERG. *Shall I speak, or hold my peace?*

**Utrum** hōc tū parum meministi, **an** ego nōn satis intellexi, **an** mūtāsti sententiam? CIC. *Do you not remember this, or did I misunderstand you, or have you changed your view?*

**Sunt** haec tua verba **necne**? CIC. *Are these your words, or no?*

REMARK.—**Aut** (*or*), in questions, is not to be confounded with **an**. **Aut** gives another part of the same question, or another form of it (*or in other words*).

**Voluptās** meliōremne efficit aut laudābiliōrem virum? CIC. *Does pleasure make a better or more praiseworthy man?* (Answer: *neither*.)

**Tibi** ego **an** tū mihi servus es? PLAUT. *Am I slave to you or you to me—which?* (The MS. reading **aut** would expect the answer: *neither*).

461. In direct questions, *or not* is **annōn**, rarely **necne**; in indirect, **necne**, rarely **annōn**:

**Isne** est quem quaero, **an nōn**? *Is that the man I am looking for, or not?*

**Sitque** memor nōstri **necne**, referte mihi. OV. (195, R. 7.)

REMARK.—**Utrum** is sometimes used with the suppression of the second clause for *whether or no*:

## INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

462. Indirect questions have the same particles as the direct, with the following modifications:

1. **Num** loses its negative force, and becomes simply *whether*:

**Speculārī** jussī sunt **num** sollicitātī animī sociōrum essent. LIV. *They were ordered to spy out whether the allies had been tampered with.*

2. **Si**, *if*, is used for *whether*, chiefly after verbs and sentences, implying trial:

**Tentāta** rēs est **si** primō impetū capī Ardea posset. LIV. *An attempt was made (in case, in hopes that, to see), if Ardea could be taken by a dash (coup-de-main). Compare Ō si (254).*

3. **An** is sometimes used for **num** and **ne**, but never in model prose:

**Consuluit deinde Alexander a n tōtius orbis imperium sibi dēstināret pater.** CURT. *Alexander then asked the oracle whether his father destined for him the empire of the whole world.*

4. The form ——— **ne** is found chiefly in the indirect question :

**Tarquinius Prisci Tarquiniū rēgis filiū nepōsne fuerit parum liquet.** LIV. *Whether Tarquin was the son or grandson of king Tarquin the Elder, does not appear.*

REMARK.—The form **ne—ne** is poetical.

### SUMMARY OF DIRECT AND INDIRECT DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.

463. Direct:

*Is the last syllable short or long?*

**Postrēma syllaba utrum brevis est a n longa ?**  
**brevis ne est a n longa ?**

Indirect:

*In a verse it makes no difference whether the last syllable be short or long :*

In versū nihil rēfert	{	utrum postrēma syllaba brevis sit a n longa.
		postrēma syllaba brevis ne sit a n longa.
		postrēma syllaba brevis a n longa sit. CIC.
		postrēma syllaba brevis sit longa ne.

### MOODS IN INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

#### I. IN DIRECT QUESTIONS.

464. The Mood of the question is the Mood of the expected or anticipated answer.

465. Indicative questions expect an Indicative answer, when the question is *genuine*.

**A. Quis homo est ? B. Ego sum.** TER. *Who is that ? It is I.*

**A. Vivitne [pater ?] B. Vivum liquimus.** PLAUT. *Is father alive ? We left him alive.*

466. Indicative questions anticipate an Indicative answer with the negative when the question is *rhetorical*.

**Quis paupertatem nōn extimescit?** CIC. *Who does not dread poverty?*

REMARK.—**Nōne** and **num** in the direct question are really rhetorical. With **nōne** a negative answer is anticipated to a negative, hence the affirmative character. Compare further, 452, R. 2.

467. Subjunctive questions expect Imperative or anticipate Potential answers. Subjunctive questions expect Imperative answers, chiefly in the First Person.

A. Abeam? B. Abl. PLAUT. *Shall I go away?* Go.

REMARK.—So in the representative of the First Person in dependent discourse. (358.)

468. The Subjunctive is used in rhetorical questions, which imply a negative opinion on the part of the speaker:

**Quis hōc crēdat?** *Who would believe this?* [No one.] **Quid faceret aliud?** *What else was he to do?* [Nothing.]

**Quis tulerit Gracchōs de sēditione querentēs?** JUV. (251.)

REMARK.—On the Exclamatory Question see 534, 560.

## II. IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

469. The Dependent Interrogative is always in the Subjunctive.

The Subjunctive may represent the Indicative:

**Considerābimus quid fēcerit** (Ind. **fēcit**), **quid faciat** (Ind. **facit**); **quid factūrus sit** (Ind. **faciet** or **factūrus est**). CIC. *We will consider what he has done, what he is doing, what he is going to do (will do).*

**Epaminōndās quaesivīt salvusne esset clipeus.** CIC. *Epaminondas asked whether his shield was safe. (Salvusne est?)*

The Subjunctive may be original:

**Ipse docet quid agam** (210); **fās est et ab hoste docērī.** OV. (**Quid agam**, *what I am to do*; not, *what I am doing*). See 258.

REMARKS.—1. When the leading verb is disconnected from the interrogative, the Indicative form is employed:

So often with **dic**, *say*, **vidē**, *see*, **quaere**, *ask*. **Dic, quid est?** *Tell me, what is it?* (**Dic quid sit**, *Tell me what it is.*)

**Quin tū unō verbō dic: quid est quod mē velis?** TER. *Won't you tell me in one word: What is it you want of me?*

**Dic mihi quid fēci nisi nōn sapienter amāvī.** OV. *Tell me what have I done, save that I have loved unwisely.*

The early poets go even further than this.

2. **Nescio quis**, **nescio quid**, **nescio quī**, **nescio quod**, *I know not who, what, which*, are used exactly as indefinite pronouns, and have no effect on the construction.

So also, *nēscio quōmodo*, *I know not how* = *strangely*; and *mirum quantum*, *it* (is) *marvellous how much* = *wonderfully*, are used as adverbs:

*Mirum quantum prōfuit ad concordiam.* LIV. *It served wonderfully to promote harmony.*

*Nēscio quid mājus nāscitur Īliade.* PROP. *Something, I know not what, is rising greater than the Iliad.*

*Nēscio quō pactō vel magis hominēs juvat glōria lāta quam magna.* PLIN. EP. *Somehow or other, people are even more charmed to have a wide-spread reputation than a grand one.*

The position excludes a conscious ellipsis of the Subjunctive.

3. The Relative has the same form as the Interrogative *quis*? except in the Nom. Sing.; hence the importance of distinguishing between them in dependent sentences. The interrogative depends on the leading verb, the relative belongs to the antecedent. (612, R. 2.)

*Interrogative: dic quid rogem, Tell me what it is I am asking.*

*Relative: dic quod rogo.* TER. *Tell me that which I am asking (the answer to my question).*

The relative is not unfrequently used where we should expect the interrogative, especially when the facts of the case are to be emphasized:

*Dicam quod sentio, I will tell you my real opinion.*

Incorporated relatives are not to be confounded with interrogatives:

*Quaeramus ubi (=ibi ubi) maleficium inveniri potest.* CIC. *Let us look for the misdeed in the place where it can be found.*

## PECULIARITIES OF INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

470. The subject of the dependent clause is often treated as the object of the leading clause (*Prolepsis*):

*Nōsti Marcellum quam tardus sit.* CIC. *You know Marcellus, what a slow creature he is.*

471. Contrary to our idiom, the interrogative is often used in participial clauses. In English, the participle and verb change places, and a causal sentence becomes consecutive:

*Quam ūtilitātem petentēs scire cupimus illa quae occulta nobis sunt?* CIC. *What advantage do we seek when we desire to know those things which are hidden from us?*

*Solōn Pisistratō tyrannō quaerenti quā tandem spēs frētus sibi tam audācter resisteret respondisse dicitur, senectūte.* SEN. *Solon, to Pisistratus the usurper, asking him (= when Pisistratus the usurper asked him) on what earthly hope relying (= on what hope he relied that) he resisted him so boldly, is said to have answered "old age."*

472. Final sentences (sentences of Design) are used in questions more freely than in English:

**Sessum it praetor. Quid ut iudicetur?** CIC. *The judge is going to take his seat. What is to be adjudged? (To adjudge what?)*

REMARK.—The Latin language goes further than the English in combining interrogative words in the same clause

## YES AND NO.

473. *Yes* is represented :

1. By **sănē**, (literally) *soundly*, **sănē quidem**, *yes indeed*, **etiam**, *even (so)*, **vērō**, *of a truth*, **ita**, *so*, **omnīnō**, *by all means*, **certē**, *surely*, **certō**, *for certain*, **admodum**, *to a degree*.

2. By **immo** or **imo**, which conveys a correction, and either removes a doubt or heightens a previous statement—*yes indeed, nay rather*.

**Ecquid placeant aedēs mē rogās?** IMMO. PLAUT. *Do I like the house, you ask me? Yes, indeed.*

**Causa igitur nōn bona est?** IMMO optima. CIC. *The cause, then, is a bad one? Nay, it is an excellent one.*

3. By **cēnseo**, *I think so*.

4. By repeating the emphatic word either with or without confirmatory particles :

**Estisne?** SUMUS. *Are you? We are.*

**Dāsne?** DŌ sănē. *Do you grant? I do indeed.*

*No* is represented :

1. By **nōn**, **nōn vērō**, **nōn ita**, **minimē**, *by no means*, **nihil**, *nothing*, **minimē vērō**, **nihil sănē**, **nihil minus**.

2. By repeating the emphatic word with the negative :

**Nōn Irāta es?** Nōn sum Irāta, *You are not angry? I am not.*

REMARK.—*Yes, for*, and *no, for*, are often expressed simply by **nam** and **enim** :

**Tum Antōnius: Heri enim, inquit, hoc mihi proposueram.** CIC. *Then quoth Antony: Yes, for I had proposed this to myself yesterday.*

## SYNTAX OF THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

474. 1. A compound sentence is one in which the necessary parts of the sentence occur more than once, one which consists of two or more clauses.

2. Coördination is that arrangement of the sentence according to which the different clauses are merely placed side by side.

3. Subordination is that arrangement of the sentence according to which one clause depends on the other.

*He became poor and we became rich*, is a coördinate sentence.

*He became poor that we might be rich*, is a subordinate sentence.

4. The sentence which is modified is called the Principal Clause, that which modifies is called the Subordinate Clause. "*He became poor*" is the Principal Clause, "*that we might be rich*" is the Subordinate Clause.

REMARK.—Logical dependence and grammatical dependence are not to be confounded. In the conditional sentence, *vivam si vivet*, *let me live if she lives*, my living depends on her living; yet "*vivam*" is the principal, "*si vivet*" the subordinate clause. It is the dependence of the introductory particle that determines the grammatical relation.

### COORDINATION.

475. Coördinate sentences are divided into various classes, according to the particles by which the separate clauses are bound together.

REMARK.—Co-ordinate sentences often dispense with conjunctions (*Asyndeton*). Then the connection must determine the character.

### COPULATIVE SENTENCES.

476. The following particles are called Copulative Conjunctions: *et*, *-que*, *atque* (*ac*), *etiam*, *quoque*.

477. *Et* is simply *and*, the most common and general particle of connection, and combines likes and unlikes:

*Pānem et aquam nātūra dēsiderat*. SEN. *Bread and water* (is what) *nature calls for*.

*Probitās laudātur et alget*. JUV. *Honesty is bepraised and—freezes*.

478. *-Que* (enclitic) unites things that belong closely to one another. The second member serves to *complete* or *extend* the first:

*Senātus populus quē Rōmānus*, *The Senate and people of Rome*.

*Ibi mortuus sepultusque Alexander*. LIV. *There Alexander died and was buried*.

Combinations: *et* — *et*;

*-que* — *et*;

*et* — *que* (only for two words);

*-que* — *que*, chiefly in poetry (also LIV. and SALL.)

*Et dominō satis et nimium furique lupōque*. TIB. *Enough for owner, and too much for thief and wolf*.

**479. Atque** (compounded of *ad* and *-que*) adds a more important to a less important member. But the second member often owes its importance to the necessity of having the complement (*-que*). **Ac** (a shorter form, which does not stand before a vowel) is fainter than **atque**, and almost equivalent to **et**:

*Intrā moenia atque in sinū urbis sunt hostēs.* SALL. *Within the walls, ay, and in the heart of the city, are the enemies.*

*A. Ego servōs?* (29.) *B. Atque meus.* PLAUT. *I—a slave? And mine to boot.*

**Atque** or **ac** is often used to connect the parts of a clause in which **et** has been already employed:

*Et potentēs sequitur invidia et humilēs abjectōsque contemptus et turpēs ac nocentēs odium.* QUINT. *The powerful are followed by envy; the low and grovelling, by contempt; the base and hurtful, by hatred.*

REMARKS.—1. Adjectives and Adverbs of Likeness and Unlikeness may take **atque** or **ac**. See 645.

2. On the Latin proneness to subordination by means of the participle, see 409, R. 2, and 667, R. 1.

**480. Etiam**, *even (now), yet, still*, exaggerates (heightens) and generally precedes the word to which it belongs:

*Nōbīs rēs familiāris etiam ad necessariā deest,* *We lack means even for necessities of life.*

*Ad Appii Claudii senectutem accēdēbat etiam ut caecus esset.* CIC. (558.)

Of time:

*Nōn satis pernōsti mē etiam quālis sim.* TER. *You still do not know well enough (= little know) what manner of person I am.*

REMARK.—**Et** is sometimes used for **etiam**, but sparingly. So **et ipse**, and kindred expressions.

**481. Quoque**, *so also*, complements (compare *-que*) and always follows the words to which it belongs:

*Quum patri Timothei populus statuam posuisset, filiō quoque dedit.* NEP. *The people, having erected a statue in honor of the father of Timotheus, gave one to the son also (likewise).*

REMARK.—The difference between **etiam** and **quoque** is not to be insisted on too rigidly:

*Grande et conspicuum nōstrō quoque tempore monstrum.* JUV. *A huge and conspicuous prodigy, even in our day.*

**482. Copulation by means of the Negative.**—Instead of et and the negative, **neque (nec)** and the positive is the rule in Latin:

*Opiniōne vulgi rapimur in errōrem nec vĕra cernimus. CIC. By the prejudice of the rabble we are hurried into error, and do not distinguish the truth.*

**Caesar substitit neque hostem lacessivit. CAES.** *Caesar halted and did not harass the enemy (without harassing the enemy).*

REMARKS.—1. Et-nōn, and . . . not, is used when the negation is confined to a single word, or is otherwise emphatic:

**Et militāvi nō n sine glōriā. HOR.** *And I have been a soldier not without glory.*

On *nec nōn*, the opposite of *et nōn*, see 448, R. 3.

2. Combinations: **Neque** — neque; **nec** — nec, neque — nec.  
neque — que. (nec — neque.)  
et — neque.

8. Paradigms: *And no one,*      *neque quisquam,*      *nor any one.*  
                   *And no—*                *neque ullus,*            *nor any.*  
                   *And nothing,*        *neque quidquam,*      *nor any thing.*  
                   *And never,*            *neque unquam,*        *nor ever.*

**Neque amet quemquam nec amatur ab ullō. JUV. *May he love no one,***  
*and be loved by none.*

4. **Nec** is often nearly equivalent to **nec tamen**, and yet not :

**Extrā invidiam nec extrā glōriam erat, TAC.** *He was beyond the reach of envy, and yet not beyond the reach of glory.*

483. 1. *Insertion and Omission of Copulatives.*—When **multus**, *much*, **many**, is followed by another attribute, the two are often combined by copulative particles: *many renowned deeds*, **multa et praeclāra facinora**; *many good qualities*, **multae bonaeque artes**.

2. Several subjects or objects, standing in the same relations, either take **et** throughout or omit it throughout. The omission of it is common in emphatic enumeration :

**Phrygēs et Pisidae et Cilicēs; or, Phrygēs, Pisidae, Cilicēs, Phry-**  
*gians, Pisidians, and Cilicians.*

3. **Et** is further omitted in *climaxes*, in *antitheses*, in *phrases*, and in *formulae* :

**Viri nōn est debilitārī dolōre, frangī, succumbere.** CIC. *It is unmanly to allow oneself to be disabled (unnerved) by grief, to be broken-spirited, to succumb.*



**Difficilis facilia, jūcundus acerbus, es Idem. MART. (296.)**

**Patrēs Conscripti, Fathers (and) Conscript (Senators).**

**Jūpiter Optimus Maximus, Father Jove, supremely good (and) great.**

### OTHER PARTICLES EMPLOYED.

**484.** Other particles are sometimes employed instead of the copulative in the same general sense.

1. Temporal: **Tum — tum, then — then ; nunc — nunc, modo — modo, now — now ; simul — simul, at the same time. Tum Graecō — tum Latīnē, partly in Greek, partly in Latin.**

**Horātius Cocles nunc singulōs prōvocābat, nunc increpābat omnes. LIV. Horatius Cocles now challenged them singly, now taunted them all.**

**Modo hūc, modo illūc, now hither, now thither (hither and thither).**

**Simul spernēbant, simul metuēbant, they despised and feared at the same time (they at once despised and feared).**

**On Quum — tum, see 589.**

2. Comparative: **ut — ita, as — so :**

**Dolābellam ut Tarsensēs ita Lāodicēni ultrō arcessiērunt, As the people of Tarsus so the people of Laodicea (= Both the people of Tarsus and those of Laodicea) sent for Dolabella of their own accord.**

Often, however, there is an adversative idea :

**Haec omnia ut invitīs ita nōn adversantibus patriciīs trānsacta.**

**LIV. All this was done, the patricians, though unwilling, yet not opposing (= against the wishes, but without any opposition on the part of the patricians).**

3. Adversative: **Nōn modo, nōn solum, nōn tantum, not only : sed etiam, vērūm etiam, but even, but also (sometimes simply sed) :**

**Urbēs maritimae nōn solum multis periculis oppositae sunt sed etiam caecis. CIC. Cities on the seaboard are liable not only to many dangers, but even (also) to hidden (ones).**

**Nōn docērī tantum sed etiam dēlectārī volunt. QUINT. They wish not merely to be taught but to be tickled to boot.**

In the negative form, **nōn modo nōn, not only not ; sed nē . . . quidem, but not even ; sed vix, but hardly.**

**Ego nōn modo tibi nōn irāscor sed nē reprehendo quidem factum tuum. CIC. I not only am not angry with you, but I do not even find fault with your action.**

**REMARKS.—1.** Instead of **nōn modo (solum) nōn—sed nē—quidem**, the latter **nōn** is generally omitted, when the two negative clauses have a verb in common, the negative of the first clause being supplied by the second :

**Pisōne consule senātui nōn solum iuvāre rempublicam sed nē lūgēre quidem licēbat.** CIC. *When Piso was consul, it was not only not left free for the senate (= the senate was not only not free) to help the commonwealth, but not even to mourn (for her).*

2. **Nēdum**, *not* (to speak of) *yet, much less*, is also used, either with or without a verb in the subjunctive:

**Satrapa nunquam sufferre ejus sumptūs queat, nēdum tū possis.** TER. *A nabob could never stand that girl's expenditures, much less could you.*

**Nēdum** from Livy on is used after affirmative clauses as well.

## ADVERSATIVE SENTENCES.

485. The adversative particles are: **autem**, **sed**, **vērūm**, **vērō**, **at**, **atq̄**, **tamen**, **cēterum**. Of these only **sed** and **tamen** are really adversative.

486. **Autem** (postpositive) is the weakest form of *but*, and indicates a *difference* from the foregoing, a *contrast* rather than a *contradiction*. It serves as a particle of *transition* and *explanation* (= *moreover, furthermore, now*), and of *resumption* (= *to come back*), and is often used in syllogisms:

**Rūmōribus mēcum pugnās, ego autem ā tē ratiōnēs requīro.** CIC. *You fight me with rumors, whereas I ask of you reasons.*

**Quod est bonum, omne laudābile est; quod autem laudābile est, omne est honestum; bonum igitur quod est, honestum est.** CIC. *Everything that is good is praiseworthy; but everything that is praiseworthy is virtuous; therefore, what is good is virtuous.*

REMARK.—**Autem** commonly follows the first word in the sentence or clause; but when an unemphatic **est** or **sunt** occupies the second place, it is put in the third. So **igitur** and **enim**.

487. **Sed** (**set**) is used partly in a stronger sense, to denote *contradiction*, partly in a weaker sense, *to introduce a new thought*, or *to revive an old one*:

**Nōn est vivere s e d valēre vīta.** MART. (443.)

**Domitius nullā ille quidem arte sed Latīnē tamen dicēbat.** CIC. *Domitius spoke with no art it is true, but for all that, in good Latin.*

488. **Vērūm**, *it is true, true*, always takes the first place in a sentence, and is practically equivalent to **sed** in its stronger sense:

**Sī certum est facere, faciās; vērūm nē post conferās culpam in mē.** TER. *If you are determined to do it, you may do it; but you must not afterward lay the blame on me.*

489. *Vērō*, of a truth, is generally put in the second place, asserts with conviction, and is used to heighten the statement:

*Platōnem Diōn adeō admirātus est ut sē tōtum ei trāderet. Neque vērō minus Plato dēlectātus est Diōne.* NĒP. *Dion admired Plato to such a degree that he gave himself wholly up to him; and indeed Plato was no less delighted with Dion.*

490. *At* (another form of *ad* = *in addition to*) introduces startling transitions, lively objections, remonstrances, questions, wishes, often by way of quotation:

*Si gravis dolor, brevis. At Philoctēta jam decimum annum in spēluncā jacet.* CIC. *If pain is sharp, it is short. But Philoctetes has been lying in his cave going on ten years.*

*"At multis malis affectus?" Quis negat?* CIC. *"But he has suffered much?" Who denies it?*

*Si scelestus est at mi infidēlis nōn est.* TER. *If he is a scamp, yet (at least) he is not unfaithful to me.*

*At vidēte hominis intolerābilem audāciam!* CIC. *Well, but see the fellow's insufferable audacity!*

*At vōbis male sit!* CAT. *And ill luck to you!*

REMARK.—*Ast* = *at* + *set* (*sed*) is antiquated and poetic.

491. *Atqui* (*But how? = But what of that?*) is still stronger than *at*, and is used chiefly in argument:

*Atqui perspicuum est hominem ē corpore animōque constāre.* CIC. *But it is clear that man consists of body and soul; igitur, therefore.*

492. *Tamen* (literally, *even thus*), *nevertheless*, is often combined with *at*, *vērūm*, *sed*.

It is commonly prepositive, unless a particular word is to be made emphatic:

*Nātūram expellās furcā, tamen usque recurret.* HOR. *You may drive out Dame Nature with a pitchfork, for all that she will ever be returning.*

*Domitius nullā quidem arte sed Latīnē tamen dicēbat* (487).

493. *Cēterum*, for the rest, is used by the historians as an adversative particle.

REMARK.—In lively discourse, the adversative particles are often omitted.

#### DISJUNCTIVE SENTENCES.

494. The disjunctive particles are *aut*, *vel*, *-ve*, *sive* (*sen*).

495. **Aut, or,** denotes absolute exclusion or substitution :

**Vinceris aut vincis.** PROP. *You are conquered or conquering.*

**Aut** is often = *or at least (aut saltem)* :

**Oūctī aut magna pars fidem mutāvissent.** SALL. *All, or at least a great part, would have changed their allegiance.*

**Duo aut summum trēs juvenēs.** LIV. *Two, or at most three, youths.*

**Aut—aut, either—or :**

**Quaedam terrae partēs aut frigore rigent aut ūruntur calōre.** CIC. *Some parts of the earth are either frozen with cold or burnt with heat.*

**Aut dic aut accipe calcem.** JUV. *Either speak or take a kick.*

496. **Vel** (literally, *you may choose*) gives a choice, often with **etiam**, *even*, **potius**, *rather* :

**Ego vel Cluviēnus.** JUV. *I, or, if you choose, Cluvienus.*

**Per mē vel stertās licet, nōn modo quiescās.** CIC. *For all I care, you may (even) snore, if you choose, not merely sleep.*

**Satis vel etiam nimium multa.** CIC. *Enough, or even too much.*

**Epicūrus homo minimē malus vel potius vir optimus.** *Epicurus (was) a person by no means bad, or, rather, a man of excellent character.*

**Vel—vel, either—or (whether—or) :**

**Miltiadēs dixit ponte rescissō rēgem vel hostium ferrō vel inopiā paucis diēbus interitūrum.** NEP. *Miltiades said that if the bridge were cut the king would perish in a few days, whether by the sword of the enemy, or for want of provisions.*

497. **-Ve** (enclitic) is a weaker form of **vel** (with numerals, *at most*) :

**Cūr time. dubitem v e locum dēfendere ?** JUV. *Why, should I fear or hesitate to maintain my position ?*

**Bis terve, twice or at most thrice (bis terque, twice and indeed as much as thrice, if not more).**

498. **Sive, (seu), if you choos**, gives a choice between two designations of the same object :

**Urbem mātři seu novercae reliquit.** LIV. *He left the city to his mother, or (if it seems more likely) to his step-mother.*

499. **Sive—sive (seu—seu) whether—or (indifference) :**

**Sive tū medicum adhibueris sive nōn adhibueris nōn convalēsces.** CIC. *Whether you employ a physician, or do not employ (one), you will not get well.*

**Sēu visa est catulis cerva fidēlibus sēu rūpit teretēs Marsus aper plagās.** HOR. *Whether a doe hath appeared to the faithful hounds, or a Mar-sian boar hath burst the tightly-twisted toils.*

### CAUSAL AND ILLATIVE SENTENCES.

500. A. The *causal* particles are **nam**, **enim**, **namque**, and **etenim**, *for*.

**Sensūs mirificō collocāti sunt. Nam oculi tanquam speculātōrēs altissimum locum obtinent.** CIC. *The senses are admirably situated. For eyes, like the watchmen, occupy the highest post.*

**Themistoclēs mūrōs Athēniensium restituit suō periculō. Namque Lacedaemonii prohibēre cōnāti sunt.** NEP. *Themistocles restored the walls of Athens with risk to himself. For the Lacedaemonians endeavored to prevent it.*

**Piscēs ova relinquunt, facile enim illa aquā sustinentur.** CIC. *Fish leave their eggs, for they are easily kept alive by the water.*

REMARKS.—1. **Nam** is always put at the beginning of a sentence; **enim** is always postpositive (486, R.): **namque** and **etenim** are commonly put in the first place:

*For what can you do? Nam quid agās? Quid enim agās? Namque quid agās? Etenim quid agās?*

2. These particles are originally asseverative, and are often used not only to furnish a reason, but also to give an explanation or illustration (*as for instance*). **Quid enim agās? What, for instance, can you do?** This is especially true of **enim**, but a broad difference between **nam** and **enim** (which is derived from **nam**) cannot be proved. **Etenim** is often used to carry on the argument, and gives an additional ground. **Nempe** (from **nam**) *namely, to wit, that is, of course*, is often used ironically.

**Sed quālis rediit? Nempe unā nāve.** JUV. *But in what style did he return? With one ship, forsooth.*

3. In **atenim**, **sed enim**, **vērumenim**, **enimvērō**, **vērumenimvērō**, as in **etenim**, **enim** gives a ground or an illustration of the leading particle, but translation by an ellipsis would be too heavy, and **enim** is best left untranslated:

A. **Audi quid dicam.** B. **At enim taedet jam audire eadem millies.** TER. A. *Hear what I say.* B. *But (I won't, for) I am tired of hearing the same things a thousand times already.*

501. B. *Illative* particles are **itaque**, **igitur**, **ergō**, **ideō**, **idcirco**, **proinde**.

502. **Itaque** (literally, *and so*), *therefore*, is put at the beginning of the sentence by the best writers, and is used of *facts* that follow from the preceding statement:

**Nemo ausus est liber Phōciōnem sepelire. Itaque ā servis sepultus**

est. NEP. *No free man dared to bury Phocion, and so he was buried by slaves.*

503. **Igitur**, *therefore*, is generally postpositive, and is used of *opinions* which have their natural ground in the preceding statement:

**Mihi nōn satisfacit. Sed quot hominēs tot sententiae; falli igitur possumus.** CIC. *ME it does not satisfy. But many men many minds. I may therefore be mistaken.*

REMARK.—In historical writers, **igitur** is used both in position and signification as *itaque*. When emphatic, **igitur** is found even in the best authors at the head of the sentence.

504. **Ergō** denotes *necessary consequence*, and is used especially in arguments, with somewhat more emphasis than **igitur**. **Ideō, idcirco**, means *on that account*; **proinde**, *accordingly*, is employed in *exhortations, appeals*, and the like:

**Negat haec filiam mē suam esse; nōn ergō haec māter mea est.** PLAUT. *She says that I am not her daughter, therefore she is not my mother.*

**Quod praeceptum (nōsce tē ipsum) quia mājus erat quam ut ab homine vidērētur idcirco adsignātum est deō.** CIC. *This precept (know thyself), because it was too great to seem to be of man, was, on that account, attributed to a god.*

**Proinde aut exeant aut quiescant.** CIC. *Let them then either depart or be quiet.*

#### SUBORDINATION.

505. Subordinate sentences are only extended forms of the simple sentence, and are divided into *Adjective* and *Substantive* sentences, according as they represent *adjective* and *substantive* relations.

506. Adjective sentences express an attribute of the subject in an expanded form:

**Uxor quae bona est (625) = uxor bona.**

507. Substantive sentences are introduced by particles, which correspond in their origin and use to the Oblique Cases, Accusative and Ablative.

These two cases furnish the mass of adverbial relations, and hence we make a subdivision for this class, and the organization of the subordinate sentence appears as follows:

## 508. A. Substantive sentences.

## I. Object sentences.

## II. Adverbial sentences :

1. Of Cause. (Causal.)
2. Of Design and Tendency. (Final and consecutive.)
3. Of Time. (Temporal.)
4. Of Condition and Concession. (Conditional and concessive.)

## B. Adjective sentences (Relative).

## MOODS IN SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

509. 1. Final and Consecutive Clauses always take the Subjunctive. Others vary according to their conception. Especially important are the changes produced by *Ōrātiō Obliqua*.

2. *Ōrātiō Obliqua*, or *Indirect Discourse*, is opposed to *Ōrātiō Rectā*, or *Direct Discourse*, and gives the main drift of a speech and not the exact words. *Ōrātiō Obliqua*, proper, depends on some Verb of Saying or Thinking expressed or implied, the Principal Clauses being put in the Infinitive, the Dependent in the Subjunctive.

*Sōcratēs dicere solēbat :*

*Ō. R. Omnēs in eō quod sciunt satis sunt ēloquentēs.*

*Ō. R. Socrates used to say : " All men ARE eloquent enough in what they UNDERSTAND."*

*Ō. O. Omnēs in eō quod sciunt satis esse ēloquentēs.*

*Ō. O. Socrates used to say that all men WERE eloquent enough in what they UNDERSTOOD.*

3. The oblique relation may be confined to a dependent clause and not extend to the whole sentence. This may be called *Partial Obliquity* :

*Ō. R. Nova nupta dicit : Fleo quod ire necesse est. The bride says : I weep because I must needs go.*

*Ō. O. Nova nupta dicit sē flēre quod ire necesse sit. The bride says that she weeps because she must needs go.*

*Ō. R. Nova nupta flet quod ire necesse est. CAT.*  
*The bride weeps because she must go.*

*P. O. Nova nupta flet quod ire necesse sit.*  
*The bride is weeping because " she must go " (quoth she).*

4. Akin to  $\bar{O}$ . O. is the so-called Attraction of Mood by which clauses originally Indicative are put in the Subjunctive because they depend on Infinitives or Subjunctives. (666.)

*Nōn dubito quā nova nupta fleat quod ire necesse sit. I do not doubt that the bride is weeping because she must go.*

REMARK.—The full discussion of  $\bar{O}$ . O. must, of course, be reserved for a later period, See 650.

## SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

510. In those dependent sentences which require the subjunctive, the choice of the tenses of the dependent clause is determined by the form of the principal clause. Principal Tenses are followed by Principal; Historical, by Historical.

All forms that relate to the Present and Future (Principal Tenses)	are followed by	the Present Subjunctive (for continued action); the Perfect Subjunctive (for completed action).
All forms that relate to the Past (Historical Tenses)	are followed by	the Imperfect Subjunctive (for continued action); the Pluperfect Subjunctive (for completed action).

REMARK.—The action which is completed with regard to the leading verb may be in itself a continued action. So in English: *I have been doing, I had been doing.* Hence, the Imperfect Indicative (*I was doing*) is represented in this dependent form by the Perfect and Pluperfect, when the action is completed as to the leading verb.

511. PRES. cognōsco,	<i>I am finding out,</i>	quid faciās,
PURE PF., cognōvī,	<i>I have found out (I know),</i>	quid feceris,
FUTURE, cognōscam,	<i>I shall (try to) find out,</i>	quid feceris,
FUT. PERF., cognōvero,	<i>I shall have found out (shall know),</i>	quid feceris,
IMPERF., cognōscēbam,	<i>I was finding out,</i>	quid facerēs,
PLUPERF., cognōveram,	<i>I had found out (I knew),</i>	quid fecissēs,



HIST. PREP., Caesar cognōvit, <i>Caesar found out</i> ,	{	quid facerent hostēs, <i>what the enemy was doing ;</i>
		{
	{	quid fēcissent hostēs, <i>what the enemy had done.</i>
	{	

## PRINCIPAL TENSES.

Nihil rēfert postrēma syllaba brevis an longa sit. CIC. (463.)

Nēmo adeō ferus est ut nōn mtescere possit. HOR. (556.)

Rūsticus exspectat dum dēfluat amnis. HOR. (574.)

Post mortem in morte nihil est quod metuam mali. PLAUT. (634.)

Ardeat ipsa licet, tormentis gaudet amantis. JUV. (609.)

Utrum nēscis quam altē ascenderis an id prō nihilō habēs? CIC. (460.)

Laudat Panaetius Africānum quod fuerit abstinens. CIC. (542.)

Nōn is es ut tē pudor unquam ā turpitudine revocārit. CIC. (556.)

Quem mea Calliopē laeserit ūnus ego. OV. (633.)

Sim licet extrēmum sicut sum missus in orbem. OV. (609.)

Multi fuērunt qui tranquillitatem expetentēs ā negōtiis publicis sē remōverint. CIC. (634.)

Nec mea qui digitis lūmina condāt erit. OV. (634.)

## HISTORICAL TENSES.

Epaminōndās quaesivīt salvusne esset clipeus. CIC. (469.)

Noctū ambulābat in forō Themistoclēs quod somnum capere nōn posset. CIC. (541.)

Ad Appii Claudii senectūtem accēdēbat etiam ut caecus esset. (558.)

Tanta opibus Etrūria erat ut jam nōn terrās solum sed mare etiam fāmā nōminis sui implēsset. LIV. *So great in means (= so powerful) was Etruria that she had already filled not only the land but even the sea with the reputation of her name.*

Quum primī ordinēs hostium concidissent, tamen ācerrimē reliqui resistēbant. CAES. (587.)

Accidit ut ūnā nocte omnēs Hermae dējicerentur. NEP. (513, R. 2.)

Agēsilaus quum ex Aegyptō reverterētur dēcessit. NEP. (586.)

Dēlēta est Ausonum gēns perinde ac si interneciūq̄ bellō certāset. LIV. (603.)

Hannibal omnia priusquam excēderet pugnā erat expertus. LIV. (579.)

REMARKS.—1. The Historical Present is treated according to its Tense, or according to its Sense. Final sentences more commonly follow the Sense.

Caesar cognōscit	quid hostēs	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ faciānt, fēcerint, is doing, has done, etc.} \\ 2. \text{ facerent, fēcissent, was doing, had done, etc.} \end{array} \right.$
Caesar finds out (found out)	what the enemy	

Tense: *Ubi Caesarem ōrant ut sibi parcant.* CAES. *The Ubi beg Caesar to spare them.*

Sense: *Athēniēnsēs creant decem praetōrēs qui exercitui praessent.* NEP. *The Athenians make ten generals to command their army.*

Sense and Tense: *Agunt grātiās quod sibi pepercissent; quod arma cum hominibus consanguineis contulerint queruntur.* CAES. *They return thanks to them for having spared them, and complain that they had crossed swords with kinsmen.*

So of authors:

*Chrṡsippus disputat aethera esse eum quem hominēs Jovem appellārent.* CIC. *Chrṡsippus maintains that to be aether which men call Jove.*

2. The Pure Perfect is often treated as an Historical Perfect in the matter of sequence:

*Hodiē expertus sum quam cadūca felicitās esset.* CURT. *This day have I found out how perishable happiness is.*

512. *Sequence of Tenses in Sentences of Design.*—Sentences of Design have, as a rule, only the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive. The Roman keeps the purpose and the process, rather than the attainment, in view.

PRESENT,	edunt, they are eating,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ut vivānt,} \\ \text{that they may live (to live).} \end{array} \right.$
PURE PERF.,	ēdērunt, they have eaten,	
FUTURE,	edent, they will eat,	
FUT. PERF.,	ēderint, they will have eaten,	
IMPERFECT,	edēbant, they were eating,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ut viverent,} \\ \text{that they might live (to live).} \end{array} \right.$
PLUPERFECT,	ēderant, they had eaten,	
HIST. PER.,	ēdērunt, they ate,	

### PRINCIPAL TENSES.

*Atque ut vivāmus vivere dēsīnimus.* MART. (424.)

*Et precor ut possim tūtius esse miser.* OV. (424.)

*Gallinae pennīs foveant pullōs nē frigore laedantur.* CIC. (545.)

*Lēgem brevem esse oportet, quō facilius ab imperitiis teneātur.* SEN. (545.)

*Mē praemisit domum haec ut nūntiem uxōri suae.* PLAUT. *He has sent me home ahead of him, to take the news to his wife.*

*Oculōs effodiam tibi nē observāre possis.* PLAUT. *I will gouge out your eyes for you, to make it impossible for you to watch me.*

### HISTORICAL TENSES.

*Laellus veniēbat ad cēnam ut satiāret dēsīderia nātūrae.* CIC. *Laellus used to go to table, to satisfy the cravings of nature.*

*Phaethōn ut in currum patris tolleretur optāvit.* CIC. (546.)

REMARK.—The Perf. and Pluperf. Subj. are sometimes found in sentences of Design, chiefly in earlier and later Latin, when stress is laid on completion, or when an element of Hope or Fear comes in : *Ut sic dixerim*, if I may be allowed to use the expression.

*Id agendum est ut satis vixerimus.* SEN. We must aim at having lived enough.

*Affirmare audeo me omni ope adnissum ne frustrā vōs hanc spem de me conciperitis.* LIV. I dare assure you that I will strain every nerve to keep you from having conceived this hope of me in vain. (After a past tense, *ne conciperitis*.)

513. *Exceptional Sequence of Tenses:—Sentences of Result (Consecutive Sentences).* In Sentences of Result, the Present Subjunctive is used after Past Tenses to denote the continuance into the Present, the Perfect Subjunctive to imply final result. This Perfect Subjunctive may represent either the Pure Perfect or the Aorist, the latter especially with the negative : the action happened once for all or not at all.

Present Tense :

*Siciliam Verrēs per triennium ita vexavit ut ea restitui in antiquum statum nullō modō possit.* CIC. *Verrēs so harried Sicily for three years as to make it utterly impossible for it to be restored to its original condition.*

Perfect Tense (Pure) :

*Mūrēna Asiā sic obiit ut in eā neque avāritiæ neque luxuriæ vestigium reliquerit.* CIC. *Murena so administered Asia as not to have (that he has not) left in it a trace either of greed or debauchery.* (There is no trace there).

Perfect Tense (Aorist) :

*Equitēs hostium ācrit̄er cum equitātū nōstrō conflixērunt tamen ut nōstri eōs in silvās collēsque compulerint.* CAES. *The cavalry of the enemy engaged the cavalry on our side briskly, and yet (the upshot was that) our men forced them into the woods and hills.*

*Neque vērō tam remissō ac languidō animō quisquam omnium fuit quī eā nocte conquiēverit.* CAES. *And indeed there was no one at all of so slack and indifferent a temper as to take (a wink of) sleep that night.*

REMARKS.—1. Authors vary much in the use of this Perfect. Cicero uses it very rarely ; some abuse it.

2. After *accidit*, *contigit*, and other Verbs of Happening, the Imperfect is always used, the result being already emphasized in the Indicative form.

*Accidit ut unā nocte omnēs Hermæ dējicerentur.* NEP. *It happened that in one night all the Hermæ were thrown down.*

#### REPRESENTATION OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN THE FUTURE AND FUTURE PERFECT TENSES.

514. The Subjunctive has no Future or Future Perfect, which

are represented either by the other Subjunctives, or in the Active by the Subjunctive of the Periphrastic Conjugation.

RULE I.—After a Future or Future Perfect Tense, the Future relation is represented by the Present Subjunctive, the Future Perfect by the Perfect Subjunctive, according to the rule.

<b>Cognōscam,</b>	{	<b>quid faciās,</b> <i>what you are doing</i> (will be doing).
<i>I shall (try to) find out,</i>		
<b>Cognōvero,</b>		<b>quid fēceris,</b> <i>what you have done</i> (will have done).
<i>I shall have found out (shall know),</i>		

But whenever the dependent future is subsequent to the leading future, the Periphrastic Tense must be employed.

<b>Cognōscam,</b>	{	<b>quid factūrus sis,</b>
<i>I shall (try to) find out,</i>		<i>what you are going to do</i> (what you will do).
<b>Cognōvero,</b>		
<i>I shall have found out (shall know),</i>		

[**Considerābimus,** [*we shall consider*],

A. **Quid fēcerit aut quid ipsi acciderit aut quid dixerit,** *What he has done, or what has happened to him, or what he has said.*

B. **Aut quid faciat, quid ipsi accidat, quid dicat,** *Or, what he is doing, what is happening to him, what he is saying.*

C. **Aut quid factūrus sit, quid ipsi cāsūrum sit, quā sit ūsūrus orātiōne.** *CIC. Or what he is going to do (will do), what is going to (will) happen to him, what plea he is going to employ (will employ).*

**Tū quid sis actūrus si ad mē scripseris pergrātum erit.** *CIC. It will be a great favor if you will write to me what you are going to do.*

REMARK.—In some of these forms, ambiguity is unavoidable. So A may represent a real perfect, B a real present.

515. RULE II.—After the other tenses, the future relation is expressed by the Active Periphrastic Subjunctive, Present or Imperfect.

<b>Cognōsco,</b>	{	<b>quid factūrus sis,</b> (what you are going to do),
<i>I am finding out,</i>		<i>what you will do.</i>
<b>Cognōvi,</b>		
<i>I have found out (know),</i>		
<b>Cognōscēbam,</b>	{	<b>quid factūrus essēs,</b> (what you were going to do),
<i>I was trying to find out,</i>		<i>what you would do.</i>
<b>Cognōveram,</b>		
<i>I had found out,</i>		

**Incertum est quam longa cūjusque nōstrum vīta futūra sit.** *CIC. It is uncertain how long the life of each one of us is going to be (will be).*

**Anteā dubitābam ventūraene essent legiōnēs.** CIC. *Before, I was doubtful whether the legions would come (or no).*

**Nunc mihi nōn est dubium quin ventūrae nōn sint.** CIO. *Now I have no doubt that they will not come.*

REMARKS.—1. The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive of the Periphrastic are used only to represent the Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional Sentence.

<b>Cognōsco,</b>	<b>Cognōvī,</b>	<b>quid factūrus fueris,</b> (what you have been
<i>I am finding out,</i>	<i>I have found out (know),</i>	<i>what you would have done. going to do),</i>
<b>Cognōscēbam,</b>	<b>Cognōveram,</b>	<b>[quid factūrus fuissēs,</b> (what you had been
<i>I was trying to find out,</i>	<i>I had found out,</i>	<i>what you would have done, going to do),</i>
		rare].

2. There is no Periphrastic for the Future Perfect Active, no Periphrastic for Passive and Supineless Verbs. The Grammarians make up a periphrastic for all these from **futūrum sit, esset ut,** as:

**Nōn dubito quin futūrum sit** { **ut redierit,** *I do not doubt that he will have returned.*  
**ut maereat,** *that he will grieve.*  
**ut necēstur,** *that he will be killed.*

For the dependent Fut. Perf. Pass. Cicero says (Att. ix. 7, 2):

**Nōn dubito quin confecta jam res futūra sit,** *I do not doubt but the matter will have been settled by this time.*

In the absence of the Periphrastic forms, use the proper tenses of **posse.** (240, R. 3.)

3. When the preceding verb has a future character (Fear, Hope, Power, Will, and the like), the simple subjunctive is sufficient:

**Galli nisi perfregerint munitiōnēs dē omni salutē dēspērānt; Rōmāni si rem obtinuerint finem omnium laborum expectant.** CAES. *The Gauls despair of all safety unless they break through (shall have broken through) the fortifications; the Romans look forward to an end of all their toils, if they hold their own (shall have held).*

**Vēnerunt querentēs spem nullam esse resistendī nisi praesidium Rōmānus misisset.** LIV. *They came with the complaint that there was no hope of resistance unless the Roman sent a force to protect them.*

Of course the Deliberative Subjunctive is future: Examples, 258.

**516. Sequence of Tenses in Ōrātiō Obliqua:** In **Ōrātiō Obliqua** and kindred constructions, the attraction of tenses applies also to the representatives of the Future and Future Perfect Subjunctive.

In [scytalā] erat scriptum nisi domum reverterētur sē capitis eum damnātūrōs, *It was written in the scytale that if he did not return home, they would condemn him to death.* NEP. (Ōrātiō Recta: Nisi domum revertēris tē capitis damnābimus, unless you (shall) return home, we will condemn you to death.)

**Pythia praecēpit ut Miltiadem sibi imperātōrem sūmerent; id si fēcissent incepta prōspēra futūra.** NEP. *The Pythia instructed them to take Miltiades for their general; that if they did that, their undertakings would be successful.* (Ōrātiō Recta: si id fēcēritis, incepta prōspēra erunt.

**Lacedaemonii, Philippō minitante per litterās sē omnia quae cōnā-**

rentur (Ō. R., cōnābiminī) prohibētūrū, quaesivērunt num sē esset etiam morī prohibētūrus. (Ō. R., prohibēbis). CIC. *The Lacedaemonians, when Philip threatened them by letter, that he would prevent everything they undertook (should undertake), asked whether he was going to (would) prevent them from dying too.*

517. *Sequence of Tenses after the other Moods.*—The Imperative and the Present and Perfect Subjunctive have the Sequences of the Principal Tenses; the Imperfect and Pluperfect have the Sequences of the Historical Tenses.

[Nē] compōne comās quia sis ventūrus ad illam. OV. *Do not arrange (your) locks because (forsooth) you are going to see her.*

Excellentibus ingeniis citius dēfuerit ars quā civem regant quam quā hostem superent. LIV. *Great geniuses would be more likely to lack the skill to control the citizen than the skill to overcome the enemy.*

Quid mē prohibēret Epicūrēum esse, si probārem quae ille diceret? CIC. *What would prevent me from being an Epicurean if I approved what he said (says)?*

Tum ego tē primus hortārer diū pensitārēs quem potissimum eligerēs. PLIN. EP. *In that case I should be the first to exhort you to weigh long whom you should choose above all others.*

Quae vita Priamō fuisset, si ab adolescentiā scīssset quōs ēventūs senectūtis esset habitūrus? CIC. *What sort of life would Priam have led if he had known, from early manhood, what were to be the closing scenes of his old age?*

REMARKS.—1. Of course when the Perf. Subj. represents the Historical Perf. it takes the historical Sequence:

Magna culpā Pelopis quī nōn docuerit filium quātenus esset quidque cūrandum. CIC. *Greatly to blame is Pelops for not having taught his son how far each thing was to be cared for.*

So also in the conditional proposition, when the action is past. For varying conception, see CIC. Off. iii. 24.

2. The Imperfect Subjunctive, being used in opposition to the Present, might be treated as a Principal Tense, but the construction is less usual:

Verērer nē immodicam orātiōnem putārēs nisi esset generis ejus ut saepe incipere saepe dēsinere videātur. PLIN. EP. *I should be afraid of your thinking the speech of immoderate length, if it were not of such kind as to produce the effect of often beginning often ending.*

518. *Sequence of Tenses after an Infinitive or Participle.*—When a subordinate clause depends on an Infinitive or Participle, Gerund or Supine, the tense of that clause follows the tenses of the Finite verb.

Cupio scire, <i>I am desirous of knowing,</i>	quid agās,	<i>what you are doing.</i>	
	quid ēgeris,	<i>what you have done.</i>	
	quid actūrus sis,	<i>what you are going to do</i> <i>(will do).</i>	
Cupiebam scire, <i>I was desirous of knowing,</i>	quid agerēs,	<i>what you were doing.</i>	
	quid ēgissēs,	<i>what you had done.</i>	
	quid actūrus essēs,	<i>what you were going to do</i> <i>(would do).</i>	
Mihi interroganti, <i>when I ask him,</i> <i>(literally : to me asking),</i>	quid agat,	<i>what he is doing,</i>	nōn re- spondet, <i>he gives</i> <i>no an-</i> <i>swer.</i>
	quid ēgerit,	<i>what he has done,</i>	
	quid actūrus sit,	<i>what he is going</i> <i>to do (will do),</i>	
Mihi interroganti, <i>when I asked him,</i> <i>(literally : to me asking).</i>	quid ageret,	<i>what he was do-</i> <i>ing,</i>	nōn re- spondit, <i>he gave</i> <i>no an-</i> <i>swer.</i>
	quid ēgisset,	<i>what he had done,</i>	
	quid actūrus esset,	<i>what he was go-</i> <i>ing to do,</i>	

Apellēs pictōrēs eōs peccāre dicēbat quī nōn sentirent quid esset satis. CIC. *Apelles used to say that those painters blundered who did not perceive what was (is) enough.*

Athēniēnsēs Cysrillum quendam suādentem ut in urbe manerent lapidibus cōoperuērunt. CIC. (546.)

Cupido incessit animōs juvenum sciscitandi ad quem eōrum regnum Rōmānum esset ventūrum. LIV. *The minds of the young men were seized by the desire of inquiring to which of them the kingdom of Rome would come.*

Miserunt Delphōs consultum quid facerent. NEP. *They sent to Delphi to ask the oracle what they should do.*

EXCEPTION.—A Perfect Infinitive or Participle, dependent on a Present Tense, commonly takes the sequence of the Past Tenses :

Satis mihi multa verba fēcisse videor quārē esset hōc bellum necessārium. CIC. *I think I have said enough (to show) why this war is necessary.*

519. *The Potential of the Past.*—The Potential of the Past may depend on a Present Tense:

Video causās esse permultās quae Titum Roscium impellerent. CIC. *I see that there are very many causes which might have impelled Titus Roscius.*

Quaero ā tē cūr Gājum Cornēlium nōn dēfenderem. CIC. *I ask you why I was not to defend Gajus Cornelius.*

REMARK.—The Sequence of Tenses is not unfrequently deranged by the attraction of parenthetic clauses, or the shifting of the conception.

## USE OF THE REFLEXIVE IN SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

520. In subordinate clauses, the Reflexive is used with reference either to the subject of the principal, or to the subject of the subordinate, clause; and sometimes first to the one and then to the other.

521. The Reflexive is used of the principal subject when reference is made to the thought or will of that subject; hence, in Infinitive Sentences, in Indirect Questions, in Sentences of Design, and Sentences which partake of the Oblique Relation :

**Animus sentit sē vī suā, nōn aliēnā movērī.** CIC. *The mind feels that it moves by its own force, (and) not by that of another.*

**Quaesivērunt num sē esset etiam morī prohibitūrus.** CIC. (516.)

**Pompējus ā mē petivit ut sē cum et apud sē essem quōtidī.** CIC. *Pompey asked me to be with him, and at his house, daily.*

**Paetus omnēs librōs quōs frāter suus reliquisset mihi dōnāvit.** CIC. *Paetus presented to me all the books (as he said) that his brother had left (quōs frāter ējus reliquerat, would be the statement of the narrator).*

REMARKS.—1. Sentences of Tendency and Result have **is** :

**Tarquinius sic Servium diligēbat ut is ējus vulgō habērētur filius.** CIC. *Tarquinius loved Servius so that he was commonly considered his son.*

2. The Reflexive may refer to the real agent, and not to the grammatical subject of the principal clause :

**Ā Caesare invitor sibi ut sim lēgātus.** CIC. *I am invited by Caesar (= Caesar invites me) to be lieutenant to him.*

Especially to be noted is the freer use of **suis** (295, R. 1). The other forms are employed chiefly in reflexive formulae :

**Sui colligendi hostibus facultātem nōn relinquunt.** CAE. *They do not leave the enemy a chance to rally.*

So **sē recipere**, to withdraw.

3. The Reflexive is used in general sentences, as **one, oneself**, etc. :

**Dēforme est dē sē praedicāre.** CIC. *It is loathsome to be bragging about oneself.*

With the Infinitive this follows naturally from 420.

4. In Indicative Relative Sentences, which are mere circumlocutions (506), **is** is the rule :

**Sōcratēs inhonestam sibi crēdidit orātiōnem quam ei Lysias reō composuerat.** QUINT. *Socrates believed the speech which Lysias had composed for him when he was arraigned, dishonoring to him.*

Sometimes, however, the Reflexive is put contrary to the rule :

**Metellus in iis urbibus quae ad sē dēfēcērant praesidia impōnit.** SALL. *Metellus put garrisons in those towns which had gone over to him; regularly, ad eum.*

**Ille habet quod sibi dēbēbētur,** *He has his due; regularly, ei.*

5. Sometimes the Demonstrative is used instead of the Reflexive, because the narrator presents his point of view :

**Solōn, quō tūtior vīta ējus esset, furere sē simulāvit.** CIC. *Solon feigned madness, that his life might be the safer. (The notion of Result intrudes.)*



6. Examples of Reflexives pointing both ways:

**Rōmāni lēgātōs misērunt qui ā Prūsīā peterent nō inimicissimum s u m**  
(= **Rōmānōrum**) **apud s ē [Prūsiam] habēret.** NEP. *The Romans sent ambassadors to ask Prusias not to keep their bitterest enemy at his court.*

**Agrippa Atticum flens orābat atque obsecrābat ut s ē sibi suisque reservāret.** NEP. *Agrippa begged and conjured Atticus with tears to save himself [Atticus] for him [Agrippa] and for his own family [Atticus].*

Hopeless ambiguity:

**Hērēs meus damnās estō dare illi omnia sua.** QUINT. *My heir is to give him all that is his.*

7. For the sake of clearness, the subject of the leading sentence is not unfrequently referred to in the form of the Demonstrative instead of the Reflexive:

**Helvētiī Allobrogibus sēs persuāsūrōs existimābant vel vī coactūrōs ut per suōs finēs e ō s ire paterentur.** CAES. *The Helvetians thought that they would persuade or force the Allobroges to let them [the Helvetians] go through their territory.*

8. **Ipse** is always used in its proper distinctive sense: so when it represents the speaker in **Ō. O.**

### Ejus and Sui.

**522. Alexander moriens ānulum s u m dederat Perdiccāe,** *Alexander, [when] dying, had given his ring to Perdicas.*

**Perdiccās accēperat ē j u s ānulum,** *Perdicas had received his ring.*

**Quārē Alexander dēclārāverat s ē regnum eī commendāsse,** *Thereby, Alexander had declared that he had committed the kingdom to him.*

**Ex quō Perdiccās conjēcērat eum regnum sibi commendāsse,** *From this, Perdicas had gathered that he had committed the kingdom to him.*

**Ex quō omnēs conjēcērant eum regnum eī commendāsse,** *From this, all had gathered that he had committed the kingdom to him.*

**Perdiccās postulāvit ut s ē rēgem habērent quum Alexander ānulum sibi dedisset,** *Perdicas demanded that they should have him to king, as Alexander had given the ring to him.*

**Amicī postulāvērunt ut omnēs eum rēgem habērent quum Alexander ānulum eī dedisset,** (His) *friends demanded that all should have him to king, as Alexander had given the ring to him.* (Lattmann and Müller.)

**Ita s ē gesserat Perdiccās ut eī regnum ab Alexandrō commendārētur,** *Perdicas had so behaved himself that the kingdom was intrusted to him by Alexander.*

### OBJECT SENTENCES.

**523. Verbs of Doing, Perceiving, Conceiving, of Thinking and Saying, often take their object in the form of a sentence.**

REMARK.—These sentences are regarded, grammatically, as neuter substantives. The accusative of neuter substantives is employed as a Nominative. Hence, a Passive or Intransitive Verb may take an object sentence as a subject.

## I. OBJECT SENTENCES INTRODUCED BY QUOD.

524. Clauses which serve merely as periphrases (circumlocutions) of elements in the leading sentence are introduced by *quod, that*.

REMARKS.—1. The leading sentence often contains a demonstrative, such as *hōc, this; illud, id, that*; and then the whole structure may be considered as a relative.

As these sentences present difficulties to the beginner, it may be well to postpone the consideration to the Relative.

2. In some of the combinations, *quod* may be considered an adverbial accusative of extent. (Inner Object.) *Quod, in that* (= because).

525. *Quod* is used to introduce explanatory clauses chiefly after a Demonstrative, after verbs of Doing and Happening with an adverb, and after verbs of Adding and Dropping:

Here *quod* means "*the fact that*," "*the circumstance that*."

*Hōc sōlō propior q u o d amicōs conjugis ōdit.* JUV. *In this alone (is the wife) nearer (than a mere neighbor), that she hates the friends of her husband.*

*Nīl habet infēlix paupertās dūrius in sē quam q u o d (= id quod) ridiculōs hominēs facit.* JUV. *Unhappy poverty hath in itself nothing harder (to bear) than that it makes people ridiculous.*

*Magnum beneficium est nātūrae q u o d necesse est mori.* SEN. (195.)

*Quod spiro et placeō, sī placeō, tuum est.* HOR. *That I do breathe and please, if that I please, is thine.*

*Bene facis q u o d me adjuvās.* CIC. *You do well (in) that you help me.*

*Bene mihi ēvenit quod mittor ad mortem.* CIC. *It is fortunate for me that I am sent to death (execution).*

*Adde q u o d ingenuās didicisse fidēliter artēs ēmollit mōrēs nec sinit esse ferōs.* OV. *Add (the fact) that to have acquired faithfully the accomplishments (education) of a gentleman, softens the character, and does not let it be savage.*

On *nīl quod*, see 592, R. 3.

The reigning mood is the Indicative. The Subjunctive is only used as in *Ūrātio Obliqua*.

*Quum Castam accūsārem nihil magis pressī quam quod accūsātor ejus praevaricātiōnis crimine corruisset.* PLIN. EP. *When I accused Casta, there was no point that I laid more stress on than the fact (that I stated) "that her accuser had been crushed under a charge of collusion."*

REMARKS.—1. To this group belongs the exclamatory interrogation *Quid ? quod* or *quid quod* — ? *What of this, that ?*

*Quid quod simulac mihi collibitum est praestō est imāgo ?* CIC. *What is to be said of the fact that the image presents itself as soon as I see fit ? (Nay, does not the image present itself ?)*

2. A sentence with *quod* often precedes as an adverbial accusative :

*Quod mē Agamemnonem aemulārī putās falleris.* NER. *In that (if) you think that I am emulating Agamemnon, you are mistaken.*

3. With several of the above-mentioned verbs, *ut* can be employed, as well as *quod* (*ut*, of the tendency—*quod*, of the fact) :

*Ad Appii Claudii senectutem accēdēbat ut etiam caecus esset.* CIC. (558), or, *quod caecus erat.*

*Accēdit quod patrem plūs etiam quam ipse scit amo.* CIC. *Besides, I love the father even more than he himself knows.*

But when the action is prospective or conditional, *ut* must be used :

*Hūc accēdat ut perfecta virtūs sit.* SEN. *To this be added the perfect nature of virtue.*

4. Verbs of Emotion, such as Rejoicing, Sorrowing, etc., take *quod* with the Indicative or Subjunctive. See Causal Sentences, 540.

## II. OBJECT SENTENCES, WITH ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

526. *Preliminary Observation.*—On the simple infinitive as an object, see 424.

The Infinitive as a verbal predicate, has its subject in the Accusative. (421.)

REMARK.—The Accusative is the most general form of the noun ; the Infinitive (or rather the Indefinitive), the most general form of the verb. The two together give the outline, and not the details, of the thought—present an idea, and not a fact, as such. Compare 340.

527. Active verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing and Perceiving (*Verba sentiendī et dēclārandī\**), and similar expressions, take the Accusative and Infinitive :

*Thalēs Milēsius aquam dixit esse initium rērum,* *Thales of Miletus said that water was the first principle of things.*

*Solōn furere sē simulāvit.* CIC. *Solon pretended to be mad.*

\* *Verba sentiendī* are : video, audio, sentio, animadverto, scio, nēscio, intellego, perspicio, comperio, disco, memini, crēdo, arbitror, puto, suspicor, iūdico, cōnseco, dūco, concludo, spēro, dēspēro. Similar expressions are : spēs est, opinio est.

*Verba dēclārandī* are : ēdico, affirmo, nego, fateor, narro, trādo, scribo, nūntio, ostendo, dēmonstro, persuādeo (546, R. 2.) significo, polliceor, prōmitto, minor, simulo, dissimulo, etc. Similar expressions are : fāma est, auctor sum, testis sum, certiorē aliquem facio, etc.

**Medici causā morbi inventā cūratiōnem esse inventam putant.** CIC. *Physicians think that, (when) the cause of disease (is) discovered, the method of treatment is discovered.*

**Volucrēs vidēmus fingere et construere nidōs.** CIC. *We see that birds fashion and build nests.*

**Audiet civēs acuisse ferrum.** HOR. [The youth] *shall hear that citizens gave edge to steel.*

**Timagenēs auctor est omnium in litteris studiōrum antiquissimam mūsicōn exstitisse.** QUINT. *Timagenes is the authority (for the statement) that of all intellectual pursuits music was the most ancient.*

The sentence very often passes over into the Acc. and Inf. (Ō. O.) without any formal notice.

**REMARKS.**—1. Verbs of Perception and Representation take the Participle to express the actual condition of the object of Perception or Representation (536). As there is no Present Participle Passive the Infinitive must be used, and thus the difference between Intellectual and actual perception is effaced, sometimes even in the Active.

**Audio civēs acuentēs ferrum,** *I hear citizens sharpen(ing) the steel.*

**Audio ē civibus acui ferrum,** *I hear that the steel is sharpened by citizens; or, the steel as it is sharpened by citizens.*

**Octāvium dolōre confecti vidi.** CIC. *I have seen Octavius (when he was) wearing out with anguish.*

**Vidi histriōnēs flentēs egredi.** QUINT. *I have seen actors leave the stage weeping.*

**Notice facio,** *I make out, represent, suppose;*

**Plato ē Deō aedificāri mundum facit.** CIC. *Plato makes out that the universe is built by God.*

**Isocratem Plato laudāri fecit ē Sōcrate.** CIC. *Plato has represented Isocrates as praised by Socrates.*

**Fac, quaeso, quiesco sum esse te.** CIC. *Suppose, I pray, yourself to be me.*

2. When the subject of the Infinitive is a personal or reflexive pronoun, that subject is sometimes omitted—chiefly with Future Infinitive—and then **esse** also is dropped:

**Refractūrūs carcerem minābantur.** LIV. *They threatened to break open the jail.*

3. The simple Infinitive is often used in English, where the Latin takes Acc. and Inf. See 424, R. 3.

The (Greek) attraction of the predicate of the Inf. into the Nominative after the Verb of Saying or Thinking, is poetical:

**Phasēlus ille, quem vidētis, hospitēs, ait fuisse nāvium celerrimus.** CAT. *That pinnacle yonder, which you see, my stranger guests, declares she used to be the fastest craft afloat.*

4. When the Accusative with the Infinitive is followed by a dependent accusative, ambiguity may arise:

**Ājō tē, Aeacidā, Rōmānūs vincere posse,** in which **tē** may be subject or object.

Real ambiguity is to be avoided by giving the sentence a passive turn:

**Ājō ē tē, Aeacidā, Rōmānūs vinci posse,** *I affirm that the Romans can be conquered by thee, son of Aeacus.*

**Ājō tē, Aeacidā, ē Rōmānis vinci posse,** *I affirm that thou, son of Aeacus, canst be conquered by the Romans.*

When the context shows which is the real subject, formal ambiguity is of no importance. But see QUINT. vii. 9. 10.

## NOMINATIVE WITH INFINITIVE.

528. Passive verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving, prefer the personal construction, in which the Accusative Subject of the Infinitive appears as the Nominative Subject of the leading verb.

Active:

**Trādunt Homērum caecum fuisse**, *they say that Homer was blind.*

Passive:

**Trāditur Homērus caecus fuisse**, *Homer is said to have been blind.*

[**Trāditur Homērum caecum fuisse**], *it is said that Homer was blind.*

But when the leading verb is a form compounded with *esse*, to *be*, the impersonal construction is preferred:

**Trāditum est Homērum caecum fuisse.** CIC. *There is a tradition that Homer was blind.*

**Aristaeus inventor olei fuisse dicitur.** CIC. *Aristaeus is said to have been the inventor of oil.*

**Terenti (29, R. 1.) fabulae propter elegantiam sermonis putābantur ā Laeliō scribi.** CIC. *Terence's plays, on account of the elegance of the language, were thought to be written by Laelius.*

**Si Vējōs migrābimus ā misisse patriam vidēbimur.** LIV. *If we remove to Veji, we shall seem to have lost our country.*

**Reus damnātum iri vidēbātur.** QUINT. (436, R. 2.)

But:

**Venerem Adōnidi nūpsisse prōditum est.** CIC. *It is recorded that Venus married Adonis.*

**Crēditur Pŷthagorae audītōrem fuisse Numam.** CIC. *It is believed that Numa was a hearer of Pythagoras.*

REMARK.—In Verbs of Saying, except *dico*, the personal construction is confined to the third person. The poets are free in treating verbs under this head.

## TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE AFTER VERBA SENTIENDI ET DECLARANDI

529. The Infinitive denotes only the stage of the action, and determines only the relation to the time of the leading verb (274).

530. After verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving, and the like,

The Present Infinitive expresses contemporaneous action ;

The Perfect Infinitive expresses prior action ;

The Future Infinitive expresses future action.

REMARK.—The action which is completed with regard to the leading verb may be in itself a continued action. So in English : *I have been studying, I had been studying.* Hence, the Imperfect Indicative (*I was studying*) is represented in this dependent form by the Perfect Infinitive, because it is prior to the leading verb.

☞ In this table the Present is taken as the type of the Principal, the Imperfect as the type of the Historical, Tenses.

531. ACTIVE. Contemporaneous Action. PASSIVE

P. T. *Dicit* : *tē errāre*, *tē dēcipl*,  
*He says, that you are going wrong,* *that you are deceived* (217, R.).

H. T. *Dicēbat* : *tē errāre*, *tē dēcipl*,  
*He was saying, that you were going wrong,* *that you were deceived,*

Prior Action.

P. T. *Dicit* : *tē errāsse*, *tē dēceptum esse*,  
*He says, that you have gone wrong,* *that you have been (are) deceived,*  
*that you went wrong,* *that you were deceived* (AOR.),  
*that you have been going wrong,* *(that people have been deceiving you).*

H. T. *Dicēbat* : *tē errāsse*, *tē dēceptum esse*,  
*He was saying, that you had gone wrong,* *that you had been deceived.*  
*that you went wrong,* *that you were deceived* (AOR.),  
*that you had been going wrong,* *(that people had been deceiving you).*

Subsequent Action.

P. T. *Dicit* : *tē errātūrum esse*, *tē dēceptum iri*,  
*He says, that you (are about to go wrong), will (be) go(ing) wrong,* *that you (are going to) will be deceived.*

H. T. *Dicēbat* : *tē errātūrum esse*, *tē dēceptum iri*,  
*He was saying, that you were about to (would) go wrong,* *that you were going to (would) be deceived.*

Periphrastic Future.

The following form (the *Periphrastic Future*) is necessary when the Verb has no Supine or Future Participle. It is often used from other verbs to intimate an interval, which cannot be expressed by other forms, and is more common in the Passive than the Future Passive Inf. of the paradigms.

ACTIVE.	Periphrastic Future.	PASSIVE.
P. T. <b>Dicit</b> : fore (futūrum esse) ut errēs (metuās), fore (futūrum esse) ut errā- veris* (rare),	fore ut dēcipiāris (metuāris), fore ut dēceptus sis (rare), usually. dēceptum fore (not futūrum esse).	
H. T. <b>Dicēbat</b> : fore ut errārēs (metuerēs), errāssēs (rare),	fore ut dēciperēris (metuerē- ris), dēceptum fore (rarely : fore ut dēceptus essēs).	

REMARKS.—1. For examples of the Periphrastic, see 240.

**Carthaginiensēs dēbellātum mox fore rēbantur.** LIV. *The Carthaginians thought that the war would soon be brought to an end.* From **dēbellātum erit**, it will be (have been) brought to an end. So in the deponent **adēptum fore**.

2. **Posse, velle**, etc., do not require the Periphrastic, and seldom take it. (240, R. 3.)

## ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE WITH VERBS OF WILL AND DESIRE.

532. Verbs of Will and Desire take a dependent Accusative and Infinitive :

The relation is that of an Object to be Effected :

**Si vis mē flere, dolendum est primum ipsi tibi.** HOR. *If you wish me to weep, you must first feel the pang yourself.*

**Utrum Milōnis corporis an Pŷthagorae tibi mālīs virēs ingenii dari?** CIC. *Which (whether) would you rather have given to you, Milo's strength of body or Pythagoras' strength of mind?*

**Ipse jubet mortis nōs meminisse Deus.** MART. (375, 3.)

**Vitae summa brevis spem nōs vetat incohāre longam.** HOR. (424, R. 3.)

**Nemo ire quenquam publicā prohibet viā.** PLAUT. (387.)

**Germāni vinum ad sē omnino importāri nōn sinunt.** CAES. *The Germans do not permit wine to be imported into their country at all.*

REMARKS.—1. On the construction of this class of verbs with **ut** (**nē, quōminus**), see 546. **Impero, I command**, in ordinary prose takes only the Passive Infinitive :

**Hannibal imperāvit quam plurimās venēnātās serpentēs vivās colligi.** NEP. *Hannibal ordered as many poisonous serpents as possible to be caught alive.*

**Permitto** seldom takes the Infinitive. **Jubeo, I bid** ; **sino, I let** ; **veto, I forbid** ; **prohibeo, I prohibit**, always have the Infinitive of Passive Verbs. These verbs may themselves be turned into the Passive : **jubeor, sinor, vetor, prohibeor**.

\* Heavy periphrastics are of rare occurrence. So **Fētiālēs dēcrēvērunt utrum eōrum fēcisset rectē factūrum** (LIV. xxxi. 8) ; not **fore ut fēcisset**, although the O. R. requires **utrum fēcieris, rectē fēcieris**. (223, R. 4.) See Weissenborn's note.

2. After *jubeo*, *I bid*, and *veto*, *I forbid*, the Infinitive Active can be used without an imaginary or indefinite subject:

*Jubet reddere*, *he bids return (orders the returning)*.

*Vetat adhibere medicinam*, *he forbids the administration of medicine*.

*Infandum, rēgina, jubēs renovāre dolōrem*. VERG. *Not meet for speech, O queen, the anguish which you bid (me, us) revive*.

3. When the subject of the Infinitive is the same as the subject of the leading verb, the subject of the Infinitive is not necessarily expressed:

*NI pārēre vellis, pereundum erit ante lucernās*. JUV. *Unless you resolve to obey, you will have to perish before candle-light*.

*Et jam mālisset equōs nunquam tetigisse paternōs*. OV. *And now he could have wished rather never to have touched his father's horses*.

But the subject may be expressed, and commonly is expressed, when the action of the Infinitive is not within the power of the subject:

*Timoleōn māluit sē diligī quam metui*. NRP. *Timoleon preferred that he should be loved rather than that he should be feared*.

*Et fugit ad salicēs et sē cupit ante vidēri*. VERG. *And flees to the willows, and desires that she should first be seen*.

4. The poets go much further in using verbs and phrases as expressions of Will and Desire. See 424, R. 4.

## ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE WITH VERBS OF EMOTION.

533. Verbs of Emotion take a dependent Accusative and Infinitive, inasmuch as these verbs may be considered as verbs of Saying and Thinking:

*Salvum tē advēnisse gaudeo*, *I rejoice that you should have arrived safe (to think that you have arrived safe, at your arriving safe)*.

*Quod salvus advēnistī*, *that you have arrived safe*.

*Quod salvus advēneris*, *that (as you say) you have arrived safe*.

*Glōriātur Epicūrus sē nōn tōtō asse pasci*. SEN. *Epicurus brags of dining for not quite one copper*. See 541.

## ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS.

534. The Accusative with the Infinitive is used in Exclamations and Exclamatory Questions as the object of an unexpressed thought or feeling:

*Hem, mea lūx, tē nunc, mea Terentia, sic vexārī*. CIC. (341.)

*Homīnemne Rōmānum tam Graecō loquī?* PLIN. EP. *A Roman speak such good Greek? (To think that a Roman should speak such good Greek)*.

*Mēne inceptō dēsistere—?* VERG. *I—desist from my undertaking?*

*Hinc abire mātrem?* TER. *Mother go away from here?*

REMARKS.—1. Different is *quod*, which gives the ground:

*Hei mihi quod nullis amor est medicābilis herbis*. OV. *Woe's me that (in that, because) love is not to be cured by any herbs*.

2. On *ut*, with the subjunctive, in a similar sense, see 560. Both forms object.



## THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE AS A SUBJECT.

535. The Accusative with the Infinitive may be the Subject of a sentence. The Predicate is a substantive or neuter adjective, an impersonal verb or abstract phrase.

**Inūsitātum est rēgem capitis reum esse.** CIC. *It is an extraordinary thing that a king should (for a king to) be tried for his life.*

**Facinus est vinciri cīvem Rōmānū.** CIC. *It is an outrage that a Roman citizen should be put in chains.*

**Necesse est facere sūmptum quī quaerit (= eum quī quaerit) lucrum.** PLAUT. *Need is that he make outlay who an income seeks.*

**Lēgem brevem esse oportet, quō facilius ab imperitis teneātur.** SEN. *It is proper that a law should be brief (a law ought to be brief), that it may the more easily be grasped by the uneducated.*

**Quid Milōnis intererat interfici Clōdium.** CIC. (382.)

**Opus est tē animō valēre.** CIC. (390, R.)

REMARKS.—1. **Oportet**, *it behooves*, and **necesse est**, *must needs*, are often used with the Subjunctive. So also many other phrases with **ut**. (See 559.)

**Necesse** also takes the Dative of the Person :

**Homini necesse est mori.** *Man must needs die.*

**Ut culpent alii, tibi mē laudāre necesse.** OV. *Let others blame, but you must give me praise.*

2. When the indirect object of the leading verb is the same as the subject of the Infinitive, the predicate of the subject is put in the case of the object: in standard prose chiefly with **licet**, *it is left (free)*; in poetry and later prose with **necesse**, with **satius est**, *it is better*, **contingit**, *it happens*, **vacat**, *there is room* :

**Mihi negligenti esse nōn licet,** *I am not free to be negligent.*

The Accusative may also be used :

**Mihi negligentem esse nōn licet.**

The Accusative is regularly used when the Dative is not expressed :

**Negligentem esse nōn licet,** *One is not free to be negligent.*

In poetry, the Dative is allowable even then :

**Negligenti esse licet.**

**Sōlus erō quoniam nōn licet esse tuō.** PROP. *I shall be alone, since I may not be thine.* On **licet** with the subjunctive, see 608.

## OBJECT SENTENCES REPRESENTED BY THE PARTICIPLE.

536. The Participle is used after verbs of Perception and Representation, to express the actual condition of the object of perception or representation :

**Catōnem vidī in bibliothēcā sedentem multis Stōicōrum circumfūsum libris.** CIC. *I saw Cato sitting in the library with an ocean of Stoic books about him.*

**Prōdiga nōn sentit pereuntem fēmina cēsum. JUV.** *The lavish woman does not perceive (how) the income (is) dwindling.*

**Saepe illam audivi furtivā vōce loquentem.** CAT. *I have often heard her talking in a stealthy tone.*

**Gaudē quod spectant oculi tē mille loquentem. HOR. (542.)**

**Polyphēmum Homērus cum ariete colloquentem facit. Cic.**  
*Homer represents Polyphemus (as) talking with the ram.*

REMARK.—On the Infinitive, see 527. R. 1. The Greek participle agreeing with the leading Nominative after verbs of Perception and Emotion, is rare and poetical:

**Sensit mediōs dēlapsus in hostēs.** VERG. *He perceived (it) having fallen (that he had fallen) 'midst the enemy.*

**Gaudent perfusi sanguine frātrum.** VERG. *Rejoice, bedrenched with brothers' blood.*

**537.** The Perfect Participle Passive is used after verbs of Causation and Desire, to denote impatience of anything except entire fulfillment:

**Caligula Lolliam missam fēcit.** Suet. *Caligula turned Lollia off*  
(for good and all).

**Prudenti mandēs si quid rectē cūrātum velis. TER.** *You must intrust to a sensible man whatever you want properly attended to.*

REMARK.—After verbs of Will and Desire, the Infinitive *esse* is occasionally found with these Participles, and hence they may be considered as Perfect Infinitives (275). Compare, however, Perfect Participle Passive with *opus est*, *usus est*. (390.)

### CAUSAL SENTENCES.

**538. Causal sentences are introduced:**

1. By **Quia**, *because*, **quod**, (*in that*) *because*.
2. By **Quoniam** (*quom iam*), *now that*, **quando**, **quandō** } (Cause  
**quidem**, *since* (rarely in this sense). } Proper.)

3. By Quum, *as*. (Inference.)

4. By the Relative Pronoun, partly alone, partly with *ut*, *utpote*, *quippe*, etc. (See 626, 634.)

REMARKS.—**Quia** and **quod** differ chiefly in that **quod** is used, and not **quia**, when the causal sentence is at the same time an object sentence. **Quod** is the Acc. Neut. Sing., **quia** the Acc. Neut Pl. of **qui**, and often have a correlative demonstrative, such as, **eō, idēō, idcircoē, therefore, proptereaē, on that account.**

**Quoniam** and **quando** (**quandōquidem**) are used of evident, present reasons; but **quando** (**quandōquidem**) is rare in any other than a temporal sense. Temporal conjunctions are often used causally.

## CAUSAL SENTENCES WITH QUIA, QUOD, AND QUONIAM.

**539.** Causal sentences with **quia**, **quod**, and **quoniam** are put in the Indicative, except in oblique relation (Partial or Total).

REMARK.—The other person of the oblique clause may be imaginary, and the writer or speaker may quote from himself indirectly:

*Laetātus sum quod mihi liceret recta defendere.* CIC. *I was glad that I was free to champion the right.*

540. Causal sentences with *quia*, *quod*, and *quoniam* take the Indicative in Direct Discourse:

*Amantēs dē formā iudicāre nōn possunt, quia sensum oculōrum praecepit animus.* QUINT. *Lovers cannot judge of beauty, because the heart foretells the eye.*

*Quia nātūra mutārī nōn potest idcirco vērae amicitiae sempiternae sunt.* CIC. *Because nature cannot change, therefore true friendships are everlasting.*

*Torquātus filium suum quod is contrā imperium in hostem pugnāverat necārī iussit.* SALL. *Torquatus bade his son to be put to death because he had fought against the enemy contrary to order(s) [quod pugnasset = because, as Torquatus said or thought].*

*Neque mē vixisse paenitet quoniam ita vixi ut nōn frūstrā mē nātum existimem.* CIC. *And I am not sorry for having lived, since I have so lived that I think I was born not in vain.*

*Sōlus erō quoniam nōn licet esse tuō.* PROP. (535, R. 2.)

*Erant quibus appetentior fāmae Helvidius vidērētur quando etiam sapientibus cupido glōriae novissima exuitur.* TAC. *There were some to whom Helvidius seemed too eager for fame, since, even from the wise, ambition is the last (infirmity) that is put off.*

541. Causal sentences with *quia*, *quod*, and *quoniam* take the Subjunctive in Oblique Discourse (Partial or Total).

*Nootū ambulābat in forō Themistoclēs quod somnum capere nōn posset.* CIC. *Themistocles used to walk about in the market-place at night because (as he said) he could not get to sleep.*

*Quae quia nōn liceat nōn facit, illa facit.* OV. *She who does it not because (she thinks, forsooth) she may not (do it), does it.*

Elsewhere: *quae quia nōn licuit nōn facit, illa facit.*

[Nē] compōne comās quia sis ventūrus ad illam. OV. (517.)

*Quoniam ipse prō sē dicere nōn posset, verba fecit frāter ejus Stēsagorās.* NEP. *As [Miltiades] could not speak for himself," his brother, Stesagoras, made a speech.* (Indirect quotation from the speech of Stesagoras.)

REMARKS.—1. *Nōn quod*, *nōn quia*, are used with the Indicative or Subjunctive, according to the general rule. The Indicative denies absolutely,\* the Subjunctive rejects

\* That the Indicative is used *only* of excluded facts is not borne out by the usage of the language from LUCR. ii. 2, to TAC. ANN. xiii. 1.

an imaginary suggestion (as if from an ideal second person). The real ground often follows with *sed quia, sed quod*.

The Subjunctive is more common than the Indicative with *nōn quod, nōn quia. Nōn quod = nōn quod*, and *nōn quia = nōn quod nōn*, are found with the Subjunctive only.

Subjunctive:

*Pugilēs in iactandis caestibus ingemiscunt. nōn quod doleant, sed quia profundē vōce omne corpus intenditur venitque plāga vehementior.* CIC. *Boxers in plying the caestus heave groans, not that (as you might suppose) they are in pain, but because in giving full vent to the voice all the body is put to the stretch, and the blow comes with a greater rush.*

*Mājorēs nostrī in dominum dē servō quaerī nōluerunt; nōn quia posset vērū inveniri, sed quia vidēbatur indignum esse.* CIC. *Our ancestors would not allow a slave to be questioned by torture against his master, not because (not as though, they thought,) the truth could not be got at, but because such a course seemed degrading.*

*A Lacedaemoniorū exilibus praetor vim arcuerat, nōn quia salvōs vellet sed quia perire causā indictā nōlēbat.* LIV. *The praetor had ward off violence from the Lacedaemonian exiles, not (as you might have supposed) because he wished them to escape, but because he did not wish them to perish with their case not pleaded (unheard).*

The same principle applies to *magis quod (quod), quia . . . sed quod, quia*, with the moods in inverse order.

*Libertātis originem inde, magis quia annum imperium consulāre factum est quam quod dēminūtum quidquam sit ex rēgiā potestāte, ēnumerēs.* LIV. *You may begin to count the origin of liberty from that point, rather because the consular government was limited to a year, than because aught was taken away from the royal power.*

Indicative:

*Sum nōn dicam miser, sed certē exercitus, nōn quia multis dēbeo sed quia saepe concurrunt.* CIC. *I am, I will not say, wretched, but certainly worried, not because I am in debt to many, but because they (their claims) often conflict.*

2. Verbs of Saying and Thinking are put in the subjunctive with *quod* by a kind of attraction:

*Impetrāre nōn potui, quod religiōne sē impediri dicerent.* CIC. *I could not obtain permission, because they said they were embarrassed (prevented) by a religious scruple (= quod impedirentur, because (as they said) they were prevented).*

3. Causal sentences may be represented by a Participle. (872.)

## QUOD WITH VERBS OF EMOTION.

542. *Quod* is used to give the ground of Emotions and Expressions of Emotion, such as Verbs of Joy and Sorrow, Satisfaction and Anger, Praise and Blame, Thanks and Complaint.

The rule for the Mood has been given already.

Indicative:

*Gaudē quod spectant oculi tē mille loquentem.* HOR. *Rejoice that a thousand eyes are gazing at you (while you are) speaking.*

*Dolet mihi quod tū nunc stomachāris.* CIC. *It pains me that you are angry now.*

**Quintum paenitet quod animum tuum offendit.** CIC. (376. R.)

**Juvat mē quod vident studia.** PLIN. EP. *I am charmed that studies are flourishing.*

**Tristis es ? indignor quod sum tibi causa doloris.** OV. *Are you sad ? I am provoked (with myself) that I am a cause of pain to you.*

**Tibi grātiās ago, quod mē omni molestiā liberās.** CIC. *I thank you, that you free me from all annoyance.*

Subjunctive :

**Gaudet miles quod vicerit hostem.** OV. *The soldier rejoices at having conquered the enemy.*

**Nunquam mihi in mentem veniet paenitere quod ā mē ipse nōn dē-sciverim.** CIC. *It will never occur to me to be sorry for not having been untrue to myself.*

**Laudat Panaetius Africānum quod fuerit abstinens.** CIC. *Panaetius praises (Scipio) Africanus for having been abstinent.*

**Nemo orātorem admirātus est quod Latinē loqueretur.** CIC. *No one (ever) admired an orator for speaking (good) Latin.*

**Sōcratēs accūsātus est quod corrumpere juvenutem.** QUINT. *Socrates was accused of corrupting youth.*

**Memini glōriārī solitum esse Quintum Hortensium quod nunquam bellō civili interfuisset.** CIC. *I remember that Quintus Hortensius used to boast of never having engaged in civil war.*

**Agunt grātiās quod sibi pepercissent.** CAES. (511, R. 1.)

REMARK.—All these verbs may be construed with the Accusative and Infinitive: **Salvum tē advenisse gaudeo.** (533.) But in Expressions of Praise and Blame, Thanks and Complaint, **quod** is more common.

**Amō tē et nōn neglexisse habeo grātiām.** TER. *I love you (= much obliged), and I am thankful to you for not having neglected (it).*

**Grātulor ingenium nōn latuisse tuum.** OV. *I congratulate (you) that your genius has not lain perdu.*

**Isocratēs queritur plūs honoris corporum quam animōrum virtutibus dari.** QUINT. *Isocrates complains that more honor is paid to the virtues of the body than to those of the mind.*

On **cum**, see 566.

#### SENTENCES OF DESIGN AND TENDENCY.

543. 1. Sentences of Design are commonly called Final Sentences. Sentences of Tendency are commonly called Consecutive Sentences. Both contemplate the end—the one, as an aim ; the other, as a consequence.

2. They are alike in having the Subjunctive and the particle **ut** (*how, that*), a relative conjunction.

3. They differ in the Tenses employed. The Final Sentence,

as a rule, takes only the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive. Consecutive Sentences may take also Perfect and Pluperfect.

4. They differ in the kind of Subjunctive employed. The Final Sentence takes the Optative. The Consecutive Sentence takes the Potential. Hence the difference in the Negative:

<i>Final</i> : <i>nē</i> (ut <i>nē</i> ),	<i>Consecutive</i> : ut <i>nōn</i> , <i>that not</i> .
<i>nē quis</i> ,	ut <i>nēmo</i> , <i>that no one</i> .
<i>nē ullus</i> ,	ut <i>nullus</i> , <i>that no</i> .
<i>nē unquam</i> , ( <i>nē quando</i> ),	ut <i>nunquam</i> , <i>that never</i> .
<i>nē usquam</i> , ( <i>nēcubi</i> ),	ut <i>nusquam</i> , <i>that nowhere</i> .
<i>nē aut—aut</i> , (ut <i>nēve—nēve</i> ),	ut <i>neque—neque</i> , <i>that neither</i> <i>—nor</i> .

REMARKS.—1. Verbs of Effecting have the Final Sequence.

2. Verbs of Hindering have the sequences of the Final Sentence, but often the signification of the Consecutive.

3. Verbs of Fearing belong to the Final Sentence only so far as they have the Optative.

## FINAL SENTENCES.

544. Final Sentences are divided into two classes:

I. Final Sentences in which the Design is expressed by the particle: Sentences of Design.

*Esse oportet ut vivās, nōn vivere ut edās.* [Cic.] *You must eat in order to live, not live in order to eat.*

This form may be translated by, (*in order*) *to*; sometimes by, *that may, might, that* with the subj., and the like.

II. Final Sentences in which the Design lies in the leading Verb (*Verba studii et voluntātis*, Verbs of Will and Desire): Complementary Final Sentences.

*Volo uti mihi respondeās.* Cic. *I wish you to answer me.*

This form is often rendered by *to*, never by *in order to*, sometimes by *that* and the subjunctive, or some equivalent.

Partly Final and partly Consecutive are:

III. Verbs of Hindering.

Peculiar in their sequence are:

IV. Verbs of Fearing.

REMARKS.—1. Temporal Particles are often used in a final sense. So *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad* (574), *antequam*, *priusquam* (579).

2. The general sense of a Final Sentence may be expressed :

1.) By the Genitive of Gerund or Gerundive, with (seldom without) *causā* or *gratiā*. (429, R. 2.)

2.) By *ad* with Gerund and Gerundive. (433.)

3.) By the Accusative Supine after Verbs of Motion. (436.)

4.) By the Future Participle Active (later Latin):

*Maroboduus misit lēgātōs ad Tiberium ōrātūrōs auxilia*, *Marbod sent commissioners to Tiberius, to beg for reinforcements.*

### I. Sentences of Design.

545. Sentences of Design are introduced by:

1. *Ut* (*utī*) (*how*) *that*, and other Relative Pronouns and Adverbs (631).

*Ut* is often preceded by a demonstrative expression, such as : *idcirco*, *therefore* ; *eō*, *on that account* ; *eō consiliō*, *with the design* .

2. *Quō* = *ut eō*, *that thereby* ; with comparatives, *that the . . . — . . .* :

3. *Nē*, *that not, lest*, continued by *nēve*, *neu*. (450.)

REMARK.—Other particles are of limited use. So *ut nē* cannot follow verbs of negative signification ; *quōminus* is used with Verbs of Hindering ; *quān* requires a preceding negative besides.

*Esse oportet ut vivās, nōn vivere ut edās*. [CIC.] *You must eat to live, not live to eat.*

*Inventa sunt specula, ut homo sē ipse nōsceret*. SEN. *Mirrors were invented, to make man acquainted with himself.*

*Ut amēris, amābilis estō*. OV. *That you may be loved (to make yourself loved, in order to be loved), be lovable.*

*Lēgem brevem esse oportet, quō facilius ab imperitis teneātur* SEN. *A law ought to be brief, that it may the more easily be grasped by the uneducated.*

*Senex serit arborēs, quae alteri sēculō prōsint*. CIC. *The old man sets out trees, to do good to the next generation.*

*Semper habē Pyladēn, quī consōlētur Orestēn*. OV. *Always have a Pylades, to console Orestes.*

*Artaxerxēs Themistocli Magnēsiam urbem dōnāverat, quae ei pānem praebēret*. NEP. *Artaxerxes had given Themistocles the city of Magnesia, to furnish him with bread.*

*Gallinae pennīs foveant pullōs, nē frigore laedantur*. CIC. *Hens keep (their) chickens warm with (their) wings, that they may not be (to keep them from being) hurt by the cold.*

*Dionysius nē collum tonsōri committeret tondēre filiās suās docuit*. CIC. (424, R. 3.)

REMARK.—*Ut nōn* is used when a particular word is negated:

Confer tē ad Mallium, ut nōn ēiectus ad aliēnōs sed invitātus ad tuōs esse videāris. CīC. *Bestake yourself to Mallius, that you may seem not thrust out to strangers, but invited to your own (friends).*

## II. Complementary Final Sentences.

546. Complementary Final Sentences follow Verbs of Willing and Wishing, of Warning and Beseeching, of Urging and Demanding, of Resolving and Endeavoring, of Forcing and Permitting (*Verba studiī et voluntātis*).\*

POSITIVE : *Ut*.

*Volo uti mihi respondeās. CīC. I wish you to answer me.*

*Phaēthōn ut in currum patris tollerētur optāvit. CīC. Phaethon desired to be lifted up into his father's chariot.*

*Admoneo ut quotidīē meditōre resistendum esse irācundiae. CīC. I admonish you to reflect daily that resistance must be made to hot-headedness.*

*Et precor ut possim tūtius esse miser. Ov. (424.)*

*Exigis ut Priamus nātōrum fūnere lūdat. Ov. You exact that Priam sport at (his) sons' funeral.*

*Athēniensēs quum statuerent ut nāvēs conscenderent, Cyrsilum quendam suādentem ut in urbe manērent lapidibus cooperuērunt. CīC. The Athenians, resolving to embark on board their ships, covered with stones (= stoned) one Cyrsilus, who tried to persuade them to remain in the city.*

*Pūblium Lentulum ut sē abdicāret praetūrā cōēgistis. CīC. You forced Publius Lentulus to resign the praetorship.*

*Illud nātūra nōn patitur, ut aliōrum spoliis nōstrās cōpiās augeāmus. CīC. Nature does not allow us to increase our wealth by the spoils of others.*

So also any verb or phrase used as a verb of Willing or Demanding :

*Pythia respondit ut moenibus ligneis sē mūnirent. NEP. The Pythia answered that they must defend themselves with walls of wood.*

So *eā lēge, eā condiōne ut (nē)*, on condition that (that not).

Negative : *Nē, ut nē.*

\* Such verbs and phrases are: *ōro, rogo, peto, precor, obsecro, flāgito, postulo, cūro, video, prōvideo, prōspicio, — suādeo, persuādeo, cōseuo, hortor, adhortor, moneo, admoneo, permoveo, addūco, incito, impello, cōgo, — impero, mando, praecipio, ēdico dīco, scībo, mitto, — concēdo, permitto (sino), — statuo, constituo and dēcerno, — volo nōlo, mālo, opto, studeo, nitor, contendo, elaboro, pugno, — id ago, operam do, lēge, fero, lēx est, auctor sum, consilium dō.*



Caesar suis imperāvit nē quod omninō tēlum in hostēs rājicerent. CAES. Caesar gave orders to his (men) not to throw back any missile at all at the enemy.

Themistoclēs collēgis suis praedixit ut nē prius Lacedaemoniōrum lēgātōs dīmitterent quam ipse esset remissus. NEP. Themistocles told his colleagues beforehand not to dismiss the Lacedaemonian envoys before he were sent back.

Ut nē is not used after verbs of negative signification, such as *impedio*, *I hinder*, *refuso*, *I refuse*. (548.)

Pompējus suis praedixerat ut Caesaris impetum exciperent nēve sē locō movērent. CAES. Pompey had told his men beforehand to receive Caesar's charge and not to move from their position.

Neque is sometimes used after ut:

Monitor tuus suādēbit tibi ut hinc discēdās neque mihi ullum verbum respondeās. CIC. Your adviser will counsel you to depart hence and answer me never a word.

REMARKS.—1. Instead of *ut* with the Subjunctive, the Infinitive is frequently used with this class of verbs. So, generally, with *jubeo*, *I order*, 532. Authors vary. The use of the Infinitive is wider in poetry and silver prose.

2. When verbs of Willing and Wishing are used as verbs of Saying and Thinking, Knowing and Showing, the Infinitive must be used. The English translation is *that*, and the Indicative: *volo*, *I will have it* (maintain), *monéo*, *I remark*, *persuādeo*, *I convince*, *dēcerno*, *I decide*, *cōgo*, *I conclude*.

*Moneo artem sine assiduitate dicendi nōn multum juvāre*. CIC. I remark that art without constant practice in speaking is of little avail.

*Vix cuiquam persuādēbātur Graeciā omni cessūrōs Rōmānōs*. LIV. Scarce any one could be persuaded that the Romans would retire from all Greece.

*Nōn sunt isti audiendi qui virtutem dūram et quasi ferream quandam esse volunt*. CIC. (300.)

*Est mōs hominū ut nōlint eundem plūribus rēbus excellere*. CIC. It is the way of the world not to allow that the same man excels in more things (than one).

3. When the idea of Wishing is emphatic, the simple Subjunctive, without *ut*, is employed, and the restriction of sequence to Present and Imperfect is removed:

*Existimēs velim nēmīnem cuiquam cārīōrem unquam fuisse quam tē mihi*. CIC. I wish you to think that no one was ever dearer to anyone than you to me.

*Mālo tē sapiens hostis metuat quam stulti civēs laudent*. LIV. I had rather a wise enemy should fear you than foolish citizens should praise you.

*Excūsātum habēis mē rogo, cēno domi*. MART. (230.)

*Hūc ades, insāni feriant sine littora fluctūs*. VERG. Come hither (and) let the mad waves lash the shores.

*Tam fēlix essēs quam formōsissima vellem*. OV. (316.)

*Nōllem dixissem*. CIC. (254, R. 2.)

*Occidit occideritque sinās cum nōmine Trōjam*. VERG. 'Tis fallen, and let Troy be fallen name and all.

So *jubeo* in poetry and later prose. Compare also *potius quam*, 579, R.

III. *Verbs of Hindering.*

547. The dependencies of Verbs of Hindering may be regarded as partly Final, partly Consecutive. **Nē** and **quōminus** are originally final, but the final sense is often effaced, especially in **quōminus**. **Quin** is a consecutive particle. The sequence of Verbs of Hindering is that of the Final Sentence.

The negative often disappears in the English translation.

548. Verbs signifying to Prevent, to Forbid, to Refuse, and to Beware, take **nē** with the Subjunctive :

**Impedior nē plūra dicam.** CIC. *I am hindered from saying more (I am hindered that I should say no more).*

Compare: "Who did hinder you that ye should not obey the truth?" Gal. v. 7.

**Servitūs mea mihi interdixit nē quid mirer meum malum.** PLAUT. *My slavery has forbidden me to marvel aught at (329, R. 1.) ill of mine.*

**Histiaeus obstitit nē rēs conficeretur.** NEP. *Histiaeus opposed the thing being done.*

**Rēgulus nē sententiam diceret recūsavit.** CIC. *Regulus refused to pronounce an opinion.*

**Maledictis dēterrere nē scribat parat.** TER. (424.)

**Tantum quum fingēs nē sis manifesta cavētō.** OV. (264.)

**Tantum nē noceās dum vīs prōdesse vidētō.** OV. *Only see (to it) that you do not do harm while you wish to do good.*

REMARKS.—1. Verbs of Preventing also take **quōminus** (549), and some of them the Infinitive (532, R. 1). So regularly **prohibere** :

**Nemo ire quenquam publicā prohibet viā.** PLAUT. (387.)

**Impedire, to hinder, dēterrere, to frighten off, recūsare, to refuse,** sometimes have the Infinitive.

2. Verbs signifying to Beware belong to Verbs of Hindering only so far as action is contemplated.

After **caveo, I beware, nē** is often omitted :

**Cavē crēdās.** *Beware of believing.*

(**Cavē ut crēdās.** *Be sure to believe.*)

**Quōs viceris tibi amicos esse cavē crēdās.** CURT. *Do not believe that those whom you have conquered are friends to you.*

549. **Quōminus** (= **ut eō minus**), *that thereby the less*, is used with verbs of Preventing :

Such as : **impedire, to hinder ; prohibere, to keep from ; tenere, to hold ; dēterrere, to frighten off ; obstare, to be in the way ; recūsare, to refuse ;** and the like :

**Aetās nōn impedit quōminus agrī colendī studia teneāmus.** CIC. *Age does not hinder our retaining interest in agriculture.*

**Nōn dēterret sapientem mors quōminus rei pūblicae (347) cōnsulat.** CIC. *Death does not deter the sage from consulting the interest of the State.*

**Quid obstat quōminus Deus sit beātus?** CIC. *What is in the way of God's being happy?*

**Caesar cognōvit per Afrānium stāre quōminus proeliō dimicārētur.** CAES. *Caesar found that it was Afrānius's fault that there was no decisive fight (stat, there is a stand still).*

**550. Quīn** is used like **quōminus**, with Verbs of Preventing, but, only when they are negated or questioned.

REMARKS.—1. **Quīn** is compounded of **quī** + **nē**, *how* (in which way), + *not*, and answers to **ut eō nōn** or **quō nōn**. For **nōn quīn** (= **nōn quō nōn**), see 541, R. 1.

2. **Quīn** is used only after Negative Sentences, or Questions which expect a negative answer.

3. When **quīn** is used as a Consecutive or Relative particle, **ut nōn** or **quī nōn**, it has all the sequences of the Consecutive or Relative. See 556.

4. When **quīn** is used after Negative expressions of Doubt it has the sequences of the Interrogative.

5. When **quīn** is used with Verbs of Preventing it has the sequences of the Final Sentence.

**551. Quīn** is used when Verbs and Phrases of Preventing, Omitting, Refraining, Refusing, and Delaying, Doubt and Uncertainty, are negated or questioned:

1. Verbs of Preventing and the like (Sequence of the Final Sentence):

**Vix nunc obsistitur illis (208) quīn lanient mundum.** OV. *They are now hardly to be kept (that they should not rend) from rending the universe.*

**Antiochus nōn sē tenuit quīn contrā suum doctōrem librum ēderet?** CIC. *Antiochus did not refrain from publishing a book against his teacher.*

**Nullum adhūc intermisī diem quīn aliquid ad tē litterārum dārem.** CIC. *I have thus far not allowed a day to pass but I dropped you (without dropping you) something of a letter (a line or two).*

**Facere nōn possum quīn quotidiē ad tē mittam litterās.** CIC. *I cannot do without (I cannot help) sending a letter to you daily.*

**(Nullō modō facere possum ut nōn sim populāris.** CIC. *I cannot help being a man of the people.)*

**Nōn possum quīn exclāmēm.** PLAUT. *I cannot but (I must) cry out.*

**Nihil abest quīn sim miserrimus.** CIC. *There is nothing wanting that I should be (= to make me) perfectly miserable.*

**Fieri nullō modō poterat quīn Cleomenī (208) parcerētur.** CIC. *It*

*could in no wise happen but that Cleomenes should be spared (= Cleomenes had to be spared).*

**Paulum aſuit quā Fabius Vārum interficeret.** CAES. *There was little lacking but Fabius (had) killed Varus (= Fabius came near killing Varus).*

2. Verbs of Doubt and Uncertainty (Sequence of the Interrogative sentence):

**Nōn dubium est quā uxōrem nōlit filius.** TER. *There is no doubt that (my) son does not want a wife.*

**Quis dubitet (= nēmo dubitet) quā in virtūte divitiāe sint?** CIC. (251.)

**Nōn dubitārī dēbet quā fuerint ante Homērum poētae.** CIC. *It is not to be doubted that there were poets before Homer.*

**Nunc mihi nōn est dubium quā ventūrae nōn sint legiōnēs.** CIC. (515.)

Occasionally Verbs of Saying and Thinking are found with the same construction, because they are near equivalents.

**Negārī nōn potest quā rectius sit etiam ad pācātōs barbarōs exercitum mitti.** LIV. *It cannot be denied (doubted) that it is better for an army to be sent to the barbarians even though they be quiet.*

**Nōn abest suspicio (Litotēs for dubitārī nōn potest) quā Orgetorix ipse sibi mortem consciverit.** CAES. *There is no lack of ground to suspect (= there is no doubt that, 448, R. 2) Orgetorix killed himself.*

REMARKS.—1. In Future relations **nōn dubito quā** (according to 515, R. 3) may have the Simple Subjunctive instead of the Periphrastic:

**Nōn dubitāre quā dē omnibus obsidibus supplicium sūmat Ariovistus.** CAES. *"He did not doubt that Ariovistus would put all the hostages to death."* Comp. CAT. cviii.

So when there is an original Subjunctive notion:

**Nōn dubito quā ad tē statim veniam.** CIC. *I do not doubt that I ought to come to you forthwith. (Veniam? Shall I come?)*

2. Of course **dubito** and **nōn dubito** may have the ordinary interrogative constructions. On **dubito an**, see 459, R.

3. **Nōn dubito**, with the Infinitive, usually means *I do not hesitate to*:

**Nōn dubitem dicere omnes sapientes semper beātōs esse.** CIC. *I should not hesitate to say that all wise men are always happy.*

**Et dubitāmus adhuc virtūte extendere virēs?** VERE. *And do we still hesitate to extend (our) power by (our) prowess?* Compare **timeo**, **vereor**, *I fear, hesitate to*.

So occasionally **nōn dubito quā**. See R. 1.

**Rōmāni arbitrabantur nōn dubitātūrum fortem virum quā cēderet aequō animō lēgibus.** CIC. *The Romans thought that a brave man would not hesitate to yield with equanimity to the laws.*

4. **Nōn dubito** with the Inf. for **nōn dubito quā** occurs chiefly in NEPOS, LIVY and later writers.

**Sunt multi qui quae turpia esse dubitare nōn possunt utilitātis specis ducti probent.** QUINT. *There are many who, led on by the appearance of profit, approve what they cannot doubt to be base.*

IV. *Verbs of Fearing.*

552. Verbs of Fearing are followed by the Present and Perfect, Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

The Present Subjunctive represents the Present and Future Indicative.

The Perfect Subjunctive regularly represents the Perfect Indicative.

Present and Perfect Subjunctive become Imperfect and Pluperfect after a Past Tense.

With Verbs of Fearing, *nē*, *lest*, shows that the negative is wished and the positive feared; *ut* (*nē nōn*) shows that the positive is wished and the negative feared: *nē nōn* is used regularly after the negative.

**Timeo nē hostis veniat**, *I fear lest the enemy come, that he is coming, that he will come.*

*(I wish he may not come.)*

**Timeo nē hostis vēnerit**, *I fear lest the enemy have come, that (it will turn out that) he has come.*

**Timeo ut amicus veniat**, *I fear lest my friend come not, that he is not coming, will not come.*

*(I wish he may come.)*

**Timeo ut amicus vēnerit**, *I fear lest my friend have not come, that he has not come.*

**Nōn timeo nē amicus nōn veniat**, *I do not fear that my friend is not coming, will not come.*

**Nōn timeo nē amicus vēnerit**, *I do not fear that my friend has not come.*

**Vereor nē dum minuere velim labōrem augeam.** CIC. *I fear lest, while I wish to lessen the toil, I increase it (that I am increasing it).*

**Verēmur nē parum hīc liber mellis et absinthii multum habēre videātur.** QUINT. *I am afraid that this book will seem to have too little honey and (too) much wormwood.*

**Timeo ut sustineās labōrēs.** CIC. *I fear that you will not hold out under your toils.*

**Nōn vereor nē tua virtūs opīniōnī hominum nōn respondeat.** CIC. *I do not fear that your virtue will not answer to (come up to) public expectation.*

**Metuo nē id consilii cōperim quod nōn facile explicāre possim.** CIC. *I fear that I have formed a plan that I cannot readily explain.*

**Unum illud extimēscēbam nē quid turpius facerem vel dicam jam effēcissem.** *The only thing I feared was, lest I should act disgracefully, or, I should (rather) say, (lest) I had already acted disgracefully.*

REMARKS.—1. With the Infinitive, Verbs of Fear are Verbs of Will. So especially *vereor, I fear to.*

**Vereor tē laudāre praesentem.** CIC. (424) (*Vereor = prae timōre nōlo.*)

2. **Vidē nē,** *see to it lest,* is often used as a polite formula for *dubito an* (459, R.), and has the same sequences.

**Vidē nē plūs prōfutura sit ratio ordināria.** SEN. *See to it lest (I am inclined to think that) the ordinary method will be the more profitable.*

## CONSECUTIVE SENTENCES.

### *Sentences of Tendency and Result.*

**553.** Consecutive Sentences are those sentences which show the Consequence or Tendency of Actions. In Latin, Result is a mere inference from Tendency, though often an irresistible inference. In other words, the Latin language uses *so as* throughout, and not *so that*, although *so that* is often a convenient translation. The result is only implied, not stated.

**554.** Consecutive Sentences, or Sentences of Tendency and Result, have the Subjunctive mood.

Consecutive Subjunctives are put in the Present or Perfect, Imperfect or Pluperfect Tense according to the rules for sequence.

The introductory particle is **ut**.

In the leading clause, demonstratives are often employed in correlation with **ut**, which is a relative.

The Relative is sometimes used, parallel with **ut** (632).

The Negative is **ut nōn**, sometimes after negatives **quān**. When the notion of Design or Condition enters, **nē** is also found.

**555.** Consecutive Sentences are used after

- |                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| 1. Demonstratives,         | } all implying the creation or existence of conditions that tend to a result. |
| 2. Transitive and          |   |
| 3. Intransitive Verbs, and |   |
| 4. Phrases,                |   |

**556. 1.** Consecutive Sentences are largely used after Demonstratives expressed or implied.

**Tanta vis probitātis est, ut eam in hoste etiam diligāmus.** CIC. *So great is the virtue of uprightness, that we love it even in an enemy.*

**Nemo tam timidus est ut mālīt semper pendēre quam semel cadere.** SEN. *No one is so timid as to prefer to be hanging always than to fall once (for all).*

**Neque mē vixisse paenitet quoniam ita vixi ut nōn frūstrā mē nātum existimem.** CIC. (540.)

**Nōn is es ut tē pudor unquam ā turpitūdine revocārit.** CIC. *You are not the man for shame ever to have recalled you (= ever to have been recalled by shame) from baseness.*

**Nemo adeō ferus est ut nōn mītescere possit.** HOR. *No one is so savage that he cannot (be made to) soften.*

After a negative **quān** = **ut nōn** :

**Nūl tam difficile est quān quaerendō investigārī possiet (possit).** TER. *Naught is so hard but it can (= that it cannot) be tracked out by search.*

**Nunquam tam male est Siculīs quān aliquid facētē et commodē dicant.** CIC. *The Sicilians are never so badly off as not to (have) something or other clever and pat (to) say.*

REMARKS.—1. Notice especially **tantum abest** (Impers.) . . . **ut . . . ut**. The origin of the phrase is shown by

**Tantum abest ab eō ut malum mors sit ut verear nē hominī sit nihil bonum aliud.** CIC. *So far is it from death (= so far is death from) being an evil that I fear man has no other blessing.*

**Tantum abest ut nostra mirēmur ut usque eō difficilēs sumus ut nobīs nōn satisfaciāt ipse Dēmōsthenēs.** CIC. *So far are we from admiring our own (compositions) that we are so hard to please that Demosthenes himself fails to satisfy us.*

The personal construction can be used when an abstract follows.

2. **Dignus, worthy, indignus, unworthy, aptus, idoneus, fit**, take a consecutive sentence, but usually with **quī**, seldom with **ut**:

**Digna fuit illa nātūra quae meliōra vellet.** QUINT. *That nature was worthy of willing better things (= of better aims).*

3. A consecutive sentence follows **quam ut** (CIC.) or **quam quī**:

**Māior sum quam ut mancipium sim mei corporis.** SEN. (313.)

**Māior sum quam cui possit Fortūna nocēre.** OV. (313.)

On the omission of **ut** with **potius quam** (**priusquam**), see 579, R.

4. **Nē, lest**, is sometimes irregularly used instead of **ut nōn**, especially when the idea of design or wish intrudes:

**Ita mē gessi nē tibi pudōri essem.** LIV. *I behaved myself so as not to be a disgrace to you.*

5. **Ita — ut** (sometimes **ut** alone), *so that*, often serves to restrict and condition. The negative is often **nē** (comp. 554).

**Ita probanda est mansuetūdo ut adhibeātur reipublicae causā sevērītās.** CIC. *Mildness is to be approved, so that (provided that) strictness be used for the sake of the commonwealth.*

**Ita frui volunt voluptatibus ut nulli propter eas dolōrēs consequantur.** CIC. *They wish to enjoy pleasures without having any pain to ensue on account of them.*

**Pythagorās et Plato mortem ita laudant ut fugere vitam vetent.** CIC. *Pythagoras and Plato so praise death that they, while they praise death, forbid fleeing from life.*

**Ita tū istaeque tua miscēto nē mē admisceās.** TER. *Mix up your mixings so you mix me not withal.*

6. Ut nōn is often = *without* and the English verbal in *-ing* :

**Octāviānus nunquam filiōs suōs populō commendāvit ut nōn adjiceret: Si merēbuntur.** Suet. *Octavianus (Augustus) never recommended his sons to the people in such a way as not to add (= without adding): If they are worthy.*

**Qui nōn vērē virtūti studet certē mālet existimārī bonus vir ut nōn sit quam esse ut nōn putētur.** Cic. *He who is not a true lover of virtue will certainly prefer being thought a good man without being such, to being (a good man) without being believed (to be such).*

After negatives **quān = ut nōn.** (550, R. 3.)

**557. 2.** Verbs of Effecting belong partly to the Consecutive, partly to the Final Sentence. The negative is **nōn** or **nē**; the sequence, final.

Such verbs are **facio, efficio, perficio, I make, effect, achieve; assequor, consequor, I attain, accomplish,** and other verbs of Causation. **Facere** ut is often little more than a periphrasis.

**Fortūna vestra facit ut irae meae temperem.** Liv. *Your fortune causes that I (makes me) restrain my anger (put metes to my anger).*

**Invitus (324, R. 6) facio ut recorder ruīnās reipublicae.** Cic. *(It is) against my will that I (am doing so as to) recall the ruined condition of the commonwealth.*

Negatives:

**Rērum obscuritās nōn verbōrum facit ut nōn intelligātur orātiō.** Cic. *It is the obscurity of the subject, not of the words, that causes the language not to be understood.*

**Potestis efficere ut male moriar, nē moriar nōn potestis.** Plin. Ep. *You may make me die a hard death, keep me from dying you cannot.*

**558. 3.** Consecutive Sentences follow many Impersonal Verbs of Happening and Following, of Accident and Consequent:

Such verbs are **fit, accidit, contingit, it happens, ūsū venit, it occurs, accēdit, there is added, sequitur, it follows.** So also **est, it is the case.**

**Fieri potest ut fallar.** Cic. *(It) may be (that) I am mistaken.*

**Potest fieri ut is unde tē audisse dicis irātus dixerit.** Cic. *(It) may be (that) he from whom you say you heard (it) said it in anger.*

**Persaepe evenit ut utilitās cum honestāte certet.** Cic. *It very often (so) happens that profit is at variance with honor.*

**Ad Appii Claudii senectūtem accēdēbat etiam ut caecus esset.** Cic. *To the old age of Appius Claudius was further added his being blind.*

REMARK.—Very common is the periphrasis **fore (futūrum) ut**, which gives the common form of the Fut. Inf. See 240.

**559. 4.** Many abstract phrases are followed by consecutive sentences.



Such are: *mōs, consuetudo est, it is the way, the wont, opus, ūsus est, there is need*, and the like. More rarely after adjectives such as *aequum, justum, fair, just*, and the like. So with the Genitive after *esse*.

The leading sentence is often a negative one to show the imaginary character of the result.

☞ In all these relations the Accusative with the Inf. is more common.

**Est mōs hominum ut nōlint eundem plūribus rēbus excellere.** CIC. (546, R. 2.)

**An cuiquam est ūsus hominī sē ut cruciet?** TER. (390, R.)

**Dionysiō nē integrum quidem erat ut ad jūstitiam remigrāret.** CIC. *Dionysius was not free even (if he had wished it) to return to justice.*

**Est miserōrum ut malevolentēs sint atque inuideant bonis.** PLAUT. *The wretched have a way of being ill-natured and envying the well-to-do.*

**Rārū (= rārō accidit) ut sit idōneus suae rei quisque dēfensor.** QUINT. *It is rare for a man to be a good defender of his own case.*

REMARK.—**Necesse est, it is necessary**, generally, and **oportet, it behooves**, always, omit *ut*:

**Leuctrica pugna immortalis sit necesse est.** NEP. *The battle of Leuctra must needs be immortal.*

**Sed nōn effugiēs; mēcum moriāris oportet.** PROP. *But you shall not escape; you must die with me.*

### Exclamatory Questions.

560. **Ut** with the Subjunctive is used in Exclamatory Questions.

**Egone ut tē interpellem?** CIC. *I interrupt you?*

**Tū ut unquam tē corrigās?** CIC. *You—ever reform yourself?*

REMARK.—The expression is closely parallel with the Accusative and Infinitive. The one objects to the idea; the other, to any state of things that could produce the result. In neither case is there any definite or conscious ellipsis.

### TEMPORAL SENTENCES.

561. The action of the Temporal or Dependent clause may stand to the action of the Principal clause in one of three relations:

I. It may be *antecedent*:

CONJUNCTIONS: **Postquam (Posteā quam), after that, after**; **ut, as**; **ubi, when (literally, where)**; **simulac, as soon as**; **ut primum, cum primum, the first moment that.**

II. It may be *contemporaneous*:

CONJUNCTIONS: **Dum**, *dōnec*, *while*, *until*; **quoad**, *up to* (the time) *that*; **quamdiū**, *as long as*; **cum**, *when*.

III. It may be *subsequent*:

CONJUNCTIONS: **Antequam**, **priusquam**, *before that*, *before*.

A special chapter is required by

IV. **Cum**, *when*.

#### MOODS IN TEMPORAL SENTENCES.

562. 1. The mood of Temporal clauses is regularly the Indicative.

2. The Subjunctive is used only—

1.) In **Oratio Obliqua** (509), Total or Partial. So also in the Ideal Second Person.

2.) When the idea of Design or Condition is introduced.

#### I. ANTECEDENT ACTION.

563. In historical narrative, Temporal Clauses with **postquam**, **ubi**, **ut**, **simulac**, **ut primum**, and **cum primum** commonly take the Historical Perfect or the Historical Present Indicative:

The English translation is not unfrequently the Pluperfect.

**Postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs poposcit.** CAES. *After Caesar arrived, he demanded hostages.*

**Quae ubi nūntiantur Rōmam, senātus extemplō dictātōrem dīci jussit.** LIV. *When these tidings were carried to Rome, the senate forthwith ordered a dictator to be appointed.*

**Pompējus ut equitātum suum pulsum vidit, aclē excessit.** CAES. *As Pompey saw his cavalry beaten, he left the line of battle.*

**Pelopidās nōn dubitāvit, simulac conspexit hostem, configere** (551, R. 3.). NEP. *As soon as he (had) caught sight of the enemy, Pelopidas did not hesitate to engage (him).*

Subjunctive in **Oratio Obliqua**:

**Ariovistum, ut semel Gallōrum copiās vicerit (Ō. R. vicit), superbē imperāre.** CAES. *“That Ariovistus, as soon as he had once beaten the forces of the Gauls, exercised his rule arrogantly.”*

REMARK.—**Postquam** is rarely found with the Subjunctive outside of Ū, Ō.

564. The Imperfect is used to express an action continued into the time of the principal clause (overlapping).

The translation often indicates the spectator (224, R. 1).

**Postquam nemo prœcedere audēbat, intrat.** CURT. *After (he found that) no one had the courage to come forth, he entered.*

**Ubi nemo obuius ibat, ad castra hostium tendunt.** LIV. *When (they saw that) no one was coming to meet them, they proceeded to the camp of the enemy.*

Subjunctive in **Ūratiō Obliqua** :

**Scriptisti eum, postquam nōn auderet (Ō. R. nōn audēbat) reprehendere, laudāre coepisse.** CIC. *You wrote that, after he could not get up the courage to blame, he began to praise.*

**565. 1.** The Pluperfect is used to express an action completed before the time of the principal clause ; often of the Resulting Condition.

**Albinus postquam dēcrēverat nōn ēgredi prōvinciā, militēs stativis castris habēbat.** SALL. *After Albinus had fully determined not to depart from the province, he kept his soldiers in cantonments.*

**Posteāquam multitudinem collēgerat emblēmatur, instituit officinam.** CIC. *After he had got together a great number of figures, he set up shop.*

**566. 2.** The Pluperfect is used with **postquam** when a definite interval is mentioned.

**Post** and **quam** are often separated. With an Ablative of Measure, **post** may be omitted.

**Aristidēs dēcessit ferē post annum quartum quam Themistoclēs Athēnis erat expulsus.** NEP. *Aristides died about four years after Themistocles had been (was) banished from Athens.*

**Hamilcar nōnō annō postquam in Hispāniam vēnerat occisus est.** NEP. *Hamilcar was killed nine years after he came to Spain.*

**Aristidēs sextō ferē annō quam erat expulsus in patriam restitūtus est.** NEP. *Aristides was restored to his country about six years after he was exiled.*

Subjunctive in **Ūratiō Obliqua** :

**Scriptum ā Posidōniō est trigintā annis vixisse Panaetium posteāquam librōs dē officiis ēdidisset.** CIC. *It is recorded by Posidonius that Panaetius lived thirty years after he put forth his books on Duties.*

The attraction is sometimes neglected.

REMARK.—The Historical Perfect is also in frequent use :

**Nero nātus est Antii post novem menses quam Tiberius excessit.** SUET. *Nero was born at Antium nine months after Tiberius departed (this life).*

On the Iterative Pluperfect, see below, 568.

567. *Postquam* and the like, with the Present and Perfect Indicative, assume a causative signification (compare *quoniam*, *now that* = since):

*Cūria minor mihi vidētur posteaquam est māior.* CIO. *The senate-house seems to me smaller now that it is (really) greater.*

*Tremo horreūque post quam aspexi hanc.* TER. *I quiver and shiver since I have seen her.*

So *cum* sometimes:

*Grātulor tibi cum tantum valēs.* CIO. *I wish you joy now that you have so much influence.*

### *Iterative Action.*

568. RULE I.—When two actions are repeated contemporaneously, both are put in tenses of continuance:

*Humilēs labōrant ubi potentes dissident.* PHAEDR. *The lowly suffer when the powerful disagree.*

*Populus mē sībilat; at mihi plaudo ipse domi simulac nummōs contemplor in arcā.* HOR. *The people hiss me; but I clap myself at home as soon as I gloat o'er my cash in the strong box.*

*Ut quisque maximē labōrābat locus aut ipse occurrēbat aut aliquōs mittēbat.* LIV. *As each point was hard pressed, he would either hasten to help himself or send some persons.*

### The Subjunctive with the Ideal Second Person:

*Bonus segnior fit ubi negligās.* SALL. *A good man becomes more sluggish when you neglect him.*

569. RULE II.—When one action is repeated before another, the antecedent action is put in the Perfect, Pluperfect, or Future Perfect; the subsequent action, in the Present, Imperfect, or Future, according to the relation.

As this use runs through all sentences involving antecedent action, all the classes are represented in the following examples:

REMARK.—Observe the greater exactness of the Latin expression. Comp. 236, R. 2.

*Quotiēs cecidit, surgit,* *As often as he falls, he rises.*

*Quotiēs ceciderat, surgēbat,* *As often as he fell, he rose.*

*Quotiēs ceciderit, surget,* *As often as he falls, he will rise.*

*Simul inflāvit tībicen ā peritō carmen agnōscitur.* CIO. *As soon as the fluter blows, the song is recognized by the connoisseur.*

*Alcibiadēs simulac sē remisērat, luxuriōsus reperiēbātur.* NEP. *As soon as Alcibiades relaxed, he was found a debauchee.*

**Dociliōra sunt ingenia prius quam obdūrūerunt.** QUINT. *Minds are more teachable before they (have) become hardened.*

**Ager quum multōs ānnōs requiēvit, ūberiōrēs efferre frūgēs solet.** CIC. *When a field has rested (rests) many years, it usually produces a more abundant crop.*

**Quum pālam ājus ānuli ad palmam converterat Gŷgēs, ā nullō vidēbātur.** CIC. *When(ever) Gyges turned the bezel of the ring toward the palm (of his hand), he was to be seen by no one.*

**SI pēs condoluit, si dens, ferre nōn possumus.** CIC. *If a foot, if a tooth ache(s), we cannot endure it.*

**Stomachābātur senex, si quid asperius dixeram.** CIC. *The old man used to be fretted, if I said anything (that was) rather harsh.*

**Quod nōn dedit fortūna nōn ēripit.** SEN. *What fortune has not given (does not give), she does not take away.*

**Haerēbant in memoriā quaecumque audierat et viderat [Themistoclēs].** NEP. *Whatever Themistocles had heard and seen (= heard and saw) remained fixed in his memory.*

**Qui timēre dēsierint, ōdisse incipient.** TAC. *Those who cease to fear will begin to hate.*

### The Subjunctive with the Ideal Second Person :

**Ubi consulueris, mātūrē factō opus est.** SALL. *When you have deliberated, you want speedy action.*

### The Subjunctive in Ōrātiō Obliqua :

**Cato mirārī sē ājēbat quod nōn ridēret haruspex haruspice cum vidisset.** CIC. *Cato said that he wondered that an haruspex did not laugh when he saw (another) haruspex. (Nōn ridet cum vidit.)*

### The Subjunctive by Attraction :

**Rēte texunt arāneolae ut si quid inhaeserit conficiant.** CIC. *(Si quid inhaesit, conficiunt.)*

**Quāre fiēbat, ut omnium oculōs, quotiēscunque in pūblicum prōdisset, ad se converteret.** NEP. *(Quotiēscunque prōdierat, convertēbat.) (666.)*

REMARK.—The Subjunctive (Imperf. and Pluperf.) is sometimes found in Iterative Sentences—chiefly after the Imperf. Ind. or some combination which shows Will, Habit, Expectation. The construction is best explained by Partial Obliquity (509, 3). It is found chiefly in later historians and in NEPOS. The passages in CAESAR are not numerous, and some are uncertain.

**Incurrere ea gens in Macedoniam solita erat ubi rēgem occupātum externō bellō sensisset.** LIV. *That tribe was wont to make a raid in Macedonia whenever they perceived the king engrossed in foreign war.*

**Qui unum ejus ordinis offendisset omnes adversos habebat.** LIV. *Whoso had offended one of that order was sure to have all against him.*

**Modum adhibendū ubi res posceret priores erant.** LIV. *By the use of moderation, when the case demanded it, they were his superiors.*

So sometimes the Perf. Subj. with the Pres. Indicative. Compare 666, R. 2.

## II. CONTEMPORANEOUS ACTION.

**570.** Conjunctions used of Contemporaneous Action are :

**Dum, donec, while, so long as, until ; quoad, up to (the time) that ; quamdiū, as long as ; cum, when.**

An action may be contemporaneous in Extent—*so long as, while.*

An action may be contemporaneous in Limit—*until.*

**REMARK.**—**Dum** (*while*) *yet*, denotes duration, which may be coextensive, *so long as*, or not. It is often causal. **Donec** (old form *dōnicum*, of uncertain composition), parallel with **dum** in the sense, *so long as, until.* Cicero uses it only as *until.* **Quum** (*cum*) demands a separate treatment.

### I. Contemporaneous in Extent.

(*So long as, while.*)

**571.** **Dum, donec, quoad, quamdiū, so long as, while,** take the Indicative of all the tenses.

**Dum vitant stulti vitia in contraria currunt.** HOR. *Fools, while they avoid (one set of) faults, run into the opposite.*

**Sibi verō hanc laudem relinquunt, "Vixit, dum vixit, bene."** TER. *They leave indeed this praise for themselves, "He lived well while he lived" (all the time).*

**Tiberius Gracchus tamdiū laudabitur dum memoria rerum Rōmānarum manēbit.** CIC. *Tiberius Gracchus shall be praised so long as the memory of Roman history remains (shall remain).*

**Fuit haec gens fortis dum Lycūrgi lēgēs vigēbant.** CIC. *This nation was brave so long as the laws of Lycurgus were in force.*

**Donec grātus eram tibi, Persarum vigui rēge beātor.** HOR. *While I was acceptable in your sight, I throve more blessed than Persia's king.*

**Quoad potuit, restitit.** CIC. *As long as he could, he withstood.*

Subjunctive in **Oratio Oblīqua :**

[**Rēgulus dixit**] **quamdiū jurejurandō hostium tenērētur nōn esse sē senātorem.** CIC. [*Regulus said*] *that as long as he was bound by his oath to the enemy he was not a Senator. (Quamdiū teneor nōn sum senātor.)*

**Dum** often resists the change. (658, R. 3.)

## Subjunctive by Attraction :

**Vereor nē, dum minuere velim, labōrem augeam.** CIC. (552.) (*Dum minuere volo, augeo.*)

REMARK.—When the actions are coextensive, the tenses are generally the same in both members, but not always. *Dum* with the Pluperf. Ind. is used of the Resulting condition. LIV. xxxii. 24.

**572. Dum, while, while yet,** commonly takes the Present Indicative after all Tenses : so especially in narrative.

**Cape hunc equum, dum tibi virium aliquid superest.** LIV. *Take this horse, while you have yet some little strength left.*

**Dum hæc Rōmæ aguntur, consulēs ambo in Liguribus gerēbant bellum.** LIV. *While these things were going on at Rome, both consuls were carrying on war in Liguria.*

**Praetermissa ājus rei occāsio est, dum in castellis recipiendis tempus teritur.** LIV. *The opportunity was allowed to slip by, while time was wasted in recovering miserable forts.*

REMARK.—The relation is often causal, and the construction is parallel with the Present Participle, the lack of which in the Passive it supplies. Here the Present Ind. is simply a tense of continuance rather than an Hist. Present.

## II. Contemporaneous in Limit.

(Until.)

**573. Dum, donec, quoad, up to (the time) that, until,** have the Present and Perfect and Future Perfect Indicative :

The Present is either an Historical Present, or looks forward to the Future.

**Tityre, dum redeō, brevis est via, pasce capellās.** VERG. *Tityrus, while I am returning (= till I return)—the way is short—feed my kids.*

**Epaminōndās ferrum in corpore usque eō retinuit, quoad renūntiātum est vicisse Boeōtiōs.** NEP. *Epaminondas retained the iron in his body, until word was brought back that the Boeotians had conquered.*

**Dōnec rediit Marcellus, silentium fuit.** LIV. *Until Marcellus returned, there was silence.*

**Haud dēsinam dōnec perfecerē.** TER. *I will not cease until I have (shall have) accomplished (it).*

**Exspectābo dum venit.** TER. *I will wait until he comes.*

## Subjunctive in Ōrātiō Obliqua :

**Scipiōnī Silānōque dōnec revocātī ab senātū forent prōrogātum imperium est.** LIV. *Scipio and Silanus had their command extended until "they should have been recalled by the senate."*

**574. Dum, donec, and quoad, until,** take the Subjunctive when Suspense and Design are involved :

**Verginius dum collēgam consuleret morātus est.** LIV. *Verginius delayed until he could* (long enough to) *consult his colleague.*

**At tibi sit tantū nōn indulgēre theātris, dum bene dē vacuō pectore cēdat amor.** OV. *But let it be worth the cost to you* (= deem it worth the cost) *not to indulge in play-going, until love be fairly gone from (your) untenanted bosom.*

Often with **exspecto, I wait :**

**Rūsticus exspectat dum dēfluat amnis.** HOR. *The clown waits for the river to run off* (dry).

Also : **exspectāre ut, si** (never Infinitive), 462, 2.

**REMARK.**—The Subjunctive is sometimes used in narrative with **dum, while,** and **donec, while, until,** to express subordination (like **cum**, 585). The principle is that of Partial Obliquity. There is often a Causal or Iterative sense.

**Dum intentus in eum se rēx tōtus āverteret, alter ēlātam secūrim in caput dējēcit.** LIV. *While the king fixed upon him was quite turned away, the other raised his axe and planted it in his skull.* (Āverteret from the point of view of alter = dum videt āvertentem.)

**575. Dum, with the Subjunctive, is used in Conditional Wishes : Negative, dum nō = nō interim.**

**Ōderint dum metuant.** ATTIIUS. *Let them hate so long as they fear* (provided that, if they will only fear).

**Dumnō ob malefacta peream parvī [id] aestimo.** PLAUT. (379.)

So also **dummodo, modo, provided only, only :**

**Dummodo mōrāta rectē veniat, dōtāta est satis.** PLAUT. *Provided only she come with a good character, she is endowed* (= her dowry is) *enough.*

**Multa [in eō] admiranda sunt : ēligere modo cūrae sit.** QUINT. *Many things in him are to be admired ; only you must be careful to choose.*

**Cōpia plācandī sit modo parva tui.** OV. (429, R. 1.)

### III. SUBSEQUENT ACTION.

**Antequam and Priusquam with the Indicative.**

**576. Antequam and priusquam, before,** take the Present, Perfect, and Future Perfect Indicative, when the limit is stated as a fact.

**REMARK.**—The present is used in anticipation of the future. The elements **ante, antea, prius—quam,** are often separated.



### 577. The Present Indicative is used after Positive Sentences :

**Antequam ad sententiam redeo, dē me pauca dicam.** CIC. *Before I return to the subject, I will say a few things of myself.*

**Omnia experiri certum est priusquam peream.** TER. *I am determined to try everything before I perish.* (Priusquam peream = sooner than perish, to keep from perishing.)

REMARK.—The Pure Perfect Indicative is used of Iterative Action. (569.)

**Dociliōra sunt ingenia priusquam obdūrērunt.** QUINT.

The Present Subjunctive is more common in general statements.

### 578. The Perfect (Aorist) and Future Perfect Indicative are used, especially after Negative Sentences. After Positive Sentences there is no necessary connection.

**Lēgātī nōn ante profecti quam impositōs in nāvēs militēs vidērunt.** LIV. *The envoys did not set out until they saw the soldiers on board.*

**Neque dēfatigābor antequam illōrum viās ratiōnēsque percēpero, et prō omnibus et contrā omnia disputandī.** CIC. *I will not let myself grow weary before (until) I learn (shall have learned) their methods of disputing for and against everything.*

### Subjunctive in Ūratiō Oblīqua :

**Themistoclēs collēgīs suis praedixit, ut nō prius Lacedaemoniōrum lēgātōs dimitterent quam ipse esset remissus.** NEP. (546.) (Nōlite dimittere priusquam ego ero remissus.)

### Antequam and Priusquam with the Subjunctive.

579. **Antequam** and **priusquam** are used with the Subjunctive when an ideal limit is given; when the action is expected, contingent, designed, or subordinate.

An ideal limit involves necessary antecedence, but not necessary consequence. After Positive sentences, the Subjunctive is the rule, especially in Generic sentences and in narrative. (Compare *cum*, 585.) The Subjunctive is absolutely necessary when the action does not, or is not to, take place.

The translation is often *before*, and the verbal in *-ing*.

**Ante vidēmus fulguratiōnem quam sonum audiāmus.** SEN. *We see the flash of lightning before hearing the sound* (we may never hear it).

**In omnibus negōtiis priusquam aggrediāre adhibenda est praeparatiō diligens.** CIC. *In all affairs, before addressing yourself (to them), you must make use of careful preparation.* (Ideal Second Person.)

**Collem celeriter priusquam ab adversâriis sentiâtur commūnit.** CAES. *He speedily fortified the hill before he was perceived by the enemy (too soon to be perceived by the enemy). (Prius quam = prius quam ut.)*

**Hannibal omnia priusquam excōderet pugnâ erat expertus.** LIV. *Hannibal had tried everything before withdrawing from the fight (= to avoid withdrawing from the fight).*

**Saepe magna indolēs virtūtis prius quam rei publicae prōdesse potuisset extincta fuit.** CIC. *Often hath great native worth been extinguished before it could be of service to the State.*

**Ducentis ānnis antequam urbem Rōmam caperent in Italiam Galli dēscendērunt.** LIV. *(It was) two hundred years before their taking Rome (that) the Gauls came down into Italy.*

Here the Subjunctive gives the natural point of reference.

After the Negative:

**Inde nōn prius ēgressus est quam (nōn priusquam = dōnec) rēx eum in fidem reciperet.** NEP. *He did not go away until the king took him under his protection. (He stayed to make the king take him under his protection.)*

**REMARK.**—When the will is involved, **potius quam** is used in the same way as **prius quam**.

**Dēpugnâ potius quam serviās.** CIC. *Fight it out rather than be a slave.*

#### IV. CONSTRUCTIONS OF CUM (QUUM).

**580. Cum** is a relative conjunction, and stands nearer to the Ablative than to the Accusative in signification, perhaps also in form (**quo(fi)m**). **Cum** is the classic spelling, as well as the classic pronunciation.

**581.** There are three great uses of **cum**:

- I. Temporal **cum** (*when—then*) takes the Indicative;
- II. Historical **cum**, *as*, the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive;
- III. 1. Causal **cum**, *as, since*; and  
2. Concessive **cum**, *whereas, although*, takes the Subjunctive.

I. **Cum vēr appetit, militēs ex hibernis movent,** *When spring approaches, soldiers move out of winter-quarters.*

II. **Cum vēr appeteret, Hannibal ex hibernis mōvit,** *As spring was approaching (spring approaching), Hannibal moved out of winter-quarters.*

III. 1. **Cum vēr appetat, ex hibernis movendum est,** *As (since) spring is approaching, we must move out of winter-quarters.*

III. 2. **Cum vēr appeteret, tamen hostēs ex hibernis nōn mōvērunt,** *Whereas (although) spring was approaching, nevertheless the enemy did not move out of winter-quarters.*

REMARK.—So called **cum inversum** (**cum** in the apodosis) is as natural in English as in Latin:

**Jam vēr appetēbat, cum Hannibal ex hibernis mōvit.** LIV. *Spring was (already) approaching, when Hannibal moved out of winter-quarters.*

According to 581, I., it is, of course, put in the Indicative.

### I. Temporal Cum.

582. **Cum**, *when*, is used with all the tenses of the Indicative, to designate merely temporal relations.

In the Principal clause, a temporal adverb or temporal expression is frequently employed, such as **tum, tunc, then**; **nunc, now**; **diēs, day**; **tempus, time**; **jam, already**; **vix, scarcely**; and the like.

**Animus, nec cum adest nec cum discōdit, appāret.** CIC. *The soul is not visible, either when it is present, or when it departs.*

**Sex librōs tunc dē Rēpūblicā scripsimus cum gubernācula reipublicae tenēbāmus.** CIC. *I wrote the six books about the State at the time when I held the helm of the State.*

**Recordāre tempus illud cum pater Cūrio maerens jacēbat in lectō.** CIC. *Remember the time when Curio the father lay abed from grief.*

**Longum illud tempus cum nōn ero magis mē movet quam hōc exiguum.** CIC. *That long time (to come), when I shall not exist, has more effect on me than this scant (present time).*

**Jam dilūcescēbat cum signum consul dedit.** LIV. *By this time day was beginning to dawn, when the consul gave the signal.* (See 580, R.)

Ideal Second Person with the Subjunctive:

**Pater, hominum immortalis est infāmia. Etiam tum vivit cum esse crēdās mortuam.** PLAUT. *Father, immortal is the ill-fame of the world. It lives on even when you think that it is dead.*

REMARKS.—1. **Fuit cum** commonly follows the analogy of other characteristic relatives (§633), and takes the Subjunctive:

**Fuit tempus cum (=fuit cum) rūra colerent hominēs.** VARRO. *There was a time when mankind lived in the country.*

The Indicative is rare.

2. **Memini cum**, *I remember the time when*, takes the Indicative; but **audire cum** takes the Subjunctive parallel with the Participle:

**Audivi Mētrodorū cum dē his ipsi disputāret.** CIC. *I have heard Metrodorus discuss (ing) these very matters.*

3. Peculiar is the use of **cum** with Lapses of Time. Lapses of Time are treated as Designations of Time in Accusative or Ablative:

**Multi anni sunt cum (= multōs annōs) in aere meō est.** (*It is many years (that) he has been (221) in my debt.*)

**Multi anni sunt cum** (= multis annis) in aere meo non fuit. *It is many years that he has not been (since he was) in my debt.*

**Nondum centum et decem anni sunt cum** (= ex quo = abhinc annis) de pecuniis repetundis lata lex est. *Cic. It is not yet 110 years since the law concerning extortion was proposed.*

**583. Coincident Action.**—When the actions of the two clauses are coincident, **cum** is almost equivalent to its kindred relative **quod**, in that :

**Cum** tacent, clamant. *Cic. When (= in that) they are silent, they cry aloud.*

**Dixi omnia cum** hominem nominavi. *Plin. Ep. I have said everything, in naming the man.*

**584. Conditional use of Cum.**—**Cum** with the Future, Future Perfect, or Universal Present, is often almost equivalent to **si**, *if*, with which it is sometimes interchanged :

**Cum** poscis, posce Latinō. *Juv. When (If) you ask (for anything), ask in Latin.*

**Cum** veniet contrā, digitō composesce labellum. *Juv. When (If) he meets you, padlock your lip with your finger.*

**585. Iterative use of Cum.**—**Cum** in the sense of **quoties**, *as often as*, takes the Tenses of Iterative Action :

**Solet cum** se purgat in me conferre omnem culpam. *Cic. He is accustomed, when he clears himself, to put off all the blame on me.*

**Ager cum** multos annos requiescit uberiores efferre fruges solet. *Cic.*

**Cum** palam ejus anuli ad palmam converterat Gyges a nullo videbatur. *Cic. (569.)*

**REMARK.**—The Subjunctive is also found (569, R.):

**Cum** in ius duci debitorem vidissent, undique convolabant. *Liv. Whenever they saw a debtor taken to court, they made it a rule to hurry together from all quarters.*

## II. Historical Cum.

**586. Cum, when (as),** is used in narrative with the Imperfect Subjunctive of contemporaneous action, with the Pluperfect Subjunctive of antecedent action.

**REMARK.**—The subordinate clause generally precedes, and often indicates Causal as well as Temporal relation. The Subjunctive in some cases seems to be due to the Latin tendency to express inner connection (evolution) by the Subjunctive. In the absence of participles, **cum** with the Subjunctive is a parallel construction.

**Agēsilāus cum ex Aegyptō reverterētur dēcessit.** NEP. *Agasilanus died as he was returning from Egypt.*

**Zēnōnem cum Athēnis essem audiēbam frequenter.** CIC. *When I was (Being) at Athens, I heard Zeno (lecture) frequently.*

**Athēniensēs cum statuerent ut nāvēs conscenderent, Cysrīlūm quendam suādentem ut in urbe manerent, lapidibus coōperuērunt.** CIC. (546.)

**Cum Caesar Ancōnam occupāset, urbem reliquimus.** CIC. *When (As) Caesar had occupied Ancona (Caesar having occupied Ancona), I left the city.*

**Attalus moritur alterō et septuāgēsīmō annō, cum quattuor et quadragintā annōs regnāset.** LIV. *Attalus died in his seventy-second year, having reigned forty-four years.*

### III. Causal and Concessive Cum.

#### 1. Causal Cum.

**587. Cum, when, whereas, since, seeing that,** with the Subjunctive, is used to denote the reason, and occasionally the motive, of an action:

**Quae cum ita sint, effectum est nihil esse malum quod turpe nōn sit.** CIC. *Since these things are so, it is made out (proved) that nothing is bad that is not dishonorable.*

**Cum Athēnās tanquam ad mercātūrā bonārum artium sis profectus, inānem redire turpissimum est.** CIC. *As (Since) you set out for Athens as if to market for good qualities, it would be utterly disgraceful to return empty (handed).*

**Dolō erat pugnandum, cum pār nōn esset armis.** NEP. *He had to fight by stratagem, as he (seeing that he) was not a match in arms.*

REMARK.—The Subjunctive is used because the relation is a mere conception (characteristic); that it is a mere conception is emphasized by **quippe** and **utpote**, as in the relative sentence.

On the occasional use of **cum** with the Ind. in a causal sense, see 567. Oftener in earlier Latin

#### 2. Concessive Cum.

**588. Causal cum, whereas,** becomes Concessive **cum, whereas, although,** when the cause is not sufficient: the relation is often adversative.

**Nihil mē adjūvit cum posset.** CIC. *He gave me no assistance, although (at a time when) he had it in his power.*

**Cum primī ordinēs hostium concidissent, tamen ācerrimē reliquī re-**

**sistēbant.** CAES. *Although the first ranks of the enemy had fallen (been cut to pieces), nevertheless the rest resisted most vigorously.*

**Perire artem putāmus nisi appāret, cum dēsinat ars esse, si appāret.** QUINT. *We think that (our) art is lost unless it shows, whereas it ceases to be art if it shows.*

**589. Cum—tum.**—When **cum**, *when*, **tum**, *then* (both—and especially), have the same verb, the verb is put in the Indicative :

**Pausaniās consilia cum patriae tum sibi inimica capiēbat.** NEP. *Pausanias conceived plans that were hurtful both to his country and especially to himself.*

When they have different verbs, the verb with **cum** may be in the Subjunctive, which often has a concessive force :

**Sisennae historia cum facile omnēs superiōrēs vincat, tum indicat tamen quantum absit ā summō.** CIC. *Although the history of Sisenna easily surpasses all former histories, yet it shows how far it is from the highest (mark).*

#### CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

**590.** In Conditional sentences the clause which contains the condition (supposed cause) is called the **Prótasis**, that which contains the consequence is called the **Apódosis**.

Logically, **Protasis** is *Premiss* ; and **Apodosis**, *Conclusion*.

Grammatically, the **Apodosis** is the *Principal*, the **Protasis** the *Dependent*, clause.

**591. Sign of the Conditional.**—The common conditional particle is **si**, *if*.

REMARKS.—1. **Si** is a locative case, literally *so, in those circumstances* (comp. **si-c**, *so*). So in English : "I would by combat make her good, *so* were I a man."—SHAKESP.

Hence, Conditional clauses with **si** may be regarded as adverbs in the Ablative case, and are often actually represented by the Ablative Absolute.

2. The connection with the Causal Sentence is shown by **si quidem**, which in later Latin is almost = **quoniam**.

3. The temporal particles **cum** and **quando**, *when*, and the locative **ubi**, are also used to indicate conditional relations in which the idea of Time or Space is involved.

**592. Negative of si.**—The negative of **si** is either **si nōn** or **nisi**.

**Si nōn** negatives a particular word, *if not* ; **nisi**, *unless*, negatives the whole idea—restricts, excepts.

**Si nōn** is the rule—

## 1. When the positive of the same verb precedes :

**Si fāceris, magnam habēbo grātiā; si nōn fāceris, ignōscam.** CIC. *If you do it, I will be very grateful to you; if you do not, I will forgive (you).*

## 2. When the Condition is concessive :

**Si mihi bonā rēpublicā frui nōn licuerit, at carēbo malā.** CIC. *If I shall not be allowed to enjoy good government, I shall at least be rid of bad.*

**Nisi** is in favorite use after negatives :

**Parvi (= nihili) sunt foris arma nisi est consilium domi.** CIC. *Of little (value) are arms abroad unless there is wisdom at home.*

**Nōn possem vivere nisi in litteris viverem.** CIC. *I could not live unless I lived in study.*

**Memoria minuitur nisi eam exerceās.** CIC. *Memory wanes unless (except) you exercise it. (Si nōn exerceās, in case you fail to exercise it.)*

**So nisi si,** except in case :

**Miserōs illūdi nōlunt hominēs nisi si sē forte jactant.** CIC. *Men do not like to have the unfortunate mocked unless (except in case) they happen to swagger.*

REMARKS.—1. Sometimes the difference is unessential :

**Nisi Cūrio fuisset, hodiē tē muscae comēdissent.** QUINT. *If it had not been for Cūrio, the flies would have eaten you up this day. Si nōn fuisset would be equally correct.*

2. **Nisi** and **nisi si** are often used after negative sentences or equivalents in the signification of *but, except, besides, only* :

**Inspice quid portem; nihil hīc nisi triste vidēbis.** OV. *Examine what I am bringing; you will see nothing here except (what is) sad.*

**Falsus honor juvat et mendāx infāmia terret, quem nisi mendācem et mendōsum?** HOR. *"False honor charms and lying slander scares, whom but the false and faulty?"—BROUGHAM.*

3. **Nisi quod** introduces an actual limitation—with the exception, that :

**Nihil acciderat [Polycrati] quod nōllet nisi quod anulū quō dēlectābatur in mari abjēcerat.** CIC. *Nothing had happened to Polycrates that he could not have wished, except that he had thrown into the sea a ring in which he took delight (= a favorite ring). So praeterquam quod.*

**Nihil peccat nisi quod nihil peccat.** PLIN. EP. *He makes no blunder except—that he makes no blunder ("faultily faultless").*

4. **Nisi forte**, unless perhaps, **nisi vērō**, unless indeed, with the Indicative, either limits a previous statement, or makes an ironical concession :

**Nēmo ferē saltat sōbrius nisi forte insēnit.** CIC. *There is scarce any one that dances (when) sober, unless perhaps he is cracked.*

**Licet honestā morte dēfungi, nisi forte satius est victōris expectāre arbitrium.** CURT. *We are free to die an honorable death, unless perhaps it is better to await the pleasure of the conqueror.*

5. **Ni** is antiquated or poetical, and is equivalent to **si nōn** :

**Ni pārere velle, pereundum erit ante lucernās.** JUV. (532, R. 3.)

*So in oaths, promises, and the like :*

**Peream ni piscem putāvi esse.** VARRO. *May I die if I did not think it was a fish.*

593. *Two Conditions excluding each the other.*—When two conditions exclude each the other, **si** is used for the first; **sin**, if not (but if), for the second.

**Sin** is further strengthened by **autem**, *but*; **minus**, *less (not)*; **secus**, *otherwise*; **aliter**, *else*:

**Mercātūra, si tenuis est, sordida putanda est; sin magna et cōpiōsa, nōn est admodum vituperanda.** CIC. *Mercantile business, if it is petty, is to be considered dirty (work); if (it is) not (petty, but) great and abundant (= conducted on a large scale), it is not to be found fault with much.*

REMARK.—If the Verb or Predicate is to be supplied from the context, **si minus**, if less (not), **sin minus**, **sin aliter**, if otherwise, are commonly used, rarely **si nōn**:

**Edūc tūcum omnēs tuōs; si minus, quam plūrimōs.** CIC. *Take out with you all your (followers); if not, as many as possible.*

**Odēro si poterō; si nōn, invitū amābo.** OV. (234, R. 2.)

594. *Other Forms of the Protasis.*—1. The Protasis may be expressed by a Relative:

**Quī vidēret urbem captam diceret.** CIC. *Whoso had seen it, had said that the city was taken.*

**Mīrārētur quī tum cerneret.** LIV. (252.)

2. The Protasis may be contained in a Participle:

**Si latet ars, prōdest; affert dēpreſsa pudōrem.** OV. *If art is concealed, it does good; (if) detected, it brings shame.*

**Maximās virtūtēs jacere omnēs necesse est voluptāte dominante.** CIC. *All the greatest virtues must necessarily lie prostrate, if the pleasure (of the senses) is mistress.*

**Nihil potest evenire nisi causā antecōdente.** CIC. *Nothing can happen, unless a cause precede.*

3. The Protasis may be involved in a modifier:

**Fēcērunt servi Milōnis quod suōs quisque servōs in tāli rē facere voluisset.** CIC. *The servants of Milo did what each man would have wished his servants to do in such case (si quid tāle accidisset).*

**At bene nōn poterat sine pūrō pectore vivi.** LUCR. *But there could be no good living without a clean heart (nisi pūrum pectus esset).*

4. The Protasis may be expressed by an Interrogative, or, what is more common, by an Imperative:

**Tristis es? indignor quod sum tibi causa dōlōris.** OV. (542.)



**Cēdit amor rēbus : rēs age, tūtus eris.** Ov. *Love yields to business ; do business (if you plunge into business), you will be safe.*

**Immūtā verbōrum collocātiōnem, perierit tōta rēs.** Cic. (236, R. 4.)

**595. Correlatives of SI.**—The correlatives of **SI** are : **Sic, so ; ita, thus ;** but they are commonly not expressed. Occasionally **tum, then ;** and **eā condiciōne, on those terms,** are employed.

**Dē frūmentō responsum est ita ūsūrum eō populum Rōmānum, si pretium acciperent.** Liv. *In the matter of the corn, answer was made that the Roman people would avail themselves of it, on condition that they accepted the value.*

### CLASSIFICATION OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

**596.** Conditional sentences may be divided into three classes, according to the character of the Protasis : \*

- I. Logical Conditional Sentences : **SI**, with the Indicative.
- II. Ideal Conditional Sentences : **SI**, with Present and Perfect Subjunctive.
- III. Unreal Conditional Sentences : **SI**, with Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

#### I. LOGICAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

**597.** The Logical Conditional Sentence simply states the elements in question, according to the formula :

If this is so, then that is so ; if this is not so, then that is not so.

It may be compared with the Indicative Question.

The Protasis is in the Indicative ; the Apodosis is generally in the Indicative ; but in future relations any equivalent of the Future (Subjunctive, Imperative) may be used.

---

\* In some grammars of Greek and Latin, conditional sentences, and sentences involving conditional relations, have been divided into *particular* and *general*. Whether a condition be particular or general depends simply on the character of the Apodosis. Any form of the Conditional Sentence may be general, if it implies a rule of action. The forms for Iterative action have been given. (568, 569.)

## PROTASIS.

**Si id crēdis,***If you believe that,***Si id crēdēbās,***If you believed that,***Si id crēdidisti,***If you (have) believed that,***Si id crēdēs,***If you (shall) believe that,***Si id crēdideris,***If you (shall have) believe(d) that,***Si quid crēdidisti,***If you have believed anything**(= when you believe anything),***Si quid crēdiderās,***If you had believed anything**(= when you believed anything),*

## APODOSIS.

**errās,***you are going wrong.***errābās,***you were going wrong.***errāsti,***you have gone (you went) wrong.***errābis,***you will (be) go(ing) wrong ; (234, R. 8).***errāveris,***you will have gone (will go) wrong.***errās,***you go wrong. Comp. 569.***errābās,***you went wrong.*

**Si spīritum dūcit, vivit. CIC.** *If he is drawing (his) breath (breathing) he is living.*

**Parvi sunt foris arma nisi est consilium domi. CIC.** (412, R. 1.)

**Si occīdi, rectē feci ; sed nōn occīdi. QUINT.** *If I killed him, I did right ; but I did not kill him.*

**Nātūrā si sequēmur ducem, nunquam aberrābimus. CIC.** *If we (shall) follow nature (as our) guide, we shall never go astray.*

**Improbōs si meus consulātus sustulerit, multa saecula propāgārit rei pūblīcae. CIC.** *If my consulship shall have done away with the destructives, it will have added many ages to the life of the State.*

**Si pēs condoluit, si dens, ferre nōn possumus. CIC.** (569.)

**Stomachābātur senex, si quid asperius dixeram. CIC.** (569.)

**Vivam, si vivet ; si cadet illa, cadam. PROP.** *Let me live, if she lives ; if she falls, let me fall.*

**Nunc si forte pōtes, sed nōn potes, optima conjux, finītis gaudē tot mihi morte malis. OV.** *Now, if haply you can, but you cannot, noble wife, rejoice that so many evils have been finished for me by death.*

**Flectere si nequeō superōs, Acheronta movēbō. VERG.** *If I can't bend the gods above, I'll rouse (all) hell below.*

**Si tot exempla virtūtis nōn movent, nihil unquam movēbit ; si tanta clādēs vilem vitā nōn fecit, nulla faciet. LIV.** *If so many examples of valor stir you not, nothing will ever do it ; if so great a disaster has not made life cheap, none ever will.*

**Dēsīnēs timēre si spērāre dēsieris. SEN.** *You will cease to fear, if you (shall have) cease(d) to hope.*

REMARKS.—1. After a Verb of Saying or Thinking (*Ūrātio Obliqua*), the Protasis must be put in the Subjunctive, according to the rule.

- (Si id crēdis, errās.) Dico, tē, si id crēdās. errāre.  
dixi, tē. si id crēderēs, errāre.  
(Si id crēdēs, errābis.) Dico, tē, si id crēdās, errātūrum esse.  
dixi, tē. si id crēderēs, errātūrum esse.  
(Si id crēdidisti, errāstī.) Dico, tē, si id crēdideris, errāsse.  
dixi, tē, si id crēdidissēs, errāsse.

For examples, see *Ōratio Obliqua*, 660.

2. The Subjunctive is used by Attraction :

*Rēte texunt arāneolae ut si quid inhaeserit conficiant.* CIO. (*Si quid inhaesit, conficiunt.*) (667.)

3. The Ideal Second Person takes the Subjunctive in connection with the Universal Present :

*Senectūs plēna est voluptātis si illā sciās uti.* SMN. *Old age is full of pleasure, if you know (if one knows) how to make use of it.*

*Memoria minuitur nisi eam exerceās.* CIO. (592.)

4. *Sive—sive (sen—sen)* almost invariably takes the Logical form. (499.)

*Sen vicit, ferociter instat victis ; sen victus est, instaurat cum victoribus certamen.* LIV. *If he vanquishes (569), he presses the vanquished furiously ; if he is vanquished, he renews the struggle with the vanquishers.*

## II. IDEAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

598. The Ideal Conditional Sentence represents the matter as still in suspense. The supposition is more or less fanciful, and no real test is to be applied. There is often a wish for or against.

The Protasis is put in the Present Subjunctive for continued action, and in the Perfect Subjunctive for completion or attainment.

The Apodosis is in the Present or Perfect Subjunctive. The Imperative and Future Indicative or equivalents are often found. The Universal Present is frequently used, especially in combination with the Ideal Second Person.

On the difference between Subjunctive and Future, see (27.)

### PROTASIS.

Si id crēdās,

*If you should (were to) believe that,*

Si id crēdās,

*If you should (were to) believe that,*

Si id crēdideris,

*1. If you should (prove to) have believed*

*that (Perfect; Action Past or Future), you would be going wrong.*

*2. If you should (come to) believe that*

*(Aor. ; Action Future),*

Si id crēdideris (rare),

*If you (should have) believe(d) that,*

### APODOSIS.

errēs,

*you would be going wrong.*

errāveris,

*you would go wrong.*

errēs,

*you would be going wrong.*

errāveris,

*you would (have) go(ne) wrong.*

**SI** vicinus tuus equum meliorem habeat quam tuus est, tuumne equum malis an illius? CIC. *If your neighbor (were to) have a better horse than yours is, would you prefer your horse or his?*

**SI** gladium quis apud te sana mente deposuerit, repetat insaniens, reddere peccatum sit, officium non reddere. CIC. *If a man in sound mind were to deposit (to have deposited) a sword with you (and), reclaim it (when) mad, it would be wrong to return it, right not to return it.*

**SI** nunc me suspendam meam operam luserim, et meis inimicis voluptatem creaverim. PLAUT. *Should I hang myself now, I should (thereby) (have) fool(ed) my work away, and give(n) to my enemies a charming treat.*

**Ut** redeant veteres: Ciceroni nemo ducentos nunc dederit nummos nisi fulserit anulus ingens. JUV. *Let the ancients return: no one would give Cicero now-a-days two hundred two-pences unless a huge ring glittered (on his hand).*

**SI** is destituat, nihil satis tutum habebis. LIV. *Should he leave us in the lurch, you will find no safety.*

**SI** valeant homines, ars tua, Phoebe, jacet. OV. *Should men keep well, your art, Phoebus, is naught.*

**Otia** si tollas, periore Cupidinis arcus. OV. (195, R. 6.)

**SI** verum excutiās, facies non uxor amatur. JUV. *If you (were to) get out the truth, it is the face, not the wife, that is loved.*

**Nulla** est excusatio peccati, si amici causā peccaveris. CIC. *It is no excuse for a sin to have sinned for the sake of a friend.*

REMARKS.—1. The Potential of the Past coincides in form with the Unreal of the Present. (Comp. 252, R. 2.) Clear examples of definite persons are rare. HOR. Sat. I. 3, 5. Of indefinite persons: **Mirāretur** qui tum cerneret. LIV. (252.)

So. **Erat** Quinctius, si cederēs, placabilis. LIV. *Quinctius was, if you yielded to him, (sure to be) placable. (Est si cederēs.)*

**SI** luxuriae temperaret, avaritiam non timērēs. TAC. *If he were to control his love of pleasure, you should not have feared avarice. (SI temperet, non timeās.)*

2. The lively fancy of the Roman often employs the Ideal where we should expect the Unreal. (Comp. 248, R. 2.)

**Tu** si hic sis, aliter sentiās. TER. *If you were I (Put yourself in my place), you would think differently.*

**Haec** si tecum patria loquatur, nonne impetrare debeat? CIC. *If your country should (were to) speak thus with you, ought she not to get (what she wants)?*

In comparing Ideal and Unreal Conditionals, be careful to exclude all forms of future verbs, such as **posse**, to be able; **velle**, to wish, and the like.

Sometimes the conception shifts in the course of a long sentence:

**SI** reviviscant et tecum loquantur—quid talibus viris responderēs? CIC. *If they should come to life again, and speak with you—what answer would you make to such men?*

3. In **Oratio Obliqua** the difference between Ideal and Logical Future is necessarily effaced, so far as the mood is concerned. (659.)

### III. UNREAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

599. The Unreal Conditional sentence is used of that which is Unfulfilled or Impossible, and is expressed by the Imperfect

Subjunctive for continued action—generally, in opposition to the Present; and by the Pluperfect Subjunctive—uniformly in opposition to the Past.

The notion of Impossibility comes from the irreversible character of the Past Tense. Compare the Periphrastic Future Perfect and Imperfect. Any action that is decided is considered Past. (Comp. 266, R. 3.)

PROTASIS.

**Si id crēderēs,**

*If you believed (were believing) that, [you do not,]*

**Si id crēdidissēs,**

*If 'you had believed that, [you did not,]*

APODOSIS.

**errārēs,**

*you would be going wrong.*

**errāvissēs,**

*you would have gone wrong.*

**Sapientia nōn expeterētur, si nihil efficeret.** CIC. *Wisdom would not be sought after, if it did no practical good.*

**Caederem tē, nisi irāscerer.** SEN. *I should flog you, if I were not getting angry.*

**Si ibi tē esse scīssēm, ad tē ipse vēnissem.** CIC. *If I had known you were there, I should have come to you myself.*

**Hectora quis nōsset, si fēlix Trōja fuisset.** OV. *Who would know (of) Hector, if Troy had been happy?*

**Nisi ante Rōmā profectus essēs, nunc eam certē relinquerēs.** CIC. *If you had not departed from Rome before, you would certainly leave it now.*

**Ego nisi peperissem, Rōma nōn oppugnārētur; nisi filium habērem, libera in liberā patriā mortua essem.** LIV. *Had I not become a mother, Rome would not be besieged; had I not a son, I should have died a free woman in a free land.*

REMARKS.—1. The Imperfect Subjunctive is sometimes used in opposition to continuance in the Past. This is necessarily the case when the Protasis is in the Imperfect, and the Apodosis in the Pluperfect, except when the Imperfect denotes opposition to a general statement, which holds good both for Past and for Present:

**Nōn tam facile opēs Carthāginis tantae concidissent, nisi Sicilia clāssibus nōstris patēret.** CIC. *The great resources of Carthage (Carthage with her great resources) would not have fallen so readily, if Sicily had not been open to our fleets.*

**Si pudōrem habērēs, ultimam mihi pensiōnem mihi remisissēs.** SEN. *If you had (= you had not, as you have not) any delicacy, you would have let me off from the last payment.*

**Memoriam ipsam cum vōce perdidissēmus, si tam in nostrā potestāte esset oblivisci quam tacēre.** TAC. *We should have lost memory itself, together with utterance, if it were as much in our power to forget as to keep silent.*

The Imperfect in both members is rare:

**Si Prōtogenēs Ialysum illum suum caenō oblitum vidēret, magnum, crēdo, acciperet dolōrem.** CIC. *If Protogenes had seen that famous Ialysus of his besmeared with mud, he would have felt a mighty pang.*

Perhaps this may be regarded as a form of **Repraesentatio**. (657, R.)

2. In Unreal Conditions, the Apodosis is sometimes expressed by the Imperfect Indicative, when the action is represented as interrupted (224); by the Pluperfect and Historical Perfect, when the conclusion is confidently anticipated. (246, R. 3.)

**Lābēbar longius, nisi mē retinuissem.** CIO. (246, R. 3.)

**Omninō erat supervacua doctrīna, si nātūra sufficeret.** QUINT.

**Peractum erat bellum, si Pompējum opprimere Brundusii potuisset.** FLOR.  
*The war was (had been) finished, if he had been able to crush Pompey at Brundisium.*

The Imperfect Indicative is sometimes found in the Protasis:

**Ipsam tibi epistolam misissem, nisi tam subito frātis puer proficiscēbātur.** CIO. *I should have sent you the letter itself, if my brother's servant was not starting so suddenly.*

3. The Indicative is the regular construction with verbs which signify Possibility or Power, Obligation or Necessity—so with the Active and Passive Periphrastic—**vix, paene, scarcely, hardly**, and the like.

**Consul esse qui potui, nisi eum vitæ cursum tenuissem?** CIO. *How could I have been consul, if I had not kept that course of life?*

**Antoni potuit gladiōs contemnere, si sic omnia dixisset.** JUV. *He might have despised Antony's swords, if he had thus said all (that he did say).*

**Emendātūrus, si licuisset, eram.** OV. *I should have removed the faults, if I had been free (to do it).*

**In bona ventūrus, si paterēre (R. 1.) fuit.** OV. *He would have come into (my) property, if you had permitted it.*

**Pons iter paene hostibus dedit (paene dedit = dabat = datūrus erat.) ni unus vir fuisset.** LIV. *The bridge well nigh gave a passage to the enemy, had it not been for one man.*

4. In **Ūratiō Obliqua** the Protasis is unchanged; the Apodosis is formed by the Periphrastic Future Infinitive, with **esse** and **fuisse** for the Active, **futūrum (fore) ut, futūrum fuisse ut** for Passive and Supineless Verbs.

**A. Dico (dixi), tē, si id crēderēs, errātūrum esse.**

**B. Dico (dixi), tē, si id crēdidissēs, errātūrum fuisse.**

**A. Dico (dixi), si id crēderēs, fore ut dēsciperēris.**

**B. Dico (dixi), si id crēdidissēs, futūrum fuisse ut dēsciperēris.**

A is very rare; A theoretical. For the long form, B, the simple Perfect Infinitive is found. Examples, see 602, R.

5. When the Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional is made to depend on a sentence which requires the Subjunctive, the Pluperfect is turned into the Periphrastic Perfect Subjunctive; the Imperfect form is unchanged.

**Nōn dubito, quin, si id crēderēs, errārēs.**  
*I do not doubt, that, if you believed that, you would be going wrong.*

**Nōn dubitābam, quin, si id crēdidissēs, errātūrus fueris.**  
*I did not doubt, that, if you had believed that, you would have gone wrong.*

**Honestum tāle est ut, vel si ignōrārent id hominēs, esset laudābile.** CIO.  
*Virtue is a thing to deserve praise, even if men did not know it.*

**Nec dubium erat quin, si tam pauci simul obire omnia possent, terga datūri hostēs fuerint.** LIV. *There was no doubt that, if it had been possible for so small a number to have managed every thing at the same time, the enemy would have turned their backs.*

**Dic quidnam factūrus fueris, si eō tempore censor fuissēs?** LIV. *Tell (me) what you would have done, if you had been censor at that time?*

**Ad eō inopiā coactus est Hannibal, ut, nisi tum fugae speciēm abeundō timuisset, Galliam repetitūrus fuerit.** LIV. *Hannibal was so hard pressed by want of provisions, that, had he not at the time feared (presenting) the appearance of flight by retreating, he would have gone back to Gaul.*

The Periphrastic Pluperfect Subjunctive occurs rarely, and then only in the Dependent Interrogative.

**Potui** (246, R. 1) commonly becomes **potuerim**, and the Periphrastic Passive with **ful** becomes **fuerim**:

**Haud dubium fuit quin, nisi ea mora intervēnisset, castra eō diē Pūnica capi potuerint.** LIV. *There was no doubt that, had not that delay interfered, the Punic camp could have been taken on that day.*

The Passive Conditional is unchanged :

**Id ille si repudiāset, dubitātis quin ei vis esset allāta?** CIC. *If he had rejected that, do you doubt that force would have been brought (to bear) on him?*

The active form is rarely unchanged. (LIV. II. 33.) In the absence of the periphrastic tense use **potuerim**.

## INCOMPLETE CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

**600. Omission of the Conditional Sign.**—Occasionally the members of a Conditional sentence are put side by side without a Conditional sign :

**An ille mihi (351) liber, cui mulier imperat? poscit, dandum est; vocat, veniendum; ajicit, abeundum; minatur, extimescendum.** CIC. *Or is he free (tell), me, to whom a woman gives orders? she asks, he must give; she calls, he must come; she turns out (of door), he must go; she threatens, he must be frightened.*

**Unum cognōris, omnēs nōris.** TER. *You know one, you know all.*

**Dedissēs huic animō pār corpus, fēcisset quod optābat.** PLIN. EP. *Had you given him a body that was a match for his spirit, he would have accomplished what he desired.*

**601. Omission of the Verb of the Protasis.**—When the Verb of the Protasis is omitted, either the precise form or the general idea of the verb is to be supplied from the Apodosis :

**Si quisquam, Cato sapiens fuit = Si quisquam fuit.** CIC. *If any one was wise, Cato was.*

**602. Total Omission of the Protasis.**—The Protasis is often contained in a Participle or involved in the context (594, 2).

The Potential Subjunctive is sometimes mechanically explained by the omission of an indefinite Protasis. See 252, R. 1.

**Nimiō plūs quam velim Volscōrum ingenia sunt mōbilia.** LIV. *The dispositions of the Volsicians are (too) much more unstable than I should like (if I had my way, if I could manage it, or what not).*

**Velim sic existimēs.** CIC. *I should like you to think so. (Utinam existimēs !)*

**Tam fēlix essēs quam formōsissima vellem.** OV. (316). *(Utinam essēs !)*

The impossibility of definite ellipsis constitutes the Modality.

**603. Omission of the Apodosis.**—The Apodosis is omitted in *Wishes*, in conformity with the vague character of the expression, which is poetical. See 254 and R. 1.

**O mihi praeteritōs referat si Jūpiter Annōs. VERG. (254.)**

# CONDITIONAL SENTENCES OF COMPARISON.

**604.** The Apodosis is omitted in comparisons with *ut si*, *velut si*, *ac si*, *quam si*, *tanquam si*, *quasi*, or simply *velut* and *tanquam*, as *if*.

The verb is to be supplied from the Protasis, as is common in correlative sentences.

The Mood is the Subjunctive.

The tenses follow the rule of sequence, rather than the ordinary use of the conditional. In English, the translation implies the unreality of the comparison.

**Nōli timēre quasi [=quam timeās si] assem elephantō dēs. QUINT.**  
*Don't be afraid, as if you were giving a penny to an elephant.*

**Parvī primō ortū sic jacent tanquam [=jaceant si] omnīnō sine animō sint. CIC.** *Babies, when first born, lie (there), as if they had no mind at all.*

**Hic est obstandum, militēs, velut si ante Rōmāna moenia pugnēmus. LIV.** *Here (is where) we must oppose them, soldiers, as if we were fighting before the walls of Rome (velut obstēmus, si pugnēmus, as we would oppose them, if we were to fight).*

**Mē juvat, velut ipse in parte labōris ac periculi fuerim, ad finem belli Pūnici pervēnisse. LIV.** *I am delighted to have reached the end of the Punic war, as if I had shared in the toil and danger (of it).*

**Suspectus tanquam ipse suās incenderit aedēs. JUV.** *Suspected as if he had (of having) set his own house on fire.*

**Tantus patrēs metus cōpit velut si jam ad portās hostis esset. LIV.** *A great fear took hold of the senators, as if the enemy were already at their gates.*

**Dēlēta est Ausōnum gens perinde ac si internecivō bellō certāset. LIV.** *The Ausonian race was blotted out, just as if it had engaged in an internecine war (war to the knife).*

REMARKS.—1. Occasionally the sequence is violated out of regard to the Conditional :

**Massiliensēs in eō honōre audīmus apud Rōmānōs esse ac si medium umbilicū Graeciae incolerent. LIV.** *We hear that the people of Marseilles are in as high honor with the Romans as if they inhabited the mid-navel (= the heart) of Greece.*



2. As in the ordinary conditional sentence, so in the comparative sentence, the Protasis may be expressed by a Participle:

**Galli laeti ut exploratâ victoriâ ad castra Rômanûrum pergunt.** CAES. *The Gauls in their joy, as if (their) victory had been fully ascertained, proceeded to the camp of the Romans.*

**Antiochus scâurus erat dē bellō Rômanō tamquam nō transitûris in Asiam Rômaniâ.** LIV. *Antiochus was as unconcerned about the war with Rome as if the Romans did not intend to cross over into Asia Minor.*

#### CONCESSIVE SENTENCES.

605. Concessive Sentences are introduced—

1. By the conditional Particles, **etsi**, **etiamsi**, **tametsi**.
2. By the Generic Relative, **quanquam**.
3. By the compounds, **quamvis**, **quantumvis**.
4. By the Verb **licet**.
5. By the Final Particles, **ut** (**nō**).
6. By **quum** (**cum**); all answering generally to the notion *although*.

REMARKS.—**Etsi** (**et** + **si**), *even if*; **etiamsi**, *even were if*; **tametsi**, *yet even if*; **quanquam**, (**quam** + **quam**), *to what extent soever*; **quamvis**, *to what extent you choose*; **quantumvis**, *to what amount you choose*; **licet**, *it is left free* (perhaps intrans. of *linguo*, *I leave*).

606. **Etsi**, **etiamsi**, and **tametsi**, take the Indicative or Subjunctive, according to the general principles which regulate the use of **si**, *if*. The Indicative is more common, especially with **etsi** and **etiamsi**:

**Dē futûris rēbus etsi semper difficile est dicere, tamen interdum conjecturâ possis accēdere.** CIC. *Although it is always difficult to tell about the future, nevertheless you can sometimes come near it by guessing.*

**Hamīlcar etsi flagrabat bellandī cupiditatē, tamen paci serviendum putāvit.** NEP. *Although Hamīlcar was on fire with the desire of war, nevertheless he thought that he ought to subserve (to work for) peace.*

**Inops ille etiamsi referre grātiā nō potest, habere certē potest.** CIC. *The needy man (spoken of), if he cannot return a favor, can at least feel it.*

**Mā vērā prō grātis loqui, etsi meum ingenium nō monēret, necessitās cōgit.** LIV. *Even if my disposition did not bid me, necessity compels me to speak the truth instead of the smooth.*

REMARK.—**Si** itself is often concessive, 592.

607. **Quanquam**, *to what extent soever*, falls under the head of generic relatives (246, R. 4), and, in the best authors, is construed with the Indicative:

**Medici quanquam intellegunt saepe, tamen nunquam aëgris dicunt, illõ morbo eõs esse moriturõs.** CIC. *Although physicians often know, nevertheless they never tell their patients that they will die of that disease.*

REMARKS.—1. The Potential Subjunctive is sometimes found with **quanquam**: **Quanquam exercitum quõ in Volscis erat mallet, nihil recussavit.** LIV. *Although he might well have preferred the army which was in the Volscian country; nevertheless he made no objection.*

2. **Quanquam** is often used at the beginning of sentences, in the same way as the English, *And yet, Although, However*, in order to limit the whole preceding sentence; less frequently **etsi, tametsi**.

3. The Indicative, with **etsi** and **quanquam**, is, of course, liable to attraction into the Subjunctive in **Oratio Obliqua**. (509.).

608. **Quamvis** follows the analogy of **volo, I will**, with which it is compounded, and takes the Subjunctive. **Quantumvis** and **quamlibet** (as conjunctions) belong to poetry and silver prose.

**Quamvis sint sub aquã, sub aquã maledicere tentant.** OV. *Although they be under the water, under the water they try to revile.*

**Quamvis ille niger, quamvis tũ candidus essẽs.** VERG. *Although he was black, although you were fair.*

**Vitia mentis, quantumvis exigua sint, in majus excedunt.** SEN. *Mental ailments (= passions), no matter how slight they be, go on increasing.*

REMARKS.—1. In later Latin, **quamvis** and **quanquam** change parts:

**Quamvis ingenio nõn valet, arte valet.** OV. *Although he does not tell by genius, he does tell by art.*

In **TACITUS**, for instance, **quanquam** regularly has the Subjunctive.

2. The Verb in **quamvis** is sometimes inflected:

**Quam velit sit potens, nunquam impetravisset.** CIC. *No matter how powerful she may be, she would never have obtained it.*

609. **Licet** retains its verbal nature, and, according to the Sequence of Tenses, takes only the Present and Perfect Subjunctive:

**Licet irrideat si qui vult.** CIC. *Let any one laugh who will.*

**Ardeat ipsa licet, tormentis gaudet amantis.** JUV. *Though she herself is aglow, she rejoices in the tortures of her lover.*

**Sim licet extrẽmum, siout sum, missus in orbem.** OV. *Although I be sent, as I have been, to the end of the world.*

REMARKS.—1. Exceptions are extremely rare: JUV. xiii. 56.

2. **Quamvis** is sometimes combined with **licet**.

610. **Ut** and **nẽ** are also used concessively:

**Ut desint virẽs, tamen est laudanda voluntãs.** OV. *Granted that strength be lacking, nevertheless you must praise (my) good will.*

**Nē sit summum malum dolor, malum certē est.** CIC. *Granted that pain be not the chief evil, an evil it certainly is.*

REMARK.—**Ut nōn** can be used on the principle of the Specific Negative :

**Hic diēs ultimus est; ut nōn sit, prope ab ultimō.** SEN. *This is your last day; granted that it be not, it is near the last.*

On **ita—ut**, see 255; on **ut—ita**, see 484, 2.

611. *Concessive sentence represented by a Participle or Predicative Attribute.*—The Concessive sentence may be represented by a Participle or Predicative Attribute.

**Risus interdum ita repente ērumpit, ut eum cupientēs tenēre nequeāmus.** CIC. *Laughter between whiles (occasionally) breaks out so suddenly that we cannot keep it down, although we desire to do so.*

**Multōrum tē oculi et aurēs nōn sentientem custōdient.** CIC. (*Of*) many (the) eyes and ears will keep guard over you, though you perceive it not (WITHOUT your perceiving it).

**Quis Aristidem nōn mortuum diligit.** CIC. *Who does not love Aristides, (though) dead?*

REMARK.—Later writers combine **etsi**, **quanquam**, or **quamvis**, with the Participle: **Caesarem milites quamvis recusantem ultrō in Africam sunt secuti.** SUTR. *The soldiers followed Caesar into Africa of their own motion, although he declined it.*

With Adjectives **quamvis** is used even in the best writers :

**Saepe bibi sūdos quamvis invitus amārōs.** OV. *I have often drunk bitter potions, although against my will.*

#### RELATIVE SENTENCES.

612. The Latin language uses the relative construction far more than the English: so in the beginning of sentences, and in combination with Conjunctions and other Relatives.

REMARKS.—1. The awkwardness, or impossibility, of a literal translation, may generally be relieved by the substitution of a demonstrative with an appropriate conjunction, or the employment of an abstract noun :

**Quae quum ita sint.** *Now since these things are so* (Ciceronian formula).

**Futura modo expectant; quae quia certa esse nōn possunt, cōficiuntur et angōre et metu.** CIC. *They only look forward to the future; and because that cannot be certain, they wear themselves out with distress and fear.*

**Epicūrus nōn satis politus iis artibus quās qui tenent, ēruditi appellantur.** CIC. *Epicurus is not sufficiently polished by those accomplishments, from the possession of which, people are called cultivated.*

Notice especially **quod** in combination with **si**, **ubi**, in which **quod** means *and as for that*, and is sometimes translated by *and, but, therefore*, sometimes not at all.

2. The Relative is the fertile source of many of the introductory particles of the compound sentence, and is therefore put last on account of the multiplicity of its uses.

613. Relative sentences are introduced by the Relative Pro-

nouns in all their forms: Adjective, Substantive, and Adverbial. (See Tables.)

REMARKS.—1. The relative adverbs of Place, and their correlatives, may be used instead of a preposition with a relative. *Unde, whence*, is frequently used of persons, the others less frequently: *ibi* = *in eo*, &c.; *ubi* = *in quo*, &c.; *inde* = *ex eo*, &c.; *unde* = *ex quo*, &c.; *eō* = *in eum*, &c.; *quō* = *in quem*, &c.:

*Potest fieri ut is, unde tē audisse dicis, irātus dixerit.* CIC. *It may be that he, from whom you say you heard (it), said it in anger.*

2. The relative is not to be confounded with the dependent interrogative sentence. (469, R. 3.)

*Quae probat populus ego nōscio.* SEN. *The things that the people approves, I do not know (quid probet, what it is the people approves).*

*Et quid ego tē velim, et tū quod quaeris, sciēs.* TER. *You shall know both what (it is) I want of you, and what (the thing which) you are asking (= the answer to your question).*

614. *Position of Relatives.*—The Relative and Relative forms are put at the beginning of sentences and clauses. The Preposition, however, generally, though not invariably, precedes its relative. (44.)

615. *Antecedent.*—The word to which the Relative refers is called the Antecedent, because it precedes in thought even when it does not in expression.

REMARK.—The close connection between Relative and Antecedent is shown by the frequent use of one preposition in common. (416.)

## CONCORD.

616. The Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person:

*Is minimō eget mortālis, quī minimum cupit.* SYRUS. (293.)

*Uxor contenta est quae bona est unō virō.* PLAUT. (373, R. 1.)

*Malum est cōsiliūm quod mutārī nōn potest.* SYRUS. *Bad is the plan that cannot (let itself) be changed.*

*Hoc illis narro quī mē nōn intelligunt.* PHAEDRUS. *I tell this tale for those who understand me not.*

*Ego quī tē cōfirmo, ipse mē nōn possum.* CIC. *I, who reassure you, cannot reassure myself.*

REMARKS.—1. The Relative agrees with the Person of the true Antecedent, even when a predicate intervenes:

*Tū es is, quī mē ad caelum extulisti.* CIC. *You are he that has extolled me to the skies.*

So occasionally in English: Acts xxi. 38.

2. When the Relative refers to a sentence, *id quod, that which*, is commonly used (parenthetically):

**SI & vobis dēserar, (id quod nōn spēro,) tamen animō nōn dēficiam.** CIC. *If I should be deserted by you, (which I do not expect,) nevertheless I should not become faint-hearted.*

3. The gender and number of the Relative may be determined :

I. By the sense, and not by the form.

II. By the predicate or the apposition, and not by the antecedent :

**EXAMPLES : I. Sex milia qui Pydnam perfugerant.** LIV. *Six thousand, who had fled to Pydna.*

**Equitatum omnem praemittit, qui videant.** LIV. *He sent all the cavalry ahead, who should see (that they might see, to see).*

**II. Thēbae, quod caput Boeōtiae est.** LIV. *Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia.*

**Flūmen Scaldis, quod infuit in Mosam.** CAES. *The river Scheldt, which empties into the Maas.*

**Jūsta glōria, qui est fructus virtūtis.** CIC. *Real glory, which is the fruit of virtue.*

4. The apposition may be incorporated into the relative :

**Testārum suffrāgis quod illi ostracismum vocant.** NEP. *By potsherd votes — (a thing) which they call "ostracism."*

5. When the Relative refers to the combined antecedents of different gender, the strongest gender is preferred, according to 282 :

**Grandēs nātū mātres et parvuli liberi, quōrum utrōrumque aetās misericordiam nostram requirit.** CIC. *Aged matrons and infant children, whose age on either hand demands our compassion.*

**Ōtium atque divitiae, quae prima mortālēs putant.** SALL. *Leisure and money, which mortals reckon as the prime things.*

Or, the nearest gender may be preferred :

**Eae frūgēs atque fructūs quōs terra gignit.** CIC. *Those fruits of field and trees which earth bears.*

6. Combined Persons follow the rule, 283.

**617. Repetition of the Antecedent.**—The Antecedent of the Relative is quite often repeated in the Relative clause, with the Relative as its attributive:

**Caesar intellexit diem instāre, quō diē frūmentum militibus mētiri oportēret.** CAES. *Caesar saw that the day was at hand, on which (day it behooved to measure) corn (was to be measured out) to the soldiers.*

**618. Incorporation of the Antecedent.**—The Antecedent and the Adjective, or the apposition of the Antecedent, are often incorporated into the Relative clause :

**In quem primum ēgressi sunt locum Trōja vocātur.** LIV. *The first place they landed at was called Troy.*

**Amānus Syriam ā Ciliciā dividit, qui mons erat hostium plēnus.** CIC. *Syria is divided from Cilicia by Amanus, a mountain which was full of enemies.*

**Themistoclēs, dē servis suis quem habuit fidēlissimum, ad Xerxem misit.** NEP. *Themistocles sent the most faithful slave he had to Xerxes.*

**Quam quisque nōrit artem, in hāc sē exerceat.** CIC. *What trade each man understands, in that let him practise himself (= every man to his trade).*

REMARK.—Especially to be noted are the phrases: **quae tua prūdētia est**, which (such) is your prudence; **quā prūdētiā es** (= **tū es eā prūdētiā**), of which (such) prudence are you (= **prō tuā prūdētiā**, in accordance with your prudence). See 628.

**619. Attraction of the Relative.**—The Accusative of the Relative is occasionally attracted into the Ablative of the Antecedent, rarely into any other case:

**Hoc confirmāmus illō auguriō quō diximus.** CIC. *We confirm this by the augury which we mentioned.*

REMARKS.—1. This attraction takes place chiefly when the verb of the relative clause must be supplied from the principal sentence:

**Quibus saucis poterat sēcum ductis ad urbem pergit.** LIV. *Having taken with him all the wounded he could, he proceeded to the city.*

2. *Inverted Attraction.*—So-called Inverted Attraction is found only in poetry, and then in the Accusative case, which may be considered as an object of thought or feeling:

**Urbem quam statuo, vestra est.** VERG. (As for) *the city which I am rearing, (it) is yours.*

**Istum quem quaeris, ego sum.** TER. (As for) *that man whom you are looking for, I am he.* ("He that hath ears to hear, let him hear.")

**620. Correlative Use of the Relative.**—The usual Correlative **is, is**, more rarely **hic, ille**:

**Is minimō eget mortālis, qui minimum cupit.** SYRUS. (293.)

**Hic sapiens, de quō loquor.** CIC. (290, 3.)

**Illa diēs veniet, mea quā lūgubria pōnam.** OV. (292, 4.)

**621. Omission of the Correlative.**—The Correlative, **is**, is often omitted, especially when it would stand in the same case as the Relative:

**Postume, nōn bene olet, qui bene semper olet.** MART. *Postumus, (he) smells not sweet, who always smells sweet.*

**Quem arma nōn frēgerant vitia vicērunt.** CURT. (Him) *whom arms had not crushed did vices overcome.*

**Quem di diligunt adulescens moritur.** PLAUT. (He) *whom the gods love dies young.*

**Xerxēs praeium prōposuit quī [ = ei quī ] invēnisset novam voluptātem.** CIC. *Xerxes offered a reward to him who should invent a new pleasure.*

**Miseranda vīta quī [ = eōrum quī ] sē metui quam amāri mālunt.** NEP. *Pitiable is the life of those who would prefer being feared to being loved.*

**Discite sārārī per quem [ = per eum, per quem ] didicistis amāre.** OV. (408.)

**622. Position of the Correlative clause.**—The Relative clause often precedes the Correlative; incorporation is common :

**Male rēs sē habet quum quod virtūte effici dēbet id tentātur pecūniā.** CIC. *It is a bad state of affairs when what ought to be accomplished by worth, is attempted by money.*

**Quod vidēs accidere pueris hōc nōbīs quoque mājusculis pueris ēvenit.** SEN. *What you see befalls children (this) happens to us also, children of a larger growth.*

**Quae quia nōn liceat nōn facit, illa facit.** OV. (541.)

**Quam quisque nōrit artem, in hāc sē exerceat.** (618.)

The Correlative omitted :

**Quod nōn dedit fortūna, nōn ēripit.** SEN.\* *What fortune has not given (does not give), she does not take away.*

**Per quās nōs petitis saepe fugātis opēs.** OV. *The means you take to win us, often scare us off.*

**623. Indefinite Antecedent.**—The Indefinite Antecedent is generally omitted :

**Elige cui dicās : tū mihi sōla placēs.** OV. *Choose some one to whom you may say : You alone please me.*

REMARK.—Such sentences are sometimes hardly to be distinguished from the Interrogative :

**Conōn nōn quaesivit ubi ipse tūtō viveret.** NEP., (297), might be either.

## TENSES IN RELATIVE SENTENCES.

**624. Future and Future Perfect.**—The Future and Future Perfect are used with greater exactness than in current English (234, 236) :

**Sit liber, dominus quī volet esse meus.** MART. *He must be free who wishes (shall wish) to be my master.*

**Qui prior strinxerit ferrum, ājus victōria erit.** LIV. (236, R. 2.)

625. *Iterative Action*.—Relative sentences follow the laws laid down for Iterative action (568, 569:)

I. Contemporaneous action :

**Ore trahit quodcumque potest, atque addit acervō.** HOR. *Drags with its mouth whatever it can, and adds to the treasure (heap).*

**Quācumque incēdēbat agmen, lēgātī occurrēbant.** LIV. *In whatever direction the column advanced, ambassadors came to meet them.*

II. Prior action :

**Terra nunquam sine ūsūrā reddit, quod accēpit.** CIC. *The earth never returns without interest what it has received (receives).*

**Quod nōn dedit fortūa, nōn ēripit.** SEN. (622.)

**Nōn cēnat quotiēs nēmo vocāvit eum.** MART. *He does not dine as often as (when) no one has invited (invites) him.*

**Haerēbant in memoriā quaecumque audierat et viderat** [Themistoclēs]. NEP. (569.)

**Sequentur tē quōcumque pervēneris vitia.** SEN. *Vices will follow you whithersoever you go.*

**Qui timēre dēsierint, ōdisse incipiunt.** TAC. (569.)

REMARK.—According to 569, the Subjunctive is used

1.) In **Ūrātio Obliqua** (Total or Partial);

2.) By Attraction of Mood (Complementary Clauses):

**Quis eum diligit quem metuat?** CIC. *Who could love him whom he fears?*

**Mōs est Athēnis laudāri in cōtiōne eōs qui sint in praeliis interfecti.** CIC. *It is the custom at Athens that a panegyric be pronounced on those who have been killed in battle. (Laudantur, qui interfecti sunt.)*

3.) In the Ideal Second Person :

**Bonus segnior fit ubi negligēs.** SALL. (568.)

4.) On the general principle of oblique sense, chiefly in later historians :

**Qui ūnum ejus ordinis offendisset omnēs adversōs habēbat.** LIV. (569.)

MOODS IN RELATIVE SENTENCES.

626. The Relative clause, as such—that is, as the representative of an adjective—takes the Indicative mood :

**Uxor quae bona est, A wife who is good (a good wife).**

REMARK.—The Relative in this use often serves as a circumlocution for a Substantive, with this difference : that the Substantive expresses a permanent relation ; the Relative clause, a transient relation : **if qui docent** = *those who teach* = *the teachers* (inasmuch as they are exercising the functions).

627. The Explanatory Relative **qui**, with the Indicative, (= *is enim, for he,*) often approaches **quod**, *in that*.



**Habeo senectūti magnam grātiā, quae mihi sermōnis aviditatem auxit.** CIC. *I am very thankful to old age, which (= it, in that it) has increased me (= in me) the appetite for talk.*

REMARK.—**Qui** with the Subjunctive gives a ground = **cum** is (587); **qui** with the Indicative, a fact; and in many passages the causal sense seems to be inevitable:

**Errāverim fortasse qui mē esse aliquem putāvi.** PLIN. EP. *I may have erred in thinking myself to be somebody.*

**Improba [i. e., Ardea] quae nōstrōs cōgis abesse virōs.** OV. *Naughty Ardea, that forcest (for forcing) our husbands to be away.*

In some authors this causal sense is heightened by **ut, utpote, as; quippe, namely;** but with these particles the Subjunctive is far more common.

628. **Qui = si quis, if any,** has the Indicative when the Conditional is logical. So in Generic Sentences. (246, R. 4.)

**Terra nunquam sine ūsūrā reddit, quod accēpit.** CIC. (**Si quid accēpit.**) (625.)

**Qui mori didicit, servire dēdidicit.** SEN. (424.)

REMARK.—On the Relative with the Subjunctive in Conditional Sentences, see 594.

629. The Subjunctive is employed in Relative clauses when it would be used in a simple sentence.

POTENTIAL: **Habeo quae velim.** CIC. *I have what I should like.*

OPTATIVE: **Quod faustum sit, rēgem creāte.** LIV. *Blessing be on your choice, make ye a king.*

REMARK.—Especially to be noted is the Subjunctive in Restrictive phrases. This Relative often takes **quidem**, sometimes **modo**. Such phrases are **quod sciam = quantum scio, for all I know;** **quod meminerim, so far as memory serves me.**

**Omnium ōrātōrum quōs quidem cognōverim acūtissimum iudico Sertōrium.** CIC. *Of all orators, so far as I know them, I consider Sertorius the most acute.*

**Nullum ornātum qui modo nōn obscurēt subtrahendum puto.** QUINT. *I think no ornament is to be withdrawn, provided that it do not cause obscurity.*

Sometimes **qui quidem** is found with the Indicative.

630. The Subjunctive is used in Relative clauses which form a part of the utterance or the view of another than the narrator, or of the narrator himself when indirectly quoted. (539, R.) So especially in **Ōrātiō Obliqua** and Final Sentences:

**Rectē Graeci praecipunt, nōn temptanda quae effici nōn possint.** QUINT. *Right are the Greeks in teaching, that those things are not to be attempted, which cannot be accomplished.*

**Apud Hypanim fluvium Aristotelēs ait, bestiolās quāsdam nāsci quae ūnum diem vivant.** CIC. (658.)

**Pactus omnēs librōs quōs frāter suus reliquisset mihi dōnāvit.** CIC. (This is Pactus' statement; otherwise: **quōs frāter ejus** (521) **reliquerat.**)

**Xerxēs prāemium prōposuit qui [= ei qui] invēnisset novam volup-  
tātem.** CIC. (621.)

**Multi suam vitam neglexērunt ut eōs qui hīs cārīorēs quam ipsi sibi  
essent liberārent.** CIC. *Many have neglected their own lives, that they might  
free those who were dearer to them, than they were to themselves.*

REMARKS.—Even in **Ūrātio Obliqua** the Indicative is retained :

1. In explanations of the narrator :

**Nūtiātur Afrāniō magnōs commēātūs qui iter habēbant ad Caesarem ad  
flūmen constitisse.** CAES. *It is (was) announced to Afranius that large supplies of pro-  
visions (which were on their way to Caesar) had halted at the river.*

In the historians this sometimes occurs where the Relative clause is an integral part  
of the sentence, especially in the Imperfect and Pluperfect ; partly for clearness, partly  
for liveliness. For shifting Indicative and Subjunctive, see LIV. xxvi. 1.

2. In mere circumlocutions :

**Quis neget haec omnia quae vidēmus deōrum potestāte administrārī ?** CIO.  
*Who would deny that this whole visible world is managed by the power of the gods ?*

**Prōvidendum est nē ea quae dicuntur ab eō qui dicit dissentiant.** QUINT. *We  
must see to it that the speech be not out of keeping with the speaker.*

**631. Relative sentences which depend on Infinitives and  
Subjunctives, and form an integral part of the thought, are put  
in the Subjunctive (Attraction of Mood) :**

**Figrī est ingenīi contentum esse iis quae sint ab aliis inventa.** QUINT.  
*It is the mark of a slow genius to be content with what has been found out by  
others.*

**Quis eum diligit quem metuat aut eum ā quō sē metuī putet ?** CIC.  
*Who could love a man whom he fears, or by whom he deems himself feared ?*

**Nam quod emās possis jūre vocāre tuum.** MART. *For what you buy,  
you may rightly call your own.*

**Ab aliō expectēs alterī quod fēceris.** SYRUS. (306.)

**In virtūte sunt multi ascensūs, ut is glōriā maximē excellat, qui vir-  
tūte plūrimū praestet.** CIC. *In virtue there are many degrees, so that he  
excels most in glory, who has the greatest eminence in virtue.*

**SI sōlōs eōs dicerēs miserōs quibus moriendum esset, nēminem eōrum  
qui viverent exciperēs ; moriendum enim est omnibus.** CIC. *If you  
called only those wretched who had (have) to die, you would except none who  
lived (live) ; for all have to die.*

REMARKS.—The Indicative is used :

1. In mere circumlocutions ; so, often in Consecutive Sentences :

**Necesse est facere sūmptum qui quaerit lucrum.** PLAUT. (535.)

**Efficitur ab ōrātōre, ut iī qui audiunt ita afficiantur ut ōrātōr velit.** CIC. *It is  
brought about by the orator that those who hear him (= his auditors) are affected as he  
wishes (them to be).*

2. Of individual facts :

**Et quod vidēs perisse perditum dūcās.** CAT. *And what you see (definite thing,  
definite person) is lost for aye, for aye deem lost. (Quod vidēs, any body, any thing.)*

**632. Relative Sentences of Design.**—Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive (of Design) when **qui** = **ut is**:

**Sunt multi qui aliis eripiunt quod aliis largiantur.** CIC. *Many are they who snatch from some to lavish on others.*

**Senex serit arborēs, quae alteri sēculō prōsint.** CIC. (545.)

**Semper habē Pyladēn, qui consōlētur Orestēn.** OV. (545.)

**Artaxerxēs Themistocli Magnēsiam urbem dōnāverat, quae ei pānem praebēret.** NEP. (545.)

REMARK.—In many combinations this Relative leans to the Characteristic, and the conception seems Potential rather than Optative.

**633. Relative Sentences of Tendency.**—Optative Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive (of Tendency) when **qui** = **ut is**.

The notion is generally that of Character and Adaptation :

**Damna nulla tanta sunt quae nōn viri fortēs ferenda arbitrentur.** CIC. *There are no losses so great, that brave men should not think them endurable (great enough to keep brave men from thinking them endurable).*

**Ille ego sum cūjus laniet furiōsa capillōs.** OV. *I am the man whose hair she tears in her seasons of frenzy.*

**Nil prōdest quod nōn laedere possit idem.** OV. (296.)

**Quem mea Calliopē laeserit ūnus ego.** OV. *I am the only one that my Calliope (= my Muse) has hurt.*

**Māior sum quam cui possit Fortūna nocēre.** OV. (313.)

**Digna fuit illa nātūra quae meliōra vellet.** QUINT. (556, R. 2.)

**634.** This construction of the Characteristic Relative is especially common after such general expressions as

**Est qui, sunt qui, there is, there are some who ; nēmo est qui, there is none to ; nihil est quod, there is nothing ; habeo quod, I have to ; reperiuntur qui, persons are found who (to) . . . ; quis est qui? who is there who (to) . . . ? est cūr, there is reason for, &c.** So, also, **fuit cum, there was a time when.**

**Sunt qui discessum animi ā corpore putent esse mortem.** CIC. *There are some who (to) think that death is the departure of the soul from the body.*

**Fuit qui suādēret appellātiōnem mēnsis Augusti in Septembrem transferendam.** SUET. *There was a man who urged (= to urge) that the name of the month (of) August should be transferred to September.*

**Multi fuērunt qui tranquillitatem expetentēs ā negōtiis publicis sē remōverint.** CIC. *There have been many who, in the search for quiet, have withdrawn themselves from public engagements.*

**Post mortem in morte nihil est quod metuam mali.** PLAUT. *After death there is no ill in death for me to dread.*

**Nec mea qui digitis lūmina condāt erit.** OV. *And there will be no one to close mine eyes with his fingers.*

**Miserrimus est qui cum ēsse cupit quod edat nōn habet.** PLAUT. *He is a poor wretch who, when he wants to eat, has not any thing to eat.*

**Nōn habet quid edat** would mean: *does not know what to eat.*

**Nōn est quod paupertās nōs ā philosophiā revocet nē egestās quidem.** SEN. *There is nothing to make narrow circumstances recall us from philosophy—not even (= or even) want.*

REMARKS.—1. The Indicative may be used in the statements of definite facts, and not of general characteristics:

**Multi sunt qui ōripiant,**  
*There are many to snatch away.*

**Multi sunt qui ōripiunt.**  
*Many are they who snatch away.*

Of course this happens only after affirmative sentences. The poets use the Indicative more freely than prose writers:

**Sunt-qui (= quidam) quod sentiunt nōn audent dicere.** CIC. *Some dare not say what they think.*

**Sunt- quibus ingrātō timida indulgentia servit.** OV. *To some trembling indulgence plays the slave all thoughtlessly.*

**Est-ubi profectō damnum praestat facere quam lucrum.** PLAUT. *Sometimes, in point of fact, 'tis better to lose than gain.*

2. When a definite predicate is negated, the Indicative may stand on account of the definite statement, the Subjunctive on account of the negative:

A. **Nihil bonum est quod nōn eum qui id possideat meliōrem facit;** or,

A. **Nihil bonum est quod nōn eum qui id possideat meliōrem faciat.**

A. *Nothing that does not make its owner better is good.*

B. *There is nothing good that does not make its owner better.*

635. *Negative of Qui in Sentences of Character.*—**Qui nōn,** sometimes **quae nōn, quod nōn, &c.,** are represented after negative clauses by **quīn**:

**Sunt certa vitia quae nēmo est quīn effugere cupiat.** CIC. *There are certain faults which there is no one but (= everybody) desires to escape.*

**Nīl tam difficile est quīn quaerendō investigārī possiet (= possit).** TER. (556.)

But as **quīn** = **ut nōn**, the demonstrative may be expressed:

**Nōn cum quōquam arma contuli quīn is mihi succubuerit.** NEP. *I have never measured swords with any one that he has not (but he has) succumbed to me.*

For other uses of **quīn**, see 551.

636. *Relative in a Causal Sense.*—When **qui** = **cum** is, as *he*, the Subjunctive is employed.

The particles *ut*, *utpote*, *quippe*, *as*, are often used in conjunction with the Relative :

[*Caninius*] *fuit mirificā vigilantīā quī suō tōtō consulātū somnum nōn viderit.* CIC. *Caninius has shown marvellous watchfulness, not to have seen* (= taken a wink of) *sleep in his whole consulship.*

*Ō fortunāte adulescens, quī tuae virtūtis Homērum praecōnem invēneris!* CIC. *Lucky youth! to have found a crier (= trumpeter) of your valor (in) Homer!*

*Māior glōria Scipionis, Quincti recentior ut quī eō annō triumphāset.* LIV. *Scipio's glory was greater, Quinctius' was fresher, (as was to be expected in) a man who (inasmuch as he) had triumphed in that year.*

*Plato a Dionysio tyrannō crudēliter violātus est quippe quem vēnumdari jussisset.* NEP. *Plato was cruelly maltreated by the tyrant Dionysius, seeing, namely, that he had ordered him to be sold.*

637. *Relative in a Concessive or Adversative Sense.*—*Qui* is sometimes used as equivalent to *cum* in a Concessive or Adversative Sense:

*Ego quī leviter Graecās litterās attigissem, tamen cum vēnissem Athēnās complūrēs diēs ibi commorātus sum.* CIC. *Although I had dabbled but slightly in Greek, nevertheless, having come to Athens, I stayed there several days.*

638. *Accusative Relative and Infinitive.*—The Accusative Relative, with the Infinitive, may be used in *Ōratiō Obliqua* when the Relative is to be resolved into a Coördinating Conjunction and the Demonstrative:

*Philosophi cōsunt unumquemque nostrum mundi esse partem, ex quō illud nātūrā consequi ut communem utilitatem nostrae antepōnāmus.* CIC. *Philosophers think that every one of us is a part of the universe, and that the natural consequence of this is for us to prefer the common welfare to our own.*

REMARK.—So also sometimes sentences with the relative particles *quia*, *cum*, *ut*, *quanquam*, etc.: *quia trucidāre* = *quia trucidārent*, *because they butchered* (only in the later historians).

639. *Combination of Relative Sentences.*—Relative Sentences are combined by means of Copulative Conjunctions only when they are actually coördinate.

When the second Relative would stand in the same case as the first, it is commonly omitted.

When it would stand in a different case, the Demonstrative is often substituted; or, if the case be the Nominative or Accusative, the Relative may be omitted altogether:

**Dumnorix** qui principātum obtinēbat cuique plēbs favēbat,

*Dumnorix, who held the chieftaincy, and whom the commons favored;*

**Dumnorix** qui principātum obtinēbat ac plēbi acceptus erat, (CAES.),

*Dumnorix, who held the chieftaincy, and (who) was acceptable to the commons;*

**Dumnorix** qui principātum obtinēbat eique plēbs favēbat,

*Dumnorix, who held the chieftaincy, and whom the commons favored;*

**Dumnorix** qui principātum obtinēbat et plēbs diligēbat,

*Dumnorix, who held the chieftaincy, and (whom) the commons loved;*

**Dumnorix** quem plēbs diligēbat et principātum obtinēbat,

*Dumnorix, whom the commons loved, and (who) held the chieftaincy.*

REMARK.—The Relative is not combined with adversative or illative conjunctions (*but who, who therefore*), except at the beginning of a sentence, when it represents or anticipates a demonstrative. (622.)

**Qui fortis est fidens est, qui autem fidens est is nōn extimēscit.** CIC. *He who is brave is confident, but he who is confident is not afraid.*

**Sed qui, qui tamen.** can be used in antithesis to adjectives.

**Sōphrōn mīmōrum quidem scriptor sed quem Plato probāvit.** QUINT. *Sophron, a writer of mimes, 'tis true, but (one) that Plato approved.*

640. *Relative Sentence represented by a Participle.*—The Relative sentence is sometimes represented by a Participle, but generally the Participle expresses a closer connection than the mere explanatory Relative:

**Omnēs aliud agentēs, aliud simulantēs perfidī sunt.** CIC. *All who are driving at one thing and pretending another are treacherous.*

**Pisistratus Homēri librōs confūsōs antea sic disposuisse dicitur ut nunc habēmus.** CIC. *Pisistratus is said to have arranged the books of Homer, which were (whereas they were) in confusion before, as we have them now.*

#### COMPARATIVE SENTENCES.

641. A peculiar phase of the Relative sentence is the Comparative, which is introduced in English by *as* or *than*, in Latin by a great variety of relative forms:

I. By correlatives;

II. By *atque* or *ac*;

III. By *quam*.

642. *Moods in Comparative Sentences.*—The mood of the Dependent clause is the Indicative, unless the Subjunctive is

required by the laws of oblique relation, or by the conditional idea (604).

REMARK.—On *potius quam* with the Subjunctive, see below, 647, R. 4.

643. The dependent clause often borrows its verb from the leading clause :

*Ignoratio futurorum malorum utilior est quam scientia.* CIC. (311.)

*Servi moribus iisdem erant quibus dominus.* CIC. (296, R. 1.)

644. When the dependent clause (or standard of comparison) borrows its verb from the leading clause, the dependent clause is treated as a part of the leading clause; and if the first or leading clause stands in the Accusative with the Infinitive, the second or dependent clause must have the Accusative likewise :

*Ita sentio Latinam linguam locupletiores esse quam Graecam.* CIC.

*It is my opinion that the Latin language is richer than the Greek.*

*Ego Gajum Caesarem non eadem de republica sentire quae me scio.*

CIC. *I know that Gaius Caesar has not the same views with regard to the state as I (have).*

## I. CORRELATIVE COMPARATIVE SENTENCES.

645. Correlative Sentences of Comparison are introduced by Adjective and Adverbial Correlatives :

### 1. Adjective correlatives :

tot, totidem	quot,	(so) as many	} as.
tantus	quantus,	(so) as great	
talis	qualis,	such	
idem	qui,	the same	

### 2. Adverbial correlatives :

tam	quam,	(so) as much	} as.
tantopere	quantopere	(so) as much	
toties	quoties,	as often	
tamdiu	quamdium,	as long	
ita, sic	{ ut, uti, sicut,		{ so (as) = as.
item, itidem			
	quomodo,		

*Quot homines, tot sententiae, (as) many men, (so) many minds.* PROV.

*Frumentum tanti fuit quanti iste aestimavit.* CIC. *Corn was worth as much as he valued it.*

**Quālem invēni tālem reliqui.** FRONT. *Such as I found (him), I left (him).*

**Cimōn incidit in eandem invidiam quam pater suus.** NEP. (296.)

**Nihil tam populāre quam bonitās.** CIC. *Nothing is so winning as kindness.*

**Sic dē ambitīōne quōmodo dē amicā queruntur.** SEN. *They complain of ambition as they do of a sweetheart.*

**Tamdiū requiēscō quamdiū ad tē scribo.** CIC. *I rest as long as I am writing to you.*

REMARKS.—1. On other forms with **idem** see 296.

2. **Ut quisque** with the Superlative is more common than **quō quisque** with the Comparative, and is translated in the same way:

**Ut quisque sibi plurimum confidit, ita maximē excellit.** CIC. *The more a man trusts himself, the more he excels.*

**Obscurior quō quisque dēterior.** QUINT. *The obscurer a man (a speaker) is, the worse he is.*

One member often coalesces with the other:

**Optimum quidque rarissimum est = Ut quidque rarissimum est, ita optimum.** See 305.

3. **Ut—ita** is often used concessively (484). On **ita—ut**, in Asseverations, see 255:

4. **Ut** and **pro eō ut** are frequently used in a limiting or causal sense, *so far as, inas-much as*: **Pro eō ut temporum difficultās tulit,** *so far as the hard times permitted*; **ut tum rēs erant,** *as things were then*; **ut temporibus illis,** *for those times*; **ut erat furiosus,** *stark mad as he was.*

**Vir ut inter Aetōlōs facundus.** LIV. *A man of eloquence for an Aetolian.*

**Ut sunt hūmāna, nihil est perpetuum datum.** PLAUT. *As the world wags, nothing is given for good and all.*

5. On **quam, quantus,** and the Superlative, see 311.

Notice in this connection **quam qui** with the Superlative:

**Tam sum amicus reipublicae quam qui maximē (= est).** CIC. *I am as devoted a friend to the State as he who is most (= as any man).*

## II. COMPARATIVE SENTENCES WITH **atque (ac).**

646. Adjectives and Adverbs of Likeness and Unlikeness may take **atque** or **ac**:

**Virtūs eadem in homine ac deō.** CIC. *Virtue is the same in man as in god.*

**Date operam nē simili fortunā utāmur atque antea ūsi sumus.** TER. *Do your endeavor that we have not (ill)-luck like that we had before.*

**Dissimulatio est quum alia dicuntur ac sentiās.** CIC. *Dissimulation is when other things are said than what you mean (something is said other than what you mean).*

**Similiter facis ac si mē rogēs cūr tē duobus contuear oculis, et nōn alterō.** CIC. *You are acting (like) as if you were to ask me why I am looking at you with two eyes, and not with one.*



**Nōn dixi secus (aliter) ac sentiēbam.** CIC. *I did not speak otherwise than I thought.*

REMARKS.—1. The expression is commonly explained by an ellipsis :

**Aliter dixi atque [aliter] sentiēbam,** *I spoke one way and yet I was thinking another way.*

So we find :

**Timeo nē aliud crēdās atque aliud nūntiēs.** TER. *I fear that you believe one thing and tell another.*

Et and -que are occasionally used in the same way.\*

2. **Alius, aliter, secus,** seldom have **quam** : **nōn alius** and other negative combinations seldom have **atque**, commonly **quam** or **nisi**. (592, R. 2.)

**Philosophia quid est aliud (= nihil est aliud) nisi dōnum deōrum?** CIC. *Philosophy—what else is it but the gift of the gods?*

**Nōn aliter** has either **quam** or **atque**.

### III. COMPARATIVE SENTENCES WITH **quam**.

647. Comparative Sentences with **quam** follow the comparative degree or comparative expressions.

The Verb of the dependent clause is commonly to be supplied from the leading clause, according to 643.

In Comparative Sentences **quam** takes the same case after it as before it :

**Melior tūtiorque est certa pāx quam spērāta victōria.** LIV. (292, R. 1.)

**Potius amicum quam dictum perdidī.** QUINT. *I preferred to lose my friend rather than my joke.*

**Existimēs velim nēmīnem cuiquam cārīōrem unquam fuisse quam tē mihi.** CIC. (546, R. 3.)

REMARKS.—1. When the second member is a subject, and the first member an oblique case, the second member *must* be put in the Nominative, with the proper form of the verb *esse*, unless the oblique case be an Accusative :

**Vicinus tuus equum meliōrem habet quam tuus est.** CIC. (593.)

**Hæc verba sunt Varrōnis, hominis doctiōris quam fuit Claudius.** GELL. *These words are (the words) of Varro, a person of greater learning than Claudius (was).*

**Ego hominem callidiōrem vidī nēmīnem quam Phormiōnem.** TER. *I have seen no shrewder man than Phormio (= quam Phormio est).*

2. On **quam prō**, see **quam quī**, 313. On the double comparative, 314.

3. **Atque** for **quam** after a comparative is poetical.

4. When two clauses are compared by **potius**, *rather*, **prius**, *before*, **citius**, *quicker*, *sooner*, the second clause is put in the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive (512), with or without **ut**.

**Dēpugnā potius quam serviās.** CIC. (579 R.)

**Vir bonus statuit intolerābilī dōlōre lacerārī potius quam ut officium prōdat.** CIC. *A good man resolves to let himself be torn by unsufferable anguish, rather than be untrue to his duty.*

\* Still, -que in **atque** connects these clauses with the Relative, and the explanation of **atque** as **ad + que**, *in comparison with + how* (Ribbeck) is worthy of note.

**Moritūrōs sē affirmābant citius quam in aliēnōs mōrēs verterentur.** LIV. *They declared that they had rather die, than let themselves be changed to foreign ways.*

If the leading clause is in the Infinitive, the dependent clause may be in the Infinitive likewise, and this is the more common construction when the Infinitive follows a verb of Will and Desire :

**Haec patiēda cōnseo, potius quam trucidārī corpora vestra.** LIV. *I think these things are to be endured, rather than that your bodies (= you) should be butchered.*

5. Instead of **tam—quam**, as—so, the Roman prefers the combinations **nōn minus quam—nōn magis quam** (by Litotēs).

1.) **Nōn minus quam** means *no less than = quite as much :*

**Patria hominibus nōn minus cāra esse dēbet quam liberī.** CIC. *Country ought to be no less dear to men than children (= quite as dear as).*

2.) **Nōn magis quam** means *quite as little, or quite as much :*

**Animus nōn magis est sānus quam corpus.** CIC. *The mind is no more sound than the body = as little sound as the body.*

Or it might mean :

*The mind is no more sound than the body = the body is quite as sound as the mind.*

**Fabius nōn in armīs praestantior fuit quam in togā.** CIC. *Fabius was not more distinguished in war than in peace (no less distinguished in peace than in war, quite as distinguished in peace as in war).*

## THE ABRIDGED SENTENCE.

648. The compound sentence may be reduced to a simple sentence, by substituting an Infinitive or a Participle for the dependent clause.

### THE INFINITIVE AND INFINITIVE FORMS.

649. The practical uses of the Infinitive and its kindred forms, as equivalents of dependent clauses, have already been considered :

Infinitive after Verbs of Creation: 424 and after.

Gerund and Gerundive: 426 and after.

Supine: 435 and after.

Infinitive in Object Sentences: 526 and after.

Infinitive in Complementary Final Sentences: 532.

Infinitive in Relative Sentences: 638.

**REMARK.**—Under the head of the Abridged Sentence, will be treated the Historical Infinitive and **Ūrātio Obliqua**: the Historical Infinitive, because it is a compendious Imperfect; **Ūrātio Obliqua**, because it foreshortens, if it does not actually abridge, and effaces the finer distinctions of **Ūrātio Recta**.

## HISTORICAL INFINITIVE.

650. The Infinitive of the Present is sometimes used by the historians to give a rapid outline of events, with the

subject in the Nominative; generally, several infinitives in succession :

[*Verrēs*] *minitārī Diodōrō, vōciferārī palam, lacrimās interdum vīx tenēre.* CIC. *Verres threatened Diodorus, bawled out before everybody, sometimes could hardly restrain his tears.*

REMARKS.—1. The ancient assumption of an ellipsis of *coepit*, *began* (QUINT. ix. 3, 58), serves to show the conception, although it does not explain the construction. There is no ellipsis. The Infinitive is to be explained as in *Oratio Obliqua*. It takes the place of the Imperfect, is used chiefly in rapid passages, and gives the outline of the thought, and not the details.

2. The Historical Infinitive is sometimes found after *cum*, *ubi*, etc. :

*Nōn multum erat prōgressa nāvis cum datō signō ruere tectum.* TAC. *Not far (but a little way) had the ship advanced, when, at a signal given, the roof came down with a rush (began to tumble).*

## ORATIO OBLIQUA

651. The thoughts of the narrator, or the exact words of a person, as reported by the narrator, are called *Oratio Recta*, or Direct Discourse.

Indirect Discourse, or *Oratio Obliqua*, reports not the exact words spoken, but the general impression produced.

REMARKS.—1. Under the general head of *Oratio Obliqua* are embraced also those clauses which imply Indirect Quotation (Partial Obliquity). See 509.

2. *Inquam*, *quoth I*, is used in citing the *Oratio Recta*, *ājo*, *I say*, generally in *Oratio Obliqua*. *Inquam* is always parenthetic; *ājo* may or may not be parenthetic. *Oratio Recta* may also be cited by a parenthetic “*ut ait*,” “*ut ajunt*,” *as he says, as they say*. When the subject of *inquit* is mentioned it is commonly postponed.

652. *Oratio Obliqua* differs from *Oratio Recta*, partly in the use of the Moods and Tenses, partly in the use of the Pronouns.

REMARKS.—1. It must be remembered that *Ō. O.* is necessarily less accurate in its conception than *Ō. R.*, and hence it is not always possible to restore the *Ō. R.* from the *Ō. O.* with perfect certainty. What is ideal to the speaker, may become unreal to the narrator from his knowledge of the result, and hence, when accuracy is aimed at, the narrator takes the point of view of the speaker, and in the last resort passes over to *Ō. Recta*.

2. *Ō. Obliqua* often comes in without any formal notice.

### *Moods in Oratio Obliqua.*

653. In *Oratio Obliqua* the principal clauses are put in the Infinitive, the subordinate clauses in the Subjunctive.

**Oratio Recta:** Apud Hypanim fluvium, inquit Aristotelēs,

**Oratio Obliqua:** Apud Hypanim fluvium Aristotelēs ait,

**Ō. R.:** bestiolae quaedam nascuntur.

**Ō. O.:** bestiolās quāsdam nāscī,

**Ō. R.:** quae ūnum diem vivunt,

**Ō. O.:** quae ūnum diem vivant.

**Ō. R.—***On the river Bog, says Aristotle,*

**Ō. O.—***Aristotle says that, on the river Bog, } little creatures are born, that  
live (but) one day.*

**Sōcratēs dicere solēbat:**

**Ō. R.** Omnēs in eō quod sciunt satis sunt eloquentēs.

**Ō. O.** Omnēs in eō quod scirent satis esse eloquentēs.

**Ō. R.** *Socrates used to say: "All men ARE eloquent enough in what they UNDERSTAND."*

**Ō. O.** *Socrates used to say that all men WERE eloquent enough in what they UNDERSTOOD.*

**REMARK.**—When the Principal Clause, or Apodosis, is in the Indicative, the Infinitive is used according to the rule for Verbs of Saying and Thinking. When the Principal Clause, or Apodosis, is in the Subjunctive, as in the Ideal and Unreal conditions, special rules are necessary. (659.)

Otherwise, Subjunctive in **Ō. R.** continues to be Subjunctive in **Ō. O.**

**654.** Interrogative sentences are put in the Subjunctive according to 469:

**Ariovistus respondit sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum: quid sibi vellet cūr in suās possessiōnēs veniret.** CAES. *Ariovistus replied that he had come to Gaul before the Roman people: what did he (Caesar) mean by coming into his possessions? (Quid tibi vis?)*

**Thrasybūlus magnā vōce exclāmat; cūr sē fugiant?** *Thrasybulus cried out with a loud voice (asking), why they ran from him. (Ō. R., cūr mē fugitis?)*

**REMARKS.**—1. Indicative Rhetorical Questions (466) are transferred from the Indicative of the **Oratio Recta** to the Accusative and Infinitive of **Ō. O.**; but seldom in the Second Person, which is commonly in the Subjunctive.

**Ō. R.** Num possum? *Can I?* [No.] **Ō. O.** Num posse? *Could he?*  
**Quid est turpius?** *What is baser?* [Nothing.] **Quid esse turpius?** *What was baser?*

**Quō sē repulsōs ab Rōmānis itūrōs?** LIV. *Whither should they go, if repelled by the Romans? (Quō ibimus?)*

**Cui nōn appārere ab eō qui prior arma intulisset injūriam ortam esse?** LIV. *To whom is it not evident that the wrong began with him, who had been the first to wage war? (Cui nōn appāret?)*

**Si bonum dūcerent, quid prō noxiō damnāssent?** LIV. *If they thought him a good man, why had they condemned him as guilty? (Si bonum dūcitis, quid prō noxiō damnāstis?)*

2. In Subjunctive Rhetorical Questions the Subjunctive is either retained, or transferred to the Infinitive. The Deliberative Subjunctive is always retained,

**Quis sibi persuāderet sine certā rē Ambiorigem ad ejusmodi consilium descendisse?** CAES. *Who could persuade himself that Ambiorix had proceeded to an extreme measure like that, without (having made) a sure thing (of it)?* (**Quis sibi persuādeat?**)

The Infinitive form would be the Future: **quem sibi persuāsūrum?** (659) and is not to be distinguished from the Future Indicative.

**655.** Imperative sentences are put in the Subjunctive: the Negative is, of course, **nē**:

**Reddatur responsum: Nōndum tempus pugnae esse; castris sē tenērent.** LIV. *There was returned for answer, that it was not yet time to fight, that they must keep within the camp.* (**Ō. R. castris vōs tenēte.**)

**Vercingetorix cohortātus est: nē perturbārentur incommodō.** CAES. *Vercingetorix comforted them (by saying) that they must not allow themselves to be disconcerted by the disaster.* (**Ō. R. nōlite perturbārī.**)

REMARK.—**Ut** can be used in the first sentence, according to 546; but only in the first.

**Pythia respondit ut moenibus ligneis sē mūnirent.** NEP. *The Pythia answered that they must defend themselves with walls of wood.*

### TENSES IN ORATIO OBLIQUA.

**656.** The Tenses of the Infinitive follow the laws already laid down (530):

The Present Infinitive expresses contemporaneous action;

The Perfect Infinitive expresses prior action;

The Future Infinitive expresses future action.

**657.** The Tenses of the Subjunctive follow the laws of sequence (510). The choice is regulated by the point of view of the Reporter, or the point of view of the Speaker.

REMARK.—By assuming the point of view of the speaker, greater liveliness as well as greater accuracy is imparted to the discourse. This form is technically called **Repraesentatio**. In Conditional Sentences **Repraesentatio** often serves to prevent ambiguity. The point of view not unfrequently shifts from reporter to speaker, sometimes in the same sentence.

Point of View of the Reporter:

**Lēgatiōnī Ariovistus respondit: sibi mirum vidērī quid in suā Galliā quam bellō vicisset, Caesarī negotiū esset.** CAES. *To the embassy Ariovistus replied, that it seemed strange to him (he wondered) what business Caesar had in his Gaul, which he had conquered in war.*

Point of View of the Speaker:

**Lēgātis Helvētiorum Caesar respondit: consuēsse deōs immortālēs,**

quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcisci velint, his secundiōrēs interdum rēs concēdere. CAES. *To the envoys of the Helvetians Cæsar replied, that the gods were (are) wont, that men might (may) suffer the more severely from change in their fortunes, to grant occasional increase of prosperity to those whom they wished (wish) to punish for their crime.* (A long passage may be found in LIV. xxviii. 32.)

Point of View shifted:

Ad hæc Marius respondit: SI quid ab senātū petere vellent, ab armis discēdant. SALL. *Thereto Marius replied: If they wished to ask anything of the senate, they must lay down their arms.*

658. Object, Causal, Temporal, and Relative Clauses follow the general laws of *Oratio Obliqua*.

Examples of *Ō. O.* in Object Clauses, 524.

Causal, 541.

Temporal, 562, 563, 564, 566, 570, 572, 576.

Relative, 630.

REMARKS.—1. Coördinate Relative Clauses are put in the Accusative and Infinitive (638).

2. Relative Clauses are put in the Indicative: 1. In mere circumlocutions. 2. In explanations of the narrator. (630, R. 1.)

3. *Dum*, with the Indicative, is often retained as a mere circumlocution (so also sometimes *cum*):

Dic, hospes, Spartae nōs tē hīc vīdisse jacentēs, dum sanctis patriæ lēgibus obsequimur. CIC. *Tell Sparta, stranger, that thou hast seen us lying here obeying (in obedience to) our country's hallowed laws.*

659. *Conditional Sentences in Oratio Obliqua (Total and Partial).*

1. The Protasis follows the rule.

2. The Indicative Apodosis follows the rule, but Present, Imperfect, and Perfect Subjunctive are turned into the Future Infinitive or its periphrases.

The Pluperfect Subjunctive is transferred to the Perfect Infinitive of the Active Periphrastic Conjugation.

Passive and Supineless Verbs take the circumlocution with *futūrum fuisse ut* . . . . 240, R. 2.

REMARK.—*Posse* needs no Future (245, R. 3), and *potuisse* no Periphrastic Perfect Infinitive, so that these forms are often used to lighten the construction.

3. *Identical Forms*.—In the transfer of conditions to *O. O.*, the difference between many forms disappears. For instance:

- I. SI id crēdis, errābis. } Dico tē, si id crēdās, errātūrum esse.  
 SI id crēdēs, errābis. }  
 SI id crēdās, errēs.
- II. SI id crēdis, errābis. } Dixi tē, si id crēderēs, errātūrum esse.  
 SI id crēdēs, errābis. }  
 SI id crēdās, errēs.  
 SI id crēderēs, errārēs.
- III. SI id crēdideris, errābis. } Dixi tē, si id crēdidissēs, errātūrum esse.  
 SI id crēdideris, errēs. }  
 SI id crēdideris, errāveris.  
 SI id crēdidissēs, errārēs.

REMARK.—In No. I the difference is not vital, though exactness is lost.

In No. II. the ambiguity is avoided by *Repraesentatio* for the logical condition, and the use of the Periphrastic Perfect for the Unreal, wherever it is possible. The difference between an Unfulfilled Present and an Unfulfilled Past would naturally vanish to the narrator, to whom both are Past.\*

No. III., like No. II., is used chiefly of the Future:

Ariovistus respondit: SI quid ipsi & Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad illum ventūrum fuisse: si quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venire oportere. CAES. *Ariovistus answered, that if he had wanted anything of Caesar he would have come to him; if he (Caesar) wanted anything of him, he ought to come to him (Ariovistus).*

Ō. R. SI quid mihi & Caesare opus esset, ego ad illum vēnissem: si quid ille mē vult, illum ad mē venire oportet.

## 660. Logical Conditions in Ōrātio Obliqua :

1. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: si ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescriberet quem ad modum suō jūre ūterētur, nōn oportere sēsē ā populō Rōmānō in suō jūre impediri. CAES. *To this Ariovistus made answer: If he did not prescribe to the Roman people how to exercise their right, he ought not to be hindered by the Roman people in the exercise of his right. (Ō. R. SI ego nōn praescribo, nōn oportet mē impediri.)*

2. SI bonum dūcerent, quid prō noxiō damnāsset? Sīn (593) noxium comperissent, quid alterum consulātum crēderent? LIV. *If they thought him a good man, why had they condemned him as guilty; if on the other hand they had found him guilty, why did they intrust him with a second consulship? (Ō. R. SI—dūcitis, quid damnāstis? sīn—comperistis, quid crēditis?)*

3. Titurius clāmitābat, suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tūtā; si nihil esset (Ō. R., si nihil erit) dūrius, nullō periculō ad proximam legiōnem perventūrōs (Ō. R., perveniētis); si Gallia omnis cum Germānis cōnsentiret (Ō. R., si cōnsentit) ūnam esse (Ō. R., est) in celebritate positam salutem. CAES. *Titurius kept crying out that his resolution was safe in either case: if there were (should be) no especial pressure, they*

\* Cic. Fin. i. 2, 39; v. 31, 93, Weissenborn on LIV. xxxiv. 4.

would get to the next legion without danger; if all Gaul was in league with the Germans, their only safety lay in speed.

4. **Eum omnium labōrum finem fore existimabant si hostem ab Hibērō intercludere potuissent.** CAES. *They thought that would be the end of all (their) toils, if they could cut off the enemy from the Ebro.* (Ō. R., is labōrum finis erit (or fuerit) si hostem intercludere potuerimus.)

5. **[Hi] Jugurthae nōn mediocrem animum pollicitandō accendēbant si Micipsa rēx occidisset, fore uti sōlus imperiō Numidiaē potirētur.** SALL. *These persons kindled no little courage in Jugurtha's heart by promising over and over that if King Micipsa fell, he alone should possess the rule over Numidia.* (Ō. R., si Micipsa occiderit, tū sōlus imperiō potiēris.)

6. **Fidēs data est, si Jugurtham vivum aut necātum sibi tradidisset fore ut illi senātus impūnitātem et sua omnia concēderet.** SALL. *His word was pledged that if he delivered to him Jugurtha, alive or dead, the senate would grant him impunity, and all that was his.* (Ō. R., si mihi tradideris, tibi senātus tua omnia concēdet.)

7. **Nōn multō ante urbem captam exaudita vōx est . . . futurum esse, nisi prōvisum esset, ut Rōma caperētur.** CIC. *Not long before the taking of the city, a voice was heard (saying), that unless precautions were adopted, Rome would be taken.* (Ō. R., nisi prōvisum erit, Rōma capiētur.)

8. **Ariovistus respondit si quid ille sē velit illum ad sē venīre oportēre.** CAES. (659, R.)

9. **[Ariovistus respondit] nisi dēcēdat [Caesar] sēsē illum prō hoste habitūrum; quodsi eum interfecerit, multis sēsē nōbilibus principibusque populi Rōmāni grātum factūrum.** CAES. *Ariovistus replied, that unless Caesar withdrew, he should regard him as an enemy, and in case he killed him, he would do a favor to many men of the highest position among the Roman people.* (Ō. R., Nisi dēcēdēs tē prō hoste habēbo . . . si tē interfecero grātum fecero (236, R. 2).)

10. **Fertur Jugurtha dixisse urbem vēnālem et mātūrē peritūram si emptōrem invēnerit.** SALL. (Perf. Subj.) *Jugurtha is reported to have said that the city was for sale, and would soon perish if it found a buyer.* (Ō. R., urbs peribit si emptōrem invēnerit: Fut. Perf. Ind.)

REMARK.—Posse is used as has been stated. (659.)

**Negārunt bellum dirimi posse nisi Messēniis Achaei Pylum redderent.** LIV. *They said that the war could not be stopped unless the Achaeans restored Pylos to the Messenians.* (Ō. R. Bellum dirimi nōn potest (poterit) nisi Pylum reddent.)

**Docent, si turris concideret, nōn posse militēs continēri quin spēs praedae in urbem irrupant.** CAES. *They show that if the tower fell, the soldiers could not be kept from bursting into the city in the hope of booty.* (Ō. R. si conciderit, nōn possunt (poterunt) continēri.)

## 661. Ideal Conditions in Ōrātiō Obliqua:

1. **Ait sē si ūrātur "Quam hoc suāve" dictūrum.** CIC. *He declares*



that if he were to be burnt he would say, "How sweet this is." (Ō. R. *Si ūrar, dicam*, same form as Logical.)

2. *Voluptātem si ipsa prō sē loquātur concessuram arbitror Dignitātī.* CIC. *I think that if Pleasure were to speak for herself, she would yield (the palm) to Virtue.* (The context shows (Fin. III. 1) that the condition is Ideal, not Logical. *Si loquātur, concēdat.* Comp. 598, R. 2.)

## 662. Unreal Conditions in Ōratio Obliqua:

1. *Titurius clāmitābat Eburōnēs, si Caesar adesset, ad castra [Rōmānōrum] ventūrōs [nōn] esse.* CAES. *Titurius kept crying out that if Caesar were there, the Eburones would not be coming to the camp of the Romans.* (Ō. R., *si Caesar adesset, Eburōnēs nōn venirent.*) On the rareness of this form see 659, R.

2. *Appārēbat si diūtius vixisset Hamilcare duce Poenōs arma Italiae illātūrōs fuisse.* LIV. *It was evident that if he had lived longer, the Punic would have carried their arms into Italy under Hamilcar's conduct.*

3. *Nisi eō ipsō tempore nūntii dē Caesaris victōriā essent allātī existimābant plērique futurū fuisse ut oppidum amitterētur.* CAES. *Had not news of Caesar's victory been brought at that very time, most persons thought the city would have been lost.* (Ō. R., *nisi nūntiī allātī essent, oppidum amissum esset.*)

REMARK.—As the Pluperfect Indicative is sometimes used (rhetorically) for the Subjunctive (246, R. 3), so the ordinary Perfect Infinitive is sometimes employed instead of the Periphrastic:

*Nēmo mihi persuādēbit multōs praestantēs virōs tanta esse cōnātōs (= cōnātūrōs fuisse) nisi animō cernerent* (599, R. 1) *posteritātē ad sē pertinēre.* CIC. *No one will persuade me that (=o) many eminent men had made such mighty endeavors, had they not seen with their minds' (eye) that posterity belonged to them.*

*Pompējum plērique existimant si ācrius insequi voluisset bellum eō diē potuisse finire.* CAES. *Most people think that if Pompey had (but) determined to follow up more energetically, he could have finished the war on that day.* Ō. R., *si voluisset, potuit*, 599, R. 2.)

*Namque illā multitudīne si sāna mens esset* (599, R. 1) *Graeciae, supplicium Persās dare potuisse.* NEP. *For with that number if Greece had had (= been in her) sound mind, the Persians might have paid the penalty (due).* (Ō. R. *Si sāna mens esset Graeciae, supplicium Persae dare potuerunt.*)

## Pronouns in Ōratio Obliqua.

663. 1. The Reflexive is used according to the principles laid down 520, and after.

2. The person addressed is *ille* or *is*:

[*Ariovistus respondit*] *nisi dēcēdat [Caesar] sēsē illum prō hoste hābitūrū: quodsi eum interfēcerit, multis sēsē nōbilibus principibusque populi Rōmānī grātum factūrū.* CAES. (667, R. 9.)

Of course this does not exclude the ordinary demonstrative use.

3. *Hic* and *iste* are commonly changed into *ille* or *is*, as *nunc* into *tum* and *tunc*.

Diodorus respondit se paucis illis diebus argentum misisse Lilybaeum. Crc. (389, R. 4.)

4. *Nōs* is used when the narrator's party is referred to. CAES. B. G. I. 44.

664. *Specimens of the conversion of Oratio Obliqua into Oratio Recta.*

Oratio Obliqua.

Oratio Recta.

1. *Arionistus respondit:*

Transisse Rhenum sese non sua sponte sed rogatum et arcessitum a Gallis; non sine magna spe magnisque praemissis domum propinquosque reliquisse; sedes habere in Gallia ab ipsis concessas, obsides ipsorum voluntate datos; stipendium capere jure belli, quod victores victis imponere consuerint. Non sese Gallis sed Gallis sibi bellum intulisse; omnes Galliae civitates ad se oppugnandum venisse et contra se castra habuisse; eas omnes copias a se uno proelio pulsas ac superatas esse. Si iterum experiri velint, se iterum paratum esse decertare; si pace tui velint, iniquum est de stipendio recusare, quod sua voluntate ad id tempus pependerit, Amicitiam populi Romani sibi ornamento et praesidio, non detrimentum esse oportere idque se ea spe petisse. Si per populum Romanum stipendium remittatur et dediticii subtrahantur, non minus libenter sese recusaturum populi Romani amicitiam quam appetierit. Quod multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam traducat, id se sui muniendi, non Galliae impugnandae causa facere; ejus rei testimonio esse quod nisi rogatus non venerit et quod bellum non intulerit sed defenderit.

CAES. B. G. I., 44.

Transit Rhenum non mea sponte sed rogatus et arcessitus a Gallis; non sine magna spe magnisque praemissis domum propinquosque reliqui; sedes habeo in Gallia ab ipsis concessas, obsides ipsorum voluntate datos; stipendium capio jure belli, quod victores victis imponere consueverunt. Non ego Gallis sed Galli mihi bellum intulerunt; omnes Galliae civitates ad me oppugnandum venerunt et contra me castra habuerunt; eae omnes copiae a me uno proelio pulsae ac superatae sunt. Si iterum experiri volent, iterum paratus sum decertare, si pace tui volunt, iniquum est de stipendio recusare, quod sua voluntate ad hoc tempus pependerunt. Amicitiam populi Romani mihi ornamento et praesidio, non detrimentum esse oportet idque ea spe peti. Si per populum Romanum stipendium remittetur et dediticii subtrahentur, non minus libenter recusabo populi Romani amicitiam quam appeti. Quod multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam traducam,\* id mei muniendi non Galliae impugnandae causa facio; ejus rei testimonio est quod nisi rogatus non veni et quod bellum non intuli sed defendi.

\*Allusion to the preceding speech, otherwise *traduco*.

## Oratio Obligua.

2. *His Caesar ita respondit :*

Eō sibi minus dubitationis dari quod eas res quas legātī Helvetiū commemorassent memoriā tenēret atque eō gravius ferre quō minus meritō populū Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicujus injūriāe sibi conscius fuisset nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō deceptum quod neque commissum & sē intellegeret quārē timēret neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblivisci vellet num etiā recentium injūriarū, quod eō invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptassent, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexassent memoriam depōnere posse? Quod suā victoriā tam insolenter glōriarentur quōdque tam diū sē impūne tulisse injūriās admirārentur eōdem pertinēre. Consuesse enim deōs immortales quō gravius hominēs ex commutātiōne rerū doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcisci velint, his secundiōres interdum res et diuturniōrem impūnitatem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen sī obsides, ab iis sibi dentur uti ea quae pōlliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et sī Aeduīs de injūriis quas ipsi sociisque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciāt sēs cum iis pacem esse factūrum.

CAES. B. G. I., 14.

3. *Sulla regi patefecit :*

Quod polliceatur, senātus et populus Rōmānus, quoniam amplius armis valuisse, nōn in grātiā habitūrōs; faciendum aliquid, quod illōrum magis quam suā rētulisse vidēretur; id ideo in prōptū esse, quoniam Jugurthae cōpiam haberet, quem sī Rōmānis trādidisset, fore ut illi plurimum debēretur; amicitiam, foedus, Numidiaē partem, quam nunc peteret, tunc ultrō adventūram.

SALL. B. J. 111.

## Oratio Recta.

Hōc mihi minus dubitationis datur quod eas res quas vōs, legātī Helvetiū, commemorastis, memoriā teneo atque eō gravius fero quō minus meritō populū Rōmānī acciderunt; quī sī alicujus injūriāe sibi conscius fuisset, nōn fuit difficile cavēre; sed eō deceptus quod neque commissum & sē intellegebat quārē timēret neque sine causā timendum putābat. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblivisci volo, num etiā recentium injūriarū, quod mē invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptastis quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexastis, memoriam depōnere possum? Quod vestrā victoriā tam insolenter glōriāmini, quōdque tam diū mē impūne tulisse injūriās admirāmini eōdem pertinent. Cousueverunt enim di immortales quō gravius hominēs ex commutātiōne rerū doleant,\* quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcisci volunt, his secundiōres interdum res et diuturniōrem impūnitatem concēdere. Cum haec ita sint, tamen sī obsides & vōbis mihi dabuntur, uti ea, quae pollicēmini, factūrōs intellegam et sī Aeduīs de injūriis quas ipsi sociisque eōrum intulistis, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciētis, ego vōbiscum pacem faciam.

Quod pollicēris, senātus et populus Rōmānus quoniam amplius armis valuerunt, nōn in grātiā habebunt; faciendum aliquid, quod illōrum magis quam tuā rētulisse videatur; id ideo in prōptū est, quoniam Jugurthae cōpiam habes, quem sī Rōmānis trādidideris tibi plurimum debēbitur; amicitia, foedus, Numidiaē pars, quam nunc petis, tunc ultrō adveniet.

\*Kraner's interpretation would require dolent.

Ōrātio Obliqua.

4. *Athēniensēs dēplōrāvērunt vastationem populatiōnemque miserabilem agrōrum.* Neque se id queri quod hostilia ab hoste passi forent; esse enim quaedam belli jūra quae ut facere ita pati sit fās. Sata exūrī, dirui tecta, praedās hominum pecorumque agī misera magis quam indigna patienti esse; vērū enim vērō id sē queri, quod is, qui Rōmānōs aliēnigenās et barbarōs vocet, adeō omnia simul divīna hūmānaque jūra polluerit ut priōre populatiōne cum infernīs diīs, secundā cum superīs bellum nefārium gesserit. Omnia sepulcra monumentaque diruta esse in sinibus suis, omnium nudātōs mānēs, nullus ossa terrā tegit. Quālem terram Atticam fecerit, exornātam quondam opulentamque, tālem eum si liceat Aetōliam Graeciamque omnem facturum. Urbis quoque suae similem deformitatem futurum fuisse nisi Rōmāni subvērissent.

Ōrātio Recta.

Nōn id querimur quod hostilia ab hoste passi sumus. Sunt enim quaedam belli jūra quae ut facere ita pati est fās. Sata exūrī, dirui tecta, praedās hominum pecorumque agī misera magis quam indigna patienti sunt; vērū enim vērō id querimur quod is, qui Rōmānōs aliēnigenās et barbarōs vocat, adeō omnia simul divīna hūmānaque jūra polluit ut priōre populatiōne cum infernīs diīs, secundā cum superīs bellum nefārium gesserit. Omnia sepulcra monumentaque diruta sunt in sinibus nōstris, omnium nudātī mānēs, nullus ossa terrā teguntur. Quālem terram Atticam fecit, exornātam quondam opulentamque, tālem is, si licebit Aetōliam Graeciamque omnem faciet. Urbis quoque nōstrae similis deformitās fuisset, nisi Rōmāni subvērissent.

LIV. xxxi. 30.

INVOLVED ŌRĀTIO OBLIQUA. ATTRACTION OF MOOD.

665. Ōrātio Obliqua proper depends on some verb of Thinking or Saying, expressed or understood. In a more general sense, the term Ō. Obliqua is used of all complementary clauses, that belong to ideal relations. The principle is the same in both sets of sentences, for in the one as in the other, the Infinitive takes its dependencies in the Subjunctive, on account of the close relation between the Ideal mood and the Substantive Idea of the verb. Hence the favorite combination of the Infinitive and the Ideal second person :

*Proprium hūmāni ingenii est ōdisse quem laeseris.* TAC. *It is peculiar to human nature to hate whom you have injured.* (But *Ōdisti quem laesisti.*)

The so-called attraction of mood by which clauses originally Indicative become Subjunctive in dependence on Subjunctives, is another phase of the same general principle.

666. All clauses which depend on Infinitives and Subjunctives, and form an integral part of the thought, are put in the Subjunctive :

**Recordatione nostrae amicitiae sic fruor ut beatē vixisse videar quia cum Scipione vixerim.** CIC. *I enjoy the remembrance of our friendship so much that I seem to have lived happily because I lived with Scipio.*

**Vereor nē dum minuere velim labōrem augeam.** CIC. *I fear lest while I am wishing to lessen the toil I may increase it (dum minuere volo, augeo).*

**Corporis viribus utāre dum adsint, cum absint nē requirās.** CIC. (264.)

**Quārē fiēbat ut omnium oculōs quotiēscumque in publicum prōdisset ad sē converteret.** NEP. *Whereby it happened that he attracted the eyes of all, every time he went out in public (quotiēscumque prōdierat convertēbat).*

**Nēscire quid antequam nātus sis acciderit, id est semper esse puerum.** CIC. *Not to know what happened before you were born, (that) is to be always a boy.*

**Fraus fidem in parvis sibi praestruit ut cum operae pretium sit, cum magnā mercēde fallat.** CIC. *Fraud lays itself a foundation of credit in small things in order that when it is worth while it may make a great profit by cheating.*

**Rēte texunt [arāneolae] ut si quid inhaeserit conficiant.** CIC. *Spiders weave a web to kill anything that gets caught in it (si quid inhaesit conficiunt, 569).*

**Abeunt si quid poposcerit concēdere mōris.** TAC. *To the departing (guest) it is customary to grant anything that he asks (si quid poposcit concēdunt).*

REMARKS.—1. From this it is easy to see how the Subjunctive came to be used in a Generic or Iterative sense after Tenses of Continuance. Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative may all involve the Notion of Habit, Will, Inclination, Endeavor, and the complementary clauses would follow the sense rather than the form (Partial Obliquity). Examples, see 565, R.

2. **Dum** not unfrequently resists the Attractive both in prose and poetry :

**Tantum nē nocēās dum vīs prōdesse vidēt.** OV. (548.)

#### PARTICIPIAL SENTENCES.

667. Participles are used in Latin even more extensively than in English, to express a great variety of subordinate relations, such as *Time* and *Circumstance*, *Cause* and *Occasion*, *Condition* and *Concession*. The classification cannot always be exact, as one kind blends with another.

REMARKS.—1. It is sometimes convenient to translate a Participial Sentence by a co-ordinate clause, but the Participle itself is never coördinate, and such clauses are never equivalents. (409, R. 2.):

**Manlius Gallum caesum torque spoliāvit.** LIV. *Manlius slew the Gaul and stripped him of his neckchain (after slaying the Gaul stripped him of his neckchain, having slain, etc.).*

**Miltiadēs capitis absolūtus, pecūniā multātus est.** NEP. *Miltiades (though) acquitted of a capital charge, was mulcted in (a sum of) money (was acquitted, but mulcted).*

2. A common translation of the Participle is an Abstract Noun : See 324, R. 3 :

**Terra mūtāta nōn mūtāt mōrēs.** LIV. *The change of land changeth not the character.*

**Teneor Ulixēn reum facit Ājācis occisi.** QUINT. *Teucer indicts Ulysses for the murder of Ajax.*

On the Participle after Verbs of Perception and Representation, see 524, R. 1 and 536.

## 668. Participles may represent Time when :

**Alexander moriens anulū suū dederat Perdiccae.** NEP. *Alexander (when he was) dying, had given his ring to Perdiccas.*

**Dionysius tyrannus Syracūsas expulsus Corinthi puerōs docēbat.** CIC. *Dionysius the tyrant, (after he had been) exiled from Syracuse (after his exile from Syracuse), taught (a) boys' (school) at Corinth.*

### Ablative Absolute :

**Solōn et Pisistratus Serviō Tullio regnante viguerunt.** CIC. *Solon and Pisistratus flourished when Servius Tullius was king (in the reign of Servius Tullius).*

**Sole ortō Volsci sē circumvallātōs vidērunt.** LIV. *When the sun was risen (after sunrise), the Volscians saw that they were surrounded by lines of intrenchment.*

REMARK.—On the Ablative Absolute of the Simple Participle, see 438, R. 1.

## 669. Participles may represent Cause Why :

**Arēopagitae damnāverunt puerum coturnicū oculōs ēruentem.** QUINT. *The court of Mars' Hill condemned a boy because he plucked out (for plucking out) the eyes of quails.*

**Athēniensēs Alcibiadem corruptū ā rēge Persarū capere nōluisse Cymēn arguēbant.** NEP. *The Athenians charged Alcibiades with having been unwilling to take Cyme (because he had been) bribed by the King of Persia.*

### Ablative Absolute :

**Rōmāni veterēs regnārī omnēs volēbant libertātis dulcedine nōndum expertā.** LIV. *The old Romans all wished to have a king over them (because they had) not yet tried the sweetness of liberty.*

REMARK.—An apparent cause is given by *ut* as *velut*, *as*, *for instance*, *tanquam* (so) *as*, *quasi*, *as if*, see 604, R. 2.

## 670. Participles may represent Condition and Concession :

**Si latet ars prōdest, affert dēprenta pudōrem.** OV. (594, 2.)

**Risus interdum ita repente erumpit ut eum cupientēs tenēre nequēmus.** CIC. (611.)

**Miltiadēs capitīs absolūtus pecūniā multātus est.** NEP. (667, R.)

Ablative Absolute :

**Maximās virtūtes jacere omnēs necesse est voluptātē dominante.** CIC. (594, 2.)

REMARK.—Later writers combine with the Participle *etsi, quanquam, quamvis*, see 611, R.

671. Participles may represent Relative Clauses (640) :

**Omnēs aliud agentēs, aliud simulantēs, perfidī sunt.** CIC.

**Pisistratus Homēri librōs confūsos antea sic disposuisse dicitur ut nunc habemus.** CIC.

REMARK.—*So called, qui dicitur, vocatur, quem vocant; above-mentioned, quem antea, supra diximus.*

672. *Future Participle (Active).*—The Future Participle is a verbal adjective, denoting capability and tendency, chiefly employed in the older language with *sum, I am*, as a periphrastic tense. In later Latin, it is used freely, just as the Present and Perfect Participles, to express subordinate relations.

Peculiar is the free use of it in Sentences of Design, and especially noticeable the compactness gained by the employment of it in Conditional Relations.

673. In later Latin, the Future Participle (Active) is used to represent subordinate relations:

1. Time When :

**Tiberius trāiectūrus (cum trāiectūrus esset) Rhēnum commeātum nōn transmisit.** SUET. *When Tiberius was about to cross the Rhine, he did not send over the provisions.*

2. Cause Why :

**Dēridiculō fuit senex foedissimae adūlatiōnis tantum infāmiā ūsūrus.** TAC. *A butt of ridicule was the old man, as infamy was the only gain he would make by his foul fawning.*

**Antiochus sēcūrus erat dē bellō Rōmānō tanquam nōn transitūris in Asiā Rōmānis.** (604, R. 2.)

3. Purpose :

**Maroboduus misit lēgātōs ad Tiberium orātūrōs auxilia.** TAC. (543, R. 2.)

REMARK.—The Present Participle is sometimes used in a similar sense, but the Purpose is only an inference:

**Lēgātī vērūrunt nūntiantēs Asiae quoque civitatēs sollicitārī.** LIV. *Envoys came with the announcement that the states of Asia (Minor) also were tampered with.*

#### 4. Condition and Concession :

##### 1.) Protasis.

**Dēditūris sē Hannibālī fuissē accersendum Rōmānōrum praesidium?** LIV. *If they had been ready to surrender to Hannibal, would they have had to send for a Roman garrison?* (= **Sī dēditūrī fuissent, Ō. R. sī dēditūrī fuērunt.**)

##### 2.) Apodosis. •

**Quatiunt arma, ruptūrī imperium nī dūcantur.** TAC. *They clash their arms, ready to break orders, if they be not led forward.*

**Librum misī exigentī tibi, missūrus etsī nōn exēgissēs.** PLIN. EP. *I have sent you the book, as you exacted it, although I should have sent it even if you had not exacted it.*

#### ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

**674.** The Latin language allows greater freedom in the arrangement of words than the English. This freedom is, of course, due to its greater wealth of inflections.

**675.** Grammatical arrangement has for its object clearness.

Rhetorical arrangement has for its objects Emphasis and Rhythm.

- |                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>Emphasis</i> is produced | 1. By reversing the ordinary position.        |
|                                | 2. By approximation of similars or opposites. |
|                                | 3. By separation.                             |

In all sentences beginning and end are emphatic points. In long sentences the means as well as the extremes are the points of emphasis.

2. *Rhythm*.—Much depends on the rhythmical order of words, for which the treatises of the ancients are to be consulted. Especially avoided are poetic rhythms. So, for example, the dactyl and spondee, or close of an hexameter at the end of a period.

**676. RULE I.**—The most simple arrangement of a sentence is as follows:

1. The Subject and its Modifiers.
2. The Modifiers of the Predicate.
3. The Predicate Proper or Verb.



1. *Dēmocritus tyrannus*, 2. *Syrācūsīs expulsus Corinthī puerōs*,  
3. *docēbat*. CIC. (668.)

Rhetorical positions :

*Potentēs sequitur invidia*. QUINT. (479.)

*Nōbis nōn satisfacit ipse Dēmostenēs*. CIC. (556. R. 1.)

*Dēscriptus erat populus Romanus censū, ordinibus, aetātibus*. CIC.

*Intrā moenia sunt hostēs*. SALL.

REMARK.—The modifiers of the predicate stand in the order of their importance. The following arrangement is common :

1. Place, Time, Cause, or Means.

2. Indirect Object.

3. Direct Object.

4. Adverb.

5. Verb.

677. RULE II.—Interrogative Sentences begin with the interrogative, subordinate clauses with the leading particle or relative :

*Quis eum diligat quem metuat* ? CIC. (637.)

*Postquam Caesar pervēnit obsidēs poposcit*. CAES. (563.)

*Si spīritum dūcīt vivīt*. CIC. (597.)

*Qui timōre dēsierint ōdisse incipient*. TAC. (569.)

Rhetorical position :

*Nātūram sī sequēmur ducem, nunquam aberrābimus*. CIC. (597.)

*Dē futūrīs rēbus etsi semper difficile est dicere, tamen interdum conjectūrā possis accēdere*. CIC. (606.)

*Cato mirārī sē ajēbat quod nōn ridēret haruspex, haruspicem cum vidisset*. CIC. (569.)

678. RULE III.—An Adjective or dependent Genitive follows the word to which it belongs :

*Torquātus filium suum necārī jussit*. SALL. (540.)

*Sensum oculōrum praecipit animus*. QUINT. (540.)

Rhetorical positions :

*Hannibalem sui civēs ē civitāte ajēcērunt*. CIC. (295, R. 1.)

*Isocratēs queritur plūs honōris corporum quam animōrum virtūtibus dari*. QUINT.

*Ager, cum multōs annōs requiēvit, ūberiorēs efferre frūgēs solet*. CIC. (567.)

*Vereor nē parum hīc liber mellis et absinthii multum habēre videātur*. QUINT. (552.)

REMARKS.—1. Many expressions have become fixed formulae: So titles, proper names, and the like : see 284 :

*Facinus est vincirī civem Rōmānum*. CIC. (535.)

2. The demonstrative *pr* nouns regularly precede :

**Vereor nō hīc liber absinthii multum habēre videātur.** QUINT. (551.)

Rhetorical position :

**Recordāre tempus illud, cum pater Cūrio maerens jacēbat in lectō.** CIC. (582.)

3. New modifiers of either element may be inserted, prefixed, or added :

**Catōnem vidī in bibliothēcā sedentem multis circumfūsum Stōicōrum libris.** CIC. (586.)

**Saepe magna indolēs virtūtis priusquam reipublicae prōdesse potuisset extincta fuit.** CIC. (579.)

**At vidēte hominis intolerābilem audāciam.** CIC. (490.)

**Aristidēs interfuit pugnae nāvāli apud Salaminem.** NEP. (343.)

**679. RULE IV.**—Adverbs are commonly put next to their verb, and before it when it ends a sentence, and immediately before their adjective or adverb :

**Zēnōnem cum Athēnis essem audiēbam frequenter . . .** CIC. (586.)

**Nēmo orātōrem admirātus est quod Latīnē loquerētur.** CIC. (542.)

**Vix cuiquam persuādēbatur Graeciā omni cessūrōs Rōmānōs.** LIV. (546, R. 2.)

**Risus interdum ita repente ērumpit ut eum cupientēs tenēre nequeāmus.** CIC. (611.)

Rhetorical positions :

**Irā bene Ennius initium dixit insāniae.** CIC. (441.)

**Saepe magna indolēs virtūtis priusquam reipublicae prōdesse potuisset extincta fuit.** CIC. (579.)

REMARKS.—1. *Ferē, paene, prope*, usually follow :

**Nēmo ferē saltat sōbrius nisi forte insānit.** CIC. (591, R. 4.)

2. Negatives always precede, see 447.

**680. RULE V.**—Prepositions regularly precede their case. (414.)

**Ā rectā conscientiā transversum unguem nōn oportet discēdere.** CIC. (332.)

REMARKS.—1. On *versus, tenus* and the regular postposition of *cum* in combination with the Personal Pronouns and the Relative, see 414, R. 1.

2. Monosyllabic prepositions are not unfrequently put between the Adjective and Substantive :

**Magna cum cūrā** (401.)

Less frequently between the Genitive and Substantive; except when the relative is employed.

3. Dissyllabic prepositions are sometimes put after their case (*Anastrophé*), especially after a relative or demonstrative: most frequently *contrā, inter, propter*. So also adverbs.

4. The preposition may be separated from its case by a Genitive or an Adverb.

**Ad Appii Claudii senectūtem accōdēbat etiam ut caecus esset.** CIC. (558.)

5. Monosyllabic prepositions such as *cum, ex, dē, post*, sometimes append the en-

clitics -que, -ve, -ne, as *ex que* *ips*, and *from them*. Usually, however, the enclitics join the dependent substantive: *in patriamque rediit*, and *returned to his country*.

On the position of *per*, see 415, R.

### 681. RULE VI.—Particles vary :

**Enim** commonly takes the second, seldom the third place ; **nam** and **namque** are regularly prepositive.

**Ergo** in the syllogism precedes, elsewhere follows ; **igitur** is commonly second or third ; **itaque** regularly first.

**Tamen** is first, but may follow an emphatic word.

**Etiam** usually precedes, **quoque** always follows.

**Quidem** and **dēnum** (*at length*) follow the word to which they belong.

682. RULE VII.—A word that belongs to more than one word regularly stands before them all, or after them all, sometimes after the first (287) :

*Ariovistus respondit multis sēsē nōbilibus principibusque populi Rōmāni grātum factūrum.* CAES. (670, R. 9.)

*Isocratēs queritur plūs honōris corporum quam animōrum virtūtibus dari.* QUINT. (542, R.)

*Longum est mūlōrum persequi ūtilitātēs et asinōrum.* CIC. (246, R.)

683. RULE VIII.—Words of kindred or opposite meaning are often put side by side for the sake of complement or contrast :

*Manus manum lavat*, *One hand washes the other*.

*Cato mirārī sē ājēbat quod nōn ridēret haruspex, haruspīcem cum vidisset.* CIC. (569.)

*Ēmit morte immortalitātem.* QUINT. (404.)

684. RULE IX.—*Contrasted Pairs*.—When pairs are contrasted, the second is put in the same order as the first, but often in inverse order. This inverse order is called *Chiasmus*,\* or crosswise position, and gives alternate stress. The principle is of wide application.

Same order :

*Fortūna vestra facit ut irae meae temperem.* LIV. (557.)

*Mālo tē sapiens hostis metuat quam stultī civēs laudent.* LIV. (546, R. 2.)

---

\* From the Greek letter X.

1. Foris                      X                      2. arma.  
2. consilium              1. domi.

Inverse order (Chiasmus) :

**Ante vidēmus** (1) **fulgurātiōnem** (2) **quam sonum** (2) **audiāmus** (1).  
SEN. (579.)

**Parvi sunt foris** (1) **arma** (2) **nisi est consilium** (2) **domi** (1). CIC. (412, R. 1.)

## ARRANGEMENT OF CLAUSES.

685. A period is a compound sentence with one or more subordinate clauses, in which sentence the meaning is kept suspended to the close.

686. Latin periods may be divided into two classes :

1. Responsive or Apodotic, in which a Protasis has an Apodosis.

2. Intercalary or Enthetic, in which the various items are inserted in their proper place between Subject and Predicate.

687. Care must be taken—

1. To vary the clauses, so as to prevent too great uniformity of rhythm.

2. To observe a certain proportion in the length of the clauses.

The following passages may be cited as specimens of long periods :

Ut saepe hominēs aegri morbo gravi, cum aestu febrique jactantur, si aquam gelidam biberunt, primō relevārī videntur, deinde multō gravius vehementiusque afficiantur : sic hic morbus, qui est in repūblicā, relevātus istius paenā, vehementius, vivis reliquis, ingravescet. CIC. (Apodotic.)

Catuvolcus, rex dimidiaē partis Eburōnum, qui tūc cum Ambiorige consilium inierat, aetate jam confectus, cum labōrem aut belli aut fugae ferre nōn posset, omnibus precibus dētestātus Ambiorigē, qui ejus consilii auctor fuisset, taxō, cūjus magna in Galliā Germāniāque cōpia est, se exanimāvit. CAES. (Enthetic.)

## FIGURES OF SYNTAX AND RHETORIC.

688. Ellipsis is the omission of some integral part of the thought, such as the substantive of the adjective (195, R. 1), the copula of the predicate (200), the verb of the adverb.

Unde domū ? 411, R. 2.

**REMARK.**—When the ellipsis is indefinite, do not attempt to supply it. The figure is much abused by commentators in the explanation of grammatical phenomena.

689. Brachylogy (*breviloquentia*) is a failure to repeat an element which is often to be supplied in a more or less modified form.

**Tam felix essēs quam formōsissima (= es) vellem.** Ov. (316.)

690. Zeugma (*yoking*) is a junction of two governing words under the same regimen, or with the same modifier, although the common factor strictly applies but to one.

**Manūs ac supplicēs vōcēs ad Tiberium tendens.** Tac. *Stretching out hands and (uttering) suppliant cries to Tiberius.*

691. Aposiōpēsis is a rhetorical breaking off before the close of the sentence, as in the famous Vergilian **Quōs ego.**

692. Pleonasm is the use of superfluous words.

693. Hyperbaton, or Trajection, is a violent displacement of words.

**Lȳdia dīo per omnēs tē deōs ōrō.** Hor. (415, R.)

694. Anacolūthon, or *want of sequence*, occurs when the scheme of a sentence is changed in its course.

695. Hendiadys (ἐν διαὶ δυοῖν) consists in giving an analysis instead of a complex, in putting two substantives connected by a copulative conjunction, instead of one substantive and an adjective or attributive genitive:

**Vulgus et multitūdō,** *the common herd.*

**Via et ratio,** *scientific method.*

**Vi et armīs,** *by force of arms.*

**REMARK.**—This figure is much abused by commentators.

696. Constructio Praegnans. So-called **constructio praegnans** is nothing but an extended application of the accusative of the Inner Object (Object Effected). The result is involved, not distinctly stated.

**Exitium irrat.** Tac. *He provokes destruction.* (**Ad exitium irrat.**)

697. On Lītotēs, see 448, R. 2.

# PROSODY.

---

## 698. PROSODY treats of Quantity and Versification.

REMARK.—Prosody originally meant Accent. Latin Accent is regulated by Quantity, and as classic Latin versification is also quantitative, Prosody is loosely used of both quantity and versification.

### QUANTITY.

699. RULE I.—A syllable is said to be long *by nature* when it contains a long vowel or diphthong: *ō, vae, lēgēs, saevae*.

REMARK.—Every vowel sound followed by *j* is long. This is due sometimes to the broad sound of the *j* itself, sometimes to natural length of the vowel, sometimes to compensation (*Gājus* for *Gāius*, *pājero* for *perjero*). *J* does not make position in the compounds of *jugum, yoke; bijugus, two-horse*.

700. RULE II.—A syllable is said to be long *by position* when a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, or a double consonant: *a rs, c o llum, d i sco, c a stra*.

REMARKS.—1. The consonants may be divided between two words: *per m are, in t eris*; but when all the consonants are in the second word, the preceding short syllable commonly remains short: *praemiā scribae*.

2. The natural length of a vowel before two consonants is often hard, often impossible, to determine. Every vowel before *nf* and *ns* seems to have had a long sound. Other points are too much disputed to be introduced into an elementary treatise. With the clear and full pronunciation of the vowels, the difference between length by nature and length by position was probably not so great as might be supposed.

701. RULE III.—A syllable ending in a short vowel before a mute, followed by *l* or *r*, is common: *tenē-brae*.

REMARKS.—1. The syllable must *end* in a short vowel: *nāvī-fragus*, *mellī-fluus*; but *ā b-rumpo*, *ō b-liviscor*.

2. In Greek words, *m* and *n* are included under this rule: *Tē-cmēssa*, *Oy-onus*.

702. RULE IV.—Every diphthong, and every vowel derived from a diphthong, or contracted from other vowels, is long: *saevus*, *conclūdo* (from *claudo*), *iniquus* (from *aequus*), *cōgo* (from *coigo* = *con* + *ago*).

EXCEPTION.—*Prae* in composition is shortened before a vowel; *praeustus*.

703. RULE V.—One simple vowel before another vowel-sound, or *h*, makes a short syllable: *dēus*, *God*; *pūer*, *boy*; *nihil*, *nothing*.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. *a* in the old Genitive of the First Declension: *aurāi*.

2. *e* in *-ei* of the Fifth Declension, when a vowel precedes: *diēi*, but *fidēi*.

3. *a* and *e* before *i* in proper names in *-ius*: *Gāi*, *Pompēi*.

4. *i* in the Genitive form *-ius*. *Alterius* is often shortened, perhaps even in prose: *ūniūs*, *ulliūs*, *nullius*, *tōtiūs*, are found in poetry. In *alius* the *i* is never shortened (*alius* for *aliūs*).

5. *i* in *fio* (for *fuio*) is long, except before *r*: *fio*, but *fieret*.

6. *ēheu*, *Dīāna*, *ōhē*, *dius* (= *divus*).

7. Many Greek words: *āēr*, *Menelāus*, *mūsēum*, *Mēdēa*.

## QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

### A. POLYSYLLABLES.

704. RULE VI.—In words of more than one syllable, final *a*, *e*, and *y* are *short*; *i*, *o*, and *u* are *long*.

1. *a* is short: *terrā*, *earth*; *dōnā*, *gifts*; *capitā*, *heads*.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Ablative of the First Declension: *terrā*.

2. Vocative of words in *ās* (*Aenēā*), and Greek Nominative in *α* long (*Electrā*).

3. Imperative of First Conjugation: *amā*.

4. Most uninflected words: *trigintā*, *juxtā*; but *itā*, *quā*, *ajā*, *putā* (for instance).

2. *e* is short.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Ablative of the Fifth Declension: *diē*.

2. Imperative of Second Conjugation: *monē* (but *cavē* and occasionally other Iambic Imperatives).

3. Most adverbs of Second Declension: *rectē* (but *benē*, *malē*, *infernē*, *supernē*, *saepē*).

4. Greek words in *e* long (γ): *Tempē*, *melē*.

3. *y* is always short, except in contracted forms: *misŷ* (Dative *misŷ = misyi*).

4. *i* is long: *dominī*, *vīgintī*, *audī*.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Greek Dative *ai*: *Trōasī*.

2. Greek Nominatives, *sināpī* Vocatives, *Parī*; Datives Sing. (rarely) *Minōidī*.

3. *quasī*, *nīsī*, *cūī* (when a dissyllable).

4. *i* is common in *mihī*, *tibī*, *sibī*, *ibī*, *ubī*.

Observe the compounds: *ibīdem*, *ibīque*, *ubīque*, *ubīnam*, *ubīvis*, *ubīcunque*, *nēcubī*; (*utī*, but) *utīnam*, *utīque*, *sicutī*.

5. *o* is long: *bonō*, *tūtō*.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Common in Nominatives of proper names, and occasionally in common nouns: *Scipiō*, *virgō*.

2. Common in verbal forms, but more rarely outside of the Present Tense or in verbs with long penults: *sciō*, *putō*, *volō*; *estō*, *crēdō*. The short pronunciation extended sometimes even to the Gerund: *amandō*.

3. *o* is short in *modō*, *citō*, *duō*, *octō*, *egō*, *illīcō*, *immō*, and in many other words (in later poetry).

6. *u* is always long: *cornū*, *fructū*, *audītū*.

705. RULE VII.—All final syllables that end in a simple consonant other than *s* are short.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. *ālēc*, *liēn*, and many Greek nouns.

2. The adverbs and oblique cases of *illīc*, *illūc*, *istīc*, *istūc*, can hardly be considered exceptions, as *-o* is for *-ce*, and is merely enclitic.

3. Compounds of *pār*: *dispār*, *impar*.

4. *it*, *petīt*, and their compounds.

706. RULE VIII.—Of final syllables in *s*: *as*, *es*, *os*, are long; *is*, *us*, *ys*, short.



1. **as** is long : **Aenēās, servās, amās.**

**EXCEPTIONS.**—1. Greek nouns in **ās, ādis** : **Arcās, Arcādīs.**

2. Greek Accusative Plural, Third Declension : **hērōās, Arcadās.**

3. **anās, anātis.**

2. **es** is long : **rēgēs, diēs, monēs.**

**EXCEPTIONS.**—1. Nominative Singular Third Declension, when the Genitive has **ētis, itis, idis** : **segēs, milēs, obsēs** ; but **abiēs, ariēs, pariēs.**

2. Compounds of **ēs, ēe** : **adēs, potēs.**

3. **penēs** (Preposition).

4. Greek words in **ēs (ες)** : Nominative Plural, **Arcadēs** ; Vocative, **Dēmōsthenēs** ; Neuter, **cacoēthēs.**

3. **os** is long : **deōs, nepōs.**

**EXCEPTIONS.**—1. **Compōs, impōs, exōs.**

2. Greek words in **ōs (ος)** : **melōs.**

4. **is** is short : **canīs, legīs.**

**EXCEPTIONS.**—1. Dative and Ablative Plural . **terrīs, bonīs.**

2. Accusative Plural of the Third Declension : **omnīs = omnēs.**

3. In the Nominative of sundry words, increasing long in the Genitive : **Quirīs, Quiritīs.**

4. Second Person Singular Present Indicative Active, Fourth Conjugation : **audīs.**

5. In the verbal forms from **vis, sis, fis, and velis** : **nō-lis, mā-lis, ad-sis, cale-fis.**

6. In the Second Person Singular Future Perfect Indicative and Perfect Subjunctive, **is** is common ; **viderīs.**

5. **us** is short : **servūs, currūs.**

**EXCEPTIONS.**—1. Gen. Sin., Nom. and Acc. Plural, Fourth Declension : **currūs.**

2. Nominative Third Declension, when the Genitive has a long **u** : **virtūs, virtūtis** ; **incūs, incūdis** : **tellūs, tellūris.**

3. In Greek words with **u** long (**ους**) : **tripūs, Sapphūs** ; but **Oedipūs** and **polypūs.**

6. **ys** is short : **ohlamȳs.**

B. MONOSYLLABLES.

707. RULE IX.—All monosyllables that end in a vowel are long : *ā, dā, mē, dē, hī, sī, ō, dō, tū.*

Except the enclitics : *-quē, -vē, -nē, -cē, -tē, -pē, -ptē.*

708. RULE X.—Declined or conjugated monosyllables that end in a consonant follow the rules given : *dās, fēs, scis, dāt, flēt, is, id, quīs, hīs, quīs, quōs.*

*hic* and *hoc* (Nominative and Accusative) are sometimes short ; *dic* and *dūc* have the quantity of their verbs ; *es, be*, is short.

709. RULE XI.—Monosyllabic Nominatives of Substantives and Adjectives are long when they end in a consonant, even if the stem-syllable be short : *ōs, mōs, vēs, sōl, fūr, plūs ; lār (lāris), pēs (pēdis), bōs (bōvis), pār (pāris).*

EXCEPTIONS.—*vir* and *lac, os (ossis), mel ;*  
Also *cor, vas (vadis), fel.*

710. RULE XII.—Monosyllabic particles that end in a consonant are short : *ān, cis, in, nec, pēr, tēr.*

Excepting *ēn* and *nōn* and *quīn ;*  
And also *crās* and *cūr* and *sīn ;*  
Also the Adverbs in *c* : *hic, hūc, hāc, sic.*

QUANTITY OF STEM-SYLLABLES.

711. RULE XIII.—The quantity of stem-syllables, when not determined by the general rules, is fixed by the usage of the poets (long or short *by authority*).

REMARKS.—1. The changes of quantity in the formation of tense-stems have been set forth in the conjugation of the verb, (153, 2.)

2. The occasional differences in the quantity of the stem-syllables, which spring from the same radical, can only be explained by reference to the history of each word, and cannot be given here.

pāciscor,	pāx, pācia.	sēdeo,	sēdēs.
mācer,	mācero.	fidēs,	fido (fēido).
lēgo,	lēx, lēgia.	dux, dūcia,	dūco (douco).
rēgo,	rēx, rēgia.	vōco,	vōx.
tēgo,	tēgula.	lūcerna,	lūceo (louceo).
ācer,	ācerbus.	suspīcor,	suspicio.
mōlēs,	mōlestus.	mōveo,	mōbīlis (= movbīlis).

## QUANTITY IN COMPOUNDS.

**712. RULE XIV.**—Compounds generally keep the quantity of their constituent parts: (cēdo), ante-cēdo, dē-cēdo, prō-cēdo, (caedo), occīdo (cādo), occīdo.

**REMARKS.**—1. Of the inseparable prefixes, *dī*, *sē*, and *vē*, are long, *rē*, short: *dīdūco*, *sēdūco*, *vēcōra*, *rēdūco*. **EXCEPTIONS:** *dī* in *dīsertus* is short; in *dirimo* *dīr* stands for *dīs*.

2. *Nē* is short, except in *nēdum*, *nēmo* (ne-hemo), *nēquam*, *nēquidquam*, *nēquāquam*, *nēquitia*, *nēve*, *nēcubī*, *nēcunde*.

3. *Rē* is sometimes lengthened; the following letter is then doubled in many texts: *rel(l)igio*, *rel(l)iquiae*, *rep(p)erit*, *re(t)tulit*; compare *reddo*. *Re* is for *red*, but, except in perfect stems and in dactylic poetry, there is no compensation.

4. *Prō* is shortened in many words, especially before *f*: *prōfugio*, *prōfugus*, *prōfundus*, *prōfiteor*, *prōfārī*, *prōfānus*, *prōfiscor*, *prōcella*, *prōcul*, *prōnepōs*. The older language shortens less frequently than the later. In Greek words *pro* (πρὸ) is generally short: *prōphēta*.

5. The second part of the compound is sometimes shortened: *dējēro*, (from *jūro*), *cognītus*, *agnītus* (from *nōtus*). Notice the quantity in the compounds of *-dicus*: *fātīdīcus*, *vērīdīcus* (*dīco*), and *innūba*, *prōnūba* (*nūbo*).

6. Mechanical rules, more minute than those given above, might be multiplied indefinitely, but they are all open to so many exceptions as to be of little practical value. A correct pronunciation of Latin cannot be acquired except by constant practice, under the direction of a competent teacher, or by a diligent study of the Latin poets, and consequently of Latin versification.

## FIGURES OF PROSODY.

**713.** Poetry often preserves the older forms of language, and perpetuates peculiarities of pronunciation, both of which are too frequently set down to poetic licence.

**714. Hiatus and Elision.**—Hiatus is the meeting of two vowels in separate syllables, which meeting produces an almost continuous opening (yawning) of the vocal tube. In the body of a word this hiatus, or yawning, is avoided sometimes by contraction, often by shortening the first vowel (13).

In poetry, when one word ends with a vowel and another begins with a vowel, or *h*, the first vowel is *elided*. Elision is not a total omission, but rather a hurried half-pronunciation.

**O felix un<sup>a</sup>(a) ant<sup>e</sup>(e) alias Priameia virgo.**—VERG.

In like manner *m* final (a faint nasal sound) is elided with its short vowel before a vowel or *h* (*Ecthlipsis*).

**Monstr<sup>u</sup>(um), horrend<sup>u</sup>(um), inform<sup>e</sup>(e) ingens cui lumen ademptum.**—VERG.

**EXCEPTIONS.**—After a vowel or *m* final, the word *est*, *is*, drops its *e* and joins its preceding syllable.

**Si rixa s t ubi tu pulsas ego vapulo tantum.**—JUV.

**Aeternas quoniam paenas in morte timendum s t.**—LUCR.

**REMARKS.**—1. The Hiatus is sometimes allowed : *a*, in the Arsis, chiefly when the first vowel is long; *b*, in the Thesis, when a long vowel is shortened; *c*, before a period.

*a. Stant et juniperi (h) et castaneae (h) hirsutae.* VERG.

*b. Crēdimus ? an qui (h) amant ipsi sibi somnia fingunt ?* VERG.

*c. Promissam eripui genero. (h) Arma impia sumpsi.* VERG.

2. Monosyllabic interjections are not elided.

3. On the elision of *e* in *-ne* ? see 456, R. 2.

**715. Diastolé.**—Many final syllables, which were originally long, are restored to their rights by the weight of the Arsis. This is called Diastolé.

**Hostis est uxōr invita quae ad virum nuptum datur.**—PLAUT.

**Dummodō morata recte veniat dotatast satis.**—PLAUT.

**Pectoribūs inhians spirantia consulit exta.**—VERG.

**Perrupit Acheronta Hercules labor.**—HOR.

Sometimes, however, Diastolé arises from the necessities of the verse (as in proper names), or is owing to a pause (Punctuation).

**Nec quas Priamides in aquosis vallibus Idae.**—OV.

**Desine plura puēr—et quod nunc instat agamus.**—VERG.

**REMARKS.**—1. Scholars are not agreed on all these points.

2. Notice especially *-quē* :

**Sideraquē ventique nocent avidaeque volucres.** OV.

**716. Systolé.**—Long syllables which had begun to shorten in prose, are shortened (Systolé).

**Obstupui steteruntque comae vox faucibus haesit.**—VERG.

**Ei terra magn(um) alterius spectare laborem.**—LUCR.

**Unius ad certam formam primordia rerum.**—LUCR.

**Nullius addictus jurare in verba magistri.**—HOR.

REMARKS.—1. Many regard the short penult of the Perf. in *steterunt, dederunt*, as original (DEDRO in inscriptions).

2. In earlier poetry (e. g. Plautus), many syllables otherwise long by position are shortened: So *ille*, and its forms *iste*, more rarely *ipse*. Also *inde, unde*, and others.

**717. Hardening.**—The vowels *i* and *u* assert their half-consonant nature (Hardening): *ābjētē*, (*ābīētē*), *gēnvā* (*gēnūā*), *tēnvīā* (*tēnūā*).

**Flūviorum rex Eridannus camposque per omnes.**—VERG.

**Nam quae tēnvīa sunt hiscendist nulla potestas.**—LUCR.

**718. Dialysis.**—The consonants *j* and *v* assert their half-vowel nature (Diálysis): *dissōlūo* (*dissolvo*), *Gāfūs* (*Gājus*, from *Gāvius*).

**Adulteretur et columba miluo.**—HOR.

**719. Syncopé.**—Short vowels are dropped between consonants, as often in prose (Syncopé): *caľfacio* for *calefacio*.

**Templorum positor templorum sancte repostor.**—OV.

**Quiddam magnum addens unum me surpīte (= surripīte) mortī.**—HOR.

**720. Tmēsis.**—Compound words are separated into their parts (Tmēsis).

**Quo me cunque rapit tempestas deferor hospes.**—HOR.

REMARK.—The earlier poets carry Tmesis much further in unwise emulation of the Greek. Celebrated is:—

**Saxo cere comminuit brum.** ENNIUS.

**721. Synizēsis.**—Vowels are connected by a slur (Synizēsis), as often in the living language: *dēinde*, *dēinceps*.

**Quid faciam roger anne rogem? quid dēinde rogabo?**—OV

So even when *h* intervenes, as *dehinc*:

**Eurum ad sē Zephyrumque vocat, dehinc talia fatur.** VERG.

**REMARK.**—Synizēsis (*settling together*) is also called Synaerēsis (*taking together*), as opposed to Diaeresis (5); but Synaeresis properly means *contraction*, as in *cōgo* (for *coigo*), and *nēmo* (for *nehemo*). Synaloepha is a general term embracing all methods of avoiding Hiatus.

**722. Peculiarities of S.**—In the older poetry, final *s*, preceded by a short vowel, is dropped before a consonant.

*In somnīs vidit priu(s) quān sam (= eam) dīscere cōepit.*—ENNIVS.  
Often in LUCRETIVS.

**REMARK.**—In comic poetry, a short final syllable in *s* blends with *est*, and sometimes with *es*: *opust* (= *opus est*); *simili's* (= *similis es*).

## VERSIFICATION.

**723. Rhythm.**—Rhythm means harmonious movement. In language, Rhythm is marked by the stress of voice (*Accent*). The accented part is called the *Arsis*; the unaccented, the *Thesis*. The Rhythmical Accent is called the *Ictus* (*blow, beat*).

**REMARK.**—Besides the dominant *Ictus*, there is a subordinate or secondary *Ictus*, just as there is a dominant and a secondary *Accent* in words.

**724. Metre.**—Rhythm, when represented in language, is embodied in *Metre* (*Measure*). A *Metre* is a system of syllables standing in a determined order.

**725. Unit of Measure.**—The Unit of Measure is the short syllable: *Mora, Tempus* (*Time*), ∪.



The value in music is  $\text{♪} = \frac{1}{2}$ .

The long — is the double of the short.

The value in music is  $\text{♩} = \frac{1}{4}$ .

**REMARK.**—Any quantity that cannot be measured by the standard unit is called *irrational*.

**726. Resolution and Contraction.**—In some verses, two short syllables may be used instead of a long (Resolution), or a long instead of two short (Contraction).

Resolution, ∪ ∪ . Contraction, — ∪ .

**727. Feet.**—As elements of musical strains, *Metres* are called *Bars*.




As elements of verses, Metres are called Feet.

As musical strains are composed of equal bars, so verses are composed of equal feet, marked as in music, thus | .




REMARK.—Theoretically, the number of metres is unrestricted; practically, only those metres are important that serve to embody the principal rhythms.

728. *Names of the Feet.*—The feet in use are the following:






#### FEET OF THREE TIMES.

Trochee,	— ∪	lēgīt.	
Iambus,	∪ —	lēgūnt.	
Tribrach,	∪ ∪ ∪	lēgītā.	






#### FEET OF FOUR TIMES.

Dactyl,	— ∪ ∪	lēgīmūs.	
Anapaest,	∪ ∪ —	lēgērēnt.	
Spondee,	— —	lēgī.	

#### FEET OF FIVE TIMES.

Cretic,	— ∪ —	lēgērīnt.	
First Paeōn,	— ∪ ∪ ∪	lēgērītīs.	
Fourth Paeōn,	∪ ∪ ∪ —	lēgīmīnī.	
Bacchiūs,	∪ — —	lēgēbānt.	
Antibacchiūs,	— — ∪	lēgīstīs.	

#### FEET OF SIX TIMES.

Iōnicus ā mājōrī,	— — ∪ ∪	cōllēgīmūs.	
Iōnicus ā minōrī,	∪ ∪ — —	rēlēgēbānt.	
Choriambus,	— ∪ ∪ —	cōllīgērēnt.	
Ditrochee,	— ∪ — ∪	cōllīgūntūr.	
Diliambus,	∪ — ∪ —	lēgāmīnī.	

REMARK.—Other feet are put down in Latin Grammars, but they do not occur in Latin verse, if in any, such as:

Pyrrhic,	υ υ	lēgīt.	Antispast,	υ — υ	lēgēbāris.
First Epitrite,	υ — —	rēlēgērūnt.	Dispondeē,	— — —	sēlēgērūnt.
Second Epitrite,	— υ —	ēlēgēbānt.	Second Paeōn,	υ — υ υ	lēgēntībūs.
Third Epitrite,	— υ —	sēlēgērīnt.	Third Paeōn,	υ υ — υ	lēgītōtē.
Fourth Epitrite,	— — — υ	oēlēgētīs.	Molossus,	— — —	lēgērūnt.

729. *Ascending and Descending Rhythms*.—Rhythms are divided into ascending and descending. If the Arsis follows, the Rhythm is called *ascending*; if it precedes, *descending*. So the Trochee has a descending, the Iambus an ascending, rhythm.

Ascending rhythms may become descending by Anacrūsīs.

When the Thesis precedes the Arsis, it is cut off and called an Anacrūsīs (*upward stroke, signal-beat*). So the Iambus is regarded as an Anacrustic Trochee, the Anapaest as an Anacrustic Dactyl, the Iōnicus a minōri as an Anacrustic Iōnicus ā mājorī. The sign of the Anacrūsīs is:.

730. *Names of Rhythms*.—Rhythms are commonly called after their principal metrical representative. So the Trochaic Rhythm, the Anapaestic Rhythm, the Iambic Rhythm, the Dactylic Rhythm, the Ionic Rhythm.

731. *Classes of Rhythms*.—In Latin, the musical element of versification is subordinate, and the principles of Greek rhythm have but a limited application.

The Greek classes are based on the relation of Arsis to Thesis.

I. *Equal Class*, in which the Arsis is equal to the Thesis (*γένος ἴσον*). This may be called the Dactylico-Anapaestic class.

II. *Unequal Class*, in which the Arsis is double of the Thesis (*γένος διπλάσιον*).

This may be called the Trochaico-Iambic class.

III. *Quinquepartite or Paeonian Class* (*Five-eighths class*), of which the Cretic and Bacchius are the chief representatives (*γένος ἡμιόλιον*).

732. *Rhythmical Series*.—A Rhythmical Series is an uninterrupted succession of rhythmical feet, and takes its name from the number of feet that compose it.

Monopody = one foot.

Dipody = two feet.

Tripody = three feet.

Tetrapody = four feet.

Pentapody = five feet.

Hexapody = six feet.



REMARKS.—1. The Dipody is the ordinary unit of measure (-meter) in Trochaic, Iambic, and Anapaestic verse. In these rhythms a monometer contains two feet, a dimeter four, a trimeter six, a tetrameter eight.

2. There are limits to the extension of series.

In Latin, four feet is the limit of the Dactylic, six of the Trochaic and Iambic series. All beyond these are compounds.

**733. Equality of the Feet.**—Every rhythmical series is composed of equal parts. To restore this equality, when it is violated by language, there are four methods:

1. *Syllaba Anceps*.
2. *Catalēxis*.
3. *Protraction*.
4. *Correption*.

**734. Syllaba Anceps.**—The final syllable of a series or verse may be short or long indifferently. It may be short when the metre demands a long; long when the metre demands a short. Such a syllable is called a *Syllaba Anceps*.

**735. Catalēxis and Pause.**—A complete series is called *Acatalectic*; an incomplete series is called *Catalectic*. A series or verse is said to be *Catalectic in syllabam, in dissyllabum, in trisyllabum*, according to the number of syllables in the catalectic foot.

⏟⏟⏟ | ⏟⏟⏟ | ⏟ *Trimeter dactylicus catalecticus in syllabam.*

⏟⏟⏟ | ⏟⏟⏟ | ⏟⏟ *Trimeter dactylicus catalecticus in dissyllabum.*

The time is made up by Pause.

The omission of one mora is marked

“ “ two morae “

^  
—  
^

**736. Protraction and Syncopé.**—Protraction (τροπή) consists in drawing out a long syllable beyond its normal quantity. It occurs in the body of a verse, and serves to make up for the omission of one or more theses, which omission is called *Syncopé*.


⏟ = 3 = ♩.      ⏟ = 4 = ♩

**737. Correption.**—Correption is the shortening of a syllable to suit the measure.



So  $\omega$  = two short syllables with the value of one.

So the ordinary (heavy) dactyl is  $-\cup\cup = 4$  

The light (irrational) dactyl is  $\sim\cup = 3 (1\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} + 1)$  

REMARK.—Under this head, notice the frequent use of the irrational long in Trochee and Iambic verses, and in Anacrusis. The irrational long is marked  $>$ .

The following line illustrates all the points mentioned :

$-\> \overset{a}{\quad} | \sim\cup \overset{b}{\quad} | \text{—} \overset{c}{\quad} | \sim\cup \overset{b}{\quad} | \text{—} \overset{c}{\quad} | \sim\cup \overset{b}{\quad} | -\cup \overset{d}{\quad} | \overset{e}{\quad} \wedge$ .

Nullam | Vare sa- | cra | vite pri- | us | severis | arbo | -rem. HOR.

*a.* Irrational trochee. *b.* Light dactyl. *c.* Syncopé and Protraction. *d.* Syllaba anceps. *e.* Catalexis.

**738. Verse.**—A Simple Rhythm is one that consists of a simple series.

A Compound Rhythm is one that consists of two or more series.

A Verse is a simple or compound rhythmical series, which forms a distinct and separate unit. The end of a verse is marked—

1. By closing with a full word. Two verses cannot divide a word between them.
2. By the *Syllaba Anceps*, which can stand unconditionally.
3. By the Hiatus, *i. e.*, the verse may end with a vowel, though the next verse begin with one.

REMARK.—Occasionally, one verse is run into another by Elision. This is called *Synaphêa* (*συνάφεια*). It is a violation of the fundamental law, and is not to be imitated. VERG. Aen. i., 332-3, 448-9; ii., 745-6.

**739. Methods of Combining Verses.**—The same verse may be repeated throughout without recurring groups. So the Heroic Hexameter, the Iambic Trimeter (Linear Composition). Or the same verse or different verses may be grouped in pairs (distichs), triplets (tristichs), fours (tetrastichs). Beyond these simple stanzas Latin versification seldom ventured.

Larger groups of series are called Systems.

Larger groups of verses are called Strophes, a name sometimes attached to the Horatian stanzas.

**740. Union of Language with Rhythm.**—When embodied in language, rhythm has to deal with rhythmical groups already

in existence. Every full word is a rhythmical group with its accent, is a metrical group with its long or short syllables, is a word-foot. Ictus sometimes conflicts with accent; the unity of the verse-foot breaks up the unity of the word-foot.

**741. Conflict of Ictus and Accent.**—In earlier Latin poetry, the coincidence and conflict of Ictus and Accent are regulated by subtle laws, the exposition of which would require too much space. In ordinary Latin verse, Ictus overrides Accent, at least according to modern pronunciation.

**742. Conflict of Word-foot and Verse-foot.**—The conflict of word-foot and verse-foot gives rise to Caesura. Caesura means an incision produced by the end of a word in the middle of a verse-foot, and is marked †.

This incision serves as a pause, partly to rest the voice for a more vigorous effort, partly to prevent monotony by distributing the masses of the verse.

**REMARKS.**—1. So in the Heroic Hexameter the great caesura falls *before* the middle of the verse, to give the voice strength for the first arsis of the second half.

♫ ◡ ◡ | ◡ — | ◡ † — | ♫ — | ◡ ◡ ◡ | ◡ —

Una salus victis † nullam sperare salutem. VERG.

It does not occur *at* the middle, as in that case the verse would become monotonous.

2. In many treatises any incision in a verse is called a Caesura.

**743. Masculine and Feminine Caesurae.**—In trisyllabic metres, when the end of the word within the verse-foot falls on an arsis, it is called a Masculine Caesura; when on a thesis, a Feminine Caesura.

Una sa | lus † vi | ctis † nul | lam † spe | rare † sa | lutem.

a, b, c, are Masculine Caesurae; d, a Feminine Caesura.

**744. Diaeresis.**—When verse-foot and word-foot coincide, Diaeresis arises, marked thus: ||.

Itē domum saturae † venit | Hesperus | ite capellae.—VERG.

**REMARK.**—Diaeresis, like Caesura, serves to distribute the masses of the verse and prevent monotony. What is Caesura in an ascending rhythm becomes Diaeresis as soon as the rhythm is treated anacrustically.

Suis | et i | psa † Ro | ma vi | ribus |ruit. Iambic Trimeter.

Su : is et | ipsa | Roma | viri | bus † ru | it. Troch. Trimeter, Catal., with Anacrasis.

**745. Recitation.**—When the word-foot runs over into the next verse-foot, a more energetic recitation is required, in order to preserve the sense, and hence the multiplication of *Caesurae* lends vigor to the verse.

**REMARK.**—The ordinary mode of scanning, or singing out the elements of a verse, without reference to signification, cannot be too strongly condemned, as,  
Unasa, lusvic, tisanul, lamspe, raresa, lutem!

### · TROCHAIC RHYTHMS.

**746.** The Trochaic Rhythm is a descending rhythm, in which the arsis is double of the thesis. It is represented—

By the Trochee:  $\text{—} \cup$ ;

By the Tribrach:  $\cup \cup \cup$ ; and, at the end of a series,

By the Spondee:  $\text{—} \text{—}$ , or rather the irrational Trochee,  $\text{—} >$ .

**REMARKS.**—1. Anapaests are rare. Dactyls are used only in proper names. Both are of course irrational. In the earlier poets, however, the treatment of the Trochaic verse is very free.

2. Trochaic-meters, being compounded of dipodies (*ditrochaei*), have  $\frac{3}{4}$  instead of  $\frac{1}{2}$  time (729). The second trochee of each dipody (-meter) may be irrational on the principle of syllaba anceps. Hence the rule:

**747.** Trochaic-meters admit the substitution of a long for the short of the even places.

1. *Trochaic Tripody (Rhyphallie).*

**Bássareu bicornis.**—ATIL. FORT.

$\text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$

2. *Trochaic Tetrapody (Catalectic).*

**Aúla divitem manet.**—HOR.

$\text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \wedge$

3. *Trochaic Dimeter. a. Acatalectic; b. Catalectic.*

a. **Víve laetus quisque vivís.**

$\text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$

b. **Vita parvom múnus est.**—ANTHOL. LAT.

$\text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \wedge$

4. *Trochaic Dimeter with Anacrusis (Alcaic).*

**Si fractus illabátur orbis.**—HOR.

$\cup : \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$

**748. 5. Trochaic Tetrameter Acatalectic (Octônarius).**

$\text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$

**Párcé jam camoéna vati párcé jam sacró furorí.**—SERVIUS.

**REMARK.**—This verse and the following are compounds. The *Octônarius* is compounded of two Dimeters acatalectic; hence regular Diaeresis after the Dimeter; freely handled in comedy; Hiatus in the Diaeresis; Monotonous, on account of the division into two equal parts. It occurs occasionally in Plautus and Terence.



**753. 8. Iambic Trimeter Catalectic.**

**Mea renidet in domo lacunar**

U L U \_ U L U \_ U L U

**Regumque pueris nec satelles Orbi. HOR. — 2000 — 20 — 020**

*Anacrustic Scheme:*  $\sum : -\cup \mid -> \mid -\cup \mid -\cup \mid \perp \mid -\wedge$  (with Syn-  
copé).

**754. 9. *Iambic Trimeter Acatalectic* (Senarius).**

**Suis et ipsa † Roma viribus ruit**

W L U - U L U - U L U -

**Heu me per urbem † nam pudet tanti  
mali**

—x<sub>1</sub>—x<sub>2</sub>—x<sub>3</sub>—

**Deripere lunam+ vocibus possim meis**

- 600 - 120 - 120 -

Infamis Helenae † Castor offensus  
vicem

- 4000 - 40 - - 40 -

**Optat quietem † Pelopis infidi pater**

- 4 U - - 5 U U - - 4 U -

**Alitibus atque † canibus homicidam**

## Hectorem

$$-y'yy - y'y'yy - f'yy -$$

**Vectabor humeris † tunc ego inimicis**

0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

**e ques**

-4000-4000-400-

**Pavidumque leporem et † advenam**

laqueo gruem. HOR.

V U L V U U U L U - U U L U -

*Anacrustic Scheme :*                       $\cup : - \cup | - \cup | - \cup | - \cup | - \cup | - \cup$

**REMARKS.**—1. The Iambic Trimeter when kept pure has a rapid aggressive movement. Hence, it is thus used in lampoons and invectives. It admits the Spondee in the odd places (first, third, fifth foot); the Tribrach in any but the last; the Dactyl in the first and third. The Anapaest is rare. When carefully handled, the closing part of the verse is kept light, so as to preserve the character. Special study is necessary to understand the treatment of the comic Trimeter.

2. **Caesurae.**—The principal caesura is the Penthemimeral, which falls on the middle of the third foot ( $\pi\epsilon\rho\sigma\eta\mu\iota\mu\epsilon\rho\acute{\eta}\varsigma = 2\frac{1}{2}$ ) and is rarely wanting. Less important is the Hephthemimeral ( $\epsilon\phi\sigma\eta\mu\iota\mu\epsilon\rho\acute{\eta}\varsigma = 3\frac{1}{2}$ ), which falls on the middle of the fourth foot.

u - | u - | u t - | u t - | u - | u -

**Levis crepante + lymphæ + de silit pede. HOR.**

Of course in the Anacrustic Scheme the Caesura of the ordinary scheme becomes Diaeresis.

**Le : vis ore | pante | lymphæ | desi | lit pe | de.**

3. A break (Diacresis) at the middle of the verse is avoided. Short particles, which adhere closely to the following word, do not constitute exceptions.

**Laboriosa nec cohors Ulixei. HOR.**

**Adulteretur et columba miluo. HOR.**

**In like manner explain—**

**Refertque tanta grex amicus ubera. HOR.**

**755. 10. Trimeter Iambicus Claudus (Choliambus); Scazon (= Hobbler) Hippônactëus.**

Miser Catulle desinas ineptire. CAT. 0 2 0 — 0 2 0 — 0 2 2 0

Fulsere quondam candidi tibi soles. CAT. — 2 0 — — 2 0 — 0 2 2 0

Dominis parantur ista; serviunt vobis.

MART. 0 0 2 0 — 0 2 0 — 0 2 2 0

REMARKS.—1. In the Choliambus the rhythm is reversed at the close, by putting a trochee or spondee in the sixth foot. The lighter the first part of the verse, the greater the surprise. It is intended to express comic anger, resentment, disappointment.

2. The Anacrustic measurement is as follows:

0 : — 0 | — 0 | — 0 | — 0 | — 0. Trochaic Trimeter with Anacrusis  
Syncopé and Protraction.

**756. 11. Iambic Tetrameter Acatalectic (Octonarius).**

0 2 0 — 0 2 0 — 0 | 2 0 — 0 2 0 —

Hic finis est iambe salve † vindicis doctor mali. SERVIUS.

Te cum securi caudicali † praeicio provinciae. PLAUT.

REMARK.—This verse occurs frequently in the comic poets, and is to be regarded as a compound. It either divides itself into equal parts at the end of the first Dimeter (with Hiatus and Syllaba Anceps) or has a Caesura in the first Thesis of the third Dimeter.

1. O Troja, O patria, O Pergamum, † O Priame, periisti senex. PLAUT.

Is porro me autem verberât † incursat pugnâ calceis. PLAUT.

2. Facile omnes quum valemus recta † consilia aegrotis damus. TER.

**757. 12. Iambic Tetrameter Catalectic (Septenarius).**

0 2 0 — 0 2 0 — | 0 2 0 — 0 2 0

Remitte pallium mihi | meum quod involasti. CAT.

REMARKS.—1. This verse is to be regarded as a compound of Dimeter + Dimeter Catalectic: hence, regular Diaeresis after the first Dimeter:

With Syllaba Anceps:

Si abduxeris celabitur † itidem ut celata adhuc est. PLAUT.

With Hiatus:

Sed si tibi viginti minae † argenti proferuntur. PLAUT.

2. It may be measured anacrustically:

0 : — 0 | — 0 | — † 0 | — 0 | — 0 | — 0 | — 0

**DACTYLIC RHYTHMS.**

**758.** The Dactylic Rhythm is a descending rhythm, in which the Arsis is equal to the Thesis (2 = 2).

The Dactylic Rhythm is represented by the Dactyl: 2 0 0.

Often, also, by the Spondee: 2 —.

A Dactylic verse of one Dactyl is called a Monometer; of two, a Dimeter; of three, a Trimeter; of four, a Tetrameter; of five, a Pentameter; of six, an Hexameter.

759. 13. *Dactylic Dimeter (Adonic).*

Terruit urbem. HOR.

— — — — —

REMARK.—Though generally measured thus, this verse is properly logaoedic, and will recur under that head.

760. 14. *Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic in Syllabam.*

Pulvis et umbra sumus. HOR.

— — — — —

15. *Dactylic Tetrameter Catalectic in Dissyllabum.*

Aut Epheson bimariæve Corinthi

— — — — —

O fortes pejoraque passi

— — — — —

Mensorem cohibent Archyta. HOR.

— — — — —

16. *Dactylic Tetrameter Acatalectic (Alcmanus).*

Nunc decet aut viridi nitidum caput

— — — — —

Pallida mors aequo pulsat pede

— — — — —

Vitæ summa brevis spem nos vetat

— — — — —

Occurs only in combination.

HEROIC HEXAMETER.

761. 17. — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — —

- |  |                  |
|--|------------------|
| 1. Ut fugiunt aquilas + timidissima   turba columbae. OV.        | } Five Dactyls.  |
| 2. At tuba terribili + sonitu + procul   aere canoro. VERG.      |                  |
| 3. Quadrupedante putrem + sonitu   quatit   ungula campum. VERG. |                  |
| 4. Cum medio celeres + revolant   ex aequore mergi. VERG.        | } Four Dactyls.  |
| 5. Vastius insurgens + decimae   ruit   impetus undae. OV.       |                  |
| 6. Et reboat raucum + regio + cita   barbara   bombum. LUCR.     |                  |
| 7. Muta metu terram + genibus + summissa petebat. LUCR.          | } Three Dactyls. |
| 8. Inter cunctantes + cecidit + moribunda ministros. VERG.       |                  |
| 9. Ne turbata volent + rapida + ludibria ventis. VERG.           |                  |
| 10. Versaque in obnixos + urgentur   cornua vasto. VERG.         | } Two Dactyls.   |
| 11. Processit longe + flammantia   moenia mundi. LUCR.           |                  |
| 12. Portam vi multa + converso   cardine torquet. VERG.          | } One Dactyl.    |
| 13. Tectum augustum ingens + centum sublime columnis. VERG.      |                  |
| 14. Olli respondit + Rex Albae Longae. ENNIUS.                   | } No Dactyl.     |



- |  |                                 |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 15. Aut leves ocreas + lento + ducunt argento. VERG.   | } Spondaic Verses.              |
| 16. Sunt apud inferos + tot milia formosarum. PROP.  |                                 |
| 17. Aëriaque Alpes + et nubilifer   Appenninus. OV.  |                                 |
| 18. Procubuit viridi-   que in litore   conspicitur—sus. VERG.   | } Monosyllabic ending.          |
| 19. Parturiunt montes + nascetur   ridiculus—mus. HOR.   |                                 |
| 20. Ecce supercilio + $\begin{smallmatrix} 10 & + & 6 = 16 \\ & & 8 \end{smallmatrix}$ alivosi   tramitis undam. VERG. | } Penthem. and Bucolic.         |
| 21. Insignem pietate + virum + tot adire labores. VERG.  |                                 |
| 22. Et nigrae violae + sunt   et vaccinia   nigra. VERG.   | } Third Trochee and Hephthemim. |
| 23. Sparsis   hastis   longis   campus   splendet et horret. EN.   |                                 |
| 24. Quamvis sint sub aqua sub aqua maledicere tentant. OV.   | } Split in half.                |
| 25. Me me adsum qui feci in me convertite ferrum. VERG.  |                                 |
| 26. Discissos nudos laniabant dentibus artus. VERG.  |                                 |
|  | } Shivered.                     |
|  |                                 |
|  |                                 |
|  | } a - sound.                    |
|  |                                 |
|  |                                 |
|  | } e - sound.                    |
|  |                                 |
|  |                                 |
|  | } s - sound.                    |
|  |                                 |
|  |                                 |

REMARKS.—1. The Heroic Hexameter is composed of two dactylic tripodies, the second of which ends in a spondee. Spondees may be substituted for the dactyl in the first four feet ; in the fifth foot, only when a special effect is to be produced. Such verses are called Spondaic. The longest hexameter contains five dactyls and one spondee (or trochee)—in all, seventeen syllables ; the shortest in use, five spondees and one dactyl—in all, thirteen syllables. This variety in the length of the verse, combined with the great number of caesural pauses, gives the Hexameter peculiar advantages for continuous composition.

2. The two reigning ictuses are the first and fourth, and the pauses are so arranged as to give special prominence to them—the first by the pause at the end of the preceding verse, the fourth by pauses within the verse, both before and after the arsis.

3. The principal Caesura in Latin poetry is the *Penthemimeral* ( $2\frac{1}{2}$ ), i. e. in the arsis of the third foot, or masculine caesura of the third foot. The next is the feminine caesura of the third foot, the so-called *Third Trochee*, which is less used among the Romans than among the Greeks ; then the *Hephthemimeral* ( $3\frac{1}{2}$ ) in the arsis of the fourth foot. As Latin poetry is largely rhetorical, and the caesura is of more importance for recitation than for singing, the Roman poets are very exact in the observance of these pauses.

4. The Diaeresis which is most carefully avoided is the one after the third foot, especially if that foot ends in a spondee ( $2\frac{1}{2}$ ), and the verse is thereby split in half.

Examples are found occasionally, and if the regular caesura precedes, the verse is not positively faulty.

**His lacrimis vitam + damus | — et miserescimus ultro. VERG.**

It is abominable when no other caesura proper is combined with it.

**Poeni | pervortentes | omnia | circumscurant. ENNIUS.**

On the other hand, the Bucolic tetrapody, or pause at the end of the fourth foot divides the verse into proportionate parts ( $1\frac{1}{2}$  and  $8\text{ morae}$  or  $2$  to  $1$ ), and gives a graceful trochaic movement to the hexameter. It is often sought after.

**Ite domum saturae | venit Hesperus | ite capellae. VERG.**

5. Much of the beauty of the Hexameter depends on the selection and arrangement of the words considered as metrical elements. The examples given above have been chosen with especial reference to the picturesque effect of the verse. Monosyllables at the end of the Hexameter denote surprise ; anapaestic words, rapid movement, and the like.

Again, the Hexameter may be lowered to a conversational tone by large masses of spondees, and free handling of the caesura. Compare the Hexameters of Horace in the Odes with those in the Satires.



19. *Dimeter Catalæcticus (Paroemiæus)*.

Volucér pede corpore púlcher	υ υ λ υ υ - υ υ λ υ
Línguá catus ore canórus	- λ υ υ - υ υ λ υ
Verúm memorare magís quam	- λ υ υ - υ υ λ υ
Functúm laudare decébit. AÛSON.	- λ - - υ υ λ υ

20. *Dimeter Acatalæctus*.

Veniént annis   sæcúla seris	υ υ λ - - - υ υ - -
Quibus Óceanus   víncula rerum	υ υ λ υ υ - - υ υ - -
Laxét et ingens   pateát tellus	- υ υ - - υ υ λ - -
Tethýsque novos   detégat orbes	- λ υ υ - - υ υ - -
Nec sít terris   última Thule. SEN. TRAG.	- λ - - - υ υ - -
Syllaba Anceps is rare.	

REMARKS.—Latin anapaests, as found in later writers, are mere metrical imitations of the Greek anapaests, and do not correspond to their original in contents. The Greek anapaest was an anacrusic dactylic measure or march (in  $\frac{2}{3}$  time). Hence the use of Pause to bring out the four bars.

Paroemiæus: *Anacrusic Scheme*.

Volucer pede corpore pulcher	υ υ :- υ υ   - υ υ   - -   -
------------------------------	------------------------------

Dimeter Acatalectus: *Anacrusic Scheme*.

Quibus Oceanus vincula rerum	υ υ :- υ υ   - -   υ υ   -
------------------------------	----------------------------

The Theses of the last feet are supplied by the Anacrusis of the following verse.

## LOGAOEDIC RHYTHMS.

764. The Logaoedic Rhythm is a peculiar form of the trochaic rhythm in which the thesis has a stronger secondary ictus than the ordinary trochee.

Instead of the trochee, the light dactyl may be employed. This light or cyclical dactyl is represented in moræ by  $1\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $\frac{1}{2}$ , 1; in music, by  $\text{♩} = \text{♩}^{\frac{2}{3}}, \text{♩}^{\frac{1}{3}}, \text{♩}^{\frac{1}{3}}$ .

When dactyls are employed, the trochee preceding is called a Basis, or *tread*. This trochee may be irrational  $\rightarrow$  (so-called spondee). If the basis is double, the second is almost always irrational in Latin poetry. The basis is commonly marked X. Instead of the trochee, an iambus is sometimes prefixed. Anacrusis and Syncope are also found.

REMARKS.—1. Logaoedic comes from *λόγος*, *prose*, and *ᾠδή*, *song*, because the rhythms seem to vary as in prose.

2. Dactyls are not necessarily employed. No. 4 (Alcaic enneasyllabic) is logaoedic.

## ONE DACTYL.

21. *Adonic*. (See No. 13.)  $\text{—} \cup \cup \text{—} \cup$   
*Terruit urbem*. HOR.  $\text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid$
22. *Aristophanic* (*Choriambic*).  $\text{—} \cup \cup \text{—} \cup \text{—} \cup$   
*Lýdia dío per omnes*. HOR.  $\text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \mid \text{—} \wedge$

## 765. ONE DACTYL, WITH BASIS.

23. *Pherecratæan*.  $\text{—}^x \text{—} \cup \cup \text{—} \cup$   
*Nigris æquora ventis*. HOR.  $\text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \mid \text{—} \wedge$
24. *Glyconic*.  $\text{—}^x \text{—} \cup \cup \text{—} \cup \text{—}$   
*Êmirâbitur insoléns*. HOR.  $\text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \wedge$
25. *Phalæcean* (*Hendecasyllabic*).  $\text{—}^x \text{—} \mid$   
*Pâsser môrtuus ést meae puellae*  $\text{—} \cup \text{—} \mid \text{—} \cup \cup \text{—} \cup \text{—} \cup \text{—} \cup$   
*Aridâ modo púmice expolitum*  $\text{—} \cup \text{—} \mid \text{—} \cup \cup \text{—} \cup \text{—} \cup \text{—} \cup$   
*Túae Lésbia sint satis superque*. CAT.  $\text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$

REMARK.—The so-called spurious Phalæcean admits the Spondee  $\text{—} >$  in the place of the dactyl.

*Quas vidí vultú tamen sereno*. CAT.

## 766. ONE DACTYL, WITH DOUBLE BASIS.

26. *Sapphic* (*Hendecasyllabic*).  $\text{—}^x \cup \text{—}^x \text{—} \cup \cup \text{—} \cup \text{—} \cup$   
*Aúdiét civés † acuisse ferrum*. HOR.  $\text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} > \mid \text{—} \mid \omega \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$
- REMARK.—The Greek measure (CATULLUS) is  $\text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$

## 767. ONE DACTYL WITH DOUBLE BASIS AND ANACRUSIS.

27. *Alcaic* (*Greater*) *Hendecasyllabic*.  $\cup, \text{—}^x \cup \text{—}^x \mid \text{—} \cup \cup \text{—} \cup \text{—}$   
*Vidés ut álta † stét nive cándidúm*  $> \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \wedge$   
*Sorácte néo jam † sústineánt onús*. HOR.

REMARK.—The second basis always a spondee in Horace.

## 768. TWO DACTYLS.

28. *Alcaic* (*Lesser*) or *Decasyllabic*.  $\text{—} \cup \cup \text{—} \cup \cup \text{—} \cup \text{—} \cup$   
*Vértete fúneribús triumphos*. HOR.  $\text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$

In all these, the Dactyl has a diminished value. More questionable is the logaoedic character of the Greater Archilochian.

769. 29. *Archilochian (Greater) = Dactyl. Tetr. and Troch. Tripody.*

Solvitur acris hiems grata vice | veris et Favoni. HOR.

REMARK.—If measured logaoedically, the two shorts of the dactyl must be reduced in value to one ( $\omega = \cup$ ), and the logaoedic scheme is

-6- -6- -6- -6- = -c- -c- L- -A

**Logaoedic tetrapody + Logaoedic tetrapody with Syncopé.**

**770. Choriambic Rhythms.**—When a logaoedic series is syn-  
copated, apparent choriambi arise. What is | ~ ~ | — | seems  
to be — ~ ~ —. Genuine choriambi do not exist in Latin.

30. *Asclēpiadēan* (Lesser).  $\overset{x}{-} - \cup \cup - \cup \cup - \cup -$

**Maecenas atavis | edito**

**regibus. Нок.**

$\rightarrow | \sim \sim | \perp | \sim \sim | - \sim | - \wedge$

81. *Asclēpiadēan* (Greater).

**Nullam Vare sacra | vite**

**prius | severis arbo-**

rem. HOR.

$\rightarrow | \psi \rangle = | \psi_0 \rangle + | \psi_1 \rangle + | \psi_2 \rangle + | \psi_3 \rangle + \dots$

### 32. *Sapphic* (Greater).

**Te deos oro Sybarin | cur**

**properas amando.**

HOR.

-v | -> | ~v | L | ~v | -v | L | -

33. *Priāpēan* (*Glyconic* +

*Pherecratēan*).

$$-\frac{x}{y} \cdot \frac{1}{x} = -\frac{1}{y}$$

**Hunc lucum tibi dedico |**

**consecroque Priape.**

**CAT.**

$\rightarrow | \sim v | - v | \perp | \rightarrow | \sim v | \perp | -$

## CRETIC AND BACCHIC RHYTHMS.

771. These passionate rhythms are found occasionally in the comic poets. They both belong to the Quinquepartite or Five-Eighths class.

1. The distribution of the Creticus is 3 + 2 morae.

The metrical value of the Creticus is — ∪ — (Amphimacer).

Second long resolved — ◡ ◡ ◡ Paeon Primus.

First long resolved ◡ ◡ ◡ — Paeon Quartus.

34. *Tetrameter Catalæcticus.*

— ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ —

Da mi(hi) hoc mel meum si me amas saudea. PLAUT.

35. *Tetrameter Acatalæcticus.*

— ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ —

Ex bonis pessimi et fraudulentissimi. PLAUT.

2. The Bacchius has the following measure : ◡ — 1 + 2 + 2 morae (◡ ◡ ◡), or if the descending form — ◡ be regarded as the normal one 2 + 2 + 1 morae (◡ ◡ ◡).

36. *Bacchic Tetrameter.*

Quibus nec locust ullu' nec spes parata ◡ — ◡ — ◡ — ◡ — ◡ —

Misericordior nulla mest feminarum ◡ ◡ — ◡ — ◡ — ◡ — ◡ —

### IONIC RHYTHM.

772. The Ionic Rhythm is represented by *Iōnicus ā mājōrī* — ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡. For the *Iōnicus ā mājōrī* may be substituted the *Ditrochaeus* — ◡ — ◡. This is called *Anáclasis* (*breaking-up*).

The verse is commonly anacrusic, so that it begins with the thesis ◡ ◡ : —. Such verses are called *Iōnicī ā minōrī*.

The second long has a strong secondary ictus.

773. 37. An Ionic System is found in HORACE, Od. iii. 12. It consists of two periods, the first being made up of two dipodies, the second of two tripodies.

*Iōnicus ā minōrī scheme :*

Miserarum est neque amorī

◡ ◡ — ◡ ◡ — |

dare ludum neque dulci

◡ ◡ — ◡ ◡ — |

mala vino lavere aut exanimari

◡ ◡ — ◡ ◡ — ◡ ◡ — |

metuentes patruae verbera linguae

◡ ◡ — ◡ ◡ — ◡ ◡ — |

*Iōnicus ā mājōrī scheme :*

◡ ◡ : — ◡ ◡ | — — — |

I. 3

◡ ◡ : — ◡ ◡ | — — — |

.

◡ ◡ : — ◡ ◡ | — ◡ ◡ | — — — |

II. 3

◡ ◡ : — ◡ ◡ | — ◡ ◡ | — — — |

.

REMARKS.—1. The Roman numerals refer to periods, the Arabic to the number of feet or bars, the dots indicate the end of a line.

The Ionicus is an excited measure, and serves to express the frenzy of distress as well as the madness of triumph.

### 774. 38. *Tetrameter Catalectic.*

The Galliambic verse (Tetrameter Catalectic) is found in a famous poem by CATULLUS (lxiii).

#### *Ordinary Scheme :*

Without Anaclassis:  $\cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup$

With Anaclassis:  $\cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup$

#### *Anacrusic Scheme :*

Without Anaclassis:  $\cup \cup : - - \cup \cup | - - \uparrow \cup \cup | - - \cup \cup | \cup - |$

With Anaclassis:  $\cup \cup : - \cup - \cup | - - \uparrow \cup \cup | - \cup - \cup | \cup - |$

The Anaclastic form is the more common. The Anacrusis may be contracted (9 times in the Attic).

The frequent resolutions and conversions give this verse a peculiarly wild character.

**Et earum omnia adirem furibunda**

latibula

$\cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup$

**Quo nos decet citatis celerare tri-**

pudiis

$- \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup$

**Itaque ut domum Oybebes tetigere**

lassulae

$\cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup$

**Super alta vectus Attis celeri rate**

maria

$\cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup$

**Jam jam dolet quod egi jam jam-**

que paenitet

$- \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup$

### 775. VERSES COMPOUNDED OF IAMBI AND DACTYLS.

#### 89. 1. *Iambelegus. Iambic Dimeter and Dactylic Penthemimeris.*

**Tu vina Torquato move | consule**

pressa meo. HOR.

$\cup \cup \cup - \cup \cup \cup \cup | \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup$

Or as two verses :

$\cup : - \cup | - \cup | - \cup | - \cup |$

$- \cup \cup | - \cup \cup | - \cup \cup |$





Or thus :       $-> | \sim \cup | - \cup | - \wedge |$       4  
                   $-> | \sim \cup | \_ | \sim \cup | - \cup | - \wedge |$       3  
                   $-> | \sim \cup | - \cup | - \wedge |$       4  
                   $-> | - \cup \cup | \_ | \sim \cup | - \cup | - \wedge |$       3

In Od. i. 8, 13, 19, 36 ; ii. 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28 ; iv. 1, 3.

III. Asclēpiadēan Strophe No. 3. Three Lesser Asclēpiadēan Verses, followed by a Glyconic (Nos. 30 and 24).

$-^x \_ \cup \cup \cup - | \_ \cup \cup \cup -$        $-> | \sim \cup | \_ | \sim \cup | - \cup | - \wedge$       3  
 $-^x \_ \cup \cup \cup - | \_ \cup \cup \cup -$        $-> | \sim \cup | \_ | \sim \cup | - \cup | - \wedge$       3  
 $-^x \_ \cup \cup \cup - | \_ \cup \cup \cup -$        $-> | \sim \cup | \_ | \sim \cup | - \cup | - \wedge$       3  
 $-^x \_ \cup \cup \cup -$        $-> | \sim \cup | - \cup | - \wedge$       4

In Od. i. 6, 15, 24, 33 ; ii. 12 ; iii. 10, 16 ; iv. 5, 12.

IV. Asclēpiadēan Strophe No. 4. Two Lesser Asclēpiadēan Verses (No. 30), a Pherecratēan (No. 23), and a Glyconic (No. 24).

$-^x \_ \cup \cup \cup - | \_ \cup \cup \cup -$       I.  $-> | \sim \cup | \_ | \sim \cup | - \cup | - \wedge |$       I. 3  
 $-^x \_ \cup \cup \cup - | \_ \cup \cup \cup -$        $-> | \sim \cup | \_ | \sim \cup | - \cup | - \wedge |$       3  
 $-^x \_ \cup \cup \cup -$       II.  $-> | \sim \cup | \_ | - \wedge |$       II. 4  
 $-^x \_ \cup \cup \cup -$        $-> | \sim \cup | - \cup | - \wedge |$       4

In Od. i. 5, 14, 21, 23 ; iii. 7, 13 ; iv. 313.

V. Asclēpiadēan Strophe No. 5. Greater Asclēpiadēan (No. 31), repeated in fours.

$-^x \_ \cup \cup \cup - | \_ \cup \cup \cup - | \_ \cup \cup \cup -$

Or thus :

$-> | \sim \cup | \_ | \sim \cup | \_ | \sim \cup | - \cup | - \wedge |$       3  
 $-> | \sim \cup | \_ | \sim \cup | \_ | \sim \cup | - \cup | - \wedge |$       3  
 $-> | \sim \cup | \_ | \sim \cup | \_ | \sim \cup | - \cup | - \wedge |$       3  
 $-> | \sim \cup | \_ | \sim \cup | \_ | \sim \cup | - \cup | - \wedge |$       3

In Od. i. 11, 18 ; iv. 10.

VI. Sapphic Strophe. Three Lesser Sapphics (No. 26), and an Adonic (No. 21), which is merely a clausula. In No. 26 Horace regularly breaks the Dactyl.

$\underline{x} \cup \underline{x} - \underline{\text{z}} \uparrow \cup \cup - \cup - \cup$	$- \cup   - >   - \uparrow \omega   - \cup   - \cup  $	5
$\underline{x} \cup \underline{x} - \underline{\text{z}} \uparrow \cup \cup - \cup - \cup$	$- \cup   - >   - \uparrow \omega   - \cup   - \cup  $	5
$\underline{x} \cup \underline{x} - \underline{\text{z}} \uparrow \cup \cup - \cup - \cup$	$- \cup   - >   - \uparrow \omega   - \cup   - \cup  $	5
$\underline{\text{z}} \cup \cup \underline{\text{z}} \cup$	$\sim \cup   - \cup  $	2

In Od. i. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 25, 30, 32, 38; ii. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16; iii. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27; iv. 2, 6, 11; Carmen Saeculäre.

Word divided at the end of the third verse; Od. i. 2, 19; 25, 11; ii. 16, 7.

VII. Lesser Sapphic Strophe. Aristophanic (No. 22), and Greater Sapphic (No. 32). Two pairs are combined into a tetrastich.

$\underline{\text{z}} \cup \cup - \cup - \cup$
$\underline{x} \cup \underline{x} - \underline{\text{z}} \cup \cup -   \underline{\text{z}} \cup \cup - \cup - \cup$

Or thus :

$\sim \cup   - \cup   \cup   - \wedge  $	4
$- \cup   - >   \sim \cup   \cup   \sim \cup   - \cup   \cup   - \wedge  $	4
$\sim \cup   - \cup   \cup   - \wedge  $	4
$- \cup   - >   \sim \cup   \cup   \sim \cup   - \cup   \cup   - \wedge  $	4

In Od. i. 8.

VIII. Alcaic Strophe. Two Alcaic verses of eleven syllables (No. 27) one of nine (No. 4), and one of ten (No. 28).

$\bar{\cup} : \underline{x} \cup \underline{x} -   \underline{\text{z}} \cup \cup - \cup -$	$> : - \cup   - >   \sim \cup   - \cup   - \wedge  $	I. 5
$\bar{\cup} : \underline{x} \cup \underline{x} -   \underline{\text{z}} \cup \cup - \cup -$	$> : - \cup   - >   \sim \cup   - \cup   - \wedge  $	5
$\bar{\cup} : \underline{\text{z}} \cup - \bar{\cup} \underline{\text{z}} \cup - \cup$	$> : - \cup   - >   - \cup   - \cup  $	II. 4
$\underline{\text{z}} \cup \cup - \cup \cup - \cup - \cup$	$\sim \cup   \sim \cup   - \cup   - \cup  $	4

In Od. i. 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37; ii. 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20; iii. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29; iv. 4, 9, 15, 17.





XVIII. Trochaic Strophe. Catalectic Trochaic Dimeter (No. 3), and a Catalectic Iambic Trimeter (No. 8). Two pairs make a tetrastich.

$\begin{array}{c} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \\ \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \end{array}$

In Od. ii. 18.

XIX. Ionic System.

In Od. iii. 12. (See No. 37.)

## 779. INDEX OF HORATIAN ODES AND METRES.

BOOK. ODE.	METRE.	BOOK. ODE.	METRE.	BOOK. ODE.	METRE.
I. 1.....	i.	II. 1.....	viii.	III. 18.....	vi.
2.....	vi.	2.....	vi.	19.....	ii.
3.....	ii.	3.....	viii.	20.....	vi.
4.....	xii.	4.....	vi.	21.....	viii.
5.....	iv.	5.....	viii.	22.....	vi.
6.....	iii.	6.....	vi.	23.....	viii.
7.....	xiii.	7.....	viii.	24.....	ii.
8.....	vii.	8.....	vi.	25.....	ii.
9.....	viii.	9.....	viii.	26.....	viii.
10.....	vi.	10.....	vi.	27.....	vi.
11.....	v.	11.....	viii.	28.....	ii.
12.....	vi.	12.....	iii.	29.....	viii.
13.....	ii.	13.....	viii.	30.....	i.
14.....	iv.	14.....	viii.	IV. 1.....	ii.
15.....	iii.	15.....	viii.	2.....	vi.
16.....	viii.	16.....	vi.	3.....	ii.
17.....	viii.	17.....	viii.	4.....	viii.
18.....	v.	18.....	xviii.	5.....	iii.
19.....	ii.	19.....	viii.	6.....	vi.
20.....	vi.	20.....	viii.	7.....	ix.
21.....	iv.	III. 1.....	viii.	8.....	i.
22.....	vi.	2.....	viii.	9.....	viii.
23.....	iv.	3.....	viii.	10.....	v.
24.....	iii.	4.....	viii.	11.....	vi.
25.....	vi.	5.....	viii.	12.....	iii.
26.....	viii.	6.....	viii.	13.....	iv.
27.....	viii.	7.....	iv.	14.....	viii.
28.....	xiii.	8.....	vi.	15.....	viii.
29.....	viii.	9.....	ii.	Carmen Saeculare.	vi.
30.....	vi.	10.....	iii.	Epod. 1-10.....	xv.
31.....	viii.	11.....	vi.	11.....	xi.
32.....	vi.	12.....	xix.	12.....	xiii.
33.....	iii.	13.....	iv.	13.....	x.
34.....	viii.	14.....	*vi.	14.....	xvi.
35.....	viii.	15.....	ii.	15.....	xvi.
36.....	ii.	16.....	iii.	16.....	xvii.
37.....	viii.	17.....	viii.	17.....	xiv.
38.....	vi.				

# APPENDIX.

## ROMAN CALENDAR.

THE names of the Roman months were originally adjectives. The substantive *mensis*, *month*, may or may not be expressed: (*mensis*) *Jānuārius*, *Februārius*, and so on. Before Augustus, the months July and August were called, not *Jūlius* and *Augustus*, but *Quintilis* and *Sextilis*.

The Romans counted backward from three points in the month, Calends (*Kalendae*), Nones (*Nōnae*), and Ides (*Idūs*), to which the names of the months are added as adjectives: *Kalendae Jānuāriæ*, *Nōnae Februāriæ*, *Idūs Martiæ*. The Calends are the first day, the Nones the fifth, the Ides the thirteenth. In March, May, July, and October, the Nones and Ides are two days later. Or thus :

In March, July, October, May,  
The Ides are on the 15th day,  
The Nones the 7th; but all besides  
Have two days less for Nones and Ides.

In counting backward ("come next calends, next nones, next ides") the Romans used for "the day before" *pridīs* with the accus. *pridīs kalendās Jānuāriās*, Dec. 31, *pridīs nōnās Jān.* = Jan. 4, *pridīs Id. Jan.* = Jan. 12.

The longer intervals are expressed by *ante diem tertium, quartum*, etc., before the accusative, so that *ante diem tertium kal. Jan.* means "two days before the calends of January;" *ante diem quartum*, or a. d. iv., or *iv. kal. Jan.*, "three days before," and so on. This remarkable combination is treated as one word, so that it can be used with the prepositions *ex* and *in*: *ex ante diem iii. Nōnās Jūniās usque ad pridīs kal. Septembris*, from June 3 to August 31; *differre aliquid in ante diem xv. kal. Nov.*, to postpone a matter to the 18th of October.

LEAP YEAR.—In leap year the intercalary day was counted between a. d. vi. kal. Mart. and a. d. vii. kal. Mart. It was called a. d. bis sextum kal. Mart., so that a. d. vii. kal. Mart. corresponded to our February 23d, just as in the ordinary year.

### TO TURN ROMAN DATES INTO ENGLISH.

*For Nones and Ides.*—I. Add one to the date of the Nones and Ides, and subtract the given number.

*For Calends.*—II. Add two to the days of the preceding month, and subtract the given number.

EXAMPLES : a. d. viii. Id. Jan. ( $13 + 1 - 8$ ) = Jan. 6; a. d. iv. Non. Apr. ( $5 + 1 - 4$ ) = Apr. 2; a. d. xiv. Kal. Oct. ( $30 + 2 - 14$ ) = Sept. 18,

# INDEX OF SYNTAX.

The Figures refer to the Sections.

## A.

**A**, *ab*, *abs*, with ablative, 412; of agent, 205, 403; of origin, 395; of part affected, 398; *à tergō*, *ab oriente*, *à spatiō*, 386, R. 2.

**Abhinc**, 400, R. 3.

**Ablative**, syntax of, 383-409; of place where, 384-387; of place whence, 388-390; of attendance, 391; of time when, 392, 3; of origin, 395; of material, 396; of measure, 397-400, 566; of manner, 401; of quality, 402; of means, 403; of price, 404; with sundry verbs, 405; of cause, 406; ablative absolute, 408, 409; prepositions with, 418, 420; abl. of gerund and gerundive, 432; of supine, 437.

**Absolute ablative**, 408; restrictions of use, 403, R. 3.

**Absoque**, w. abl. 418.

**Abstract nouns in plural** 195, R. 5; as attribute and *vice versa*, 357, R.

**Abūtor**, 405, 428; R. 3.

**Ac atque**, 479, 615.

**Accedit**, constr., 525, R. 3.

**Accidit**, sequence after, 513, R. 2.

**Accingor**, constr., 332, R. 2.

**Accipio**, with two datives, 350.

**Accusative**, 327-340. Direct object, inner, outer object, 327; general view, 328; with active transitive verbs, 329; with verbs compd. with prepositions, 330; cognate, 331; adverbial, 331, R. 3; of part affected, 332; double, 333, 334; of local objects (terminal accusative), 342, 410; of extent in space, 335, 336; in time, 337, 338; in ex-

clamations and explanatory questions, 340; with interjections, 340; with prepositions, 417; of infinitive, 424; of gerund, 426; of gerundive, 431; of supine, 436. Accusative and infinitive, 341-526.

**Accusing and acquitting**, verbs of, —constr., 377.

**Ac si**, 389.

**Action**, stage of, 213; period of, 213.

**Active voice**, 204; for passive, 205; R. 1.

**Active genitive**, 361.

**Ad**, in compds. with acc., 330; with dat., 346. Preposition with accus., 356, R. 1, 417; whither, 341, R. 2; ad Vestae, 360, R. 2; w. gerund, 437, R. 2; *ad*, hence, 400, R. 3.

**Adire aliquem**, 330, R. 2.

**Adjective for substantive**, 195, R. 1-4.—Adjective predicate, 202; adj. attribute, 285, 288; peculiar forms of, 288 foll.; comparison of, 311; as adverb, 329, R. 6. Adjective sentences, 505.

**Adnominal genitive**, 359.

**Adūtor**, constr. 347.

**Advantage**, dative of, 345.

**Adverbial accus.**, 331, R. 3; abl. 401.

**Adverbial sentences**, 507.

**Adverbs of quality**, place, extent with gen., 371, R. 3. Comparative of constr., 399. Adverbs, 440. Position of, 441. Negative adv., 442-450. Prepositions as adv., 406, R. Adverbs of likeness and unlikeness with *atque*, 646,

Adversative particles for copulative, 484.

Adversative sentences, 486-493.

*Adversus*, w. accus., 356, R. 2, 417.

*Aeger*, w. gen. 374, R. 2.

*Aemulor*, 347.

*Aequālis*, 356, and R. 1.

*Aequāre*, 345, R. 1.

*Aequi bonique facio*, 180, R. 2.

*Aestimo*, constr., 180, R. 1.

*Affatim*, w. gen., 371, R. 3.

Affection of the mind, 374, R. 2.

*Affinis*, constr., 356, and R. 1.

Affirmative, indefinite, and general, 448, R.

Agent, abl. of, w. *a* (*ab*), 202, 403; without *a* (*ab*), 202, R. 2; dative of, 203, 352, 353.

Agreement of predicate and subject, 199, 281, 283; of attribute and substantive, 285, 286; of relative and antecedent, 616.

*Ajo*, 651, R.

*Alienus*, w. dat., 356; with gen., 356, R. 1; w. abl., R. 5.

*Aliquis, aliqui*, 301.

*Aliiter* with *atque*, 646; with *sin*, 598.

*Alii—alii*, 321.

*Alius*, 306; with abl., 399, R. 2; with *atque*, 645.

*Alter*, 306. *Alter—alter*, 321.

*Altus*, 336.

Ambiguity in use of acc. and inf., 527, R. 4.

*Amicus*, constr., 356 and R. 1.

*An*, 459, 462.

*Anacoluthon*, 694.

*Animi*, constr., 374, R. 3.

*Annōn*, 461.

*Ante*, in compds., with acc., 330, w. dat., 346. *Ante*, w. acc., 417. *A* in expressions of time, 400, R. 3.

Antecedent, 615; repeated, 617; incorporated, 618; attraction into, 619; omission of, 623.

*Antequam*, constr., 576 foll.

Aorist, 212.

Apodosis, 590; omitted, 603 foll.

Apodotic period, 686.

Aposiopesis, 691.

Apposition, 319. Partitive (restrictive), 320. Distributive, 321; with *nōmen*, 322; to a sentence, 323.

Predicative, 324. Apposition of antecedent incorporated, 618.

*Apud*, w. accus., 417.

Arrangement of words, 674, foll. of clauses.

*As*, 324, R. 3.

*Aspergo*, constr., 348.

Asseverations, 255.

*Assis*, 379.

*Assuetus*, w. abl., 403, R. 2.

*Asyndeton*, 472, 480.

Attempted actions by present, 218, R. 2; by imperf., 224.

Attendance, ablative of, 391.

*Atque*, for *quam*, 311, R. 6. See *ac*.

*Atqui*, 488.

Attraction of pronoun, 199, R. 5. Attraction of names of persons, 322.

Attraction of mood, 509, 666: w. *quod*, 541, R. 2. Attraction of relative, 619: inverted, 619, R. 2.

*Aut*, 492.

*Autem*, 436.

*Az*, verbals in, w. gen. 174.

## B.

Becoming, verbs of, 193.

*Bellī*, 409, R. 3.

Beseeching, verbs of, 546.

Bewaring, verbs of, 548.

*Bene emere, vōdere*, 381, R. 3.

Bidding, verbs of, 345 and R. 1.

Birth, part. of, 395.

*Bonī cōnsulo*, 380, R. 2.

Brachylogy, 689.

## C.

*Capitis*, and *capite*, 377, R. 1.

*Captus*, w. abl., 398.

Cases, syntax of, 377-412; nom., 194; voc., 194, R. 2; accus., 327-340; dat., 342-356; gen., 357-382; abl., 381-409; with preposition, 417-419.

*Causā, grātiā*, w. gen., 372, 407.

Causal particles, 500, sentences, 588, foll.

Causal participle, 669.

Causation, verbs of, w. partic., 537.

Cause, abl. of, 406.



- Cave*, with subj. for imperat., 264.  
*Caveo*, w. acc. and dat., 347; *nē ut*, 548, R. 2.  
*Cēlo*, 333 and R. 2.  
*Cēlerum*, 490.  
*Chiasmus*, 684.  
 Choosing, verbs of, 197, 334.  
*Circā, circiter*, w. accus., 417.  
*Circum*, compds. w. acc., 580; *circum*, w. acc., 417.  
*Circumdo*, constr., 348.  
*Cis, citrā*, w. accus., 417.  
 Citations in abl., 386.  
 Cities, names of, 410–412.  
*Clam*, w. abl., 417, R.  
 Clauses, 474.  
*Coepit sum*, 424, R.  
 Cognate, accus., 331.  
*Cognātus*, constr., 356, R. 1.  
 Coincident action, 583.  
*Collocāre in*, w. abl., 384, R.  
*Com, con*, in compds., w. dat., 346.  
 Combination of relative sentences, 639.  
*Comitor*, constr., 347.  
*Communicāre*, const., 346, R.  
*Commūnis*, 356, R. 1.  
 Comparative degree with *quam*, 311, 647, foll.; with abl., 399; with gen., 370.  
 Comparative particles for copulatives, 484. C. sentences, 645, foll.  
 Comparison, 311; standard of, omitted, 323: of qualities, 314.  
 Complementary final sentences, 541, 543.  
*Compos*, w. gen., 373.  
 Compound sentences, 192, 474.  
 Compounds of preposit. with acc., 330; w. two acc., 330; w. dat., 346.  
 Conceiving, verbs of, 523.  
 Concessive subjunctive, 257. Concessive sentences and conjunctions, 606. C. participles, 611, 670.  
 Concord of predicate, w. subj., 202, 281; gender, 282; number, 281; of attribute, 285; common attribute, 286: of apposition, 349; of relative, 616.  
 Concords, the three, 198.  
 Condemning, verbs of, 377.  
 Condition, resulting, 225, 230.  
 Conditional sentences, 590–604; logical, 597; ideal, 598; unreal, 599; incomplete, 600; in *ORATIO OBLIQUA*, 659, foll.; conditional participle, 670.  
*Condūcere*, constr., 378.  
 Conjunctions.—Coördinate, copulative, 477, 484; adversative, 486–493; disjunctive, 494–497; causal, 500; illative, 501–504; subordinate, causal, 538; final, 543; temporal, 561; conditional, 591.  
*Cōnciūs*, w. gen., 373, R. 1.  
*Cōnsidere in*, 384, R. 1.  
*Cōnsilium est*, w. inf. 429, R. 3.  
*Cōstituire in*, 384, R.  
*Cōsto*, 370.  
*Cōsulo*, 347, 380, R. 2.  
*Constructio praeagnans*, 696.  
*Contentus*, w. abl., 373, R. 1.  
 Continuance, verbs of, 424.  
*Contigit*, sequence after, 513, R. 2.  
*Contrā*, as adv., 416, R.; w. acc., 217.  
*Contrārius*, 356, R. 1.  
*Convenio*, 347.  
 Convicting, verbs of, 377.  
 Coördinate conjunctions. See conjunctions.  
 Copula, 196; omitted, 200; agreement with predicate, 202, R. 1.  
 Copulative conjunctions, 477–484; inserted, 483; omitted, 475–483.  
 Copulative verbs, 1.  
*Coram*, with abl., 418.  
 Correlatives of *sī*, 595. Correlatives of *quā*, 620. Correlatives, list of, 645.  
*Cum*, prep., abl., with and without, 391–401; postpositive, 414, R. 1; with abl., 418.  
*Cum (quum) primum*, 563; *cum* (constr.), 581; temporal, 582; coincident action, 583; lapse of time, 582, R. 3; conditional, 584; iterative, 585; historical, 586; causal, 587; concessive, adversative, 588; *cumtum*, 587.  
*Cumque*, compounds with, 246, R. 4.  
*Cupidus*, w. gen., 373.  
*Cupio*, 532.  
*Cūrā ut*, 264.

## D.

Dative, 343-356; w. transitive verbs, 344; w. intrans. verbs, 345; w. compd. verbs, 346; differs from accus., 347; with verbs of giving and putting, 348; with *esse*, 349; of the object for which, 350; ethical dat., 351; of agent, 352; with gerund, 353; of participles, 354; with derivative nouns, 355; with adjectives, 356. Dative of gerund, 480.

*Dē*, with abl., 418; for gen., 371, R. 4, 377, R. 2; of time, 393, R.; of origin, 395; with abl. of measure, 398.

*Debēbam*, 246, R.

*Decēre*, 355, R. 1.

Declarative mood, 246.

*Dēcerno*, 446, R. 2.

*Dēficere*, 355, R. 1.

*Defigere in*, abl., 384, R.

Definite price, 404.

Delay, verbs of, 551.

Demanding, verbs of, 546.

Demonstratives, use of, 290-292.

Deponent verbs, 211.

Depriving, verbs of, 389.

Derivative nouns with dat., 355.

Design, sentences of, 544, foll.; represented, 544, R.

*Dēsino*, 424.

Desire, adj. of, w. gen., 373; verbs of, w. inf., 542; w. partic., 547.

*Dēsitus sum*, 424, R. 1.

*Dēspēro*, w. acc., 329.

Destination, 377, R. 3.

Determinative pronouns, 293-298.

*Dēterreo*, constr., 548, R. 1.

Difference, abl. of, 400.

*Dī*, *dīs*, compounds with, 388, R. 1.

*Dignor*, 398, R. 2.

*Dignus*, 373, R. 3; 398, R. 2. *Dignus quī*, 556, R. 2.

Direct discourse, 509.

Direct object, 327.

Direct question, 454.

Disadvantage, dat. of, 345.

Disgust, adj. of, 373.

Disjunctive conjunctions, 494-497.

*Dispār*, 356, R. 1.

Disproportion, 313.

Distance, abl. of, 400, R. 2.

*Distāre*, w. dat., 388, R. 1; with abl., 400, R. 1, 2; with acc., 335.

Distributives, 310.

*Dō*, with two datives, 350.

*Doceo*, 333, 424, R. 3.

*Doctus*, constr., 403, R. 2.

*Doleo*, w. acc., 329, R. 1, w. *quod*, 542.

*Dolō*, 401, R. 1.

*Domī*, 412, R. 2.

*Domō*, 411, R. 2.

*Domōs*, *domum*, 410.

*Dōnec*. See *Dum*.

Doubt, verbs of, 551.

*Dūco*, with two dat., 350, with gen., 378.

*Dubito an*, 469, R.

*Dubito*, other constr. 550, R.

*Dum*, with pres., 217, R. 1, 572; w. ind., 571, 573; with subj., 574.

*Dum*, *Dummodo*, 575.

## E.

*Ē* or *ex*. with abl., 417; for gen., 571, R. 4; of origin, 395; *ex fugā* 388, R. 1.

*Ecce*, 340.

*Egeo*, 389, R. 1.

Ellipsis of substantive, 195, R. 1.

Ellipsis, 688.

*Emo*, 378.

Emotion, verbs of, 406, 542.

*Ēn*, 340.

End, verbs of, 424.

Endeavor, verbs of, 546.

*Enī*, 500.

Enumeration in abl., 384, R.

*Ēō*, w. gen., 371, R. 3.

*Ergā*, w. accus., 356, R. 2, 417.

*Ergō*, w. gen., 372.

*Ergō*, conj., 504.

*Est quī*, 426.

*Et*, 534; *et ipse*, 297, R. 2; *et nemo*, 482; *et nōn*, 534.

*Etenī*, 497.

*Etiā*, 477.

Ethical dative, 351.

*Etiāsi*, *etsi*, 605, 606.

Exclamations, 340 with acc. and inf. 534; with *ut*, 560.

*Expers*, w. gen., 373.

*Exspectāre*, constr., 574.

Extent in space, 335, 336.

External qualities, 402, R.

*Extrâ*, as an adverb, 406, R.; with acc., 417.

## F.

*Fac*, in circumlocutions, 264.

*Facio*, with gen., 365, R., 379; w. inf., 527, R. 1; w. part., 536; w. subj., 557.

Feeling, dat. of, 351.

Fearing, verbs of, 347, 552.

*Fido*, 345, R. 1, 402.

Filling, verbs of, 374, R. 6, 389.

Final sentences, 543, foll.

Fine, abl. of, 377, R. 1.

*Fio*, with two nom., 197; with two dat., 349; with abl., 403, R. 2.

Fitness, adjectives of, 356.

*Flāgito*, 333 and R. 2.

Forbidding, verbs of, 355.

Forgetting, verbs of, with gen., 375.

*Frequens*, 324, R. 5.

Frequentative. *See* Iterative.

*Frētus*, with abl., 373, R. 1.

Friendliness, adj. of, 356.

*Fruor*, 413; *fruendus*, 428, R. 3.

*Fui*, perf. partic. pass. with, 240.

Fulness, adjectives of, 382.

*Fungor*, 405; *fungendus*, 428, R. 3.

Future, 237; periphrastic, 237; in subjunctive, 514; inf., 529.

Future participle, 279.

Future perfect, 233, foll.; iterative use, 659.

*Futūrum esse*, *fore ut*, 237, 531, R.

*Futūrum fuisse ut*, 240, R. 2, 659.

## G.

*Gaudeo*, w. abl., 406; w. inf., 533; w. *quod*, 528.

Generic relative with ind., 246, R. 4.

Genitive, 357-382; appositive gen., or gen. of specification, 359; possess. gen., 360; active and passive, 361-363; gen. of quality, 364; as a predicate, 365; partitive gen., 366, foll. g. *generis*, 367, R.; gen. with prepositional substantives, 372; with adj., 373; with verbals and participles, 374; with verbs

of memory, 375; with verbs of emotion, 376; w. judicial verbs, 377; with verbs of rating and buying, 376, 377; gen. with *interest* and *refert*, 381, 382; apparent gen., 412; gen. of gerund and gerundive, 429; cases of, 427. Gerund and gerundive, 426-432; gerundive for gerund, 428; after prepositions, 428, R. 1; gerundive formation restricted, 428, R. 2; 428, R. 3; genitive of, 429; dative of, 430; accus. of, 431; ablat. of, 432.

*Glōrior*, with abl., 407.

*Gratiā*, with gen., 372, 407.

## H.

*Habeo*, w. perf. part. pass., 236; with two dat., 350; with gen., 378; with inf., 424, R.; *nihi habeo quod* and *nōn habeo quid*, 634.

Habit, verbs of, 424.

Happening, verbs of, 525, 558.

*Haud*, 442. *Haud scio an*, 457, R.

Hendiadys, 695.

*Hei*, 340, R. 2.

*Heu*, 540.

*Hic*, 290; of time, 383, R. 2.

Historical tenses, 213. Historical present, 227. Historical *cum*, 586.

*Hodiernus*, 324, R. 6.

Hope, verbs of, 424, R. 3.

*Horrere*, w. accus., 529, R.

## I.

Ideal second person, 250, 267. Ideal conditional sentence, 598.

*Idem*, 296; predicative use of, 324, R. 2; with dat., 356, R. 6.

*Idōneus*, with dat., 356; *qui*, 556, R. 2.

*Igitur*, 563.

*Ignārus*, w. gen. 373.

Ignorance, adjectives of, w. gen. 373.

Illative conjunctions, 502-504.

*Iūe*, 292; of time, 393, R. 2.

*Immemor*, w. gen., 373.

*Impedio*, constr., 540, 549.

Imperative, 259-269; tenses, 259-262; negative, 263; periphrases for, 264; representatives of positive imperative, 265; of negative, 266; of positive and negative, 267, 268; time of, 272: imperative in *oratio obliqua*, 655; used modally, 246, R.

Imperfect tense, indicative, 222, foll.; subjunctive, 250; in sequence of tenses, 517; in unreal conditional sentences, 599, R. 2.

*Impero*, w. inf., 532, R. 1.

Impersonal verbs, 348.

*Impertio*, 348.

*Imprimere in*, abl., 384, R.

*In*, in compounds with acc., 380; with dat., 346. *In*, with abl. of place, 384, R.; with acc., 413, R.; with acc. and abl., 419. *In*, with abl. of time, 393.

Inclination, verbs of, 324.

Incorporation of antecedents, 618; antecedent, 623.

Indefinite perfect, 212; pronouns, 302-304.

Indicative mood, 246; for subjunctive, 399, R. 4. See the different classes of sentences.

*Indigeo*, constr., 388, R. 1.

*Indignus*, w. abl., 373, R. 3; 398, R. 2. *Indignus qui*, 556, R. 2.

Indirect discourse. See *oratio obliqua*.

Indirect object, 208, 343.

Indirect questions, 462.

*Induo*, constr., 348.

*In eo esse ut*, 237, 241.

Infinitive, tenses of, 273, foll. 314; subject of, 327, 525; as a noun, 420, 422; as a subject, 423; as an object, 424; as a predicate, 425; accus. and inf., 526; ambiguity of accus. and inf., 527, R. 4; accus. and inf., with verbs of will and desire, 532; with verbs of emotion, 533; in exclamations, 534; accus. and inf., as a subject, 535; in relative sentences, 538.

*Infrā*, as an adverb, 416 R.; with accus., 417.

*Inquam*, 439.

Inquiry, verbs of, 333.

*Inscribere in*, abl., 384, R.

*Instar*, with gen., 370.

Instrument, abl. of, 205, 103.

*Inter*, in compound with dat., 346.

*Inter*, with accus., 417; with accus. for gen., 371, R. 4. *Inter se*, 212. *Inter* of time, 393, R.

Intercalary period, 686.

*Interest*, constr., 373-381.

Interjections, 194, R. 2; with diverse cases, 340.

Interrogative sentences, 449, 473.

*Intrā*, with accus., 417; of time, 393, R.

Intransitive verbs, 204, 345.

Inverted attraction, 618, R. 2.

*Invitus*, 324, R. 6.

*Ipsæ*, use of, 297, foll.

*Ire*, with supine, 437.

Islands, names of smaller, constr., 410, 411, 412.

*Itaque*, 499.

*Ita—ut*, restrictive, 556, R. 5.

*Item, iidem*, 645.

Iterative tenses, 568-9.

## J.

*Jubeo*, constr., 532, R.; 546, R. 1.

*Jure*, 398.

*Jussū*, 407.

*Juvo*, w. accus., 315, R. 1.

## K.

Knowledge, adjectives of, 373.

## L.

*Latus*, constr., 336.

*Lēge*, 398.

Letters, tenses in, 244; date, 411, R. 3.

*Libens*, 324, R. 6.

*Liber*, 373, R.; *libero*, w. abl., 388.

*Librō*, and *in librō*, 385, R.

*Licere*, constr., 378.

*Licet*, constr., 535, R. 2.

Likeness, adjectives of, 356; with acc., 646.

*Locāre*, constr., 378.

Locative, 412.

*Locò*, 385, R.

*Longè*, with superl., 317.

*Longus*, w. accus., 336.

### M.

*Macte*, 324, R. 1.

*Magis quam*, 314.

*Magni*, 377; *magno*, 380.

Making, verbs of, with two accus., 334; passive of, w. two nom., 196.

*Male*, *emere*, *vendere*, 380, R. 3.

*Mulo*, constr., 532, R. 4; 546, R. 3.

Manner, abl. of, 401.

Material, abl. of, 396.

*Mātūtīnus*, 324, R. 6.

Measure, abl. of, 398-400; of difference, 398.

*Medeor*, w. dat., 345, R. 2; *medendus*, 428, R. 3.

*Melius*, w. indic., 246, R. 1.

*Memini*, w. pres. inf., 27, R.; w. gen. 375.

*Memor*, w. gen., 373.

*Memoria teneo*, 277, R.

Memory, verbs of constr., 375.

*Metuo*, w. dat. and acc., 347.

*Militiae*, 412, R. 2.

*Mille*, 308.

*Minoris*, 380.

*Minor*, *minus*, without *quam*, 311, R. 4.

*Mirārī*, with accus., 329, R. 1.

*Mirum quantum*, 469, R. 2.

*Misereor*, *miserescō*, *miseret*, w. gen., 376.

*Mittere*, w. two dat., 350.

*Moderor*, with dat. and accus., 347.

*Modo*, with subjunc., 575.

*Modo-modo*, 481.

*Moneo*, w. gen., 375 and R. 1; with *ut*, 546; with inf., 546, R. 2.

Mood, attraction of, 506.

Moods, 244; indic., 246, foll.; subjunctive, 247, foll.; imperfect, 259; infinitive, 245, R.

*Mōris est*, 365.

Moving cause, 407, R.

Multiplication of subjects, 282, foll.

Multitude, noun of, 202, R.

*Multō*, with superlat., 317.

*Multus*, with *et*, 468.

*Mūto*, constr., 404, R.

### N.

*Nam*, *namque*, 500.

Name, dat. of, 322; gen. of, 359.

Names of cities and small islands, constr., 410, 411, 412.

Naming, verbs of, with two accus., 334.

*Nātus*, w. accus., 338; w. abl., 395.

—*Ne*, 456, 462.

*Nē*, with optative subj., 253; with imper. subj., 256, 266; with imperat., 263, 264; with sentences of design, 543; of result, 566, R. 4; *nē*, provided that, 610.

Nearness, adjectives of, 256.

*Necesse est*, 344, R.

Necessity, expressed how, 246, R. 1.

*Necne*, 461.

*Nec nōn*, 448, R. 3.

*Nedum*, 484, R. 2.

Negative, of optative subjunctive, 253; of imperative, 263; negatives, 442, foll.; subdivision of, 444; position of, 447; two negatives, 448.

*Nego*, 446.

*Nemo*, 304.

*Nempe*, 500, R.

*Neque*, 482. *Nē-quidem*, 484.

*Nescio an*, 404.

*Nescio quis quōmodo*, with indic., 469, R. 2.

Neuter adjective as substantive, 199, R. 4; as cognate accus., 331, R. 2; as adverb, R. 3; with participative gen., 371.

*Nī*, 592, R. 5.

*Nihil*, 301; *nihili*, 379.

*Nisi* and *sī nōn*, 592; *nisi* and *nisi sī* = only, 592, R. 2; *nisi quod*, R. 3; *nisi forte*, R. 3.

*Nitor*, with abl., 403, R. 3.

No, 473.

*Nōlī*, with inf. for imperat., 264.

*Nōlo*, 532.

*Nōmen* est, 322. *Nōmen* w. gen., 359.

Nominative, 194; double, 196; nom. for accus., 528; with inf., 525.

*Nōn*, 442; position of, 447; *nōn quod*, *quō*, 541, R. 1.

*Nōn aliū quam*, 646, R. 2.

*Nōn modo-solum tantum*, 484.

*Nōnne*, 457.

*Nōn possum nōn*, 448, R. 1.  
*Nōs* = *ego*, 195, R. 7.  
*Nōstrī*, *nōstrum*, 362 and R.  
 Nouns. See Substantive and Adjective.  
*Nūbo*, with dat., 345, R. 2.  
*Nullus*, 300, 304; for *nōn*, R. 2.  
*Num*, 458.  
 Number, singular for plural, 195, R. 7 and 8; agreement in, 199.  
 Nunc-nunc, 484.

O.

*Ō*, with voc., 194, R. 2; w. accus., 340.  
*Ō si*, 254, 388.  
*Ob*, in compds. with acc., 330; with dat., 346. *Ob*, w. accus., 417.  
 Object, direct, 204; indirect, 205; infin. as object, 424; object sentences, 523-537; with *quod*, 525; with acc. and inf., 326, foll.  
 Object, for which, 350.  
 Obligation expressed, 246, R. 1.  
 Oblique cases, 327-408.  
 Obliquity, partial, 502.  
*Obliviscor*, constr., 375, R. 1.  
*Olere* and *redolere*, w. accus., 329, R.  
 Omitting, verbs of, 551.  
*Omnēs*, 369, R. 1.  
*Opiniōne*, 399, R. 1.  
*Oporet*, 535, R. 1; 559, R. 1.  
 Optative, subjunctive, 256.  
*Opto*, 424, R. 2; 546.  
*Opus*, 390.  
*Oratio obliqua*, 509, 651-655; moods in, 509, 653, 654; tenses in, 655, foll.; condit. sentences in, 659; pronouns in, 663; involved, 655-6.  
 Ordinals for cardinals, 309.  
*Ordine*, 401.  
 Origin, abl. of, 395.  
*Ortus*, 395.

P.

*Paenitet*, 376; *paenitendus*, 428, R. 8.  
*Pār* and *dispār*, constr., 356, R. 1.  
 Part, accus. of, 332.  
*Particeps*, w. gen., 373.

Participial clauses, interrogative in, 470.  
 Participial sentences, 667, foll.  
 Participles, tenses, 278-9; w. genitive, 374; subordination, by means of, 409, R. 2; 667, R. 1; participle as substant., 438; as adjunct., 439; after verbs of Perception and Representation, 524, R. 1, 533; verbs of Causation and Desire, 534.  
 Participation, adjectives of, 373.  
 Partition in English, none in Latin, 369, R. 1.  
 Partitive genitive, 366-371.  
 Partitive, use of attribute, 287, R.; apposition, 321.  
*Parum*, w. gen., 371.  
*Parvi*, 380.  
 Passionate Question, 258.  
 Passive voice, 205; passive of intransitive verbs, 199, R.; 204, 208; passive genitive, 361.  
*Peculiāris*, constr., 356, R. 1.  
*Pedibus*, 401, R. 1.  
*Penes*, w. accus., 415.  
*Per*, in compds. with acc., 330; *per* with acc., 417; position, 416, R.  
*Per*, of space, 335; of time, 337; of manner, 401, R.  
 Perceiving, verbs of, constr., 527, 536.  
 Perfect, pure, 227; historical, 231; passive, 242; perfect in letters, 244; perfect subjunctive potential, 250; optative, 254; imperative, 256, R. 1, 266; time of, 271; in sequence, 511; in sentences of result, 513; perfect infin., 275; as representative of indic., 277, and perf. part., 278; after verbs of causation and desire, 537; concessive, 670.  
 Period of action, 213.  
 Periphrastic conjugation, 240-243; subj., 514-516; infin. 531; in *oratio obliqua*, 659.  
*Peritus*, w. gen., 373.  
*Permitto ut*, 532, R. 1.  
 Person, concord of, 202, 283.  
 Personal pronoun omitted, 195; gen. of, 362; personal pronoun w. gerundive, 429, R. 1.  
 Person interested, 206.

- Persuadeo*, 345, R. 1; w. inf., 546, R. 2.  
*Pertaesum est*, 376.  
*Peto*, 333, R. 2.  
*Piget*, 376.  
 Placing, verbs of, 384, R. 1.  
 Place, whither, 333, 410; where, 384-387, 412; whence, 388; place, as cause, manner, or instrument, 387.  
*Plēnus*, 373 and R. 2.  
 Pluperfect, 233; indic. for subj., 246, R. 3; 599, R. 3; iterative, 569; pluperf. subj. as imperat. of past, 266, R. 2; in sequence, 511; iterative, 569, R. 2; in conditional, 599.  
 Plural of abstracts, 195, R. 5, 6; for sing., R. 7.  
*Plūrimī*, 380.  
*Plūris*, 380.  
*Plūs*, without *quam*, 311, R. 4.  
*Pōne*, w. accus., 417.  
*Pōnere in*, abl., 384, R.  
*Posco*, constr., 333 and R.  
 Position of attribute, 287, 288; of preposition, 404, foll.; of adverb, 441; of negative, 447, foll.: position, in interrogative sentences, 470; of relative, 614.  
*Posse*, for future, 240, R. 3; 662, R. 2.  
 Possessive genitive, 360.  
 Possessive pronouns, use of, 299; apposition with gen., 319, R. 2; for genitive, 363; with *rēfert* and *interest*, 381; reflexive, 295, R. 1, 521.  
 Possessor, dative of, 349.  
 Possibility expressed, 246, R. 1.  
*Post*, in compounds with dat., 346; in expressions of time, 400, R. 3.  
*Post*, w. accus., 417.  
*Post quam*, 563-567.  
*Postulo*, constr., 333, R. 2.  
 Potential subjunctive, 250, foll., 519, 543.  
*Poteram*, 246, R.  
*Potior*, constr., 405, and R. 3.  
*Potius quam*, 362, R.  
*Potuisse*, for *futūrum fuisse ut*, 659, R. 2.  
 Power expressed, 246, R. 1; adjectives of, 373.  
*Præ*, in compounds w. dat., 346; with abl., 407, R.; 418.  
*Praeditus*, w. abl., 373, R. 1.  
*Praestōlor*, constr., 347.  
*Praeter*, in compds., w. accus., 329.  
*Praeter*, w. accus., 417.  
 Predicate, 192; predicative apposition and attribution, 324.  
 Prepositions, 413-419; origin of word, 413, R. 3; position of, 214, 215; repetition and omission of, 216; adverbial, 416, R.; prepositions w. acc., 417; with abl., 418; with accus. and abl., 419; with gerundive, 428, R. 1; with abl. gerund., 433.  
 Present indicat., 215-218; of endeavor, 215, R. 2; for future, 219; for past, 220; with *jam*, *jamdiū*, *jampridem*, 221; present subjunctive, time of, 271; in sequence of tenses, 511; for future, 514; in conditional sentences, 381; present infinitive, 273; of contemporaneous action, 529; present participle, 278.  
 Preventing cause, 407, R. 2; verbs of, 548, 549.  
 Price, gen. of, 378; abl. of, 404.  
*Primo*, *primum*, 324, R. 7.  
 Principal clauses, 474.  
*Prior*, *primus*, as predicates, 324, R. 6, 7; w. gen., 370.  
*Prius quam*, constr., 576-9.  
*Prō*, interjection, 340.  
*Prō*, in compounds, w. dat., 346.  
*Prō*, with abl., 418. *Prō eō, ut*, 465, R. 4.  
*Prohibeo*, constr., 547.  
*Prolepsus*, 470.  
 Promise, verbs of, 424, R. 2.  
 Pronouns, 290-304; demonstrative, 290-293; reflexive, 294, 520-522; determinative, 296-298; possessive, 299; indefinite, 300-304; in *oratio obliqua*, 663.  
*Prope*, w. accus., 417.  
*Proptus*, constr., 356, R. 4.  
*Proprius*, 356, R. 1.  
*Propter*, w. accus., 417.  
 Protasis, 590; omitted, 252, R. 1, 602.  
*Proximē*, w. accus., 356, R. 4.  
*Prūdēns*, as adv., 324, R. 5.

*Pudet*, 376.  
 Pure perfect, 212.  
*Puto*, w. gen., 378.  
 Putting, verbs of, constr., 348, 384,  
 R.

## Q.

*Quā prǔdentia es*, 618, R. 1.  
 Qualification of subject, 284.  
*Quālis*, 433.  
 Quality, gen. of, 364; ablative of,  
 402.  
 Qualities, two compared, 314.  
*Quam*, w. comparatives, 311, 647;  
 w. superlatives, 317; *quam pro ut*  
*quī*, 318; *quam quod*, 525; *quam*  
*si*, 604; *quam* omitted, 311, R. 4.  
*Quamdiū*, 570, 645.  
*Quāquam*, 607.  
*Quāvis*, 608.  
*Quando*. *Quādbūquidē*, 538.  
*Quantū*, 400 and R.; *Quantus*, 645.  
*Quasi*, 604.  
*—Que*, 478.  
 Questions. See Interrogative Sen-  
 tences.  
*Quī*, indef., 302.  
*Quī*, 612, foll. See relative.  
*Quia*, 538; *nōn quia*, 541, R. 1.  
*Quicunque*, 266, R. 1.  
*Quidam*, 300.  
*Quidem*, 298, R.  
*Quid mē vis*, 331, R. 3.  
*Quin*, in questions, 268; *quīn*, 550;  
 after verbs of omitting, etc., 551;  
 for *quī nōn*, 556; *nōn quīn*, 541,  
 R. 1.  
*Quis*, indef., 302  
*Quispiam*, 303.  
*Quisquam*, 304.  
*Quisque*, 305; *ut quisque*, 645, R. 2.  
*Quisquis*, w. ind., 246, R. 4.  
*Quō*, measure of difference, 400 =  
 that thereby, 545; *quō quisque*,  
 645, R. 2.  
*Quoad*, with gen., 371, R. 3; constr.,  
 573.  
*Quod*, in object sentences, 525; in  
 causal sentences, 538–541; w.  
 verbs of emotion, 542, foll.; *nisi*  
*quod*, 592, R. 3; *quodsi ubi*, 612,  
 R. 1.  
*Quōminus*, 549.

*Quoniam*, 538, foll.  
*Quoque*, 481.  
*Quot*, w. gen., 368, R.; correlat.,  
 645.  
*Quoties*, 569; correl., 645.  
*Quotquot*, w. ind., 246, R. 4.  
*Quum*. See *cum*.

## R.

Rating, verbs of, constr., 378.  
 Reciprocal relations, 212.  
*Recordor*, 277, R.  
*Recuso*, constr., 548.  
*Reddo*, 334, R.  
*Refert*, constr., 381, 382.  
*Refertus*, constr., 374, R. 1.  
 Reflexive pronoun, 294; in subordi-  
 nate sentences, 520–532.  
 Refraining, verbs of, 551.  
 Refusing, verbs of, 548.  
 Relative sentences, 506, 612, foll.;  
 relative, position of, 614; con-  
 cord of, 616; attraction of, 619;  
 correlatives of, 620; relative  
 clause, position of, 622; tenses in,  
 624, 625; moods in, 626, foll.;  
 ind., 626, foll.; subj., 629, foll.; in  
*oratio obliqua*, 630; by attraction,  
 631; when *quī ut = is*, 632, 634;  
 when *quī = cum is*, 635; accus.,  
 rel. and inf., 638; combination of  
 relative sentences, 639; relative  
 in *oratio obliqua*, 658, R. 1 and 2;  
 relative represented by participle,  
 640, 671.  
*Relinquo*, with two datives, 350.  
 Remaining, verbs of, 197.  
 Remembering, verbs of, 375.  
 Reminding, verbs of, 375.  
*Reminiscor*, 375 and R. 2.  
 Repeated action. See Iterative.  
 Representatives of imperative, 265–  
 268.  
 Representation, verbs of, with par-  
 ticiple, 536.  
 Requiring, verbs of, 333.  
*Rē*, use of, 195.  
 Resisting, verbs of, 345.  
 Restriction to the comparative,  
 315.  
 Restrictive apposition, 320.  
 Result, subjunctive of, 340, foll.;



exceptional sequence in sentences of result, 513.

Resolve, verbs of, 424, and R. 2.

Rhetorical questions, 452, R. 2; in *oratio obliqua*, 654, R.

*Rideo*, w. accus., 329.

*Rogātū*, 407.

*Rūre*, 410, 411; *rūs*, 410.

*Rūrī*, 412.

## S.

*Sacer*, 356, R. 1.

Sacrifice, 403, R. 2.

*Satis*, w. gen., 371.

Saying, verbs of, constr., 523-529.

*Sciens*, 324, R. 5.

Seat of feeling, 374, R. 3.

*Sed*, 487.

Seeming, verbs of, 196.

Sentences, simple, 129; expanded, 281; compound, coördinate and subordinate, 474; copulative, 477, foll.; adversative, 486, foll.; disjunctive, 495, foll.; causal, 500; illative, 502; object, 503, foll.; causal, 538, foll.; final, 543, foll.; consecutive, 553, foll.; temporal, 567, foll.; conditional, 590, foll.; concessive, 605, foll.; relative, 612, foll.; comparative, 641, foll.; abridged, 649, foll.

variation, abl. of, 388.

sequence of tenses, 511, foll.

*Seu*. See *Sive*.

Showing, verbs of, with two nom., 197; with two accus., 334; with accus. and infin., 526-529.

*Si*, whether, 462; if, 591.

Sign of conditional omitted, 600.

*Silentio*, 401, R. 1.

*Similis*, constr., 356, R. 1.

Simple sentences, 195; expanded, 280, foll.

*Simul*—*simul*, 484.

*Simulac*, 563.

*Sin* (*minus*, *secus*, *aliter*), 593.

*Si nōn*, 592.

*Sine*, with abl., 418; not used with gerund, 432.

Singular for plural, 195, R. 7 and 8.

*Sino*, w. accus. and inf., 424, R. 3; with *ut*, 546, R. 3; without *ut*, 546, R. 3.

*Sitio*, with accus., 329, R.

*Sive*—*sive*, 498, 499.

Space, extent in, 335, 336.

*Spē*, comparative with, 399, R. 1

Specification, genitive of, 354.

Specific characteristic, 357.

Stage of action, 213.

Standard of comparison omitted, 312.

*Statuo in*, abl., 384, R.

*Sto*, constr., 378; with abl., 403, R. 3.

*Stultitiae est*, 365, R.

*Sub*, in compounds with acc., 330; with dat., 346; with acc. and abl., 488; comp., 413, R.

Subject, the forms of, 195; object for, 470; accus. subj. of infin., 535, R.; subject omitted, 526, R. 2; 532, R. 4; nom. subj. for accus., 528.

Subjective genitive, 361.

Subjunctive, 247; ideal and unreal, 248; potential, 250; optative, 253; in asseverations, 255; as imperative, 256; as concessive, 257.

Subjunctive, future, how represented, 511. See different classes of sentences.

*Sublimis*, 324, R. 6.

Subordinate clauses, 474.

Subordination by means of participle, 409, R. 2.

*Substantiva mobilia*, 199.

Substantive, agreement of attribute with, 285, foll.; substantive sentences, 307.

*Subter*, in compounds with accus., 330; with acc. and abl., 219.

*Sui*. See Reflexive.

*Sum*, with dat., 349, 350; w. dative of gerund, 430; with predicative genitive, 365.

*Sunt qui*, 426.

*Super*, in compounds with acc., 330; with dat., 346; *super*, with acc., and abl., 419.

Superlative, 316; strengthened, 317; with gen., 371.

Supine, 435-437; accus. 436; ablat., 437.

*Supplico*, w. dat., 345, R. 2.

*Supra*, as adv., 416, R.; with accus., 417.

*Suus*, use of, 294, 299, R.  
*Synesis*, 202.  
 Syntax, defined, 193.

T.

Table of temporal relations, 217.  
*Tædet*, 376.  
 Taking, verbs of, 334.  
*Talis*, 645.  
*Tamdiu*, 645.  
*Tamen*, 492.  
*Tametsi*, 606.  
*Tam quam, tam quam si*, 604.  
*Tanti*, 380; *tantum abest ut*, 556, R. 1; *tantus*, 645.  
 Teaching, verbs of, 333.  
*Tempero*, constr., 347.  
 Temporal conjunctions for copulative, 484; conjunctions, 561; temporal relations, table of, 214.  
*Tempus est*, 429, R. 3.  
 Tendency, sentences of, 340, foll.  
*Tenes*, w. perf., part., pass., 227.  
 Tenses, 213, foll.; number of, 214; present, 218-221; perfect pure, 227-230; historical, 231; imperfect, 221, foll.; pluperfect, 232-3; future, 234; future perfect, 235; periphrastic, 235; active, 236; passive, 240-243; in letters, 244; tenses of indicative, 270; subjunctive, 270; imperative, 272; infinitive, 273, foll.; participle, 278; sequence of tenses, 510, foll.; dependent infinitive, 529, foll.; iterative, 568, 569; in *oratio obliqua*, 656, foll.  
*Tenus*, position, 414, R.; with abl. and gen., 419.  
 Thinking, verbs of, 197; with accus. and inf., 526-529.  
 Time, accus. of, 337-8; abl. of, 392, 393; with *in*, 393; with *ante*, *post*, *abhinc*, 400, R. 3; participle, 552.  
*Timeo*, w. dat., 347.  
*Tot*, 645.  
*Toties*, 645.  
*Totus*, of space, 386; of time, 392, R. 1.  
 Towns, names of, 410-412.  
*Trdns*, in compounds, w. accus., 330; with two accus., 330, R. 1, 2; w. accus., 417.

Transient qualities, 402, R. 1.  
 Transitive verbs, 204, 317.  
*Tum—cum*, 364.  
*Tum—tum*, 484.  
*Tuus*, 299, R.

U.

*Ubi*, w. gen., 371, R. 3; of time, 563.  
*Ullus*, 304.  
*Ultimus*, 324, R. 5.  
*Ultra*, as adv., 416; with accus., 417.  
 Unreal conditional sentence, 599.  
*Unus, unus omnium*, with superlat., 317.  
*Unus*, how translated, 324, R. 5; *unus qui*, 633.  
 Urging, verbs of, 546.  
*Usus*, 390, 322, R.  
*Ut—ita*, concessive, 484.  
*Ut uti*, design, 545; tendency, 554; *ut* omitted, 545, R. 3; 579, R.  
*Ut qui*, 627, R., 636; *ut*, of cause, 645, R. 4.  
*Ut*, in explanatory questions, 560.  
*Ut non*, 543; 556, R. 6.  
*Ut si*, 604.  
*Ut quisque—ita*, 645, R. 2.  
*Uter*, 315.  
*Uterque*, 370, R. 2.  
*Utinam*, 253.  
*Utor*, 405; *utendus*, 428, R. 3.  
*Ut primum*, 563.  
*Utrum*, 460, 461, R.

V.

*Vacare*, 347.  
*Vacuus*, constr., 388.  
*Vae*, 340, R. 2.  
 Value, gen. of, 379.  
 — *Ve*, 497.  
*Vel*, with superl., 317; *vel*, 496.  
*Vel—vel*, 496.  
*Velle*, for future, 240, R. 3; *velle sibi*, 351.  
*Velut velutis*, 604.  
*Vendo*, 378.  
*Veneo*, 378.  
*Venio*, with two dat., 350.  
*Venit in mentem*, 375, R. 3.

Verb, voices, active, 204; passive, 205; reflexive, 209; deponent, 201; tenses, 213, foll.; moods, 244, foll. See Voice, Mood, Tense.

Verbal nouns, sequence after, 518.

*Verbum*, w. gen., 359.

*Vereor*, 424. 552; w. dat., 347.

*Vērō*, 489.

*Versus*, position, 414; w. accus., 417.

*Verum*, 488.

*Verto*, w. two dat., 350.

*Vescor*, 405; *vescendus*, 428, R. 3.

*Vesperlinus*, 324, R. 5.

*Vestri vestrum*, 362, R.

*Veto*, w. acc., 345, R. 1; with inf., 424, R. 3.

*Viā et ratione*, 401, R.

*Vidēre nē*, 552, R. 2.

*Vi et armis*, 401, R.

*Vivo*, w. abl., 405, R. 3.

Vocative, 194, R. 3.

Voice, active, 204; passive, 205.

*Volens*, 324, R. 6; *volenti*, 354.

*Volo*, 532, and R. 4; 526, and R. 3.

*Voti damnāri*, 377, R. 3.

*Vox*, with gen., 359.

## W.

Want, verbs of, 389; adj. of, 378 R. 1; 389, R. 2.

Warning, verbs of, 546.

Whither? 313, 410.

Wishing, verbs of, 532, 546, mood.

## Y.

Yes, 473.

Yielding, verbs of, w. dat., 345.

## Z.

Zengma, 690.

## COMPARATIVE SECTIONS OF SYNTAX.

The numbers in the first column of each division below indicate sections in former editions of the Grammar; those in the second refer to corresponding sections in the Revised Latin Grammar.

O. E.	N. E.	O. E.	N. E.	O. E.	N. E.	O. E.	N. E.	O. E.	N. E.
1	192-3	54	250-2	113	313	168	371	227	439
2	194	55-6	253-4	114	314	169	372	228	440
3	195	57	255	115	315	170	373	229	441
4	196-7	58	256	116	316	171	374	230	442
5	198	59	257	117	317	172	375	231	444
6	199	60	259	118	319	173	376	232	447
7	200	61	260	119	320	174	377	233	445
8	202	62	261	120	321	175	378	234	446
9	202 R.4	63	262	121	322	176	379-80	235-9	448
10	202 R.5	64	263	122	323	177-8	381	240	449
11	204	65	264	123	324	179	382	241	450
12	205	66	265	R. 1-7	R. 2-8	180	412	242	453
13	206	67	266	124-5	325-6	181	383	243	454
14	207	68	267	126	327	182	384	244	455
15	208	69	268	127	329	183	412	245	456-9
16-17	209	70	269	128	330	184	385	246	460
18	210	71	270	129	331	185-6	386-7	247	461
19	211	72-3	271	130	332	187	388	248	462
20	212	74	272	131	333	188	411	249	463
21	213	75	274	132	334	189	389	250	465-6
22	214	76	275	133	342	190	390	251	467-8
23	216	77	277	134	410	191	391	252	469
24	217	78	278	135	335	192 a	392	253	470-1
25	218	79	279	136	336	192 b	393	254	473
26	218 R.2	80	281	137	337	193	395	255	474
27	219	81	282	138	338	194	394	256	477
28	220	82	281 R.2	139	340	195	399	257	478
29	221	83	283	140	341	196	400	258	479
30	227-8	84	284	141	343	199	403	259	645
30 R.2	229	85	285	142	314	200	404	260	480
30 R.3	230	86	286	143	345	201	405	261	481
31 a	222-3	87	287	144	346	202	406-7	262	482
31 b	224	88	288	145	347	203	408-9	263	448 R.3
31 c	225	89	289	146	348	204	413	264	444
32-33	223	90	290	147	349	205	414	265-7	483
34	231-2	91-3	292	148	350	206	415	268-9	484
35	234	94	293	149	351	207	416	270	486
36	234 R.1	95	294	150	352	208	417	271	487
37	235	96	295	151	353	209	418	272	488
38-41	236	97	296	152	354	210	419	273	489
42	238	98	297	153	355	211	420	274	490
43	239	99	298	154	356	212	422	275	491
44	240	100	299	155	357	213	423	276	492
45	241	101	300	156	359	214	424	277	493
46	242	102	301	157	360	215	425	278	495
47	243	103	302	158	361	216-7	426	279	496
48	244	104	303	159	362	218	428	280	498
49	245	105	304	160	363	219	429	281	499
50	246	106-7	305	161	364	220	430	282	500
51	247	108	306	162	365	221	431	283	502
52	248	109	307	163	366	222	432	284	503
53	249	110	308	164	367	223	433	285	504
54	249	111	309	165	368	224	434	286	505
		112	310	166	369	225	435	287	506
				167	370	226	436	288	507

# COMPARATIVE SECTIONS OF SYNTAX.

O. E.	N. E.	O. E.	N. E.	O. E.	N. E.	O. E.	N. E.	O. E.	N. E.
289 }	504	319	534	335	567	392-4	592 R.	426	634-5
290 }		320	535	356	568-9	395	597 R.4	427	636-7
291	505	321	536	357	570	396	575	428	638
292	506	322	537	358	573	397	605	429	639
293	507-8	323-5 }	538	359	574	398	606	430	641
294	510		540	360	575	399	607	431	642
295	511	326	541	361	576	400	608	432	644
296	512	327-9	542	362	579	401	609	433-4	645
297	514	330	543	363	581	402	610	435	646
298	514-6	331	546	364	582	403	611	436	647
299	518	332-4	545	365	583	404-5	612	437	649
300	511	335	547	366	584	406	613	438	650
301 }		335 R.3	552	367	585	407	614	439	651-2
302 }	512	336-7	550	368	586	408	616	440	653
303	518	338	549	369	587	409	616	441	654
304	513	339	544 R.2	370	588	410	617	442	655
305	519	340	553-5	371	589	411	618	443	656
306	520	341	557	372	590	412	619	444	657-8
307	521	342	558	373	591	413	620	445-7	659
308	522	343	556	374	594	414	621	448-51	660
309	523	344	559	375	592	415	623	452	661
310	524	345	560	376	593	416	622	453-6	662
311	525	346	554	377	595	417	624	457	663
312 α	526	347	556 R.4	378	596	418	625	458	665
312 δ	527	348	632	379-80	597	419	626	459	666
313	528	349	561	381-2	598	420	627	460	667
314	529	350		383-5	599	421	628	461	668
315	531	351 }	562	387	601	422	629	462	669
316	527 R.4	352	563	388	602	423	630	463	670
317	532	353	564	389-90	604	424	631	464	671
318	533	354	565-6	391	600	425	632-3		

# ERRATA AND CORRECTIONS.

THE following list does not embrace the more evident mistakes in the notation of quantity, nor the false references. Some of the worst errors have been corrected in the second impression.

Page 149, line 14 from bottom, read **Lārissaeōrum.**

- |   |      |   |    |   |              |      |   |                 |  |
|---|------|---|----|---|--------------|------|---|-----------------|--|
| " | 164, | " | 9  | " | "            | for  | "affected"  | read            | "effected."                                    |
| " | 167, | " | 4  | " | "            | "    | effected  | "               | affected.                                      |
| " | 172, | " | 12 | " | "            | "    | off   | "               | from.  |
| " | 191, | " | 9  | " | "            | "    | ear   | "               | fear.  |
| " | 223, | " | 1  | " | "            | "    | used to use   | "               | used, to use.                                  |
| " | 224, | " | 17 | " | "            | "    | unwisely  | "               | unjustly.                                      |
| " | 241, | " | 14 | " | "            | "    | Cic.  | "               | NEP.   |
| " | 242, | " | 12 | " | top,         | read | <i>the eyes like watchmen.</i>  |                 |  |
| " | "    | " | 13 | " | "            | "    | <b>periculō.</b>  |                 |  |
| " | 250, | " | 17 | " | "            | "    | Fam. vi. 12, 3.   |                 |  |
| " | 251, | " | 16 | " | "            | "    | <i>what would prevent me.</i>   |                 |  |
| " | 263, | " | 1  | " | "            | for  | ACCUSATIVES   | read            | SENTENCES.                                     |
| " | 265, | " | 20 | " | "            | "    | <b>sed quod</b>   | "               | <b>quam quod.</b>                              |
| " | 276, | " | 23 | " | "            | "    | <b>sumus</b>  | "               | <b>simus.</b>                                  |
| " | 289, | " | 3  | " | "            | "    | <b>annis</b>  | "               | <b>annōs.</b>                                  |
| " | 310, | " | 2  | " | "            | read | <i>which</i> (= for it, in that it).  |                 |  |
| " | 312, | " | 11 | " | "            | for  | "Optative Relative"   | read            | "Relative."                                    |
| " | 313, | " | 18 | " | bottom,      | "    | <b>possideat</b> (A.)   | read            | <b>possidet.</b>                               |
| " | 317, | " | 18 | " | top,         | read | <b>optimum ita rārissimum est.</b>  |                 |  |
| " | 318, | " | 11 | " | bottom,      | for  | "see"   | read            | "and."   |
| " | 329, | " | 17 | " | top 2d col., | "    | <b>nūdātōs</b>  | read            | <b>nūdātī.</b>                                 |
| " | "    | " | 25 | " | " 1st col.,  | "    | <b>futūrum</b>  | "               | <b>futūram.</b>                                |
| " | 330, | " | 14 | " | bottom,      | "    | attractive  | "               | attraction.                                    |
| " | 334, | " | 1  | " | top,         | "    | <b>Dēmocritus</b>   | read            | <b>Dionysius.</b>                              |
| " | 338, | " | 7  | " | "            | omit | "governing."  |                 |  |
| " | 339, | " | 11 | " | "            | for  | <b>Gāius</b>  | read            | <b>Gāvius.</b>                                 |
| " | 350, | " | 3  | " | bottom,      | "    | $\text{—} = 4 = \text{—}$   | read            | $\text{—} = 4 = \text{—}$                      |
| " | 358, | " | 3  | " | "            | "    | "conventional"  | read            | "conversational."                              |
| " | 362, | " | 10 | " | top,         | "    | "tripody"   | read            | "tetrapody."                                   |
| " | "    | " | 21 | " | "            | read | <i>Sapphic (Greater)</i>  | $\times \cup$ , | etc.   |
| " | 363, | " | 3  | " | bottom,      | "    | $\text{—} \text{—} \overline{\wedge} \parallel$                                   |                 |  |
| " | 367, | " | 4  | " | top,         | "    | the right-hand scheme of the Sapphic strophe is printed wrong. Correct by No. 26. |                 |  |
| " | 369, | " | 4  | " | "            | for  | $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$                                    | read            | $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$ |









